



Business Process Choreographer



Business Process Choreographer

Note

Before using this information, be sure to read the general information in the Notices section at the end of this document.

24 April 2009

This edition applies to version 6, release 2, modification 0 of WebSphere Process Server for Multiplatforms (product number 5724-L01) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

To send us your comments about this document, send an e-mail message to doc-comments@us.ibm.com. We look forward to hearing from you.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2006, 2009.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

PDF books and the information center

PDF books are provided as a convenience for printing and offline reading. For the latest information, see the online information center.



As a set, the PDF books contain the same content as the information center.

The PDF documentation is available within a quarter after a major release of the information center, such as Version 6.0 or Version 6.1.

The PDF documentation is updated less frequently than the information center, but more frequently than the Redbooks®. In general, PDF books are updated when enough changes are accumulated for the book.

Links to topics outside a PDF book go to the information center on the Web. Links to targets outside a PDF book are marked by icons that indicate whether the target is a PDF book or a Web page.

Table 1. Icons that prefix links to topics outside this book

Icon	Description
	<p>A link to a Web page, including a page in the information center.</p> <p>Links to the information center go through an indirection routing service, so that they continue to work even if target topic is moved to a new location.</p> <p>If you want to find a linked page in a local information center, you can search for the link title. Alternatively, you can search for the topic id. If the search results in several topics for different product variants, you can use the search result Group by controls to identify the topic instance that you want to view. For example:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Copy the link URL; for example, right-click the link then select Copy link location. For example: <code>http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/wsbroker/redirect?version=wbpm620&product=wesb-dist&topic=tins_apply_service</code>2. Copy the topic id after <code>&topic=</code>. For example: <code>tins_apply_service</code>3. In the search field of your local information center, paste the topic id. If you have the documentation feature installed locally, the search result will list the topic. For example: <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"><p>1 result(s) found for</p><p>Group by: None Platform Version Product</p><p>Show Summary</p><p>Installing fix packs and refresh packs with the Update Installer</p></div> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Click the link in the search result to display the topic.
	<p>A link to a PDF book.</p>

Contents

PDF books and the information center **iii**

Part 1. Business processes and human tasks in WebSphere Process Server **1**

Chapter 1. Business processes overview **3**

Process templates	4
Business process types	4
Process versioning	5
Process instances	6
Process life cycle	7
State transition diagrams for process instances	7
State transition diagrams for activities	10
Life cycle management of subprocesses	17
Life cycle of stand-alone human tasks	18
Dynamic modification of process instances at runtime.	19
Invocation scenarios for business processes	20
Factors affecting business process interactions	21
Dynamic binding between business processes and services	22
Data exchange between business processes and services.	23
Transactional behavior of business processes	24
Transactional behavior of microflows	24
Transactional behavior of long-running processes	26
Fault handling and compensation handling in business processes	31
Fault raising in business processes.	31
Fault handling in business processes	32
Compensation handling in business processes	36
Recovery from infrastructure failures	37
Authorization for business processes	39
Authorization roles for business processes	39
Authorization for creating and starting business processes	42
Authorization for interacting with a business process	43
Authorization for administering business processes	44
Chapter 2. Human tasks overview 47	
Task templates	47
Kinds of human tasks	47
Versioning of human tasks	49
Task instances	50
Stand-alone and inline tasks	51
Stand-alone tasks	51
Inline tasks	52
Relationship between human tasks and business processes	53
Subtasks	54
Follow-on tasks	57

Escalations	59
Life cycle of human tasks.	62
State transition diagrams for to-do tasks.	63
State transition diagrams for collaboration tasks	66
State transition diagrams for invocation tasks	68
State transition diagrams for administration tasks	70
Scenarios for invoking tasks	71
Factors affecting the behavior of stand-alone invocation tasks and their service components.	73
Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support the asynchronous invocations of services.	74
Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support asynchronous and synchronous invocations of services.	76
Authorization and people assignment for human tasks.	79
Authorization roles for human tasks	79
Task authorization and work items	81
People assignment criteria	81
Replacement expressions in people assignment criteria definitions	82
People resolution	83
Substitution for absentees.	87
Default people assignments and inheritance rules	87
People assignment criteria and people query results	89
Shared people assignments	90

Part 2. Planning and configuring Business Process Choreographer . **93**

Chapter 3. Planning to configure Business Process Choreographer **95**

Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path.	95
Planning to create a basic sample Business Process Choreographer configuration	101
Planning to create a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration including a sample organization.	102
Planning a non-production deployment environment configuration	103
Planning to use the administrative console's deployment environment wizard	104
Planning for a custom Business Process Choreographer configuration	109
Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations	110
Planning the databases for Business Process Choreographer	116
Planning for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager	129
Planning for the people directory provider	130
Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.	132

Planning for a remote client application	137
Business Process Choreographer overview	138
Business Process Choreographer Explorer overview	139

Chapter 4. Configuring Business Process Choreographer 143

Using the Installer or Profile Management Tool to configure Business Process Choreographer	143
Using the administrative console's deployment environment wizard to configure Business Process Choreographer	146
Using the administrative console's Business Process Choreographer configuration page	149
Using the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer	154
bpeconfig.jacl script file	161
Creating the queue manager and queues for Business Process Choreographer	177
Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer	182
Using SQL scripts to create the database for Business Process Choreographer	186
Creating a Derby database for Business Process Choreographer	186
Creating a DB2 for i5/OS database for Business Process Choreographer	187
Creating a DB2 for Linux, UNIX, and Windows database for Business Process Choreographer	188
Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for Business Process Choreographer	190
Creating an Informix Dynamic Server database for Business Process Choreographer	193
Creating a Microsoft SQL Server database for Business Process Choreographer	194
Creating an Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer	195
Configuring the people directory provider	197
Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider	198
Configuring the LDAP people directory provider	199
Configuring people substitution	205
Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer	208
Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer	209
Using the clientconfig.jacl script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer	209
Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector	213
Configuring a remote client application	271
Activating Business Process Choreographer	275
Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works	276
Understanding the startup behavior of Business Process Choreographer	277
Federating a stand-alone node that has Business Process Choreographer configured	277

Chapter 5. Removing the Business Process Choreographer configuration. 279

Using a script to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration	279
Using a tool to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector	282
Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration	282
Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector	288

Part 3. Administering 291

Chapter 6. Administering Business Process Choreographer 293

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer	293
Using the administrative console to administer Business Process Choreographer	296
Enabling the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function	296
Administering the compensation service for a server	298
Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console	298
Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console	301
Enabling Common Base Events, the audit trail, and the task history using the administrative console	302
Refreshing people query results, using the refresh daemon	304
Configuring the cleanup service and cleanup jobs	305
Using scripts to administer Business Process Choreographer	308
Administering query tables	308
Deleting audit log entries, using administrative scripts	322
Deleting process templates that are no longer valid	324
Deleting human task templates that are no longer valid	327
Deleting completed process instances	329
Deleting data from the reporting database	331
Querying and replaying failed messages, using administrative scripts	335
Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts	338
Removing unused people query results, using administrative scripts	340

Chapter 7. Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer 343

Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface	344
Business Process Choreographer Explorer Views tab	346

Business Process Choreographer Explorer Reports tab	349
Starting Business Process Choreographer Explorer	351
Customizing Business Process Choreographer Explorer	352
Customizing the Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface for different user groups	352
Personalizing the Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface.	356
Changing the appearance of the default Web application	357

Chapter 8. Administering business processes and human tasks 363

Administering process templates and process instances	363
Stopping and starting process templates with the administrative console	364
Stopping and starting process templates with administrative scripts.	365
Managing the process life cycle	366
Repairing processes and activities	371
Administering task templates and task instances	380
Stopping and starting task templates with the administrative console	381
Stopping and starting task templates with the administrative scripts.	381
Creating and starting a task instance	382
Working on your tasks	383
Suspending and resuming task instances	384
Restarting task instances.	385
Managing priorities of human tasks	385
Managing work assignments	386
Viewing task escalations.	394
Creating and editing custom properties in Business Process Choreographer Explorer	395
Reporting on business processes and activities	396
Using the predefined lists and charts	401
Creating user-defined reports	406
Using saved user-defined report definitions	419

Part 4. Developing and deploying modules 425

Chapter 9. Developing client applications for business processes and tasks 427

Comparison of the programming interfaces for interacting with business processes and human tasks	427
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Chapter 10. Queries on business process and task data 431

Comparison of the programming interfaces for retrieving process and task data	431
Query tables in Business Process Choreographer	433
Predefined query tables	434
Supplemental query tables	436

Composite query tables	437
Query table development	444
Filters and selection criteria of query tables	447
Authorization for query tables.	452
Attribute types for query tables	456
Query table queries	461
Query table queries for meta data retrieval	471
Internationalization for query table meta data	474
Query tables and query performance	474
Business Process Choreographer EJB query API	478
Syntax of the API query method	479
User-specific access conditions.	485
Examples of the query and queryAll methods	486

Chapter 11. Developing EJB client applications for business processes and human tasks 491

Accessing the EJB APIs	492
Accessing the remote interface of the session bean	492
Accessing the local interface of the session bean	495
Querying business-process and task-related objects	497
Filtering data using variables in queries	498
Managing stored queries	498
Developing applications for business processes	501
Required roles for actions on process instances	502
Required roles for actions on business-process activities	503
Managing the life cycle of a business process	504
Processing human task activities	510
Processing a single person workflow	512
Sending a message to a waiting activity	514
Handling events	514
Analyzing the results of a process	515
Repairing activities	516
BusinessFlowManagerService interface	518
Developing applications for human tasks	521
Starting an invocation task that invokes a synchronous interface	521
Starting an invocation task that invokes an asynchronous interface	522
Creating and starting a task instance	523
Processing to-do tasks or collaboration tasks	524
Suspending and resuming a task instance	525
Analyzing the results of a task	526
Terminating a task instance.	526
Deleting task instances	527
Releasing a claimed task.	527
Managing work items	528
Creating task templates and task instances at runtime	529
HumanTaskManagerService interface	535
Developing applications for business processes and human tasks.	538
Determining the process templates or activities that can be started.	539
Processing a single person workflow that includes human tasks	541
Handling exceptions and faults	543

Handling Business Process Choreographer EJB API exceptions	544
Checking which fault is set for a human task activity	544
Checking which fault occurred for a stopped invoke activity	545
Checking which unhandled exception or fault occurred for a failed process instance	545

Chapter 12. Developing Web service API client applications 547

Web service components and sequence of control	547
Overview of the Web services APIs	547
Requirements for business processes and human tasks	548
Developing client applications	549
Copying artifacts	550
Publishing and exporting artifacts from the server environment	551
Using files on the client CD	556
Developing client applications in the Java Web services environment	559
Generating a proxy client (Java Web services)	559
Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (Java Web services)	563
Creating a client application (Java Web services)	564
Adding security (Java Web services)	565
Adding transaction support (Java Web services)	569
Developing client applications in the .NET environment	570
Generating a proxy client (.NET)	570
Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (.NET)	571
Creating a client application (.NET)	573
Adding security (.NET)	574
Querying business-process and task-related objects	575
Queries on business-process and task-related objects using the Web services APIs	575
Managing stored queries	578

Chapter 13. Developing client applications using the Business Process Choreographer JMS API 579

Requirements for business processes	579
Authorization for JMS renderings	579
Accessing the JMS interface	580
Structure of a Business Process Choreographer JMS message	582
Copying artifacts for JMS client applications	583
Checking the response message for business exceptions	583
Example: executing a long running process using the Business Process Choreographer JMS API	584

Chapter 14. Developing Web applications for business processes and human tasks, using JSF components 587

Business Process Choreographer Explorer components	589
Error handling in JSF components	591
Default converters and labels for client model objects	592
Adding the List component to a JSF application	592
How lists are processed	595
User-specific time zone information	596
Error handling in the List component	596
List component: Tag definitions	597
Adding the Details component to a JSF application	599
Adding the CommandBar component to a JSF application	601
How commands are processed	603
CommandBar component: Tag definitions	604
Adding the Message component to a JSF application	605
Message component: Tag definitions	607

Chapter 15. Developing JSP pages for task and process messages 609

User-defined JSP fragments	610
--------------------------------------	-----

Chapter 16. Creating plug-ins to customize human task functionality. 613

Creating API event handlers	613
Creating notification event handlers	615
Installing API event handler and notification event handler plug-ins	617
Registering API event handler and notification event handler plug-ins with task templates, task models, and tasks	618
Creating, installing, and running plug-ins to post-process people query results	619

Chapter 17. Installing business process and human task applications. 623

How business process and human task applications are installed in a network deployment environment	623
Deployment of business processes and human tasks	624
Installing business process and human task applications interactively	624
Configuring process application data source and set reference settings	625
Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using the administrative console	626
Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command	627

Part 5. Monitoring business processes and tasks 629

Chapter 18. Monitoring business processes and human tasks 631

Chapter 19. Business process events overview 633

Event data specific to business processes	633
Extension names for business process events	634
Business process events	647
Common Base Events for business processes	648
Common Base Events for activities	652
Common Base Events for scope activities	661
Common Base Events for links in flow activities	664
Common Base Events for process variables	665
Situations in business process events	666

Chapter 20. Human task events overview 669

Event data specific to human tasks	669
Extension names for human task events	669
Human task events	674
Situations in human task events	677

Part 6. Tuning 679

Chapter 21. Tuning business processes 681

Tuning long-running processes	682
Balancing the hardware resources	682
Specifying initial DB2 database settings.	684
Specifying initial Oracle database settings	687
Planning messaging engine settings	688
Tuning the application server	688
Fine-tuning the Business Process Choreographer database	690
Fine-tuning the messaging provider	695
Improving the performance of business process navigation	695
Tuning microflows	696
Tuning business processes that contain human tasks	697
Reduce concurrent access to human tasks	697
Optimize task and process queries	698

Chapter 22. Tuning Business Process Choreographer Explorer. 701

Tuning the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.	702
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Part 7. Troubleshooting 707

Chapter 23. Troubleshooting the Business Process Choreographer configuration 709

Business Process Choreographer log files	709
Troubleshooting the Business Process Choreographer database and data source	710
REST API: The URL is not configured correctly	712
6.0.x Business Process Choreographer API client fails in a version 6.2 environment	713
Enabling tracing for Business Process Choreographer	714

Chapter 24. Troubleshooting business processes and human tasks 715

Troubleshooting the installation of business process and human task applications	715
Troubleshooting the uninstallation of business process and human task applications	717
Troubleshooting the execution of business processes	719
ClassCastException when stopping an application containing a microflow	719
Unexpected exception during invocation of the processMessage method (message: CNTR0020E).	719
XPath query returns an unexpected value from an array	720
An activity has stopped because of an unhandled fault (Message: CWWBE0057I).	720
A microflow is not compensated	721
A long-running process appears to have stopped	721
Invoking a synchronous subprocess in another EAR file fails	722
Hung threads when a long-running process is invoked synchronously (Message: WSVR0605W)	722
Late binding calls the wrong version of a subprocess	722
Unexpected exception during execution (Message: CWWBA0010E)	723
Event unknown (Message: CWWBE0037E)	723
Cannot find nor create a process instance (Message: CWWBA0140E)	724
The failed state of the process instance does not allow the requested sendMessage action to be performed (Message: CWWBE0126E)	724
Uninitialized variable or NullPointerException in a Java snippet	724
Standard fault exception "missingReply" (message: CWWBE0071E)	725
A fault is not caught by the fault handler	725
Parallel paths are sequentialized	726
Copying a nested data object to another data object destroys the reference on the source object	726
CScope is not available	726
Working with process-related or task-related messages	727
Troubleshooting the administration of business processes and human tasks.	727
Troubleshooting escalation e-mails	728
Troubleshooting people assignment	730
Troubleshooting Business Process Choreographer Explorer	736
Troubleshooting Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports	738
Using process-related and task-related audit trail information	741
Audit event types for business processes	741
Audit event types for human tasks	744
Structure of the audit trail database view for business processes.	745
Structure of the audit trail database view for human tasks.	749

Part 8. Appendixes 753**Appendix. Database views for
Business Process Choreographer . . . 755**

ACTIVITY view	755
ACTIVITY_ATTRIBUTE view	757
ACTIVITY_SERVICE view	758
APPLICATION_COMP view	758
ESCALATION view	759
ESCALATION_CPROP view	760
ESCALATION_DESC view	761
ESC_TEMPL view	761
ESC_TEMPL_CPROP view	762
ESC_TEMPL_DESC view	763

PROCESS_ATTRIBUTE view	763
PROCESS_INSTANCE view	763
PROCESS_TEMPLATE view	764
PROCESS_TEMPL_ATTR view	765
QUERY_PROPERTY view	766
TASK view	766
TASK_CPROP view	769
TASK_DESC view	770
TASK_TEMPL view	770
TASK_TEMPL_CPROP view	772
TASK_TEMPL_DESC view	772
WORK_ITEM view	773

Notices 775

Part 1. Business processes and human tasks in WebSphere Process Server

Chapter 1. Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

A process that is defined in the Web Services Business Process Execution Language (WS-BPEL) comprises:

- The activities that are the individual steps within the process. An activity can be one of several different types. Also, an activity can be categorized as either a basic activity or a structured activity.
 - Basic activities are activities that have no structure and do not contain other activities, for example, assign or invoke activities.
 - Structured activities are activities that contain other activities, for example, sequence or while activities.
- The partner links, also known as interface partners or reference partners, that specify the interaction with external partners using WSDL interfaces.
- The variables that store the data that is exchanged with the process and passed between activities.
- Correlation sets that are used to correlate multiple service interactions with the same business process instance. Correlation sets are based on application data that is contained in messages that are exchanged with the process.
- Fault handlers that deal with exceptional situations that can occur when a business process runs.
- Event handlers that receive and process unsolicited messages in parallel to the normal process execution.
- Compensation handlers that specify the compensation logic for a single activity, a group of activities, or a scope.

For more information on these constructs, refer to the BPEL specification.

Business Process Choreographer also supports the IBM® extensions to the BPEL language, such as:

- Human task activities for human interaction. These inline to-do tasks can be steps in the business process that involve a person, for example, completing a form, approving a document, and so on.
- Script activities for running inline Java™ code. The Java code can access all of the BPEL variables, correlation properties, partner links, and process and activity contexts.
- Information service activities to directly access WebSphere® Information Server or relational databases.
- Valid-from timestamps for process versioning.
- Extensions for manually setting or controlling the transactional boundaries in a business process.
- Timeouts for activities.

Related information



Business Process Execution Language for Web Services, Version 1.1



OASIS Web Services Business Process Execution Language, Version 2.0

Process templates

A process template is a process definition that is deployed and installed in the runtime environment.

Process properties are specified when the process is defined. In the runtime environment, properties for process templates are stored in the runtime database. They can be accessed using the Business Process Choreographer database views, such as the PROCESS_TEMPLATE view, or using query tables.

In addition, an installed business process can also have one of the following states:

Started

When a process template is created and started, new instances of the template can be started.

Stopped

When a process template is in the stopped state, no new instances of this template can be created and started. Existing instances of the template continue to run until they complete.

Related reference



Database views for Business Process Choreographer

Related information



Query tables in Business Process Choreographer

Business process types

Business processes can be either long-running or microflows.

Long-running processes

A long-running business process is interruptible, and each step of the process can run in its own physical transaction. Long-running business processes can wait for external stimuli. Examples of external stimuli are events that are sent by another business process in a business-to-business interaction, responses to asynchronous invocations, or the completion of a human task.

A long-running process has the following characteristics:

- Runs in multiple transactions.
- Interacts with services synchronously and asynchronously.
- Its state is stored in the runtime database, which makes the process forward-recoverable

Microflows

A microflow runs in one physical thread from start to finish without interruption. Microflows are sometimes referred to as non-interruptible business processes. Microflows can have different transactional capabilities. A microflow participates in the unit of work that can be either a global transaction or an activity session.

A microflow has the following characteristics:

- Runs in one transaction or activity session
- Normally runs for a short time
- Its state is transient, and it is therefore not stored in the runtime database
- It typically invokes services synchronously
- It can have only non-interruptible child processes
- It cannot contain:
 - Human tasks
 - Wait activities
 - Non-initiating receive activities or pick activities

Related concepts

Factors affecting business process interactions

A number of factors affect the behavior of business processes in the various invocation scenarios. These include the interaction style, the type of business process, the operation type, and the service endpoint resolution.

Transactional behavior of business processes

Business processes are executed as part of transactions. The navigation of a business process can span multiple transactions in the case of long-running processes, or happen as part of one transaction in the case of microflows. Such navigation transactions can be triggered by external requests, internal messages, or responses from asynchronous services. When a transaction starts, the required activities are performed according to the process definitions. Invoked services can participate in the transaction.

Process versioning

You can create new versions of your business process, so that multiple versions of the same process can co-exist in a runtime environment.

You can include versioning information, such as a valid-from date, when you define the business process in WebSphere Integration Developer. The version of a process is determined by its valid-from date. This means that different versions of a process can have the same process name but they have different valid-from dates. The version of a process that is used at runtime is determined by whether the process is used in an *early-binding* scenario or a *late-binding* scenario.

Early binding

In an early-binding scenario, the decision on which version of the process is invoked is made either during modeling or when the process is deployed. The caller invokes a dedicated, statically-bound process. Even if another version of the process is valid according to the valid-from dates of the different versions, the current statically wired process is called, and all of the other versions are ignored.

An example of early-binding is an SCA wire. If you wire a stand-alone reference to a process component, every invocation of the process using this reference is targeted to the specific version that is represented by the process component.

Late binding

In a late-binding scenario, the decision on which process template is invoked happens when the caller invokes the process. In this case, the version of the process that is currently valid is used. The currently valid version of a process supersedes all of the previous versions of the process. Existing process instances continue to run with the process template with which they were associated when they started. This leads to the following categories of process templates:

- Currently valid process templates are used for new process instances
- Process templates that are no longer valid are still used for existing long-running process instances
- Process templates that become valid in the future according to their valid-from date

To apply late-binding when a subprocess is invoked, the parent process must specify the name of the subprocess template from which the valid subprocess is to be chosen at the reference partner. The valid-from attribute of the process is used to determine the subprocess template that is currently valid. You also need to generate an export binding for the subprocess, even if the parent process and subprocess are in the same module.


An example of late-binding is when a new process is invoked in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The instance that is created is always based on the currently valid version of the process with a valid-from date that is not in the future.

Related concepts

Invocation scenarios for business processes

A business process is a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component implementation. It can expose services to other partners and consume services provided by other partners. A business process can be a service provider that is made available by the Business Process Choreographer APIs, an SCA service provider for other SCA service components, or an SCA client that invokes other SCA service components, including other business processes.

Related information

 [Versioning of human tasks](#)

Process instances

A process instance is the instantiation of a process template.

Business processes defined in Web Services Business Process Execution Language (WS-BPEL) represent stateful Web services, and as such, they can have long-running interactions with other Web services. Whenever a BPEL process is started, a new instance of that process is created that can communicate with other business partners. An instance completes when its last activity completes, a terminate activity runs, or a fault occurs that is not handled by the process.

Many process instance properties are inherited from the corresponding process template. Others, such as the state of the process instance, are assigned and modified during the lifetime of the process instance. All of these properties are stored in the runtime database. They can be accessed using the Business Process Choreographer database views, such as the PROCESS_INSTANCE view or QUERY_PROPERTY view, or using query tables.

Related reference

 Database views for Business Process Choreographer

Related information

 Query tables in Business Process Choreographer

Process life cycle








When a process is initiated, the navigation of a business process instance is started, and it begins to interact with its environment. This means that certain interactions are only possible in certain process states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the process instance.

State transition diagrams for process instances

Processes change state whenever something of significance happens during the life cycle of the process instance. For example, an API request causes a process in the running state to be put into the suspended state. State transition diagrams show the state transitions that can occur during the process life cycle. Microflows and long-running processes have different state transition diagrams.

Conventions used in these diagrams

The state transitions in the diagrams are indicated by numbers. These numbers are then explained in the supporting text. In addition, the diagrams contain the following types of symbols:

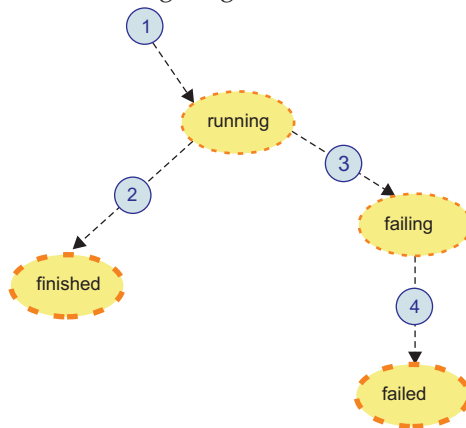
Symbol	Explanation
	Transient state. These states are not visible.
	Persistent state.
	Transient end state.
	Persistent end state.
	State transitions that are triggered automatically by Business Flow Manager.
	State transitions that are the result of an external interaction using an API.
	State transitions that are controlled by Business Flow Manager, or are the result of an external interaction using an API.

State transition diagram for microflow instances

A microflow is considered to be stateless because the process is always run in a transaction and instance information is not persisted for navigating the process

instance. However, depending on the process definition and how Business Flow Manager is configured, the state of a microflow can be exposed in Common Base Events or in the audit log.

The following diagram shows the states that a microflow instance can have.

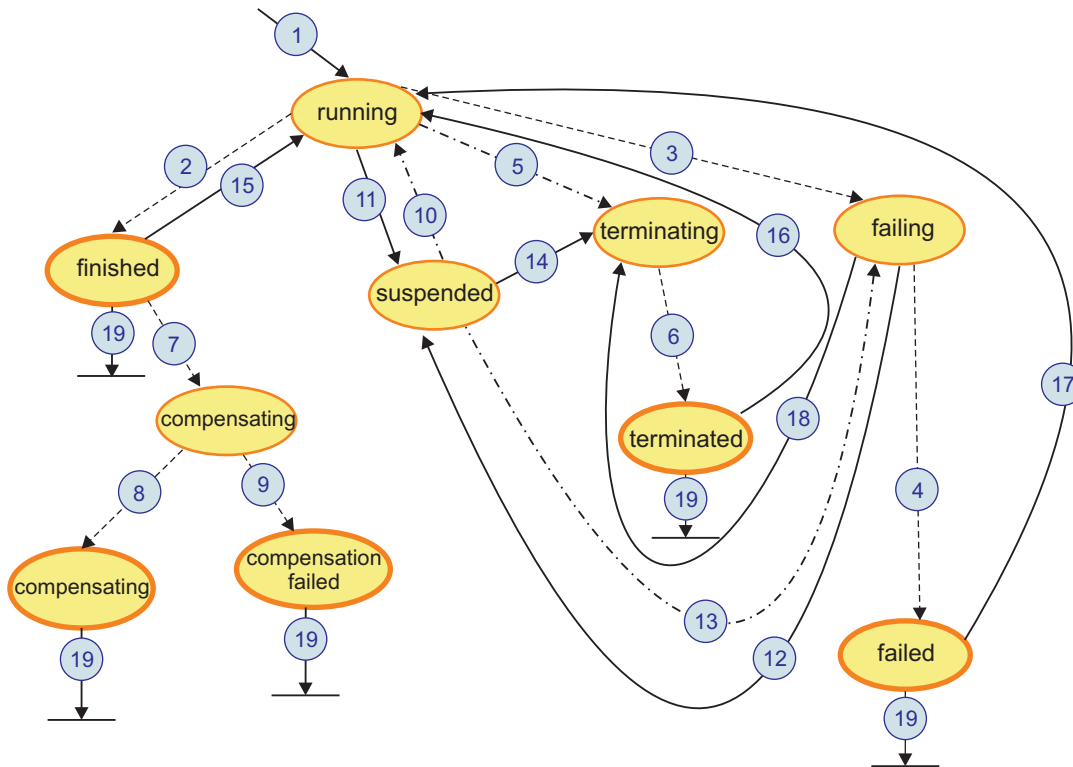


After normal initiation of the process instance, the first process state a process instance reaches is the running state (1). When a process instance runs normally through to completion, the process state changes from running to finished (2). If a fault reaches the process boundary, the process is put into the failing state (3). The process stays in the failing state while the fault handler runs. After this, the process instance is put into the failed state (4).

All of these state transitions are triggered by Business Flow Manager. After a microflow starts, you cannot influence these automatic steps.

State transition diagram for long-running process instances

A long-running process runs in several transactions. The state of a long-running process is persisted, and it is therefore visible. The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur for a long-running process instance.



The running, finished, failing, and failed states, and the state transitions between them are the same as for microflows.

A process instance is terminated by either an external request, or a terminate activity. The termination of a process instance can span multiple navigation steps and therefore multiple chained transactions, for example, to terminate long-running activities or subprocesses. During this termination phase, the process instance is in the terminating state (5), (14), (18). When all of the long-running parts of the process are terminated, the state of the process instance also changes to terminated (6).

When a child process ends successfully and the parent process fails later, the child process can be compensated. During compensation, the child process is in the compensating state (7). If compensation ends successfully, the child process is put into the compensated state (8). If compensation is not successful, the child process is put into the compensation-failed state (9). These state transactions are initiated by the parent process automatically.

If the navigation of the process instance is still active, that is, it is in the running, or failing state, it can be suspended with an API request. It can then be reactivated either after a specified time, or by a resume request. The state of the process changes from running or failing to suspended (11), (12) with the suspend request, and from suspended to running or failing with the resume request (10), (13). A process in the suspended state can also be terminated (14). Only top-level process instances can be suspended and resumed. However, the suspend or resume state is propagated to the child processes.

When a process reaches one of the end states, finished, terminated, or failed, it can be started again with a restart API request (15), (16), (17). Only top-level process instances can be restarted, while only child process instances can be compensated.

A process instance can be deleted when it reaches an end state (19). The process can be deleted automatically if the **automatically delete on completion** attribute is set accordingly, or it can be triggered by an explicit delete request.

Related concepts

Transactional behavior of business processes

Business processes are executed as part of transactions. The navigation of a business process can span multiple transactions in the case of long-running processes, or happen as part of one transaction in the case of microflows. Such navigation transactions can be triggered by external requests, internal messages, or responses from asynchronous services. When a transaction starts, the required activities are performed according to the process definitions. Invoked services can participate in the transaction.

State transition diagrams for activities

The state of an activity instance changes when a significant step in the execution of the activity instance occurs. The states and the state transitions depend on the type of activity.






States and state transitions are important in the life cycle of basic activities. Basic activities are grouped into the following activity types. The state transition diagrams vary according to the activity type:

- Short-lived activities, such as assign, empty, reply, rethrow, throw, terminate, and Java snippet activities
- Activities that wait for an external event, such as receive and wait activities
- Pick (receive choice) activities
- Invoke activities
- Human task activities

In contrast to the state diagrams for process instances, activity end states are not explicitly exposed. The life cycle of an activity depends on the enclosing process. Activities are always deleted with the process instance.

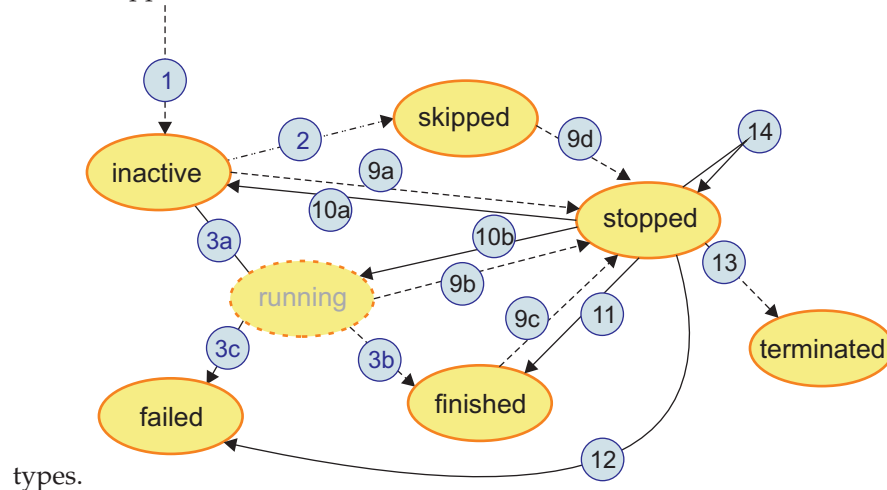
Conventions used in these diagrams

The state transitions in the diagrams are indicated by numbers. These numbers are then explained in the supporting text. In addition, the diagrams contain the following types of symbols:

Symbol	Explanation
	Transient state. These states are not visible.
	Persistent state.
	State transitions that are triggered automatically by Business Flow Manager.
	State transitions that are the result of a user interaction, for example, by an API request.
	State transitions that are controlled by Business Flow Manager or by a user interaction.

State transition diagram for short-lived activity types

The following state diagram shows the states and the state transitions for simple, short-lived activity types, such as: assign, empty, reply, rethrow, throw, terminate, and Java snippet activities. It introduces the states: inactive, skipped, finished, failed, stopped, and terminated. These states are common to all of the basic activity



types. After an activity is created, it is in the inactive state (1). Activities that are enclosed in a flow can have multiple incoming links and a join condition. Before such an activity can start, all of the incoming links must be navigated. The **suppressJoinFailure** attribute of the activity and the outcome of the evaluation of the join condition determine the subsequent behavior of the activity:

- The join condition evaluates to false and the **suppressJoinFailure** attribute is set to true.
The state of the activity changes to skipped (2), and the links leaving the activity are navigated as dead paths.
- The join condition evaluates to false and the **suppressJoinFailure** attribute is set to false.
The activity remains in the inactive state because it has not been started, and a `bpws:joinFailure` standard fault is raised.
- The join condition evaluates to true.
For activities that are not enclosed in a flow, this is the expected behavior. The subsequent behavior of the activity depends on whether it has an exit condition that is evaluated on entry of the activity.
 - If the exit condition evaluates to true, the state of the activity changes to skipped (2), and the transition conditions of the links leaving the activity are evaluated.
 - If the exit condition evaluates to false or if an exit condition is not specified, the activity is activated, and its state changes to running (3a). The activity implementation is run and when it successfully completes, the subsequent behavior of the activity depends on whether it has an exit condition that is evaluated on entry of the activity.
 - If such an exit condition is specified and it evaluates to true or if it is not specified, the state of the activity changes to finished (3b), and the transition conditions of the links leaving the activity are evaluated.
 - If the exit condition evaluates to false the activity state changes to stopped (9b).

If the **Continue On Error** setting is set to yes and the implementation fails, for example, when the syntax of a copy statement in an assign activity is incorrect, the state of the activity changes to failed (3c). All short-lived activities are non-interruptible. As a result, the running state is never visible.

An activity instance can be skipped in any state, including the inactive state. If the activity is in the inactive state, the state changes from inactive to skipped (2) when the activity is reached by the navigation, regardless of the outcome of the join condition. The transition conditions of the links that leave the activity are also evaluated. If the activity is automatically skipped, the conditions are not evaluated.

Fault handling behavior when the Continue On Error setting for the process is set to no

If the **Continue On Error** setting is set to no, a fault that is not caught by a fault link or an immediately enclosing fault handler causes the activity to be put into the stopped state (9a - 9d). The stopped state can be reached in the following situations:

- The activation of the activity fails, for example, if an exception occurs during the evaluation of the join condition.

The state of the activity changes from inactive to stopped (9a). The activity can be repaired by an administrator with the help of a forceRetry API request. The state of the activity changes to inactive (10a) and the activation of the activity is tried again. If the retry is successful, the state changes to running (3a), and finally to finished (3b). If the retry is not successful, the activity is put into the stopped state again (14).

You can change the continue-on-error behavior with the API repair request. If this is done and the activation fails again, the activity ends in the inactive state (10a), and the fault is propagated to the fault handlers of the enclosing scope.

- The implementation of the activity fails, for example, because the XPath expression in an assign statement causes an exception.

The state of the activity changes from running to stopped (9b). Because the state change occurs in a single transaction, the running state is not visible.

The activity can be repaired by an administrator with the help of a forceRetry API request. The activity is put back into the running state (10b). The activity can also be repaired with a forceComplete API request. In this case, the activity is put into the finished state (11), and the navigation of the process continues.

If the activity is repaired, the stopped state can be reached again (14) if the implementation of the activity fails again during the repair step. If the continue-on-error behavior is changed with the API repair request and the implementation fails again, the activity ends in the failed state, and the fault is propagated to the fault handlers of the enclosing scope.

- The evaluation of the transition conditions on a link leaving the activity fails.

The state of the activity was finished or skipped before the error occurred (9c or 9d). The activity can be repaired by an administrator with the help of a forceComplete API request. If the evaluation is then successful, the state is finished again (11). If the evaluation is not successful, the state of the activity is either stopped (14) or failed (12).

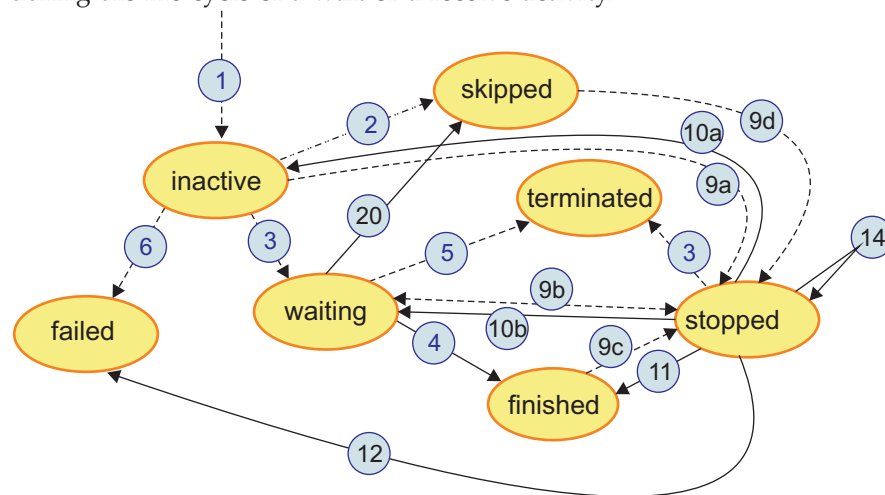
Alternatively, the activity can be repaired with the help of a forceNavigate API request. In this case, the administrator can determine which outgoing links of the activity should be followed. The state of the

activity changes back to finished (11), the transition conditions are not evaluated, but the transition condition of the specified links are considered to be evaluated to true. This means that if the activity is in a parallel flow, all other links are navigated as dead paths.

If an activity is in the stopped state and the enclosing scope is terminated, for example, because of an uncaught fault in a parallel branch, the activity is terminated. Its state changes to the terminated state (13).

State transition diagram for activities that wait for an external event

The following diagram shows the states and the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of a wait or a receive activity.



The starting phase of receive and wait activities, and the state transitions to and from the stopped state are the same as for short-lived activities. However, after receive and wait activities are activated, the state changes to waiting instead of running (3). The receive or wait activity is now ready to receive an external request, or to wait for the specified timeout, before it can complete and move to the finished state (4). For a receive activity, the transition to the finished state is triggered by the message that is received. For a wait activity, this transition is done automatically after the specified wait time elapses, or it can be forced using a force-complete API request. However, if the receive or wait activity has an exit condition with the condition evaluation attribute set to on exit and the exit condition evaluates to false, the activity state changes to stopped (9b) and not to finished.

The wait or receive activity might fail before the start of the activity completes, for example, when the evaluation of the wait time of a wait activity fails. If the **Continue On Error** setting is set to yes or the fault is handled by a fault link or fault handler on the enclosing scope, the failure causes the activity state to change to failed (6) before it can reach the waiting state.

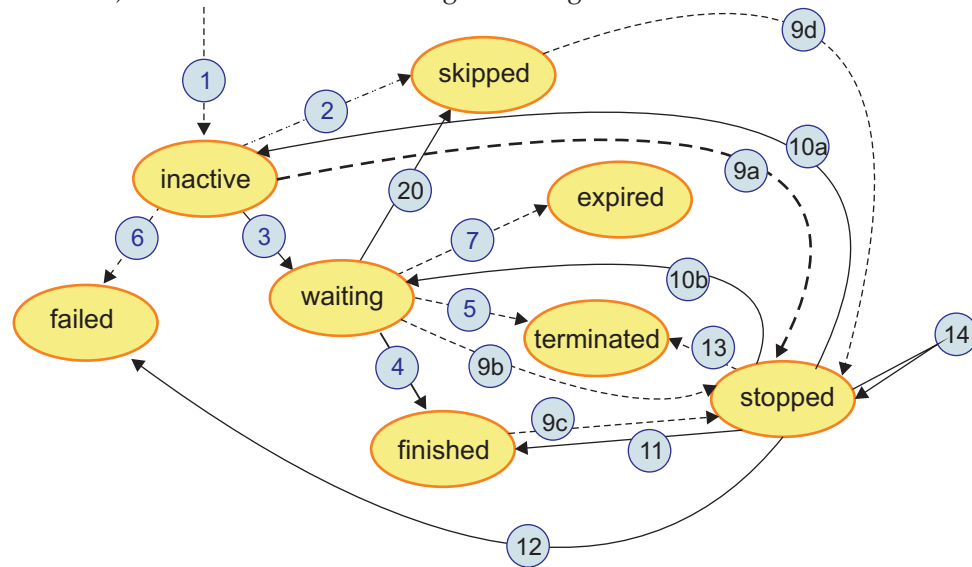
While the activity is in the waiting state, the enclosing process might receive a terminate request, or a fault occurs in a branch that is parallel to the wait or receive activity. If any of these events occur, the wait or receive activity is terminated, and the state of the activity changes to terminated (5).

A wait or receive activity can be skipped while it is in the waiting state. The state of the activity changes immediately to the skipped state (20). In this case, the

transition conditions of the links that leave the activity are evaluated.

State transition diagram for pick (receive choice) activities

The states and state transitions for pick activities (also known as receive choice activities) are shown in the following state diagram.

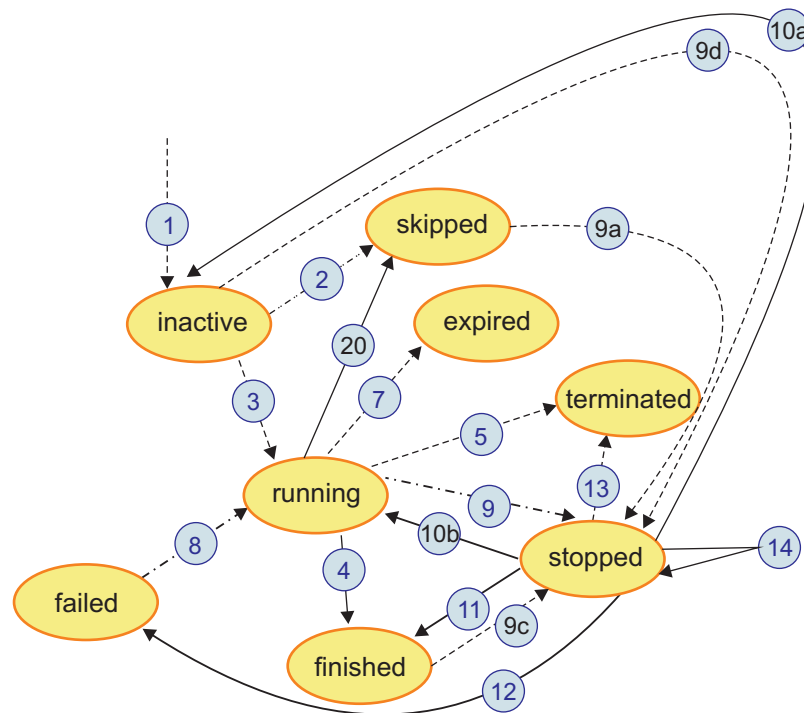


For pick activities, the states and state transitions (1) through (6), and the transitions to and from the stopped and skipped states are the same as for receive activities.

In addition, a pick activity can expire when the on-alarm branch of a waiting pick activity is activated before a request for the pick activity arrives. The activity is then in the expired state (7).

State transition diagram for invoke activities

For invoke activities, the state diagrams depend on whether the corresponding service is invoked synchronously or asynchronously. The following diagram shows the states and the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of an invoke activity with an asynchronous implementation. The implementation is asynchronous if the service reply happens in a subsequent transaction to the service request transaction.



The activation of an invoke activity is the same as the activation of all of the other activity types (1), (2).

When an invoke activity runs normally through to completion, the activity is started and the state changes to running (3). If the service invocation returns successfully, the activity is put into the finished state (4).

As long as the service has not replied or the activity is in the stopped state, an administrator can force retry or force complete the activity. This can be useful if the service cannot reply, for example, because of a system outage. The state transitions from running to stopped (9), failed (8), and finished (4) can also be caused by the corresponding API. If the asynchronous service is a child process, then the activity cannot be force retried or force completed while it is in the running state.

As with all other activities, an invoke activity can stop (9). It can then be repaired by administrative actions or terminated because the enclosing scope or process is also terminated (13).

Activities in the running state can expire if expiration is defined for the activity. The activity state is then expired (7) and a timeout fault is thrown. This fault can be handled by a fault handler.

If the enclosing scope of the activity is terminated, for example, because of a failure in a parallel path in the process, and the activity is in the running state, the activity is also terminated and put into the terminated state (5).

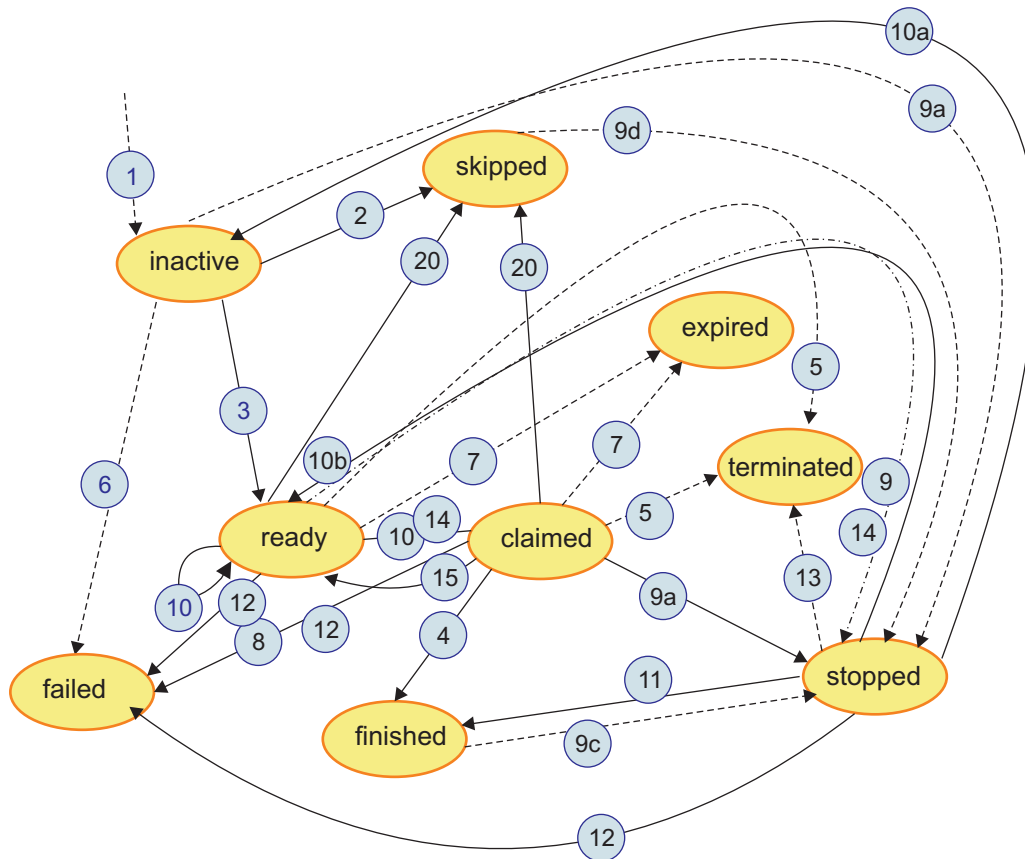
The state transitions for invoke activities with synchronous service calls are the same as those for Java snippets. The differences in the states and the state transitions between synchronous and asynchronous invocations are as follows:

- The running state for invoke activities with synchronous service calls is never visible.

- Expiration is not applicable for invoke activities with synchronous calls; the expired state can never be reached.
- An invoke activity with a synchronous service call is never terminated.

State transition diagram for human task activities

The following diagram shows the states and the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of a human task activity.



The runtime behavior of a human task activity is similar to that of an invoke activity. The running state of an invoke activity corresponds to the ready and claimed states of a human task activity. The ready state indicates that the activity is available to be worked on by a person. When someone claims the activity to work on it, the activity is put into the claimed state (15).

The person working on the activity provides the information that is required and completes the activity. The activity is then in the finished, failed, or stopped state. Alternatively, the person who claimed the activity might decide that it cannot be completed. The person then releases the activity for someone else to work on. In this case, the activity is returned to the ready state (16).

A human task activity can be skipped while it is in the ready or claimed state. In both cases, the state changes to skipped and the inline human task is terminated. In the following navigation step, the transition conditions of the links leaving the activity are evaluated.

The other state transitions are the same as for invoke activities with asynchronous service calls.

Related concepts

Fault handling and compensation handling in business processes

A fault is any exceptional condition that can change the normal processing of a business process. A fault can be returned from a service invocation, raised explicitly raised by the process, or it can be system fault raised by the runtime environment. A well-designed process should consider faults, and handle them whenever possible. Compensation is one way of handling faults.

Continue-on-error behavior of activities and business processes

When you define a business process, you can specify what should happen if an unexpected fault is raised and a fault handler is not defined for that fault. You can use the **Continue On Error** setting when you define your process to specify that it is to stop where the fault occurs.

Life cycle management of subprocesses

A process that is created and started by another process is known as a *subprocess*. The way in which the life cycle of subprocesses can be managed depends on how these processes are modeled.

For modularity and reuse, it often makes sense to implement one or more steps of the business logic as a separate process and to invoke this process from the main process. A subprocess can also start another process. This can lead to a hierarchy of process instances. When these processes are deployed, all of the process templates in the process-to-process relationship must be deployed to the same Business Process Choreographer database.

A subprocess can have a peer-to-peer relationship or a parent-child relationship with the calling process. This relationship determines the behavior of a subprocess when an action that manages the process life cycle is invoked for the calling process. The life cycle operations comprise suspend, resume, terminate, delete, and compensation. In a parent-child relationship, operations that manage the process life cycle can be taken only on top-level process instances.

The process-subprocess relationship is determined by the autonomy attribute of the subprocess. This attribute can have one of the following values:

Peer A peer process is considered to be a *top-level process*. A top-level process is a process instance that either is not invoked by another process instance, or is invoked by another process instance, but it has peer autonomy. If the subprocess is part of a peer-to-peer relationship, life cycle operations on the calling process instance are not propagated to the subprocess instance.

A long-running process that is created and started using a one-way interface is considered to be a peer process. Its autonomy attribute is ignored at runtime.

Child If the subprocess is part of a parent-child relationship, life cycle operations on the parent process instance are applied to the subprocess instance. For example, if the parent process instance is suspended, all of the subprocess instances with child autonomy are suspended, too. The child process must be complete when it returns to its parent process, that is, the last operation of a child process must be its reply to the calling parent process. Make sure that all of the possible paths in the process logic end with a reply activity as the last operation in the path.

A microflow always runs as a child process, that is, its autonomy attribute is ignored.

A parent-child relationship can be established only between processes that interact directly within a module, or across module boundaries using SCA Import or Export. If another SCA component intercepts this interaction, it might prevent a parent-child relationship from being established, for example, an interface map component that is wired between the two process components.

Related concepts

Life cycle of stand-alone human tasks

The life cycle of an inline task is always managed by its associated business process. The life cycle of a stand-alone to-do task can be managed by the calling business process depending on the definition of the task.

Life cycle of stand-alone human tasks

The life cycle of an inline task is always managed by its associated business process. The life cycle of a stand-alone to-do task can be managed by the calling business process depending on the definition of the task.

For reuse, it often makes sense to implement a step of the business logic as a separate stand-alone task and to invoke this task from different locations in the main process. When these applications are deployed, the stand-alone task must be deployed to the same Business Process Choreographer database.

A stand-alone to-do task can have a peer-to-peer relationship or a parent-child relationship with the calling process. This relationship determines how the life cycle of the invoked task is managed.

The process-task relationship is determined by the autonomy attribute of the task. This attribute can have one of the following values:

Peer If the task has a peer-to-peer relationship with the business process, the life cycle of the task is independent of the business process.

Child If the task has a parent-child relationship with the business process, some life cycle operations on the process instance are also applied to the task instance. These operations are delete and terminate.

In addition, the following life cycle operations on the calling invoke activity are also applied to the task instance:

- Restarting an invoke activity causes the current task instance to be deleted, and a new task instance to be created and started.
- Forcing completion of the invoke activity causes the task instance to be terminated.
- Skipping the invoke activity in the running state causes the task instance to be terminated.
- Deleting or terminating the invoke activity causes the task instance to be deleted.

If the autonomy attribute of the task is set to child, you can still suspend and resume the task instance independently of the business process.

A parent-child relationship can be established only between processes and tasks that interact directly. If another SCA component intercepts this

interaction, it might prevent a parent-child relationship from being established, for example, an interface map component that is wired between the process and the task.

Related concepts

Life cycle management of subprocesses

A process that is created and started by another process is known as a *subprocess*. The way in which the life cycle of subprocesses can be managed depends on how these processes are modeled.

Dynamic modification of process instances at runtime

Typically, a business process is navigated as defined in the process model. However, sometimes you might need to override the navigation of a process instance at runtime, for example, so that you can repair a process instance, or perform only those activities that are appropriate for the current context.

You can dynamically change the process navigation by jumping forward and back in a process instance, and skipping activities within a process instance. In these situations, you might also need to modify process data that is contained in process variables so that the navigation of the process instance can continue.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and the Business Process Choreographer APIs support the dynamic modification of process instances at runtime. In addition, Business Space powered by WebSphere supports redoing parts of a process instance and skipping activities.

Jump forward and back in a process instance

You can use jumps within a process instance to dynamically modify a process instance at runtime. You can jump from one activity (*source activity*) to another activity (*target activity*). The source activity must be a basic activity in one of the active states; running, waiting, ready, claimed, or stopped. The target activity can be a basic activity or a structured activity.

The following jump actions are available:

Complete and jump

Complete a human task activity in the claimed state and jump to the target activity

Force-complete and jump

Force the completion of the activity and continue the navigation of the process from the target activity

Skip and jump

Skip the source activity and continue the navigation at the target activity

The source activity is completed, force-completed, or skipped as part of the jump action. After the jump, the navigation of the process continues at the target activity. You can jump forward in the process, that is, the target activity occurs later in the process instance. You can also jump back to a prior activity in the process.

Jumps are supported between activities in a sequence activity. Jumps are also supported on paths without forks and joins in a generalized flow activity and a parallel-activities activity (also known as a flow activity). For all of these jump actions, the source and the target activity must be on the same nesting level within the containing activity.

Exit conditions on the source activity and for the entry of the target activity are ignored by a jump action.

To perform a jump action, you must be the scope administrator of the enclosing scope, the process administrator, or the system administrator.

Skip an activity

You can also dynamically modify a process instance by skipping activities. You can skip a basic activity that is in one of the active states or a basic activity that might become active later in the process.

If an active activity is skipped, the implementation of the activity is terminated, and the navigation of the process continues after the activity. For example, if the activity has outgoing links, process navigation continues with the evaluation of the transition conditions of the links.

If an activity is skipped that occurs later in the process flow, the activity is marked for skipping. When the navigation reaches the activity, the activity is skipped and the navigation continues after the activity. You can cancel the skip request up until the navigation reaches the activity.

To skip an activity, you must be the scope administrator of an enclosing scope, the process administrator, or the system administrator. In addition, if you are the activity administrator, you can skip an activity that is currently active.

Modify variables

When you change the flow of a process instance at runtime, you often also need to update variables to ensure that the process can flow properly after the jumped or skipped activity. For example, in a repair scenario you can provide valid data before the jump action so that subsequent activities can execute successfully based on that data.

The following actions are supported:

- Get the names of all the variables for a given activity
- Get the actual or initial value of a global or local variable
- Set the value of a global or local variable

To view the value of a variable, you must have at least reader rights for the process or the enclosing scope. To update a variable, you must be the scope administrator, the process administrator, or the system administrator.

Invocation scenarios for business processes

A business process is a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component implementation. It can expose services to other partners and consume services provided by other partners. A business process can be a service provider that is made available by the Business Process Choreographer APIs, an SCA service provider for other SCA service components, or an SCA client that invokes other SCA service components, including other business processes.

Business processes as service providers that are made available by the Business Process Choreographer APIs

You can use the Business Flow Manager API to instantiate business processes. These client applications can create and start business process

instances, and query and work with existing process instances. The Business Flow Manager API is provided as an EJB, a Web service, a JMS message interface, and a REST interface that you can use to design EJB, Web service, JMS, and REST clients.

Business processes as SCA service providers for other SCA service components

In this invocation scenario, a business process represents an SCA component that can be invoked by other SCA components acting as clients. As an implementation of an SCA component, services provided by a business process can be invoked from SCA clients. These mechanisms include:

- Wires for connecting an SCA client (reference) and the interface of a component that represents a business process
- SCA qualifier settings for component references and interfaces that determine aspects, such as interaction style, transaction behavior, and interaction reliability

Business processes as SCA clients that invoke other SCA service components

A business process can call another business process. This can be done using SCA wiring within the same module or across modules. SCA wiring statically associates a caller with another service, also known as *early binding*. When invoking a service offered by another process, late binding can be used to select the version of the process that is currently valid. This is done using a specification at the partner link of the calling process.

Business processes as SCA clients that invoke other business processes

If both the SCA client and the SCA services are represented by business processes, you can select both of them on the SCA level and on the business process level. On the SCA level, you can use SCA wires to connect the SCA client to SCA services. On the business process level, you can associate partner links with the names of the business processes that act as service providers.

Factors affecting business process interactions

A number of factors affect the behavior of business processes in the various invocation scenarios. These include the interaction style, the type of business process, the operation type, and the service endpoint resolution.

Interaction style

Operations provided by a business process can be invoked synchronously or asynchronously.

Important: Reasonable response times for synchronous interactions should not exceed a few seconds. If a request-response operation that is implemented by a business process does not return its results within a short time period, consider using an asynchronous interaction style to improve performance. A synchronous invocation of such operations results in blocked resources. It is also prone to timeout situations that are dependent on the system workload and are therefore non-deterministic.

Business process type

A business process can be a microflow or a long-running process. The characteristics of each of the process types affect invocation scenarios.

WSDL operation type

Service Component Architecture (SCA) references and SCA interfaces are associated with a WSDL port type containing one or more operations. Operations can be one-way or request-response operations.

- In a one-way operation, the completion of the service is not made known to the invoking client. The service execution ends with the successful invocation of the associated service.
- In a request-response operation, the completion of the service is made known to the invoking client. The service execution ends when the result of the service is made available to the invoking client.

Service endpoint resolution

In the context of business processes, an invoking client can be associated with a service that is invoked in one of the following ways:

- An SCA wire statically associates an SCA reference to the interface of the invoked service. This is an SCA-level mechanism and it can be applied if the client, the service, or both are implemented as business processes.
- An endpoint reference (EPR) can be assigned to a BPEL partner link. The EPR determines the endpoint address of the service to be invoked using the partner link. Thus, any service can be invoked dynamically that complies with what SCA allows for dynamic service invocations, for example, Web service binding, MQ JMS binding, MQ binding, or an SCA binding.
- A business process template name can be set for a partner link that is part of a business process acting as an SCA client. The template name uniquely determines the name of another business process that is deployed in the same server or cluster.

Related concepts

Dynamic binding between business processes and services

This scenario assumes that a business process is used as a client, and the process model allows BPEL partner links to be assigned when the process runs. Dynamic service bindings allow business processes to invoke services, the addresses of which are determined at runtime. This is especially useful if the service endpoint is unknown at when the process is modeled.

Dynamic binding between business processes and services

This scenario assumes that a business process is used as a client, and the process model allows BPEL partner links to be assigned when the process runs. Dynamic service bindings allow business processes to invoke services, the addresses of which are determined at runtime. This is especially useful if the service endpoint is unknown at when the process is modeled.

The services with which a business process interacts are modeled as partner links in the process model. Before operations on a partner service can be invoked using a partner link, the binding and communication data for the partner service must be available. The relevant information about a partner service is usually set as part of business process deployment.

The Service Component Architecture (SCA) reference that corresponds to the BPEL partner link can be left unwired. In this case, the binding that is used for the invocation defaults to an SCA or a Web service binding, depending on the endpoint address URL. Alternatively, the SCA reference can be prewired to an SCA Import. In this case, the binding and any quality of service specifications are obtained from the SCA Import and only the service endpoint address is overwritten by the endpoint reference.

Include in your process model either an assign activity or a Java snippet activity to which you assign the endpoint reference value of the partner link. If the partner link is not wired, the service is invoked in one of the following ways:

- For a microflow, the service is invoked synchronously
- For a long-running process, the service is invoked asynchronously

Related concepts

Factors affecting business process interactions

A number of factors affect the behavior of business processes in the various invocation scenarios. These include the interaction style, the type of business process, the operation type, and the service endpoint resolution.

Data exchange between business processes and services

A business process can consume service component architecture (SCA) services, or it can be consumed by other SCA services. The way in which data is exchanged between the SCA service and the process depends on how the process was modeled.

A business process consumes a service

The consumption of a service in a business process is implemented using a Business Process Execution Language (BPEL) invoke activity in the process model. The data that is passed to the SCA service is retrieved from one or more BPEL variables. Usually, the data is passed by value, which means that the invoked service works with a copy of the data.

Under certain circumstances, data can be passed by reference. Passing data by reference can help to improve the performance of business processes.

If **all** of the following conditions are met, the data is passed by reference to the business process:

- The invocation of the service is synchronous.
- The BPEL process and the invoked service are in the same module.
- The data is exchanged using data-typed variables.

If the invoked service modifies the data, these changes are applied to the corresponding BPEL variables. However, the invoked service should not update the data because any changes that are made to the data are not persistent. For long-running processes the changes are discarded when the current transaction commits, and for microflows the changes are discarded when the process ends. In addition, an event is not generated when the variable is updated by the invoked service.

A business process is consumed by a service

A business process that is consumed by other services contains receive activities, pick activities, or event handlers in the process model. The data that is passed to the process is written to one, or more BPEL variables. Usually, the data is passed by value.

However, if **all** of the following conditions are met, the data is passed by reference:

- The invocation of the business process is synchronous.
- The service and the invoked business process are in the same module.
- The data is exchanged using data-typed variables.

If the invoked process modifies the BPEL variables, the input data from the calling service is also modified.

Transactional behavior of business processes

Business processes are executed as part of transactions. The navigation of a business process can span multiple transactions in the case of long-running processes, or happen as part of one transaction in the case of microflows. Such navigation transactions can be triggered by external requests, internal messages, or responses from asynchronous services. When a transaction starts, the required activities are performed according to the process definitions. Invoked services can participate in the transaction.

Related concepts

State transition diagrams for process instances

Processes change state whenever something of significance happens during the life cycle of the process instance. For example, an API request causes a process in the running state to be put into the suspended state. State transition diagrams show the state transitions that can occur during the process life cycle. Microflows and long-running processes have different state transition diagrams.

Invocation scenarios for business processes

A business process is a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component implementation. It can expose services to other partners and consume services provided by other partners. A business process can be a service provider that is made available by the Business Process Choreographer APIs, an SCA service provider for other SCA service components, or an SCA client that invokes other SCA service components, including other business processes.

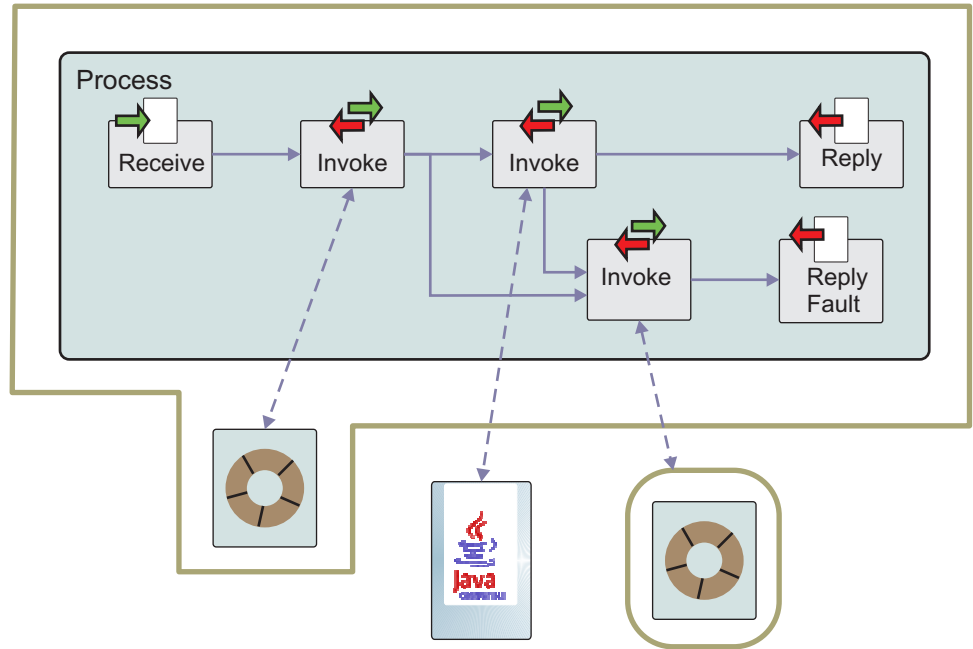
Transactional behavior of microflows

Microflows are short-lived processes. They can run either in a transaction, or in an activity session as specified on the SCA component of the microflow. Microflows that are executed as part of a transaction are explained here.

Microflows are not interruptible. Therefore, a microflow cannot contain activities that wait for an external event, or for a user interaction, for example, human task activities.

Microflows are transient. The process instance state of a microflow is held in memory, and not stored in the runtime database. However, the state of a microflow instance can be persisted in the audit log or in Common Base Events.

The following diagram shows the transaction of a microflow and the services that the microflow interacts with. The services inside the transaction boundary participate in the microflow transaction; those outside the boundary do not participate in the transaction.



Invoked services and microflow transactions

A microflow runs in one transaction. However, the services that the microflow invokes can involve more than one transaction. This is because a service that is called through an invoke activity can either participate in the transaction of the microflow, or it can run in its own transaction.

The following settings determine whether the service participates in the transaction of the microflow or runs in its own transaction.

- The interaction style that is used to call the service.

The interaction style can be synchronous or asynchronous. The style is determined by the preferred interaction style of the target Service Component Architecture (SCA) component or the SCA import, and whether the operation is one-way operation or a request-response operation as shown in the following table:

Table 2.

Preferred interaction style of the target component or import	One-way operation	Request-response operation
Any	Asynchronous invocation	Synchronous invocation
Synchronous	Synchronous invocation	Synchronous invocation
Asynchronous	Asynchronous invocation	Synchronous invocation

Note: The invocation from a microflow of a request-response operation with a preferred interaction style of "asynchronous" is an example of an antipattern for service invocation. When the invoked service is a long-running process, the microflow transaction can time out before the long-running process completes, and a runtime error occurs.

- The SCA transaction qualifiers that are specified for the process and the service that is called:

- The **suspendTransaction** qualifier on the reference of the process component specifies whether the transaction context of the process is propagated to the services to be invoked.
- The **joinTransaction** qualifier on the service interface specifies whether a service participates in the transaction of its caller if a transaction is propagated.

Based on these settings, the following rules apply to the invoked service:

Synchronous invocation

joinTransaction	suspendTransaction = true	suspendTransaction = false
joinTransaction = true	The service does not participate in the microflow transaction	The service participates in the microflow transaction
joinTransaction = false	The service does not participate in the microflow transaction	The service does not participate in the microflow transaction

If a service participates in a microflow transaction, the changes that are made by the service to the transactional resources are persisted only if the microflow transaction commits. If a service does not participate in the microflow transaction, the changes that are made by the service to the transactional resources might be persisted even if the transaction is rolled back. You can use compensation to undo the changes made by the service.

Asynchronous invocation

The service always runs in its own transaction. To ensure that the sending of the asynchronous SCA message participates in the current navigation transaction, the **asynchronousInvocation** qualifier of the microflow must be set to `commit`.

Related concepts

Compensation handling in business processes

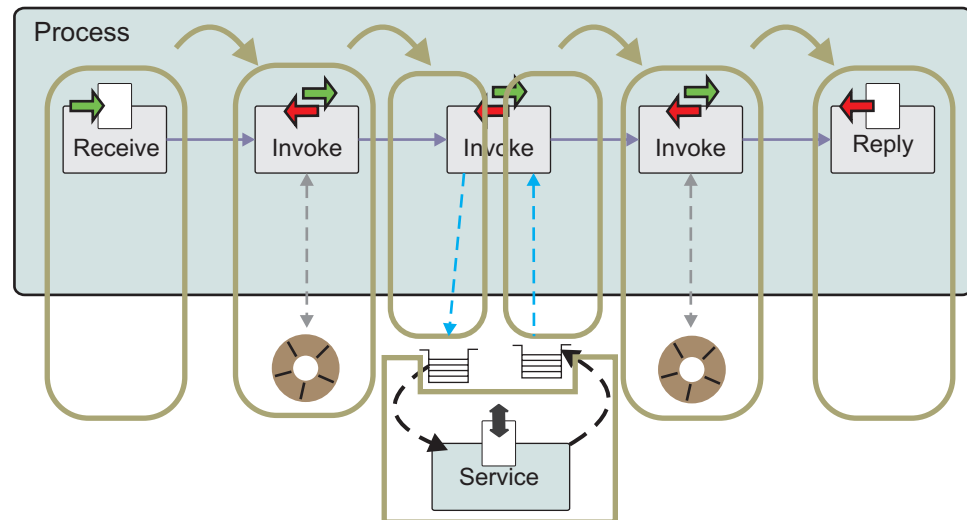
Compensation processing is a means of handling faults in a running process instance for which compensation is defined in the process model. Compensation reverses the effects of operations, which were committed up to when the fault occurred, to get back to a consistent state.

Transactional behavior of long-running processes

A long-running process spans multiple transactions. Each transaction is triggered either by a Java Messaging Service (JMS) message or by a work-manager-based implementation.

To allow navigation across transaction boundaries, the states of the process instance and its activity instances are persisted in the database.

The following diagram shows how each navigation step in a long-running process is performed in its own transaction. A navigation step can span multiple activities as shown by the `invoke` activity that calls a service. Also, multiple activities can be run in one transaction.



The following describes the transaction boundaries of a long-running process. You can influence transaction boundaries by using the transactional behavior attribute. However, Business Flow Manager can add or remove transaction boundaries at any time.

In general, a transaction boundary is needed in the following situations:

- When waiting for an external request, that is, upon reaching a receive activity or pick activity (also known as a receive choice activity) in the process navigation for which a corresponding request has not been received yet
- When scheduling a timer for a wait activity
- When invoking a service asynchronously using an invoke activity
- When invoking a human task activity

In addition, Business Flow Manager introduces transaction boundaries in the following situations. However, your process design must not rely on these boundaries as they can be overridden during process navigation, or they might change in the future.

- When a fault is raised during process navigation
- Before and after an invoke activity is started that invokes a service synchronously, and this service does not participate in the transaction of the process
- When propagating life-cycle operations to child processes, for example, when a parent process is suspended, its child processes are suspended in subsequent transactions
- When the process instance is to be deleted automatically upon completion of the process
- When trying to recover from a failure that causes the rollback of a transaction spanning a series of activities
- Where specified using the transactional behavior attribute

If you need guaranteed transaction boundaries, factor out the business logic that needs to be executed in a single transaction into a microflow, and invoke it as a subprocess. The logic of a microflow is always run in a single transaction.

Influencing transaction boundaries

When you model a business process, you can suggest transaction boundaries for invoke, snippet, and human task activities by changing the transactional behavior attribute of the corresponding activity. The transactional behavior attribute is ignored if an invoke activity calls a synchronous service that does not participate in the current transaction. In this case, there is always a transaction boundary before the invoke activity is started, and after the invoke activity completes.

The attribute can take one of the following values:

Commit before

The current transaction is committed, and a new transaction is started. The activity with this attribute value becomes the first activity of the new transaction.

Commit after

The activity participates in the current transaction. After the activity completes successfully, the transaction is committed, and a new one is started. A new transaction is started for each immediately following activity, and each subsequent activity becomes the first activity of one of these new transactions.

Participates

The activity participates in the current transaction. Additional transaction boundaries are not set, neither before nor after the activity.

In the following situations, this setting allows the transaction to continue with the navigation of the following activities depending on the values of their settings of the transactional behavior attributes.

- If the invoke activity invokes the service asynchronously, the arrival of the response message triggers a new transaction. The transaction is very short because it commits immediately after the status of the invoke activity is updated.
- In a sequence of human task activities, two transactions are needed for each human task activity, one to activate the human task activity and another to complete the human task activity. If you change the setting to Participates, you can reduce the number of transactions to one for each human task activity. This is because the completion of the previous human task activity, and the activation of the following activity is performed in the same transaction.
- To enable server-controlled page flows that use the `completeAndClaimSuccessor` API.

Requires own

The activity runs in its own transaction. This means that the current transaction is committed before the activity starts, and a new transaction starts after this activity completes.

You can also determine whether the transaction that initiates the process is committed after the receive activity, or the receive action of the receive-choice (pick) activity completes by changing the transactional behavior attribute of the corresponding activity. For initiating receive and receive-choice activities, the attribute can take one of the following values:

Commit after

After the activity completes successfully, the transaction that initiates the

process is committed, and a new one is started. This setting is useful if you invoke the process instance using a synchronous API call.

Participates

The transaction that initiates the process continues after the activity completes. This setting is required if you want to invoke the process instance using the `initiateAndClaimFirst` API. With this API you can create a new process instance and immediately claim the first human task.

If your process invokes another BPEL process, ensure that the corresponding invoke activity is not part of the transaction that initiates the process. You can achieve by setting the transaction behavior attribute in one of the following ways:

- Set the attribute of the initiating receive or receive choice activity to `Commit after`
- Set the attribute of the invoke activity to `Commit before` or `Requires own`

Concurrent navigation of parallel branches in flow activities

To achieve concurrency in the navigation of parallel branches in a flow activity, a new transaction boundary is needed at the beginning of each branch so that each parallel activity is processed in a separate transaction. This means that the transactional behavior attribute of the first activity of each parallel branch must be set to `Commit before` or `Requires own` to achieve parallelism from the beginning of the flow.

Note: For Informix[®], Oracle, and Derby database systems, navigation transactions for parallel branches in a process instance are serialized, that is they cannot be run in parallel. This is because the locks on database entities are not as granular as those for DB2[®] databases. However, services triggered asynchronously by such parallel branches still run in parallel; it is only the process navigation that is serialized for these database systems.

Concurrent navigation of branches of a parallel forEach activity

The processing of each branch of a parallel `forEach` activity is started in its own, separate transaction. Thus parallel execution of these branches is enabled.

Note: For Informix, Oracle, and Derby database systems, navigation transactions for parallel branches in a process instance are serialized, that is they cannot be run in parallel. This is because the locks on database entities are not as granular as those for DB2 databases. However, asynchronous services on the branches of a parallel `forEach` activity are executed concurrently, thus parallelism for `forEach` activities can be achieved.

Invoked services and transactions in long-running processes

A service that is called within a long-running process using an invoke activity can either participate in the current transaction of the long-running process, or it can run in its own transaction.

The following settings determine whether the service participates in the transaction of the long-running process or runs in its own transaction.

- The interaction style that is used to call the service.

The interaction style can be synchronous or asynchronous. The style is determined by the preferred interaction style of the target SCA component or

SCA import, as shown in the following table:

Table 3.

Preferred interaction style of target component or import	One-way operation	Request-response operation
Any	Asynchronous invocation	Asynchronous invocation
Synchronous	Synchronous invocation	Synchronous invocation
Asynchronous	Asynchronous invocation	Asynchronous invocation

- The Service Component Architecture (SCA) transaction qualifiers that are specified for the process and the service that is called:
 - The **suspendTransaction** qualifier on the reference of the process component specifies whether the transaction context of the process is propagated to the services to be invoked.
 - The **joinTransaction** qualifier on the service interface specifies whether a service participates in the transaction of its caller if a transaction is propagated.
 Depending on the settings of the interaction style and the SCA qualifiers, the following rules apply to the invoked service:

Synchronous invocation

joinTransaction	suspendTransaction = true	suspendTransaction = false
joinTransaction = true	The service does not participate in the transaction of the long-running process	The service participates in the transaction of the long-running process
joinTransaction = false	The service does not participate in the transaction of the long-running process	The service does not participate in the transaction of the long-running process

If a service participates in the current transaction of the long-running process, the changes that are made by the service to the transactional resources are persisted only if the current transaction commits.

Asynchronous invocation

The service always runs in its own transactions.

Recovery of a successful service invocation when a transaction rolls back

The recovery behavior depends on whether the called service participates in the current transaction.

An invoke activity calls a service that participates in the current transaction. The execution of the service is complete. If an error occurs after completion of the service and the transaction is rolled back to the state that the process was in before the transaction started, the effect of the called service is also rolled back. When the transaction is retried, the service is called again.

In contrast, if the called service does not participate in the current transaction and the called service returns a response, the response is stored in a separate transaction. If an error occurs after the response is stored, the current transaction is rolled back and the transaction is retried. During the retry the service is not called again, however, the stored response is restored and the navigation continues.

Fault handling and compensation handling in business processes

A fault is any exceptional condition that can change the normal processing of a business process. A fault can be returned from a service invocation, raised explicitly raised by the process, or it can be system fault raised by the runtime environment. A well-designed process should consider faults, and handle them whenever possible. Compensation is one way of handling faults.

Related concepts

State transition diagrams for activities

The state of an activity instance changes when a significant step in the execution of the activity instance occurs. The states and the state transitions depend on the type of activity.

Fault raising in business processes

You can raise faults using throw and rethrow activities, or programmatically using a Java snippet activity. The invocation of services can also raise faults.

To propagate faults to the caller of the process, you use the reply activity with a fault specification.

Throw and rethrow activities for fault raising

A throw activity in a business process can throw any type of fault, including standard faults, but the intended usage pattern is to throw business faults. A fault thrown by a throw activity should be caught and handled in the business process. If a process with a request-response interface does not handle a fault in the process, the process ends with a `bpws:missingReply` standard fault. For a client application, this fault is returned in a `StandardFaultException` object.

You cannot return a business fault with a throw activity. You must use a reply activity to return a business fault to the process client. A reply activity can only return a business fault that is defined on the interface that the process implements.

A rethrow activity can be used in a fault handler to rethrow the fault to the next enclosing scope. This might be useful when you want to do some fault handling on the current scope, such as triggering specific compensation handlers, and still want to make the enclosing scopes aware of this issue. You can also use a rethrow activity when the current fault handler cannot handle the fault, and you want the fault to be propagated to a fault handler that is defined on one of the enclosing scopes, or on the process.

The rethrow activity can only be used within a fault handler because existing faults can be rethrown only from fault handlers.

Fault raising in Java snippets

You can raise faults programmatically in a Java snippet in a business process using the `raiseFault` method. You can raise a business fault in one of the following ways:

- `raiseFault(QName fault, String variableName);`
- `raiseFault(QName fault);`

The following example creates a fault called `IncompleteData` in the `http://process/UpdateCustomerRecordProcess/Interface0/` namespace, and then throws this fault from a Java snippet.

```
javax.xml.namespace.QName fault = new javax.xml.namespace.QName
("http://process/UpdateCustomerRecordProcess/Interface0/", "IncompleteData");
raiseFault(fault);
```

If the thrown fault is not one that is declared on any WSDL interface, then specify the target namespace of the process as the namespace of the fault. You can then use a catch activity to catch this fault in a business process.

Do not throw a `ServiceBusinessException` object directly, but use the `raiseFault` message to do so.

Fault propagation to the caller

The reply activity with a fault specification propagates the specified fault to the caller of the request-response operation. The reply activity can only return a fault that is defined on the interface that the process implements. This method is useful when the business process cannot properly respond to the caught fault, but the process initiator can respond to it. For example, if the caller passes an account number that is not found by the business process, the process should reply to this service call with an `AccountNotFound` fault.

A reply activity with a fault specification does not complete the process. The navigation of the process continues until it reaches an end state.

Fault handling in business processes

When a fault occurs in a process, the navigation continues with the fault handler or fault link.

Fault handlers can be specified for invoke activities, scopes, and on the process. Fault links can be specified for generalized-flow activities. Scopes and all basic activities, except for throw and rethrow activities, can be the source activity of a fault link.

A fault handler or fault link can catch a specific fault name, fault type, or both. When a fault occurs, Business Flow Manager uses the following rules to match the fault with a fault handler or fault link on the enclosing scope, or on the activity where the fault occurred.

- If an invoke activity without a fault handler or any other basic activity is the source of one or more fault links, Business Flow Manager tries to find a matching fault link. If a fault link is not available, it then tries to find a matching fault handler on the enclosing scope.
- If an invoke activity or a scope with one or more fault handlers is the source of one or more fault links, Business Flow Manager tries to find a matching fault handler. If a fault handler is not available, it runs the default fault handler and then tries to find a matching fault link. If a matching fault link is not available, it tries to find a matching fault handler on the enclosing scope.
- If the fault does not have any associated fault data, Business Flow Manager uses a fault handler or fault link with the matching fault name. If a fault handler or fault link is not found, it uses the catch-all fault handler or fault link if one is available. A fault without any data cannot be caught by a fault handler or fault link that has a fault variable defined.
- If the fault has associated fault data, Business Flow Manager uses a fault handler or fault link with the matching fault name and a fault variable with a type that matches the type of the fault data. If a fault handler or fault link is not found that matches the name and fault data type, it uses a fault handler or fault link

without a fault name and a fault variable with a type that matches the type of the fault data. If a suitable fault handler or fault link cannot be found, it uses the catch-all fault handler or fault link if one is available. A fault with data cannot be caught by a fault handler or fault link that does not have a fault variable defined.

If a fault is raised that does not match any of the fault handler or fault link definitions, the default fault handler is started. The default fault handler is not specified explicitly. The default fault handler runs all of the available compensation handlers for the immediately enclosing scopes in the reverse order of completion of the corresponding scopes. If the scope is the source of one or more fault links, Business Flow Manager then tries to find a matching fault link. If a matching fault link is not available or the scope is not the source of any fault links, the default fault handler rethrows the fault to the next level, that is, the enclosing scope or the process. On this next level, Business Flow Manager again tries to match the fault to the fault handlers or fault links that are available.

If the fault is not caught by any of the specific fault handlers or fault links, or by the catch-all fault handler or catch-all fault link, the fault reaches the process scope, and the process ends in the failed state. Even if a fault handler catches the fault on the process scope and handles it, the process still ends in the failed state.

Fault handler considerations

When you define a fault handler, consider the following options:

- Catch a fault and try to correct the problem so that the business process continues through to normal completion.
- Catch a fault and find that it is not resolvable at this scope. In this case, you have the following additional options:
 - Throw a new fault.
 - Rethrow the original fault so that another scope can handle it.
 - If this is a request-response operation, reply with a fault response.
 - Invoke a human task to correct the issue.
 - For microflows, if the fault handler cannot resolve the issue, you might need to roll back the process and compensate it.
 - For long-running processes, also consider using the **Continue On Error** setting on the process to handle the fault administratively.

Fault link considerations

When you use fault links in your business process, consider the following:

- A fault link is activated for faults that occur within the source activity only. The evaluation of conditions of normal links is not part of the execution of the activity.
- If the source activity of the fault link is a scope activity, the fault handler of the scope activity is evaluated first when a fault occurs inside the scope. However, the fault handler can rethrow the fault. In this case, a fault link of the scope can catch the fault and can be navigated.
- If an activity is the source of multiple fault links, only one of the fault links can be navigated when a fault occurs.
- The target activity of the fault link will be executed normally. Compensate and rethrow activities in fault handlers cannot be the target of a fault link.

- When a fault contains fault data, a variable of the fault data type needs to be declared on the surrounding scope. The fault link must reference this variable so that the target activity of the fault link has access to the fault data.

Retrieval of fault data for business processes

Your process can handle runtime faults and BPEL standard faults. To handle these faults, you might need access to the information about the fault.

You can use one of the following constructs to retrieve this information:

- The `getCurrentFaultAsException` method

You can use the `getCurrentFaultAsException` method in a fault handler to retrieve data for runtime faults, BPEL standard faults, and business faults. This mechanism is useful in combination with a catch-all fault handler because this type of fault handler does not have an associated variable to capture fault data, or if you are catching the `runtimeFailure` fault.

The `getCurrentFaultAsException` method can be called in a Java snippet activity. The method returns the fault as an exception object of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.BpelException` type. The `BpelException` object provides several operations to get more information about the fault, such as the fault name. The `BpelException` object wraps the exception instance. You can therefore access the fault message and the root exception, as the following example shows:

```
com.ibm.bpe.api.BpelException bpelException =
getCurrentFaultAsException();
System.out.println("Fault Name" +
bpelException.getFaultName());
bpelException.printStackTrace( System.out);
Throwable rootCause = bpelException.getRootCause()
```

- A typed fault variable for the fault handler or fault link

For runtime faults and BPEL standard faults, you can define a typed fault variable for your fault handler or fault link to capture the fault data. The fault variable must be typed by the `StandardFaultType` complex type.

Continue-on-error behavior of activities and business processes

When you define a business process, you can specify what should happen if an unexpected fault is raised and a fault handler is not defined for that fault. You can use the **Continue On Error** setting when you define your process to specify that it is to stop where the fault occurs.

For most activities, the continue-on-error behavior is the same as for the process. You can specify the continue-on-error behavior explicitly for `invoke`, `Java snippet`, `custom`, and `human task` activities. By default, the continue-on-error behavior of these activities is also the same as for the process.

If an unexpected fault is detected, fault handling of the activity is started. If the **Continue On Error** setting is set to `Yes`, then the standard fault handling is applied. If the **Continue On Error** setting for the activity or the process is set to `No` and the fault is not handled by a fault handler on the immediately enclosing scope or by a fault link leaving this activity, the activity is stopped. If the activity has an associated fault handler or compensation handler, the immediately enclosing scope is the activity itself. In all other cases, the immediately enclosing scope is the next surrounding scope in which the activity is contained. If a catch-all fault link or fault handler is defined on the immediately enclosing scope, the value of the **Continue On Error** setting does not have any effect, because the fault is always handled and the activity is never stopped.

For activities that stopped because of an unexpected fault, you can use the **stopReason** property of the activity to determine the cause of the fault and the actions that you can take to repair it. The following table shows the values the **stopReason** property can take in fault situations.

Value of the stopReason property	Cause	Allowed actions	Comments
STOP_REASON_ACTIVATION_FAILED	The evaluation of the join condition of the activity failed.	Force retry	This value is set only when the evaluation of the join condition fails.
STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED	The implementation of the activity threw a fault.	Force retry or force complete	This value is set if the implementation of the activity failed, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A service called by an invoke activity returned a fault that is not handled by a fault handler • A timeout expression failed when a wait activity was activated • A forEach counter or evaluation of the condition failed • The evaluation of a while or repeatUntil condition failed • The evaluation of an exit condition of an activity failed
STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED	The evaluation of a transition condition of an outgoing link failed.	Force navigate or force complete	This value is set in one of the following situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In a parallel flow (also known as a parallel activities activity), after an activity completed, the transition conditions of the outgoing links were evaluated, and one of them produced a fault • In a cyclic flow, if none of the outgoing link qualifies for follow-on navigation

Related concepts

State transition diagrams for activities

The state of an activity instance changes when a significant step in the execution of the activity instance occurs. The states and the state transitions depend on the type of activity.

Compensation handling in business processes

Compensation processing is a means of handling faults in a running process instance for which compensation is defined in the process model. Compensation reverses the effects of operations, which were committed up to when the fault occurred, to get back to a consistent state.

You can define compensation for long-running processes and for microflows in your process model.

Compensation for long-running processes

Compensation for long-running processes is also known as *business-level compensation*. This type of compensation can be defined on the scope or process level. This means that either part of the process, or the entire process can be compensated.

Compensation is triggered by fault handlers or the compensation handler of a scope or a process; compensation is another navigation path of the process.

A long-running process also compensates child processes that have successfully completed when the enclosing parent scope is compensated. Within a process, only invoke and scope activities that complete successfully are compensated.

Compensation for microflows

Compensation for microflows is also known as *technical compensation*. This type of compensation is triggered when the transaction, or the activity session, that contains the microflow is rolled back. Typically, undo actions are specified for activities that cannot be reversed by rolling back the transaction. When a process instance runs, undo actions for compensable activities are registered with the enclosing unit of work. Depending on the outcome of the rollback or commit, compensation starts.

If the microflow is a child of a compensable, long-running process, the undo actions of the microflow are made available to the parent process when the microflow completes. It can, therefore, potentially participate in the compensation of the parent process. For these types of microflows, specify undo actions for all of the activities in the process when you define your process model.


If a fault occurs during compensation processing, the compensation action requires manual resolution to overcome the fault. You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to repair these compensation actions.

Related concepts

Transactional behavior of microflows

Microflows are short-lived processes. They can run either in a transaction, or in an activity session as specified on the SCA component of the microflow. Microflows that are executed as part of a transaction are explained here.

Related information

 Using compensation in processes with Business Process Choreographer

Recovery from infrastructure failures

A long-running process spans multiple transactions. If a transaction fails because of an infrastructure failure, Business Flow Manager provides a facility for automatically recovering from these failures.

In a long-running process, the Business Flow Manager sends itself request messages that trigger follow-on navigation. For each incoming request message, a new transaction is started and the request message is passed to the Business Flow Manager for processing. Each transaction consists of the following actions:

- Receive a request message
- Navigate according to the request
- Store the state in the database
- Send request messages that trigger follow-on transactions.

Business Flow Manager uses the following queues for coping with infrastructure failures:

- The retention queue stores failed messages that will be automatically retried
- The hold queue stores messages that have failed more times than the retry limit, and can indicate a more serious infrastructure failure or a damaged message that cannot be processed

When messages are processed successfully, it is inferred that the infrastructure is available. However, Business Flow Manager might fail to process a message in the following situations:

Cause	Response
Unavailable infrastructure	In normal processing mode, for a specified time, all messages are kept available until the infrastructure is operational again. This problem might be caused by a database failure, for example.
Damaged message	After a specified number of retries, the message is put into the hold queue. From the hold queue, it can also be moved back to the input queue, to retry the transaction.

If the infrastructure is unavailable, and the retention queue is full, message processing is switched from normal processing to *quiesce mode*. In quiesce mode, the message processing is slowed down until the infrastructure is available again. When the infrastructure becomes available, message processing switches back to normal mode.

Normal message processing

During normal processing, a message is processed as follows:

- If a message fails three times, it is stored in the retention queue.
- When a message is in the retention queue, the options are as follows:

- When a subsequent message is processed successfully, all of the messages from the retention queue are moved back to the input queue. For each message, a count is maintained of how often the message is sent to the retention queue. This count is referred to as the *retention queue traversal count*. If this count exceeds the retry limit for a given message, the message is put in the hold queue.
- If the next message fails, it is also put in the retention queue. This process continues until the threshold of maximum messages in the retention queue is reached. When this threshold is reached, all of the messages are moved from the retention queue to the input queue, and message processing is put into quiesce mode.

Message processing in quiesce mode

In quiesce mode, processing a message is attempted periodically. Messages that fail to be processed are put back in the input queue, without incrementing either the delivery count or the retention queue traversal count. As soon as a message can be processed successfully, message processing is switched back to normal mode.

Retry limit

The retry limit defines the maximum number of times that a message can be transferred to the retention queue before it is put in the hold queue.

To be put in the retention queue, the processing of a message must fail three times.

For example, if the retry limit is 5, a message must go to the retention queue five times (it must fail for $3 * 5 = 15$ times), before the last retry is started. If the last retry fails two more times, the message is put in the hold queue. This means that a message must fail $(3 * RetryLimit) + 2$ times before it is put in the hold queue.

In a performance-critical application running in a reliable infrastructure, the retry limit should be small: one or two, for example. If the retry limit is set to zero, a repeatedly failing message is retried three times and then it goes immediately into the hold queue.

This Business Flow Manager property is specified in the administrative console. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Business Flow Manager**.

Retention queue message limit

The retention queue message limit defines the maximum number of messages that can be in the retention queue. If the retention queue overflows, the system goes into quiesce mode. To make the system enter quiesce mode as soon as a message fails, set the value to zero. To make Business Flow Manager more tolerant of infrastructure failures, increase the value.

This property is specified in the administrative console. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Business Flow Manager**.

Replay Messages

The administrator can move the messages from the hold or retention queues back to the internal queue. This can be done using the administrative console, administrative scripts, or failed event manager.

Related tasks

Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console

This describes how to check for and replay any messages for business processes or human tasks that could not be processed.

Refreshing the failed message counts

Use the administrative console to refresh the count of failed messages for business processes or human tasks.

Related information

 Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console

 Querying and replaying failed messages, using administrative scripts

Authorization for business processes


Authorization is used to assign specific privileges to particular users or particular groups of users. It determines what actions users are allowed to take on processes and activities. The authorization for business processes is realized using human tasks.

Authorization roles are used to define the sets of actions that are available to specific roles. Business Flow Manager uses the activity roles for navigation and authorization. Each activity role matches exactly one human task role. The roles that are specified for the human task are inherited by the associated business processes and activities. So, for example, if you model an inline human task in a business process, the owner of the task automatically becomes the activity owner.

Authorization roles for business processes

A role is a set of people who share the same level of authorization. Actions that you can take on business processes depend on your authorization role. This role can be a J2EE role or an instance-based role.

Related information

 People resolution

 Authorization roles for human tasks

J2EE roles for business processes

J2EE roles are set up when Business Process Choreographer is configured. For J2EE role-based authorization, you must have a user registry configured and application security enabled.

The following Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) roles are supported for processes:

- `BPSystemAdministrator`. Users assigned to this role have all privileges. This role is also referred to as the system administrator for business processes.
- `BPSystemMonitor`. Users assigned to this role can view the properties of all business process objects. This role is also referred to as the system monitor for business processes.

- JMSAPIUser. Business Flow Manager JMS API requests are run on behalf of the user ID this role is mapped to, regardless of who the caller is.

You can use the administrative console to change the assignment of users and groups to these roles.

Instance-based authorization roles for business processes and activities

A set of predefined authorization roles is provided for business processes and activities. You can assign these roles when you model the process. The association of users to instance-based roles is determined at runtime using people resolution.

Authorization roles for actions on processes

The people assigned to process roles are authorized to perform the following actions:

Role	Authorized actions
Process starter	View the properties of the associated process instance, and its input and output messages.
Process reader	View the properties of the associated process instance, and its input and output messages. Members of this role also automatically become the reader for activities, and the inline to-do tasks (including the subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations) that are associated with human task activities.
Process administrator	Administer process instances, intervene in a process that has been initiated, create, delete, and transfer work items, change the navigation of the process at runtime, for example, by skipping activities. Members of this role also automatically become the administrator for activities, and the inline to-do tasks (including the subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations) that are associated with human task activities.
Process activity administrator	Repair activities in a process.
Scope reader	View the properties of the activities and variables in the scope. Members of this role also automatically become the reader for the properties of activities, and the inline to-do tasks (including the subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations) that are associated with human task activities in the scope.
Scope administrator	Administer the activities in the scope, including updating variables for activities, skipping activities, and cancelling skip requests. Members of this role also automatically become the administrator for activities, and the inline to-do tasks (including the subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations) that are associated with human task activities in the scope.

The process starter is a role that is used by Business Flow Manager for process navigation and the invocation of external services. If a process instance still exists in the database, do not delete the user ID of the process starter from your user registry so that the navigation of the process can continue, unless you have transferred the process ownership to another user.

Users are assigned to these roles using human tasks.

Role	People assignment
Process starter	The process starter can be specified by assigning an inline human task to the initiating receive or pick (receive choice) activity of a process.
Process reader	The process reader is specified by setting the reader role on the administration task that is associated with the process. This role is inherited by all of the activities in the process.
Process administrator	The process administrator is defined by an administration task that is assigned to the process. This role is inherited by all of the activities in the process.
Process activity administrator	The process activity administrator is defined by an administration task that is associated with the process. The administrator role defined on this task is also used as the process activity administrator. Note: This administration task is different from the one that is used to determine the process administrator. The activity administration task that is defined on the process level is the default administration task for activities that do not have an administration task defined.
Scope reader	The scope reader is specified by setting the reader role on the administration task that is associated with the scope. This role is inherited by all of the activities in the scope.
Scope administrator	The scope administrator is defined by an administration task that is assigned to the scope. This role is inherited by all of the activities in the scope.

Authorization roles for actions on activities

When you model a human task and include it as a human task activity in a business process, the owner of the task automatically becomes the activity owner. Members of roles that are defined for a human task inherit the same role on the corresponding human task activity. Business Flow Manager uses the activity roles for navigation and authorization. The potential starters of an inline invocation task are the potential starters of the associated receive or pick (receive choice) activity, or the event handler.

The instance-based roles for activities are authorized to perform the following actions:

Role	Authorized actions
Activity reader	View the properties of the associated activity instance, and its input and output messages.
Activity editor	Actions that are authorized for the activity reader, and write access to messages and other data associated with the activity.
Potential activity starter	Actions that are authorized for the activity reader. Members of this role can send messages to receive or pick activities.
Potential activity owner	Actions that are authorized for the activity reader. Members of this role can claim the activity.
Activity owner	Work on and complete an activity. Members of this role can transfer their work items to an administrator or a potential owner.

Role	Authorized actions
Activity administrator	Repair activities that are stopped due to unexpected errors, and force complete long-running activities.

Default people assignments for process roles

Default people assignments are performed if you do not define people assignment criteria for certain roles, or if people resolution fails or returns no result. The following table shows which defaults apply.

Roles for business processes	If the role is not defined in the process model ...
Process administrator	Process starter becomes process administrator
Process reader	No reader

In addition, if you do not define an invocation task to create and start the business process, the default people assignment criteria, **Everybody**, is used for the potential starters of the process.

Authorization for creating and starting business processes

The set of users that are allowed to create and start a process is determined by the invocation task that is associated with the receive or pick (receive choice) activity that is used to create and start a new process instance, and also by the administration task that is associated with the process. The business process inherits the roles that you assign to these tasks.

In addition, when the process is called by a Service Component Architecture (SCA) client, you can restrict the set of users that is allowed to start the process by setting specific SCA security qualifiers when you install the process.

You can use human tasks in the following ways to create and start business processes:

- Assign an inline invocation task to the initiating receive or pick (receive choice) activity of the process

Some business processes might change sensitive business data and therefore only authorized personnel should be authorized to create and start these processes. For this type of business process, you can assign a human task to the initiating receive activity of the process by specifying an inline invocation task for the process template. The potential starters defined for the inline invocation task become the potential starters of the process.

The process can be started either by creating and starting the invocation task using the Human Task Manger API, or by initiating the process using the Business Flow Manger API. Both methods result in the same authorization checks. If an inline task is not specified, anyone can start the process.

- Assign a stand-alone invocation task to the initiating receive or pick (receive choice) activity of the process

You can also use a stand-alone invocation task that is wired to the business process to perform authorization checks when a process is started. However, consider the following points if you use a stand-alone invocation task:

- The authorization check is done only if the process is started by the invocation task, that is, the check is omitted when the process is started using the Business Flow Manager API or an SCA client that is directly wired to the process component.
- It uses the SCA infrastructure to invoke the process while an inline task is called directly by Business Flow Manager.
- You have no access to the process context in the people assignment criteria definition. This means that stand-alone tasks do not support dynamic people assignments based on the process context.

If an administration task is assigned to the process, the administrator role of the administration task is inherited by the process. A process administrator can perform various actions on the process, including creating and starting a process instance.

Related concepts

Authorization for interacting with a business process

A long-running process can have multiple receive activities, pick (receive choice) activities, and event handlers. These are served by submitting a request to the appropriate operation of the corresponding process instance. The process instance is identified implicitly by providing a unique correlation set instance in the request according to the correlation set defined in the process model.

Related information



Assigning roles to users

Authorization for interacting with a business process

A long-running process can have multiple receive activities, pick (receive choice) activities, and event handlers. These are served by submitting a request to the appropriate operation of the corresponding process instance. The process instance is identified implicitly by providing a unique correlation set instance in the request according to the correlation set defined in the process model.

A receive or pick activity can be used to create a process instance. So, interacting with an existing process instance by submitting a request to a process is similar to starting a new process instance.

The set of users that are authorized to submit a request to a process instance is determined by the invocation task that is associated with the receive or pick activity, or the event handlers, and by the administration task that is associated with the process.

You can use human tasks in the following ways to interact with a process instance:

- Assign an inline invocation task to the receive activity, pick activity, or event handler.

The potential starters that are defined for the inline invocation task submit a request to the corresponding operation of the process. The invocation task is optional. If an invocation task is not defined, everyone is authorized to submit a request.

- You can also use a stand-alone human task to secure inbound operations of a business process. The same rules and restrictions apply as for stand-alone invocation tasks for process-creating operations.
- Assign an administration task to the process.

The administrator role of the administration task is inherited by the process. A process administrator can interact with a process using its operations.

If an administration task is not specified for the process, the starter of the process becomes the process administrator. In this case, the process starter is allowed to submit requests to operations of the process instance.

If a process uses the same operation in different receive, pick (receive choice) activities, or event handlers, and the receiving process instance is currently not expecting a request, because the corresponding receive or pick (receive choice) activity is not yet waiting or the event handler is not yet active, then the user sending the request must be authorized to send a request to all of these activities and event handlers, otherwise the request will be rejected.

Related concepts

Authorization for creating and starting business processes

The set of users that are allowed to create and start a process is determined by the invocation task that is associated with the receive or pick (receive choice) activity that is used to create and start a new process instance, and also by the administration task that is associated with the process. The business process inherits the roles that you assign to these tasks.

Authorization for administering business processes

You can use administration tasks to authorize a user, or group of users, to perform administrative actions on business processes and their associated activities

Process administration

To define which users are allowed to perform administrative actions and to read the process data, you can specify an administration task as part of a long-running business process. The administrator and reader roles for the administration task determine who is the process administrator and the process reader. The process administrator can, for example, terminate the process instance.

An administration task is associated with every business process. If an administration task is not modeled for the process, a default administration task is created at runtime. This default task defines the process starter as the process administrator, and does not assign any readers to the process.

Scope administration

You can model an administration task for the scope that defines scope readers and scope administrators. A scope reader is allowed to view local variables. Scope administrators are allowed to repair activity instances in the scope, and to view and update local variables. If the scope is enclosed in another scope, the scope reader and administration rights are inherited by the enclosing scope. Scope readers and administrators also become readers and administrators of the activities in the scope.

Activity administration

The administrator role for an activity administration task determines who is allowed to administer the corresponding activity. The activity administrator can, for example, restart the activity. The administration task is created as soon as administrative actions, that is, restart or complete, can be performed on the activity

instance. Reader and administrator roles of the process, and reader and administrator roles of the enclosing scopes are automatically propagated to the activities.

In addition, you can model administration tasks for activities in the following ways:

- For each invoke or snippet activity. This administration task determines who is allowed to administer the activity in addition to the process administrators.
- A default administration task for activities on the process level that applies to any activity that does not have an administration task assigned to it.

Chapter 2. Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Some human tasks represent to dos for people. These tasks can be initiated either by a person or by an automated service. Human tasks can be used to implement activities in business processes that require human interactions, such as manual exception handling and approvals. Other human tasks can be used to invoke a service, or to coordinate the collaboration between people. However, regardless of how a task is initiated, a person from a group of people, to which the task is assigned, performs the work associated with the task.

People are assigned to human tasks either statically, or by specifying criteria, such as a role or a group, that are resolved at runtime using a people directory. Alternatively the input data of a human task, or the data of a business process is used to find the right people to work on a task.

Task templates

A human task template contains the definition of a deployed task model that was created using WebSphere Integration Developer, or at runtime using the Business Process Choreographer APIs.

The template contains properties, such as the task name and priority, and aggregates artifacts, such as escalation templates, custom properties, and people query templates. In addition to the properties that are specified when the task template is modeled, an installed task template can also have one of the following states:

Started

When a task template is started, new instances of the template can be started.

Stopped

The task template must be stopped before the human task application can be uninstalled. When a task template is in the stopped state, no new instances of this template can be started.

You can model to-do or collaboration tasks at runtime by creating instances of the `com.ibm.task.api.TaskModel` class. You can then use these instances to either create a reusable task template, or directly create a run-once task instance. Modeling human tasks at runtime is based on the Eclipse Modeling Framework (EMF).

Related tasks

Creating task templates and task instances at runtime

You usually use a modeling tool, such as WebSphere Integration Developer to build task templates. You then install the task templates in WebSphere Process Server and create instances from these templates, for example, using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. However, you can also create human or participating task instances or templates at runtime.

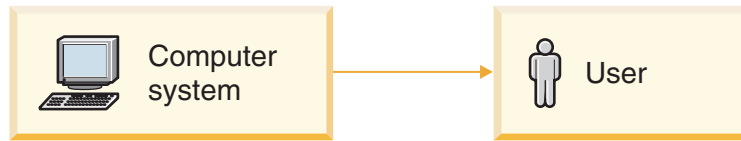
Kinds of human tasks

The task kind is derived from the task template kind that is assigned during modeling.

The kinds of human tasks are as follows:

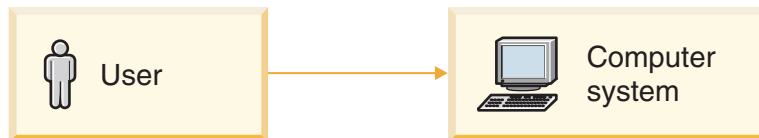
To-do tasks

This is where a service component (such as a business process) assigns a task to a person as something for that person to do. A to-do task can be implemented either stand-alone or inline.



Invocation tasks

This is where a person can "assign" a task to a service component. In such a case, a person invokes an automated service, such as a business process.



An invocation task can be implemented either stand-alone or inline. When it is inline, an invocation task allows a person to invoke the operations that a business process exposes through activities, such as receive or pick activities, or event handlers.

Collaboration tasks

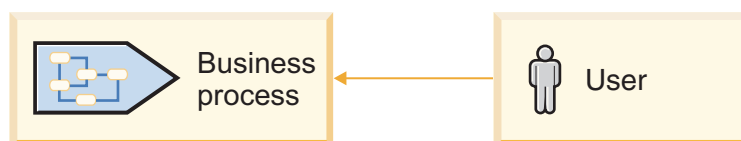
This is where a person assigns a task to another person. This task kind enables a person to share work with other people in a structured and controlled way.



A collaboration task is stand-alone, in that there is no interaction between it and any other component. It is self-contained and implements a stand-alone human interaction without any reference or interface to another service.

Administration tasks

This type of task grants a person administrative powers such as the ability to suspend, terminate, restart, force-retry, or force-complete a business process. Administration tasks can be set up on either an invoke activity, or the process as a whole.



This type of task is only available within a business process (inline task).

Related concepts

State transition diagrams for to-do tasks

To-do tasks support people when they perform work as part of a business process (inline tasks), or implement a Web service that is publicly available (stand-alone task). During the life cycle of a to-do task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

State transition diagrams for collaboration tasks

Collaboration tasks support people when they perform work for other people.

During the life cycle of a collaboration task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

State transition diagrams for invocation tasks

Invocation tasks support people when they invoke services. During the life cycle of an invocation task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

State transition diagrams for administration tasks

Administration tasks support people in administering business processes and their activities. During the life cycle of an administration task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

Stand-alone and inline tasks

The service-oriented architecture (SOA) patterns recommend the realization of software solutions with a set of loosely coupled components. The human tasks that follow the SOA patterns are called *stand-alone tasks*, while the human tasks that are defined as part of a business process are called *inline tasks*.

Versioning of human tasks

You can create new versions of your human task, so that multiple versions of the same task can co-exist in a runtime environment.

You can include versioning information when you model the stand-alone human task in WebSphere Integration Developer. The version of a task is determined by its valid-from date. This means that different versions of a task can have the same task name, but they have different valid-from dates. The version of a task that is used at runtime is determined by whether the task is used in an *early-binding* scenario or a *late-binding* scenario.

Early binding

In an early-binding scenario, the decision on which version of the task is used is made either during modeling, or when the task model is deployed. The calling component invokes a dedicated, statically-bound task according to the Service Component Architecture (SCA) wiring. Even if another version of the task exists that is valid according to its valid-from dates, the current statically wired task is used and all of the other versions are ignored.

An example of early-binding is an SCA wire. If you wire a stand-alone reference to a human task component, every invocation of the task using this reference is targeted to the specific version that is represented by the human task component.

Late binding

In a late-binding scenario, the decision on which human task is used is determined when the task instance is created. In this case, the version of the task that is currently valid is used. A newer version of a task supersedes all of the previous template versions. Existing task instances

continue to run with the task with which they were associated when they started. This leads to the following categories of tasks:

- Currently valid tasks are used for new task instances
- Tasks that are no longer valid might still be valid for running task instances
- Tasks that become valid in the future according to their valid-from date

An example of late binding is when a new task is invoked in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The instance that is created is always based on the most recent version of the task with a valid-from date that is not in the future. Follow-on tasks and subtasks are always invoked using late binding.

Task instances

A task instance is a runtime occurrence of a task template.

Generally, a task instance inherits all of its properties from the corresponding task template with the following exceptions:

Column name in TASK_TEMPL view	Inherited by task instance	Comments
VALID_FROM	No	Not needed by the task instance.
CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID	No	Task instances are deleted according to a different set of rules than their corresponding task templates.
IS_AD_HOC	No	Not needed by the task instance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An adhoc task template creates a non-adhoc task instance. • An adhoc task instance does not have a task template.
IS_INLINE	Usually	The property is not inherited in the following situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A subtask instance cannot be inline, even if its template is defined as inline. • A follow-on task instance cannot be inline, even if its template is defined as inline. • A human task activity instance is always related to an inline task instance.
STATE	No	A task template must be in the STATE_STARTED state to create and start task instances. The instances are then in the STATE_READY state.

In addition, all of the custom properties of a task template (TASK_TEMPL_CPROP view) are inherited by the custom property instances of a task instance (TASK_CPROP view). The multilingual description of a task template (TASK_TEMPL_DESC view) has a row for each locale. A task instance (TASK_DESC view) inherits these rows.

Related reference

TASK_TEMPL view

This predefined Business Process Choreographer database view holds data that you can use to instantiate tasks.

TASK view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on task objects.

TASK_TEMPL_CPROP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query custom properties for task templates.

TASK_CPROP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query custom properties for task objects.

TASK_TEMPL_DESC view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query multilingual descriptive data for task template objects.

TASK_DESC view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query multilingual descriptive data for task objects.

Stand-alone and inline tasks

The service-oriented architecture (SOA) patterns recommend the realization of software solutions with a set of loosely coupled components. The human tasks that follow the SOA patterns are called *stand-alone tasks*, while the human tasks that are defined as part of a business process are called *inline tasks*.

The following table shows the task kinds that are available for stand-alone and inline tasks:

Table 4.

Implementation	Invocation task	To-do task	Collaboration task	Administration task
Stand alone	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Inline	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

Stand-alone tasks

Stand-alone tasks follow the service-oriented architecture (SOA) pattern and they are loosely coupled with the components that invoke them (to-do tasks), or the components that are invoked by them (invocation tasks). They can be wired to another component using the Service Component Architecture (SCA) infrastructure.

Stand-alone tasks have an autonomy setting of either peer or child. Stand-alone tasks with peer autonomy communicate with their partner components exclusively by SCA means. That is, to-do tasks receive input messages and return output or fault messages, and invocation tasks send input messages and receive output or fault messages. No further information exchange or life cycle control happens.

Because stand-alone tasks are modeled separately, they can be reused. Stand-alone tasks always emit their Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) and audit log events as human task events.

Stand-alone tasks are made available as SCA components in the following ways:

- To-do tasks have an interface that can be wired to a client component.
- Invocation tasks have a reference that can be wired to the service to be invoked.
- Collaboration tasks are self-contained SCA components. Although collaboration tasks are stand-alone task components they have no SCA references or SCA interfaces and therefore cannot be wired to other service components. Instead they provide interfaces so that people can start them and work with them using the Human Task Manager APIs.

Related concepts

Life cycle of human tasks

Human tasks support people when they interact with Web services or business processes. The interactions that can take place over the lifetime of a task depend on whether the task is a to-do task, a collaboration task, an invocation task, or an administration task. Certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the human task.

Related information



Life cycle of stand-alone human tasks

Inline tasks

Inline tasks are an integral part of the business process. Inline tasks can be to-do tasks, invocation tasks, or administration tasks. Because collaboration tasks leverage the interaction between people and do not directly interact with processes, they cannot be inline tasks. Inline tasks are neither visible as SCA components (cannot be wired), nor are they reusable in other processes or activities.

Inline tasks have access to the process context, such as process variables, custom properties, and activity data. This can be useful for tasks that involve the separation of duties. Inline to-do tasks emit their CEI and audit log events as business process activity events. Their subtasks and follow-on tasks emit events as human task events.

The following rules apply to inline tasks:

- To-do tasks are human task activities in a process. They share the same state, but the human task activity does not reflect the forwarded state or the task substates.
- Invocation tasks are associated with receive or pick (receive choice) activities, or on-event event handlers.
- Administration tasks are attached either to the process, or to an activity in the process.
- The life cycle is usually determined by the process.
 - To-do tasks and administration tasks are created by the business process, and deleted with the process.
 - If invocation tasks are created and started by the business process, their life cycle is determined by the process, and they are deleted with the process. If they are created and started using the Human Task Manager API, their life cycle is independent of the process, and their results can be displayed even after the process is deleted.
- To-do and invocation task descriptions, display names, and documentation support only one language.

- Only inline invocation tasks that are started using the Human Task Manager API can have a duration until expiration or a duration until deletion. However the human task activity that corresponds to an inline to-do task can have an expiration defined.
- The update action on inline tasks supports only a subset of task properties. Only task properties that have no representation in the process or activity can be updated. For more information on the update method, see the Javadoc API documentation for the HumanTaskManager interface in the com.ibm.task.api package.

Inline tasks are used for process authorization:

- The roles reader, administrator, potential owner, owner, and editor of a to-do task are identical to the corresponding roles of the human task activity in the process.
- The potential starter role of an inline invocation task determines who is allowed to invoke and send messages to the corresponding receive or pick (receive choice) activity, or on-event event handler. Note that the potential starter and potential instance creator roles have identical people assignments. If an inline invocation task is not defined, everybody is authorized to start the activity or event handler.
- The administrator and reader roles for a process administration task determine who is the process administrator or the process reader. The process administrator can, for example, force terminate the process instance.
- The administrator role for an activity administration task determines who is allowed to administer the corresponding activity. The activity administrator and the process administrator can, for example, force retry the activity.
- The process reader and process administrator authorization are inherited by every process activity or inline human task.
- The scope reader and the scope administrator authorization is inherited by all of the activities in the scope.

Related concepts

Instance-based authorization roles for business processes and activities

A set of predefined authorization roles is provided for business processes and activities. You can assign these roles when you model the process. The association of users to instance-based roles is determined at runtime using people resolution.

Life cycle of human tasks

Human tasks support people when they interact with Web services or business processes. The interactions that can take place over the lifetime of a task depend on whether the task is a to-do task, a collaboration task, an invocation task, or an administration task. Certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the human task.

Relationship between human tasks and business processes

Inline tasks know the process they are related to, and the process knows about its inline tasks. With stand-alone to-do tasks this relationship can be defined with child autonomy. A child task that is directly instantiated by an invoke activity of a business process, participates in the life cycle of that business process. That is, life cycle operations, such as termination or deletion, are propagated from the business process to its child tasks.

Invocation tasks can be associated with receive or pick (receive choice) activities, or on-event event handlers. These tasks can be both inline or stand-alone tasks. If you are using the Business Flow Manager API, only inline invocation tasks can

influence the authorization for invoking the receive or pick activity. By default, everybody is allowed to send a message to receive or pick activities, or to on-event event handlers. This includes invoking a business process in the case of initiating receive or pick activities.

An administration task is associated with every business process. The administration task determines who is authorized to administer and read the process. If an administration task is not modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer for the process, an administration task is created at runtime. This task ensures the default authorization for the business process; the process starter becomes the only administrator of the process, and readers are not assigned to the process.

You can model an administration task for each invoke or snippet activity. This task determines who is allowed to administer the activity in addition to the process administrators. You can also model a default activity administration task that applies to every invoke or snippet activity that has no explicit administration task assigned to it.

Invoke activities have an administration task associated with them. For snippet activities and synchronous invoke activities, this task is created only when the activity is stopped after an invocation failure. The administration task is then used to handle repair requests, such as force finish and force retry. For asynchronous invoke activities, the administration task is always created. Thus, an administrator can force retry or force finish the activity while the activity waits for the asynchronous response.

Stand-alone to-do tasks can implement asynchronous invoke activities. These activities also have an administration task associated with them. Inline to-do tasks implement human task activities. An administration task is created for these activities at runtime.

Related concepts

Authorization for creating and starting business processes

The set of users that are allowed to create and start a process is determined by the invocation task that is associated with the receive or pick (receive choice) activity that is used to create and start a new process instance, and also by the administration task that is associated with the process. The business process inherits the roles that you assign to these tasks.

Authorization for interacting with a business process

A long-running process can have multiple receive activities, pick (receive choice) activities, and event handlers. These are served by submitting a request to the appropriate operation of the corresponding process instance. The process instance is identified implicitly by providing a unique correlation set instance in the request according to the correlation set defined in the process model.

Authorization for administering business processes

You can use administration tasks to authorize a user, or group of users, to perform administrative actions on business processes and their associated activities

Subtasks

Subtasks support people when they need to delegate parts of their assigned work to other people, but want to keep control over the overall result. They can also be used to invoke supporting services to help people accomplish the tasks that they are working on.

Subtasks can be created from stand-alone task templates that are stored in the Business Process Choreographer database, from task templates created at runtime, or by providing a new task model at runtime. The parent task can be a to-do task or a collaboration task, and it must have the **supportsSubtask** attribute set to true. The subtasks that are created can be either collaboration tasks or invocation tasks. These subtasks can, in turn, have subtasks or follow-on tasks.

There are no restrictions on either the input message type or the output message type. However, the starter of the subtask must provide an input message. When the subtask is finished, the owner of the parent task can map the subtask output data to the output message of the parent task.

Authorization considerations

In addition to what is specified for a subtask when it is started, the subtask also inherits the authorization roles from its parent task:

- The readers, editors, originator, and owner of the parent task become readers of the subtask and its escalations
- Administrators of the parent task become administrators of the subtask and its escalations
- Escalation receivers of the parent task become readers of the subtask and its escalations

Life cycle considerations

When the first subtask is started, the parent task enters the waiting-for-subtask substate. It remains in this substate until the last subtask reaches one of the end states finished, failed, expired, or terminated. Some life cycle operations (state changes) of the parent task are propagated to its subtasks. So, when the parent task is suspended, resumed, terminated, deleted, or it expires, all of its subtasks are also suspended, resumed, terminated, deleted, or expire. The escalated substate of a parent task is not propagated; subtasks are not escalated when the parent task is escalated. Subtasks have their own escalations and their escalated substate is set only when one of their own escalations is triggered.

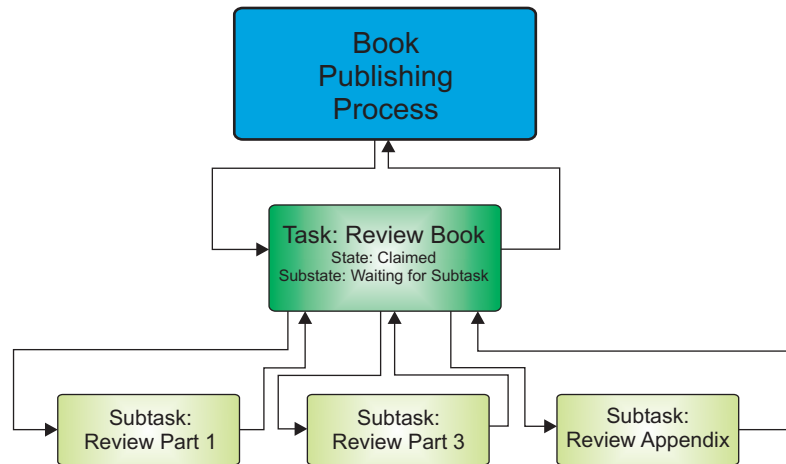
The following operations can be performed on subtasks:

- Operations that do not conflict with the parent task are always supported. These are operations, such as claim, cancel claim, complete, creation and start of subtasks or further follow-on tasks.
- Subtasks can expire.
- Subtasks can be suspended and resumed because work on a subtask might need to be stopped although work on the parent task continues.
- Subtasks can be terminated.
- Subtasks can have their own escalations so that the parent task owner and the subtask originator can better control the progress of the subtask.

Some life cycle operations on a subtask can conflict with the life cycle operations of the parent task, and are therefore not allowed. These are mainly operations that influence the end of the life cycle of a subtask and need coordination with the parent task. Auto-deletion settings are ignored for tasks that are started as subtasks. Subtasks are deleted when their parent task is deleted or restarted. The deletion of individual subtasks using the Business Process Choreographer APIs is not supported.

Example: Interaction between a parent task and a collaboration task

The following figure shows a book publishing process with subtasks for the human task activity.



In a book publishing process, the "Review Book" task is claimed by Linda. She realizes that the book is too large for her to review alone, and specialized knowledge is required for some parts of it. She decides to deviate from the standard publishing process, and assigns parts of her task to some of her colleagues. She creates three additional tasks from the "Review book section" template: "Review Part 1", "Review Part 3", and "Review Appendix". She will review part 2 of the book herself.

She includes the complete book as input to the subtasks so that her colleagues have enough context information, but adds a note to the task description to tell her colleagues to review only the parts of the book that are assigned to them. She assigns the tasks to her colleagues: John to review part 1, Cindy part 3, and Mary the appendix. Then she starts the three tasks as subtasks of her own "Review Book" task. Her task that was in the claimed state is put into the waiting-for-subtask substate until all three subtasks are complete.

Cindy, John, and Mary claim their subtasks and start reviewing their parts of the book. In the meantime, Linda reviews part 2 of the book. When she finishes her part of the review, she checks on the progress of her colleagues. Cindy and John have completed their review, but Mary is still reviewing the large appendix. Linda's task is still in the waiting-for-subtask substate. Although, Linda cannot complete her task, she starts consolidating the review comments based on the output of Cindy and John's subtasks.

In the meantime, Mary completes her subtask too, and Linda's "Review Book" task leaves the waiting-for-subtask substate. Now, Linda consolidates Mary's review comments with the rest of the book, and completes her task. The book publishing process continues. Because the "Review Book" task is an inline human task, it is deleted with its subtasks when the business process instance is deleted.

Example: Interaction between a parent task and an invocation task

The interaction between a parent task and an invocation task is similar to that of a parent task and a collaboration task. The task owner creates a task from an existing invocation task template, and starts it as a subtask of her own task. The parent task enters the waiting-for-subtask substate and waits for the invocation subtask to return. When the subtask is complete, the parent task leaves the waiting-for-subtask substate and it can be completed.

Related concepts

Authorization roles for human tasks

Actions that you can take on human tasks depend on your authorization role. This role can be a system-level J2EE role or an instance-based role. Role-based authorization requires that administration and application security is enabled for the application server.

Life cycle of human tasks

Human tasks support people when they interact with Web services or business processes. The interactions that can take place over the lifetime of a task depend on whether the task is a to-do task, a collaboration task, an invocation task, or an administration task. Certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the human task.

Follow-on tasks

Follow-on tasks support people when they want to delegate parts of their assigned work to other people, and the control over the completion of the work.

Follow-on tasks can be created from stand-alone task templates that are stored in the Business Process Choreographer database, from task templates created at runtime, or by providing a new task model at runtime. You can start a follow-on task from a to-do task or a collaboration task that has the **supportsFollowOnTask** attribute set to true. A follow-on task can have follow-on tasks of its own resulting in a chain of tasks.

The input message type of a follow-on task can be different from its predecessor task. If the input message type of the follow-on task is the same as that of the predecessor task, the input message content of the predecessor task is passed automatically to the follow-on task. The message content can be overwritten when the follow-on task is created or started.

For a chain of follow-on tasks, the output and fault message types of each of the follow-on tasks must be identical to those of the top-level task in the chain, because the last follow-on task in the chain returns the message to the calling component or person (originator). The output or fault message content of the parent task is always copied to the output or fault message of the follow-on task. These messages can be modified in the follow-on task and the changes are copied to the parent task.

Authorization considerations

Follow-on tasks inherit the authorization roles from the predecessor task:

- The readers, editors, originator, and owner of the predecessor task become readers of the follow-on task and its escalations
- Administrators of the predecessor task become administrators of the follow-on task and its escalations

- Escalation receivers of the predecessor task become readers of the follow-on task and its escalations

Life cycle considerations

When the follow-on task is started, the predecessor task enters the forwarded state. A chain of follow-on tasks is handled as though it were a single task. This means that you can perform some life-cycle operations on any task in the chain and the correct behavior is applied. For example:

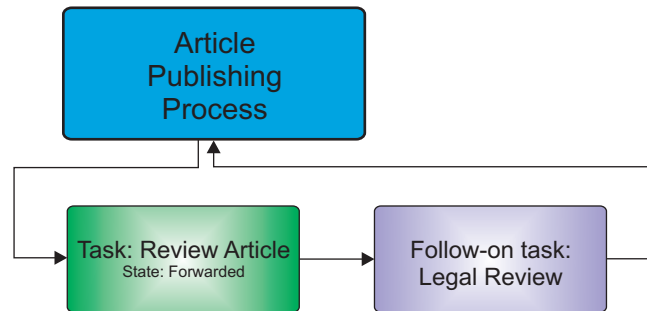
- When any task in the chain is suspended, the entire chain is suspended. Each task is put into the suspended substate.
- A suspended chain of follow-on tasks can be resumed by any task in the chain.
- If a task in the chain escalates, all of the follow-on tasks in the chain are escalated.
- When any task in the chain is terminated, the entire chain is terminated.
- When the first task in the chain expires, the last task in the chain is put into the expired state.

Some life cycle operations on a follow-on task can conflict with the life cycle operations of the predecessor task, and are therefore not allowed. These are mainly operations that influence the end of the life cycle of a follow-on task and need coordination with the predecessor task. The following operations can be performed on follow-on tasks:

- Life cycle operations that do not conflict with the parent task are always supported. These are operations, such as claim, cancel claim, complete, creation and start of subtasks or follow-on tasks.
- Because the chain of follow-on tasks behaves like a single task to the calling component or person (originator), follow-on tasks do not support a duration until expiration, but expire when the expiration timer ends for the top-level task in the chain.
- Top-level tasks and follow-on tasks can be suspended and resumed. This action suspends and resumes all of the tasks in the chain.
- Follow-on tasks can be terminated.
- Follow-on tasks can have their own escalations so that the owner of the predecessor task and the originator of the follow-on task can better control the progress of the follow-on task.
- Follow-on tasks are deleted when their parent task is deleted or restarted. The deletion of individual follow-on tasks using the Business Process Choreographer APIs is not supported.

Example: Follow-on tasks

The following figure shows a publishing process with a follow-on task for the human task activity.



In an article publishing process, the "Review Article" task is claimed by John. He is empowered by the process to review and approve the legal aspects of articles as well. However, this article describes the collaboration with a competitor product, and is thus very sensitive from a legal point-of-view. He reviews the informational aspects of the article, and decides to pass the article on to Sarah from the legal department for additional review. He creates a "Legal Review" task, with a description that highlights his legal concerns. He includes the article as input to the task, and then assigns it to Sarah. He then starts the new task as a follow-on task of his own "Review Article" task. His task enters the forwarded state, and the work on it ends. The process waits for the response from the invoked "Review Article" task.

Sarah claims her "Legal Review" follow-on task and starts reviewing the legal aspects. She makes some comments, and completes her task. The output message of the follow-on task is passed to the business process. The article publishing process continues with the output that it associates with the "Review Article" task, but that comes from the "Legal Review" follow-on task. Because the "Review Article" task is an inline human task, it is deleted with the "Legal Review" task when the business process instance is deleted.

Escalations

An escalation is an alert that is raised automatically when a human task is not actioned in the specified amount of time. For example, if tasks are not claimed or are not completed within a defined time limit. You can specify one, or more, escalations for a task. These escalations can be started either in parallel, or as a chain of escalations.

You can define escalations for any task during modeling or when you create an adhoc task at runtime.

Escalations are activated at a certain task state and escalate the task only if the expected task state (surveillance state) has not yet been reached when the time limit for the escalation expires. The time limit for the escalation is interpreted by the calendar specified for the task. You can specify multiple escalations (or escalations chains) that have the same activation state. An escalated task is put into the escalated substate.

You can define escalations that are activated when the task reaches the following task states:

Ready For tasks in the ready state, you can define escalations for the following situations:

- Escalate when the task is not claimed in time using the expected task state of claimed.
- Escalate when the task is not completed in time using the expected task state of ended.

Claimed

You can escalate to-do tasks or collaboration tasks in the claimed state when the task is not completed in time using the expected task state of ended.

Running

You can escalate an invocation task in the running state when the invoked service does not return in time using the expected task state of ended.

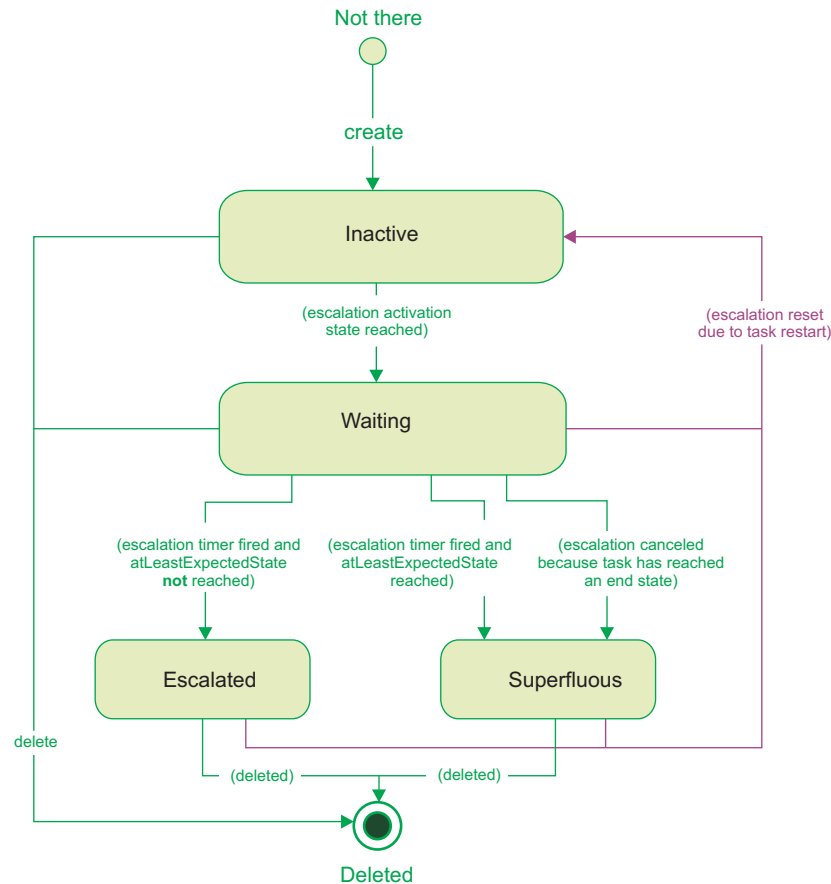
You can define repeating escalations. These escalations check the same expected task state at every timeout, and perform the defined escalation action until the expected task state is reached.

When an escalation is raised, the people affected by the escalation (the escalation receivers) receive work items. Depending on the definition of the escalation, the escalation receivers might also receive an e-mail notifying them that the task is escalated. The list of users to be notified is defined by a people query. This query must resolve to a set of individual user IDs.

You can define the escalation to increase the priority of the escalated task using the **Increase task priority** property. The priority can be increased automatically either for the first iteration only, or for every iteration of the escalation.

Life cycle of an escalation

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of an escalation.



- Escalations are created when the task is created and remain inactive until the task reaches the activation state.
- When the task reaches the activation state for the escalation, the escalation is put into the waiting state. The timer is started and the escalation waits until it times out.
- When a timeout occurs, the `atLeastExpectedState` attribute of the task is checked. If the task has reached or passed this state, the escalation state is put into the superfluous state. If the expected state is not yet reached, the escalation is put into the escalated substate, and the modeled escalation action is invoked.

The escalation action can be executed repeatedly. The repetition interval is defined by the `autoRepeatDuration` attribute of the escalation.

Chained escalations

A chain of escalations is a series of escalations with the same activation state that are processed sequentially so that only one escalation is active at any one time. A chain of escalations is activated when the task reaches the activation state for the first escalation in the chain. All of the escalations in a chain must have the same activation state. In a chain only one escalation is active at a time, except for repeated escalations because they remain active. Escalations that are defined as a sequence are processed sequentially: when the first escalation is raised, the next escalation in the chain is activated, and so on.

The wait duration of a chained escalation is calculated relative to the timeout of the previous escalation, and not relative to the time when the task reached the escalation activation state. Thus, if the wait duration of the first escalation in a

chain is two hours and that of the second escalation in the chain is three hours, the first timeout occurs two hours after the task reaches the activation state and the second timeout occurs three hours later, so, five hours after the task reached the activation state. This behavior ensures that a later escalation in the chain does not time out before its predecessors.

Dynamic durations for escalations

For some escalations, you might want to set the escalation period dynamically at runtime. You can do this by specifying a replacement expression instead of the fixed value when you define the escalation. The duration variable must be enclosed in percentage signs (%).

The variable can be any of the following:

- A task variable, such as `%htm:input.myEscalationDurationValue%`
- A custom property, such as `%htm:task.property.myEscalationDurationValue%`
- For inline tasks, a process variable, such as `%wf:variable.myVariable\myPart\myEscalationDurationValue%`

You must make sure that the context data that you access is available when the escalation is evaluated. If the variable resolution fails, the duration is not set correctly. A CWTKE0038E error appears in the SystemOut.log file and your escalation is not set up.

The following table shows when escalation durations are evaluated:

Duration for	Is evaluated when	Context data must be set before the task reaches the following state:
Escalation	The task reaches the activation state of the escalation. For chained escalations, the duration of each escalation is evaluated when it is started.	The task activation state of the escalation.
Escalation repetition	The escalation is raised.	Escalated

Related tasks

Creating notification event handlers

Notification events are produced when human tasks are escalated. Business Process Choreographer provides functionality for handling escalations, such as creating escalation work items or sending e-mails. You can create notification event handlers to customize the way in which escalations are handled.

Life cycle of human tasks

Human tasks support people when they interact with Web services or business processes. The interactions that can take place over the lifetime of a task depend on whether the task is a to-do task, a collaboration task, an invocation task, or an administration task. Certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the human task.

Related concepts

Subtasks

Subtasks support people when they need to delegate parts of their assigned work to other people, but want to keep control over the overall result. They can also be used to invoke supporting services to help people accomplish the tasks that they are working on.

Inline tasks

Inline tasks are an integral part of the business process. Inline tasks can be to-do tasks, invocation tasks, or administration tasks. Because collaboration tasks leverage the interaction between people and do not directly interact with processes, they cannot be inline tasks. Inline tasks are neither visible as SCA components (cannot be wired), nor are they reusable in other processes or activities.

Stand-alone tasks

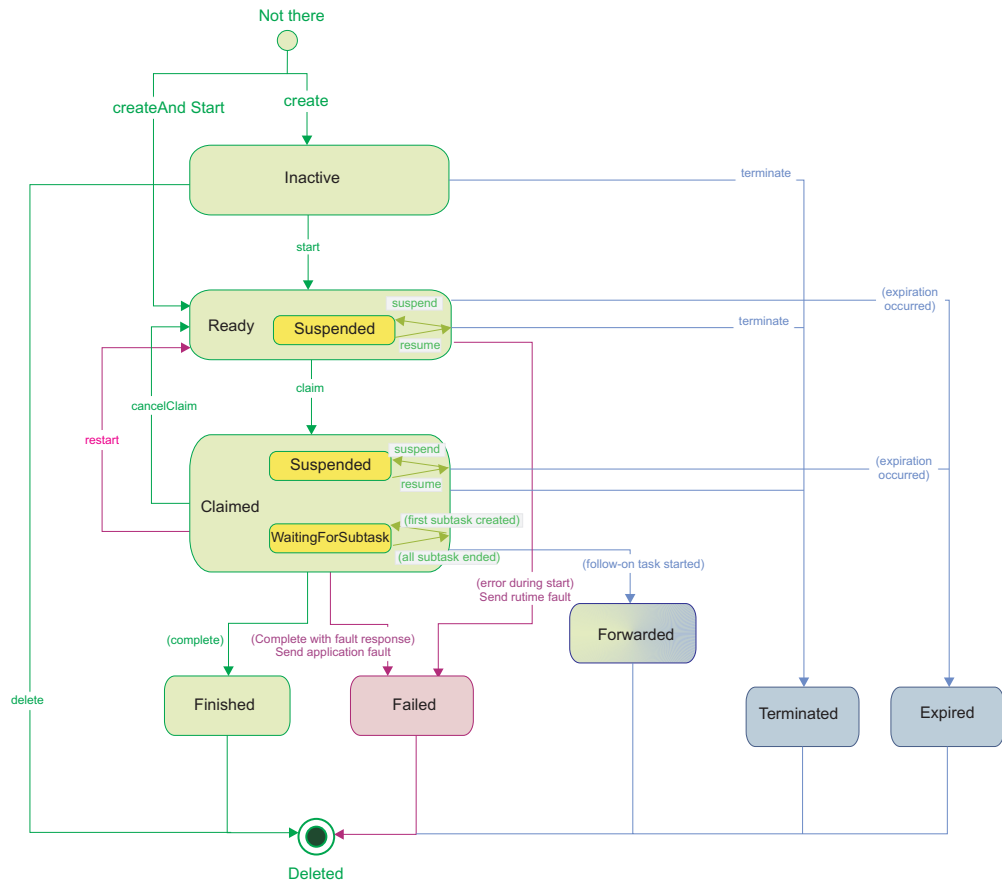
Stand-alone tasks follow the service-oriented architecture (SOA) pattern and they are loosely coupled with the components that invoke them (to-do tasks), or the components that are invoked by them (invocation tasks). They can be wired to another component using the Service Component Architecture (SCA) infrastructure.

State transition diagrams for to-do tasks

To-do tasks support people when they perform work as part of a business process (inline tasks), or implement a Web service that is publicly available (stand-alone task). During the life cycle of a to-do task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

To-do tasks are created automatically by a client application, or calling component.

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of to-do tasks. For stand-alone to-do tasks, it assumes that the autonomy attribute of the task is set to peer.



After the task is created, it is put into the inactive state. In this state, you can update task properties or set custom properties, but the task cannot be claimed. To work on a to-do task, it has to be started.

After the task is started, it is put into the ready state. In this state the task waits for one of the potential owners to claim it and perform the work associated with this task. In this state, the following exceptional events can occur:

- The task can be escalated because it is not claimed or completed in time. It is put into the escalated substate, and it stays in this substate for the rest of the task life cycle.
- The task can be suspended manually. It is put into the suspended substate. Most actions on the task are blocked in this state. It can be resumed manually, or automatically by a timer that is set with the suspend action.
- The task can expire. This state change ends the task.
- The task can be terminated manually using the terminate action. This state change ends the task.

In the normal task flow, one of the potential owners claims the task, and becomes the owner. The task is put into the claimed state and the owner and the editors can work on it. When tasks are in the claimed state, task owners can take the following actions:

- If they need support for their work, they can delegate pieces of work using subtasks. These subtasks can be either collaboration tasks or invocation tasks. The parent task then enters the waiting-for-subtask substate and remains in this

state until all of its subtasks reach an end state. The parent task can be suspended while waiting for subtasks, but it cannot be completed and the claim cannot be canceled.

- If they want to delegate the completion of the work to someone else, they can create, for example, a collaboration task as a follow-on task to complete the work. The parent task is put into the forwarded end state.
- If they want to delegate the overall responsibility for tasks, they can transfer owner work items to another potential owner, or an administrator.
- If they want to give up ownership of a task, they can cancel the claim of the task. The task is put into the ready state again, and it can be claimed by one of the potential owners.

In the claimed state, the following exceptional events can occur:

- The task can be escalated because it is not completed in time, or if it waits too long for subtasks to complete. It is put into the escalated substate, and it stays in this state for the rest of the task life cycle.
- The task can be suspended manually. It is put into the suspended substate. Most actions on the task are blocked in this state. It can be resumed manually, or automatically by a timer that is set with the suspend action. Alternatively, when the timer expires, the claim on the task is cancelled and it is put into the ready state again.
- The task can expire. This is a state change that ends the task.
- The task can be terminated manually using the terminate action. This is a state change that ends the task.
- The task can be restarted. The task is put back into the ready state. If the task has substates, they are cancelled. Escalations associated with the task are reset to the inactive state, and begin their normal life cycle. If the task has subtasks, these are terminated and deleted.

When the work is finished on a task, the owner completes the task. The task is then put into the finished state if it completes successfully, or the failed state if an error occurs.

The failed, terminated, finished, and expired states are end states in which work cannot be performed. If the task template specifies automatic deletion, the task is either deleted immediately, or after the deletion timer expires. Without automatic deletion, the task remains in its end state until it is explicitly deleted. When the parent task is deleted, its subtasks and follow-on tasks are also deleted.

The forwarded state indicates that work is still required on the follow-on task. Automatic deletion of the parent task applies as soon as the follow-on task reaches an end state. Without automatic deletion, both the parent and the follow-on task remain in their states until the parent task is explicitly deleted. When the parent task is deleted, the follow-on task is also deleted.

Some additional rules apply to inline to-do tasks. Inline tasks are an integral part of the business process and thus their life cycle is controlled by the process life cycle:

- The task is created and started implicitly by the business process.
- The task is represented in the business process by a human task activity. Both the task and the activity have the same state, for example, when that task is in the ready state, the human task activity is in the ready state too. The human task activity does not reflect the forwarded state or the task substates.

- If the inline task has subtasks, the human task activity is not aware of them, and it waits in the claimed state until the parent task completes.
- If the inline task has follow-on tasks, the human task activity is not aware of them, and it waits in the claimed state until the follow-on task completes.
- Inline to-do tasks have no duration until expiration and cannot be terminated manually. Both expiration and termination are controlled by the human task activity or the business process.
- The tasks are deleted with the business process. They cannot be deleted manually, or have a duration until deletion.

Related information

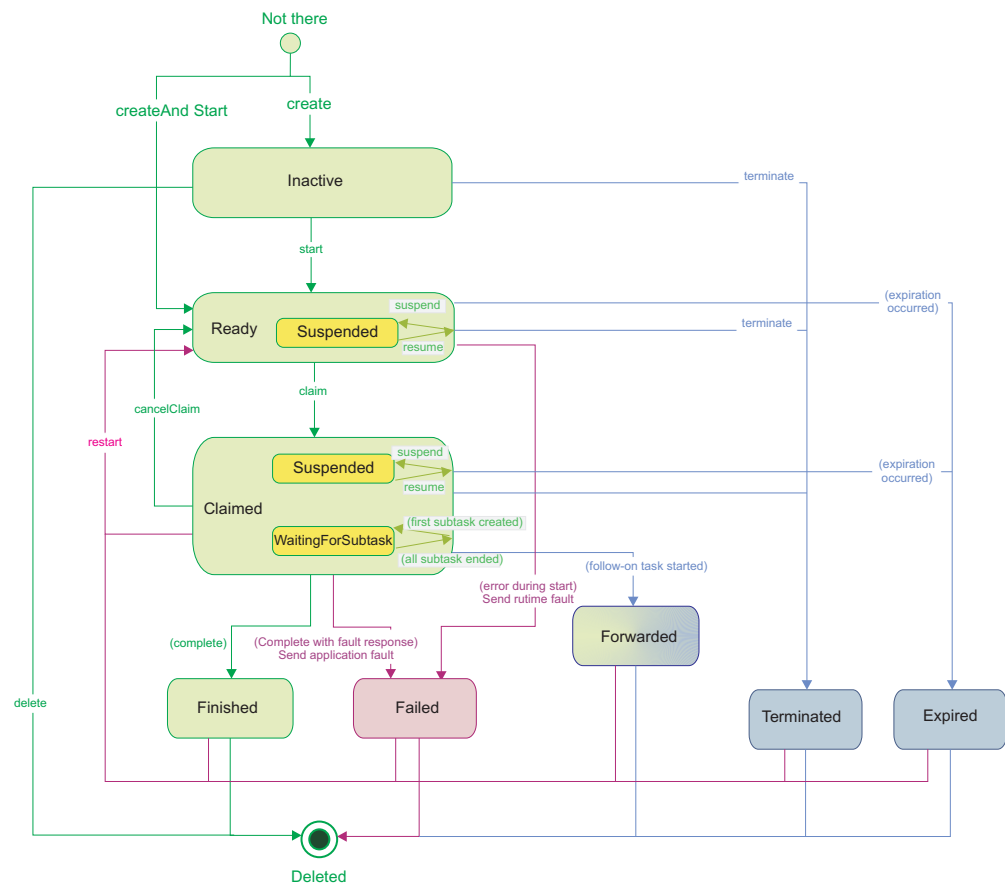
 Life cycle of stand-alone human tasks

State transition diagrams for collaboration tasks

Collaboration tasks support people when they perform work for other people. During the life cycle of a collaboration task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

Collaboration tasks are created and started by a person.

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of collaboration tasks.



After the task is created, it is put into the inactive state. In this state, you can update task properties or set custom properties, but the task cannot be claimed. To work on a collaboration task, it has to be started.

After the task is started, it is put into the ready state. In this state the task waits for one of the potential owners to claim it and perform the work associated with this task. In this state, the following exceptional events can occur:

- The task can be escalated because it is not claimed or completed in time. It is put into the escalated substate, and it stays in this substate for the rest of the task life cycle.
- The task can be suspended manually. It is put into the suspended substate. Most actions on the task are blocked in this state. It can be resumed manually, or automatically by a timer that is set with the suspend action.
- The task can expire. This state change ends the task.
- The task can be terminated manually using the terminate action. This state change ends the task.
- The task can be restarted. If the task is suspended, the suspended substate is cleared. If the task is escalated, the escalated substate is cleared. If the task has escalations, all of the escalations are put back into the inactive state and all of the running escalations are canceled. If the expiration timer is set, it is canceled and restarted, and the due time is recalculated. If the task is waiting for subtasks, the waiting-for-subtask substate is cleared, and the subtasks are deleted.

In the normal task flow, one of the potential owners claims the task, and becomes the owner. The task is put into the claimed state and the owner and the editors can work on it. When tasks are in the claimed state, task owners can take the following actions:

- If they need support for their work, they can create subtasks to delegate parts of the work to other people. These subtasks can be either collaboration tasks or invocation tasks. The parent task then enters the waiting-for-subtask substate and remains in this state until all of its subtasks reach an end state. The parent task can be suspended while waiting for subtasks, but it cannot be completed and the claim cannot be canceled.
- If they want to delegate the completion of the work to someone else, they can create, for example, a collaboration task as a follow-on task to complete the work. The parent task is put into the forwarded end state.
- If they want to delegate the overall responsibility for tasks, they can transfer owner work items to another potential owner, or an administrator.
- If they want to give up ownership of a task, they can cancel the claim of the task. The task is put into the ready state again, and it can be claimed by one of the potential owners.

In the claimed state, the following exceptional events can occur:

- The task can be escalated because it is not completed in time, or if it waits too long for subtasks to complete. It is put into the escalated substate, and it stays in this state for the rest of the task life cycle.
- The task can be suspended manually. It is put into the suspended substate. Most actions on the task are blocked in this state. It can be resumed manually, or automatically by a timer that is set with the suspend action. Alternatively, when the timer expires, the claim on the task is cancelled and it is put into the ready state again.
- The task can expire. This is a state change that ends the task.
- The task can be terminated manually using the terminate action. This is a state change that ends the task.

- The task can be restarted. The task is put back into the ready state. If the task has substates, these are cancelled. Escalations associated with the task are reset to the inactive state, and begin their normal life cycle. If the task has subtasks, these are terminated and deleted.

When the owner finishes work on the task, they complete it. The task is then put into the finished state if it completes successfully, or the failed state if an error occurs.

The failed, terminated, finished, and expired states are end states in which work cannot be performed. If the task template specifies automatic deletion, the task is either deleted immediately, or after the deletion timer expires. Without automatic deletion, the task remains in its end state until it is explicitly deleted. When the parent task is deleted, its subtasks and follow-on tasks are also deleted.

The forwarded state indicates that work is still required on the follow-on task. Automatic deletion of the parent task applies as soon as the follow-on task reaches an end state. Without automatic deletion, both the parent and the follow-on task remain in their states until the parent task is explicitly deleted. When the parent task is deleted, the follow-on task is deleted as well.

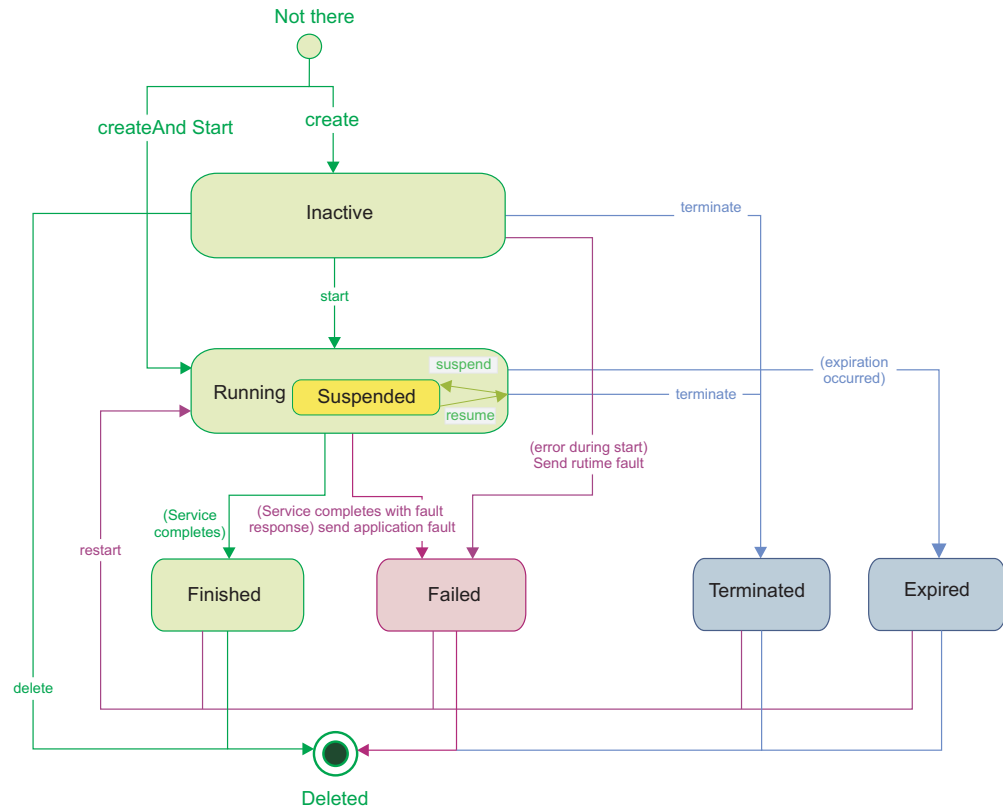
A task in one of the end states can be restarted, if it is not a follow-on task of a to-do task. The task is put back into the ready state. Escalations associated with the task are cancelled and put input inactive state, and the deletion timer is also cancelled.

State transition diagrams for invocation tasks

Invocation tasks support people when they invoke services. During the life cycle of an invocation task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

The person who creates and starts the invocation task becomes the task originator. When the task is started, it automatically invokes the service and waits for its result. When the service result is available, the invocation task stores it and the originator can retrieve it as long as the task exists.

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur during the life cycle of invocation tasks:



After creation, the task reaches the inactive state. In this state, you can update task properties, or set custom properties. To invoke the service, the task must be started. It can be started by the originator or one of the potential starters.

After the task starts, it is put into the running state. In this state the task waits for the invoked service to return. The following exceptional events can occur in this state:

- The task can escalate if the service does not return in time. It is put into the escalated substate, and it stays in this state for the rest of the task life cycle.
- The task can expire. This is a state change that ends the task.
- The task can be terminated manually using the terminate action. This is a state change that ends the task.

The normal task flow is that the service returns with an output or fault message. The task is then put into the finished state if an output message is returned, or the failed state if a fault message is returned. In both cases, the message is available to the task originator and starter.

The failed, terminated, finished, and expired states are end states. If the task template specifies automatic deletion, the task is either deleted after the deletion timer expires, or it is deleted manually. By default, invocation tasks are not automatically deleted so that the result of the invoked service can be accessed.

A task in one of the end states can be restarted. The task is put back into the running state. Escalations associated with the task are cancelled and the deletion timer is also cancelled.

Some additional rules apply to inline invocation tasks. These tasks are an integral part of the business process, and thus the process can control their life cycle:

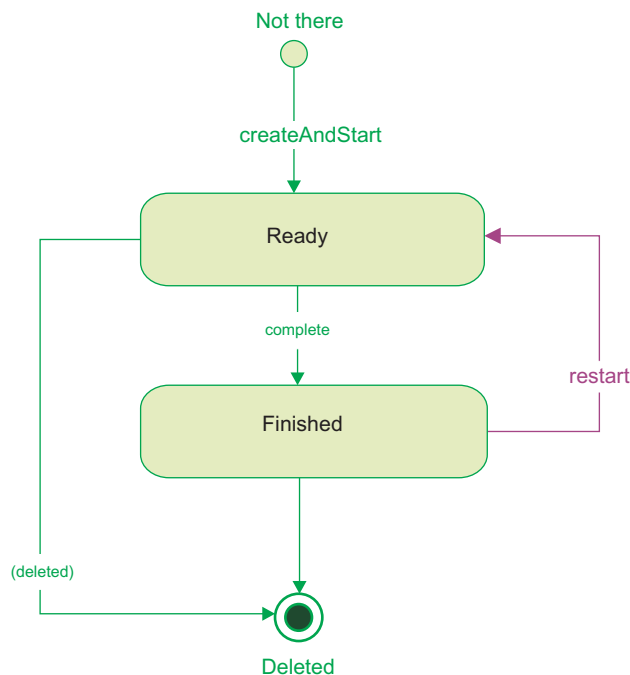
- If the business process is started using the Business Flow Manager API, or an SCA client, the task for the activity that creates the process instance is created and started implicitly by the business process. Invocation tasks can also be used by process instances that are already running. In this case they are created by the process and are associated with a receive or pick (receive choice) activity, or an on-event event handler.
- The task is represented in the business process as a receive or pick (receive choice) activity, or an on-event event handler. If an inline invocation task is defined for an activity, it also defines the authorization for this activity.
- Inline invocation tasks have no duration until expiration and cannot be terminated manually.
- If the task is started implicitly by the business process, it is also deleted implicitly with the business process.
- If the task is started by the Human Task Manager API, then it is not deleted with the process. If the task is modeled with automated deletion, it is deleted after the deletion timer expires. It can also be deleted manually.

State transition diagrams for administration tasks

Administration tasks support people in administering business processes and their activities. During the life cycle of an administration task, certain interactions are possible only in certain task states, and these interactions, in turn, influence the state of the task.

If an administration task template is not available, a default administration task is created at runtime whenever one is needed by the business process.

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur for administration tasks:



Business Flow Manager creates and starts an administration task implicitly in a single transaction. The inactive state is therefore not visible externally, and the task directly reaches the ready state.

The finished state is an end state. It does not, however, prohibit further administrative actions.

Administration tasks are always inline tasks and thus their life cycle is controlled by the business process. They are always deleted with the business process.

Scenarios for invoking tasks

The various ways in which tasks can be invoked is described here.

Invocation of task components using the Human Task Manager API

Tasks can be instantiated by using the Human Task Manager API. Human Task Manager API clients use the API to create and start task instances, and query and manipulate task instances. For task invocation, the API provides methods to create and start the following kinds of tasks:

- Stand-alone and inline invocation tasks
- Stand-alone to-do tasks
- Collaboration tasks

Administration tasks cannot be invoked using the API because they are invoked in the context of a business process.

The API supports the following interaction styles for tasks:

- Synchronous invocation of the task and the associated service
This interaction style uses the `callTask` method. For one-way operations, the invocation returns after triggering the execution of the task and the service component. For request-response operations, the invocation waits until the service and task are complete and the result of the invocation is returned.
This style of interaction can be applied to invocation tasks only.
- Asynchronous invocation of the task and the associated service
This interaction style uses the `startTask` method. For both one-way and request-response operations, the invocation returns after triggering the execution of the task and the service component. In addition, for request-response operations, the invocation returns a result asynchronously that is stored as an output or fault message in the context of the invocation task. The invoking API client must retrieve the result programmatically using the API methods. Alternatively, you can use a reply handler to ensure that the asynchronous response is returned to the client as soon as the response becomes available.
This style of interaction can be applied to to-do, collaboration, and invocation tasks.

The Human Task Manager API is provided as an Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) implementation, a Web service implementation, a JMS message implementation, and a REST implementation. The API methods are similar for all implementations, but differ in their functional scope.

Invocation of to-do tasks as SCA service components

A stand-alone to-do task represents a Service Component Architecture (SCA) service component that can be invoked by an SCA client asynchronously. The mechanisms provided by SCA are available for connecting SCA clients and stand-alone to-do tasks. This includes the SCA means to define the following:

- Wires that connect an SCA client reference and the interface of a component representing a to-do task
- SCA qualifier settings for component references and interfaces that control aspects, such as interaction style, transaction behavior, and interaction reliability

In addition, a stand-alone to-do task can be invoked by an SCA client that is implemented as a business process. In this case, the connection must be considered on both the SCA and process levels. Viewed on the SCA level, the SCA client reference is connecting to the interface of an SCA service. Viewed on the process level, the partner link of an invoke activity is connected to a to-do task.

Invocation of inline to-do tasks

A to-do task can be specified in the context of a human task activity in a long-running business process. In this case, the task does not have a representation on the SCA level, instead it is part of the SCA component representing the business process. The task acts as a service provider to the human task activity. Whenever the activity is reached during process navigation, the to-do task is invoked asynchronously.

Invocation of an SCA service with an invocation task

A stand-alone invocation task serves as an access component to an associated SCA service. The association with the service is defined on the SCA level: the task represents an SCA client that is wired to an SCA service component. The invocation of an invocation task involves both Human Task Manager and SCA levels. The invocation task itself is invoked by the Human Task Manager API, either synchronously or asynchronously. The task (SCA client) then invokes the associated SCA service component in the same way as the task was invoked.

The modeling of the association between the task and the service is done on the SCA level. The concepts and mechanisms provided by SCA are therefore available for connecting stand-alone invocation tasks and SCA service components. This includes the SCA means to define the following:

- Wires that connect an SCA client reference and the interface of a service component
- SCA qualifier settings for component references and interfaces that control aspects, such as interaction style, transaction behavior, and interaction reliability

In addition, a stand-alone invocation task can be connected to an SCA component that is implemented by a business process.

Invoking a business process through an inline invocation task

An inline invocation task can be specified in the context of a receive or pick activity, or an event handler in a business process. The task does not get a representation on the SCA level, instead it is part of the SCA component that represents the business process. Nonetheless, the task acts as a client to the business process. Whenever the task is invoked by the Human Task Manager API,

the task in turn invokes the business process in the same way as it was invoked.

Related concepts

Factors affecting the behavior of stand-alone invocation tasks and their service components

You can use a stand-alone invocation task to run an Service Component Architecture (SCA) service component that is associated with the SCA component of the task. The association of the invocation task and service component is modeled at an SCA level by wiring the reference of the task component to the interface of the associated service component. A number of factors affect the behavior of the invocation task and its associated service component.

Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support the asynchronous invocations of services

This scenario considers the asynchronous invocations of tasks and services only. It describes the Service Component Architecture (SCA) settings and the expected transactional and fault behavior for this type of invocation.

Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support asynchronous and synchronous invocations of services

This scenario considers both the asynchronous and synchronous invocation of a task and its associated service. It describes the Service Component Architecture (SCA) settings and the expected transactional and fault behavior for these types of invocation.

Related tasks

Creating API event handlers

An API event occurs when an API method manipulates a human task. Use the API event handler plug-in service provider interface (SPI) to create plug-ins to handle the task events sent by the API or the internal events that have equivalent API events.

Factors affecting the behavior of stand-alone invocation tasks and their service components

You can use a stand-alone invocation task to run an Service Component Architecture (SCA) service component that is associated with the SCA component of the task. The association of the invocation task and service component is modeled at an SCA level by wiring the reference of the task component to the interface of the associated service component. A number of factors affect the behavior of the invocation task and its associated service component.

WSDL operation type

SCA references and SCA interfaces are associated with a WSDL port type containing one or more operations. Each operation can be a one-way or a request-response operation:

- A one-way operation implies a service execution the completion of which is not made known to the invoking task. The task service execution ends with the successful invocation of the associated service.
- A request-response operation implies a service execution the completion of which is made known to the invoking task. The task execution ends when the result of the service execution is made available to the invoking task.

API invocation method

The Human Task Manager API supports the following interaction styles for tasks:

- Synchronous invocation of the task and its associated service using the callTask method

- Asynchronous invocation of the task and its associated service using the `startTask` method

Execution duration of the service component

The value that you set for the execution duration must account for the overhead that you expect due to other workload on your system. The execution duration also has to be considered in relation to the transaction time-out value set for the server that hosts Business Process Choreographer. Compare these values before you decide to make a service component with a request-response interface available for synchronous invocation. In such cases, the execution time of your service component must be below the transaction time-out value that is set for the server.

SCA qualifier settings

Only certain combinations of SCA qualifiers are allowed for the task component reference and service component interface.

Related concepts

Scenarios for invoking tasks

The various ways in which tasks can be invoked is described here.

Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support the asynchronous invocations of services

This scenario considers the asynchronous invocations of tasks and services only. It describes the Service Component Architecture (SCA) settings and the expected transactional and fault behavior for this type of invocation.

This scenario is applicable to Human Task Manager API clients, for example, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, that make use only of asynchronous invocations. It avoids the need for assessing the execution duration of the service associated with the task when you model the task.

Task component settings

The task component can take the following settings. If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to define the task component, valid values for the attribute type are generated automatically.

Qualifier type: attribute type	Value
Reference attribute: Multiplicity	1:1 (mandatory)
Reference qualifier: DeliverAsyncAt	commit (mandatory)
Implementation qualifier*: Transaction	global (mandatory)
Reference qualifier**: SuspendTransaction	Not applicable
Implementation qualifier***: ActivitySession	true (mandatory)
Reference qualifier***: SuspendActivitySession	false (default)
Reference qualifier: Reliability	assured (mandatory)
Reference qualifier: RequestExpiration	any
Reference qualifier: ResponseExpiration	any
Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • *: use global if you use transactions settings, and local if you use activity session settings. • **: if the transaction is set to global, only the transaction settings are used • ***: if the transaction is set to local, only the settings for the activity sessions are used 	

Service component settings

The service component can take the following settings. If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to define the task component, valid values for the attribute type are generated automatically.

Qualifier type: attribute type	Value
Interface attribute: PreferredInteractionStyle	Ignored
Implementation qualifier [*] : Transaction	local (default) global
Interface qualifier ^{**} : JoinTransaction	false (default) true
Implementation qualifier ^{***} : ActivitySession	any (default)
Interface qualifier ^{***} : JoinActivitySession	false (default)
Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [*]: use global if you use transactions settings, and local if you use activity session settings. ^{**}: if the transaction is set to global, only the transaction settings are used ^{***}: if the transaction is set to local, only the settings for the activity sessions are used 	

The following list gives the valid combinations of settings for the service **Transaction** and **JoinTransaction** qualifiers:

- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to local and the **JoinTransaction** is set to false. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in separate transactions.
- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to global and the **JoinTransaction** is set to false. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in separate transactions.
- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to global and the **JoinTransaction** is set to true. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in the same transaction.

Transactional and fault behavior

In this asynchronous invocation scenario, the startTask method is used for API invocation only. Task and service invocations occur in different transactions. The following applies when a runtime exception occurs, which is not handled by the service implementation. This scenario has the following transactional behavior and exception handling.

Operation type	When the SCA runtime exception occurs	Behavior of tasks and services
One-way operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
One-way operation	During service execution	The invocation task is not notified. The task moves to the finished state. A failed event is generated that can be handled by using the failed event manager.

Operation type	When the SCA runtime exception occurs	Behavior of tasks and services
Request-response operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
Request-response operation	During service execution	The task is notified of the SCA runtime exception and stores it in the task context in the database. If a reply handler is available, it is used to notify the client. The task is put into the failed state.

The operation definition can include one or more fault messages that can be thrown by the service component during execution.

The task component is notified about a fault message as follows:

- The fault message is stored in the database in the context of the task
- The task is put into the failed state
- If the task was invoked synchronously and a reply handler was specified, the reply handler is invoked to return the fault occurrence to the client
- If the task was invoked asynchronously, the fault message is returned to the client as a `FaultReplyException` exception

Fault handling does not impact transactional behavior. The transactions are not rolled back.

Related concepts

Scenarios for invoking tasks

The various ways in which tasks can be invoked is described here.

Scenario: stand-alone invocation tasks that support asynchronous and synchronous invocations of services

This scenario considers both the asynchronous and synchronous invocation of a task and its associated service. It describes the Service Component Architecture (SCA) settings and the expected transactional and fault behavior for these types of invocation.

In this scenario, Human Task Manager clients make use of both asynchronous and synchronous invocations. It implies that you have assessed whether the service execution time is lower than the expected value of the server transaction timeout. Typically, execution durations must be well below the value of the server transaction timeout.

Task component settings

The task component can take the following settings. If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to define the task component, valid values for the attribute type are generated automatically.

Qualifier type: attribute type	Value
Reference attribute: Multiplicity	1:1 (mandatory)

Qualifier type: attribute type	Value
Reference qualifier: DeliverAsyncAt	commit (mandatory)
Implementation qualifier [*] : Transaction	global (mandatory)
Reference qualifier ^{**} : SuspendTransaction	Not applicable
Implementation qualifier ^{***} : ActivitySession	true (mandatory)
Reference qualifier ^{***} : SuspendActivitySession	false (default)
Reference qualifier: Reliability	assured (mandatory)
Reference qualifier: RequestExpiration	any
Reference qualifier: ResponseExpiration	any
Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [*]: use global if you use transactions settings, and local if you use activity session settings. ^{**}: if the transaction is set to global, only the transaction settings are used ^{***}: if the transaction is set to local, only the settings for the activity sessions are used 	

Service component settings

The service component can take the following settings. If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to define the task component, valid values for the attribute type are generated automatically.

Qualifier type: attribute type	Value
Interface attribute: PreferredInteractionStyle	Ignored
Implementation qualifier [*] : Transaction	local (default) global
Interface qualifier ^{**} : JoinTransaction	false (default) true
Implementation qualifier ^{***} : ActivitySession	any (default)
Interface qualifier ^{***} : JoinActivitySession	false (default)
Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [*]: use global if you use transactions settings, and local if you use activity session settings. ^{**}: if the transaction is set to global, only the transaction settings are used ^{***}: if the transaction is set to local, only the settings for the activity sessions are used 	

The following list gives the valid combinations of settings for the service **Transaction** and **JoinTransaction** qualifiers:

- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to local and the **JoinTransaction** is set to false. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in separate transactions.
- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to global and the **JoinTransaction** is set to false. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in separate transactions.
- The **Transaction** qualifier is set to global and the **JoinTransaction** is set to true. With these settings, the task and service invocation run in the same transaction.

Transactional and fault behavior

This scenario has the following transactional behavior and exception handling.

API invocation style	Operation type	When the SCA runtime exception occurs	Behavior of tasks and services
callTask	One-way operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
callTask	One-way operation	During service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
callTask	Request-response operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
callTask	Request-response operation	During service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
startTask	One-way operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
startTask	One-way operation	During service execution	The invocation task is not notified. The task moves to the finished state. A failed event is generated that can be handled by using the failed event manager.
startTask	Request-response operation	During service invocation but before the start of the service execution	The task receives an SCA runtime exception. The Human Task Manager API method throws a <code>CoreOTaskServiceRuntimeExceptionReceivedException</code> exception. The task transaction is rolled back and the task stays in the inactive state.
startTask	Request-response operation	During service execution	The task is notified of the SCA runtime exception and stores it in the task context in the database. If a reply handler is available, it is used to notify the client. The task moves to the failed state.

The operation definition can include one or more fault messages which can be thrown by the service component during execution.

The task component is notified about a fault message as follows:

- The fault message is stored in the database in the context of the task
- The task is put into the failed state
- If the task was invoked asynchronously and a reply handler was specified, the reply handler is invoked to return the fault occurrence to the client
- If the task was invoked synchronously, the fault message is returned to the client as a `FaultReplyException` exception

Fault handling does not impact transactional behavior. The transactions are not rolled back.

Related concepts

Scenarios for invoking tasks

The various ways in which tasks can be invoked is described here.

Authorization and people assignment for human tasks

Authorization is the mechanism by which certain people are enabled to perform selected actions on task templates, task instances, and escalations. Authorization roles are used to define sets of actions available to specific roles. People can be assigned to system-level roles using J2EE mechanisms, or to task instance roles using people assignment criteria.

Authorization roles for human tasks

Actions that you can take on human tasks depend on your authorization role. This role can be a system-level J2EE role or an instance-based role. Role-based authorization requires that administration and application security is enabled for the application server.

Related concepts

Subtasks

Subtasks support people when they need to delegate parts of their assigned work to other people, but want to keep control over the overall result. They can also be used to invoke supporting services to help people accomplish the tasks that they are working on.

J2EE authorization roles for human tasks

System-level J2EE roles are set up when Human Task Manager is configured. The authority level implied by these roles is valid for all tasks and escalations.

The following Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) roles are supported:

- `TaskSystemAdministrator`. Users assigned to this role have all privileges. This role is also referred to as the system administrator for human tasks.
- `TaskSystemMonitor`. Users assigned to this role can view the properties of all of the task objects. This role is also referred to as the system monitor for human tasks.

You can use the administrative console to change the assignment of users and groups to these roles.

Instance-based authorization roles for human tasks

A task instance or an escalation instance is not assigned directly to a person, instead it is associated with predefined roles to which people are assigned. Anyone that is assigned to an instance-based role can perform the actions for that role. The association of users to instance-based roles is determined either by people assignment, or as the result of task actions.

People are assigned to the following roles at runtime by people assignment based on the user and user group information that is stored in a people directory: potential creator, potential starter, potential owner, reader, editor, administrator, and escalation receiver. The following roles are associated with only one user and are assigned as the result of a task action: originator, starter, owner.

These roles are authorized to perform the following actions:

Role	Authorized actions
Potential creator	Members of this role can create an instance of the task. If a potential instance creator is not defined for the task template, then all users are considered to be a member of this role.
Originator	The person with this role has administrative rights until the task starts. When the task starts, the originator has the authority of a reader and can perform some administrative actions, such as suspending and resuming tasks, and transferring work items.
Potential starter	Members of this role can start an existing task instance. If a potential starter is not specified for stand-alone tasks, the originator becomes the potential starter. For inline invocation tasks without a potential starter, the default is everybody.
Starter	The person with this role has the authority of a reader and can perform some administrative actions, such as transferring work items.
Potential owner	Members of this role can claim a task. If a potential owner is specified, then all users are considered to be members of this role. If people resolution fails for this role, then the administrators are assigned as the potential owners.
Owner	The person with this role works on and completes a task.
Reader	Members of this role can view the properties of all of the task objects, but cannot work on them.
Editor	Members of this role can work with the content of a task, but cannot claim or complete it.
Administrator	Members of this role can administer tasks, task templates, and escalations.
Escalation receiver	Members of this role have the authority of a reader for the escalation and the escalated task.

Task kinds and instance-based authorization roles

Instance-based authorization roles are associated with human tasks and escalations when the task is modeled. The task kind determines whether a specific authorization role is available for a task.

Role	To-do tasks	Invocation tasks	Collaboration tasks	Administration tasks	Comments
Potential instance creator	X	X	X		People who are allowed to create task instances
Originator	X	X	X		The person who created the task
Potential owner	X		X		People who can claim and work with tasks
Owner	X		X		The person who claimed the task
Potential starter		X			People who are allowed to start the task
Starter		X			The person who started the task
Administrator	X	X	X	X ¹	People who are allowed to administer a task
Editor	X		X		People who are allowed to edit task data

Role	To-do tasks	Invocation tasks	Collaboration tasks	Administration tasks	Comments
Reader	X	X	X	X ²	People who are allowed to see task data
Escalation receiver	X ³	X ³	X ³	X ³	People who receive an escalation

Notes:

1. This role also has authorization for administrative actions on the administered process, scope, or activity
2. This role also has authorization for read operations on the administered process, scope, or activity
3. This role has authorization for read operations on the corresponding task

Task authorization and work items

Every task role enables users to carry out an exact set of actions on the associated task. A person's authorization is managed using work items. A work item represents the relationship of the assigned person to the task actions implied by the task role.

A work item has the following aspects:

- The identity of a user or user group
- The identity of the object, for example, human task or business process, upon which actions can be performed
- The task role that the users are associated with

The people associated with a work item can be specified in one of the following ways:

- As exactly one user ID. This leads to a user work item.
- As exactly one user group ID. This leads to a group work item.
- For every user by using the **Everybody** people assignment criteria. This leads to an Everybody work item.

The authorization mechanisms of Business Process Choreographer ensure that a user can perform the actions associated with a work item if one of the following conditions holds:

- The user logs in with a user ID that matches the specified user ID for the user work item
- The logged-on user is a member of the group that corresponds to the specified group ID for the group work item
- The work item is a work item that is assigned to everybody

The Human Task Manager API provides methods for querying human tasks, escalations, and other objects. When a query is run, a user's authorization to see the queried data is ensured by returning only the data for which the user has a work item. You can also use the API to manage instance-based authorization. This is done by creating and deleting work items, and by transferring work items between people. For more information on these API methods, see the Javadoc for the HumanTaskManager interface in the com.ibm.task.api package.

People assignment criteria

People assignment criteria are constructs that are used in the task model to identify sets of people that can be assigned to an instance-based authorization role. At

runtime, the people resolution uses the people assignment criteria to retrieve the user IDs and other user information from the people directory, for example, for composing e-mails. People assignment criteria are also used during runtime when task models are created programmatically.

You can use people assignment criteria definitions in WebSphere Integration Developer to model people assignments for task roles. A definition comprises a query name and a set of query parameters. When the task is deployed, the assignment criteria are transformed into queries that are specific to the people directory, for example, virtual member manager. When the task runs, these queries retrieve the set of people who are assigned to a role, such as potential owner.

The following example illustrates the steps that are involved in implementing a people assignment criteria definition for a task role:

1. In WebSphere Integration Developer, a modeler associates a new task with the people directory configuration, for example, for virtual member manager, `bpe/staff/samplevmmconfiguration`.

This step determines which people assignment criteria are available for people assignment.

2. In WebSphere Integration Developer, the modeler associates a task role with people assignment criteria.

For example, the potential owner role is associated with the people assignment criteria **Group Members**, including the parameters:

- **GroupName** set to the value `cn=group1, dc=mycomp, dc=com`
- **IncludeSubgroups** set to the value `true`

3. When the task is deployed, the people assignment service establishes which people directory provider to use. It transforms the people assignment criteria into a query for the people directory provider, which is stored internally.

Depending on the people directory that is used, different subsets of the predefined people assignment criteria are available when the task is modeled:

- The LDAP and virtual member manager people directory providers support all of the predefined definitions
- The user registry people directory provider supports only those definitions that are based on user and group names. Support is not provided for definitions based on manager, or e-mail attributes.
- The system people directory provider is for testing purposes only. Support is limited to specifying a set of hard-coded user IDs so that access to a people directory is not required.

Replacement expressions in people assignment criteria definitions

You can use replacement expressions as parameter values in some people assignment criteria definitions. The people resolution can resolve the assignment criteria at runtime, based on information supplied by the contexts.

For example, a people assignment criteria definition might contain the `%htm:input.\name%` replacement expression as a parameter: This variable denotes the "name" element of the task input message value that is received by the task when it is initiated. People resolution dynamically replaces the expression with the actual task input message value.

People resolution

People resolution retrieves user information from people directories based on a set of parameterized query expressions, known as people assignment criteria.

People directories for use with Business Process Choreographer

People directories store user information that is used for resolving queries that assign people to human tasks.

To support people resolution, the people directory must support the following attributes:

- The name that identifies a user profile and the login ID of a user
- To exploit information that is related to the manager of a user, the people directory should offer a corresponding attribute, by default the manager attribute
- To exploit the e-mail notification feature for escalations, the people directory should offer user e-mail addresses

Business Process Choreographer supports the following people directories for people resolution. If you want to exploit the full set of features offered by Business Process Choreographer for people assignment, use virtual member manager as the people directory.

- Federated repositories (also referred to as virtual member manager)

This is the default people directory that is supported by WebSphere Application Server. It provides access to a variety of directory types, including Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directories, database and file-based repositories, and custom repositories. It also supports the federation of the repositories.

Both person and group information can be retrieved. The supported person schema (PersonAccount entity type) includes properties for the name, login identity, manager identity, and e-mail address of a user. To be available for people resolution, federated repositories must be configured as the active security realm definition in WebSphere Application Server.

- An LDAP directory

Business Process Choreographer can directly access an LDAP directory for people resolution without using WebSphere Application Server security. To ensure consistency across people resolution (implemented by Business Process Choreographer) and user authentication (implemented by WebSphere Application Server security), WebSphere Application Server security must be configured to access the same LDAP directory server as the one specified for people resolution in Business Process Choreographer.

Depending on the LDAP person schema that you use, the person-related information includes the user name, identity, manager name, and e-mail address. To be available for people resolution, a Business Process Choreographer people directory provider configuration is required.

- WebSphere Application Server user registry

The user registry is a subsystem of the application server for retrieving user information. Business Process Choreographer can use this user registry as a people directory. Business Process Choreographer uses its own user registry people directory provider to access the WebSphere Application Server user registry.

People directory providers and configurations

Business Process Choreographer uses people directory providers as adapters for accessing people directories. You can configure virtual member manager, LDAP, the user registry, and the system people directory providers to retrieve user information.

The decision on which people directory provider to use depends on the support that you need from people resolution. To exploit all of the people assignment features offered by Business Process Choreographer, use virtual member manager.

All people directory providers are made available at the node level.

Virtual member manager people directory provider

The virtual member manager people directory provider is used to access WebSphere Application Server federated repositories. You can use this provider to exploit the following aspects of people resolution:

- Federated repository features, including the use of various repositories, such as file and database repositories, LDAP directories, the property extension repository, and the federation of repositories
- E-mail notification for escalations
- Substitution for absentees
- All of the predefined people assignment criteria

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider

The LDAP people directory provider is used to access an LDAP directory directly without using WebSphere Application Server. In most cases, the WebSphere Application Server security realm is set to Stand-alone LDAP registry, and configured to point to the same LDAP directory as the one referenced by the LDAP people directory provider. You can use this provider to exploit the following aspects of people resolution:

- E-mail notification for escalations
- All of the predefined people assignment criteria

User registry people directory provider

You can use the user registry people directory provider to access the following people directories with WebSphere Application Server: the local operating system, a stand-alone LDAP registry, or a stand-alone custom registry. The people directory that is used depends on the configuration of the application server security realm. You can use this provider to exploit the following aspects of people resolution:

- Minimum configuration of the people directory provider for Business Process Choreographer because the repository is determined by the security realm for the application server
- A limited set of predefined people assignment criteria. The user registry people directory provider can resolve users and groups, but not employee to manager relationships, user properties, or e-mail addresses.

System people directory provider

The system people directory provider has limited people resolution support. Because the system provider supports only hard-coded queries, it is suitable only for test purposes.

All of the people directory configurations require that WebSphere Application Server administrative and application security are enabled.

Each of the people directory providers can be associated with one or more people directory provider configurations. All of the configurations, except the LDAP people directory provider, are ready to use. For the virtual member manager people directory provider, the federated repositories functionality must be configured in WebSphere Application Server. For the LDAP provider configuration, the required connection parameters must be set. In addition, the transformation file for the LDAP provider configuration must be customized.

Each of the configurations is uniquely identified by its Java Naming Directory (JNDI) name. The JNDI names are the link between a task template definition and the people directory configuration that is to be used for resolving the people assignments to task roles. Use WebSphere Integration Developer to specify the configuration name for a task template. If you are defining tasks at runtime using the task creation API, you can specify the configuration name directly in the API. Different task templates can reference different people directory configurations.

After a task template is deployed, the people directory configuration name is fixed for the lifetime of the deployed template. If you need to change the people directory that is associated with the template, use WebSphere Integration Developer to change the JNDI name of the people directory configuration that is defined for the task template definition, and deploy the template again.

Related tasks

Configuring the LDAP people directory provider

You configure the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks.

Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider

You configure the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks. The default configuration of the VMM people directory provider is ready to use, and only needs to be configured if you introduce custom people assignment criteria.

Transformation of people assignment criteria to people queries

When an application is deployed, people assignment criteria definitions are transformed into sets of queries that are specific to a people directory configuration. The resulting people queries are stored with the task template in the Business Process Choreographer database.

If you use virtual member manager as the people directory, you need to change the predefined mappings in the transformation XSL file only if you define custom people assignment criteria.

A transformation (XSLT) file contains the instructions for translating the people assignment criteria. Each people directory configuration is associated with a transformation file to generate people queries that are specific to a particular repository. Each query can be executed by the respective people directory provider to obtain a list of user IDs. The predefined queries that are available to a people directory provider correspond to the calls that can be executed by the provider, and are therefore fixed.

The following transformation files are provided for the default people directory configurations:

- LDAPTransformation.xsl for the LDAP people directory provider

- VMMTransformation.xml for the virtual member manager people directory provider
- UserRegistryTransformation.xml for the user registry people directory provider
- SystemTransformation.xml and EverybodyTransformation.xml for the system people directory provider

On Windows® platforms, these files are in the *install_root*\ProcessChoreographer\Staff directory. On Linux®, UNIX®, and i5/OS® platforms, these files are in the *install_root*/ProcessChoreographer/Staff directory.

People queries for a specific people directory provider

The set of repository-specific queries provided by a people directory provider correspond to the methods it can use to retrieve user information from the corresponding people directory. You can use this set of queries to form more complex queries as shown in the following examples:

- Combine query results so that the user IDs returned by the individual queries are added to the current result list of user IDs. For example, the LDAP people directory provider allows the following predefined queries:
 - The list of user IDs for the group members of a specified group:


```
<slldap:usersOfGroup groupDN="cn=group1,dc=mycomp" recursive="yes">
...
</slldap:usersOfGroup>
```
 - The distinguished name (DN) of the specified user:


```
<slldap:user dn="uid=user1,dc=mycomp" .../>
```
 - A complex query can be constructed for a list of user IDs for the members of a specified group, and the DN of a specified user:


```
<slldap:staffQueries>
  <slldap:usersOfGroup groupDN="cn=group1,dc=mycomp" recursive="yes">
    ...
  </slldap:usersOfGroup>
  <slldap:user dn="uid=user1,dc=mycomp" .../>
</slldap:staffQueries>
```
- Remove query results from the current result list. For example, the following snippet shows how to remove "user1" from the list of IDs retrieved for the specified group members:


```
<slldap:staffQueries>
  <slldap:usersOfGroup groupDN="cn=group1,dc=mycomp" recursive="yes">
    ...
  </slldap:usersOfGroup>
  <slldap:remove value="user1"/>
</slldap:staffQueries>
```
- Use the query results obtained from one query to influence the behavior of a subsequent query. For example, in the following snippet, two queries are performed. First, the value of the "manager" attribute in the LDAP entry for the user "uid=user1,..." is retrieved and saved in an intermediate variable "supervisor". This variable is then used to look up the manager's LDAP entry and retrieve the associated user ID.


```
<slldap:staffQueries>
  <slldap:intermediateResult name="supervisor">
    <slldap:user dn="uid=user1,dc=mycomp" attribute="manager" ... />
  </slldap:intermediateResult>
  <slldap:user dn="%supervisor%" .../>
</slldap:staffQueries>
```

People queries that are constructed according to these combination rules can be executed by the people directory providers.

Substitution for absentees

The substitution feature allows you to specify absence settings either for yourself, or for members of the group that you administer. A substitution policy defines how to deal with tasks and escalations that are assigned to absent users.

The substitution policy is defined when the task template is modeled. The same policy is applied for all of the task roles that are associated with a task template. After the task template is deployed, you cannot change the policy.

If a user is absent, the substitution policy is applied to the results of the people resolution to determine who receives the work items instead of the absent user. It is applied only to task roles that have people assignment criteria. This means that task originators, starters, or owners are not subject to substitution. Similarly, substitution is refreshed if the people assignment criteria get refreshed.

Depending on the specific substitution policy, the following actions are applied:

No substitution (default)

The set of users remains unchanged

Replace absent users with their substitutes




- For every user that is present, the user itself is used.
- For every user that is absent, the first substitute that is present is used.
- If none of the users and none of their substitutes are present, then the default people assignment rules apply.

Prefer present users

- For every user that is present, the user is used.
- Substitutes are not taken into account.
- If none of the users is present, then the original set of users is used, that is, the fact that they are absent is disregarded.

The substitution feature requires virtual member manager as the people directory. To make virtual member manager available for substitution, the federated repositories must be configured as the active security realm in WebSphere Application Server. Ensure that you enable substitution for Human Task Manager in the administrative console. If you deploy a task template with a non-default substitution policy to a people directory provider other than virtual member manager, the deployment fails.

Related information

-  [Configuring people substitution](#)
-  [Specifying absence settings](#)
-  [Specifying absence settings for users](#)

Default people assignments and inheritance rules

Default people assignments are performed if you do not define people assignment criteria for certain task roles, or if people resolution fails or does not return a result. The default assignments differ for inline tasks and stand-alone tasks.

Inheritance rules are applied to automatically assign people to a particular role, based on the fact that they are already assigned to another role. Inheritance rules

effectively add users to a role in addition to the users that are determined by people assignment. These rules differ for inline tasks and stand-alone tasks.

Inline tasks

The following table shows the default people assignments for inline tasks.

Roles for inline human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If people assignment fails...
Task administrator	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Task potential instance creator	Everybody becomes potential instance creator	Everybody becomes potential instance creator
Task potential starter	Everybody becomes potential starter	Everybody becomes potential starter
Task potential owner	Everybody becomes potential owner	Administrators become potential owners
Task editor	No editor	No editor
Task reader	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Escalation receiver	Administrators become escalation receivers	Administrators become escalation receivers

The following inheritance rules apply to inline tasks:

- Process administrators become administrators for all inline tasks, their subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations.
- Process readers become readers for all inline tasks, their subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations.
- Task administrators become administrators for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Task readers become readers for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Members of any task role become readers for this task's escalations, subtasks, and follow-on tasks.
- Escalation receivers become readers for the escalated task.

Stand-alone tasks

The following table shows the default people assignments for stand-alone tasks.

Roles for stand-alone human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If people assignment fails...
Task administrator	Originator becomes administrator	The task is not started
Task potential instance creator	Everybody becomes potential instance creator	Everybody becomes potential instance creator
Task potential starter	Originator becomes potential starter	The task is not started
Potential owner	Everybody becomes potential owner	Administrators become potential owners
Editor	No editor	No editor

Roles for stand-alone human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If people assignment fails...
Reader	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Escalation receiver	Administrators become escalation receivers	Administrators become escalation receivers

The following inheritance rules apply to stand-alone tasks:

- Task administrators become administrators for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Task readers become readers for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Members of any task role become readers for this task's escalations, subtasks, and follow-on tasks.
- Escalation receivers become readers for the escalated task.

When a method is invoked using the Business Flow Manager API, members of the BPSystemAdministrator role have administrator authorization, and members of the BPSystemMonitor role have reader authorization. When a method is invoked via the Human Task Manager API, members of the TaskSystemAdministrator role have administrator authorization, and members of the TaskSystemMonitor role have reader authorization.

People assignment criteria and people query results

A people assignment criteria is associated with a task authorization role. The people query that is derived from the people assignment criteria is stored as part of the deployed task template, or task instance. During the execution of a task, the authorization roles require the resolution of the associated people queries so that people can be assigned to the task.

If you need to change the people assignment criteria, you must change the task definition in WebSphere Integration Developer, and deploy the task template again.

The result of a people query depends on the content of the people directory, which might change over time. For example, new members might be added to a people group. To reflect changes in the people directory, a people query must be refreshed in one of the following ways:

- Explicitly by an administrator
 - An administrator can use either the administrative console or the administrative commands to refresh people query results. Commands exist for the following actions:
 - Refreshing all of the people query results at once
 - Refreshing all of the people query results that are associated with a task template
 - Refreshing people query results that contain a specific user ID in the current result.
- Triggered by a scheduled refresh of expired people queries
 - This approach is based on the following parameters:
 - A timeout value for people query results (T_{out}).

- A refresh schedule for the people query. Use the WebSphere Application Server CRON-syntax for defining the schedule, for example, every Monday at 1 pm, or every work-day at midnight.

The following parameters determine how people queries are automatically refreshed:

- When a query is run for the first time or it is refreshed, the query result gets an expiration timestamp ($t_{exp} = t_{current} + T_{out}$)
- When the query refresh daemon is invoked, all of the people queries with results that have expired are run again

You can set the timeout value to be above the schedule refresh interval. For example, you can set the timeout value to be 24h, and the refresh interval to 1h. In this way, you can spread the updates to the people queries throughout the day and avoid the overhead of refreshing all of the people query results at once.

Related tasks

Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative console to refresh people queries.

Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative scripts to refresh people queries.

Refreshing people query results, using the refresh daemon

Use this method if you want to set up a regular and automatic refresh of all expired people query results.

Shared people assignments

For a specific task role, the same people assignment criteria are used in all instances of a task template. This is because all of the task instances are instantiated from the same task template. To avoid rerunning people queries, the result of a query is shared across task instances of a task template.

The sharing of results applies only if a people assignment criteria definition contains fixed parameter values. Such values, for example, the name of a group: `cn=group1`, `cn=groups`, imply that the corresponding people query result is the same, regardless of the task instance context in which the people query is resolved.

If the people assignment criteria definition contains replacement variables, the sharing scope is reduced to people assignments that have the same replacement variable values. For example, a parameter value can depend on parts of the input message of a task. Because different task instances can have different input messages, the parameter values for the people queries differ, too.

If you post process people query results, sharing does not apply to these results by default. To enable the sharing of post-processed results, complete the following steps in the administrative console:

1. If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a server, click **Servers** → **Application Servers** → *server_name*.
2. If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*.
3. Under **Business Integration**, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Human Task Manager** → [Additional Properties] **Custom Properties**.
4. Change the value of the **Staff.PostProcessorPlugin.EnableResultSharing** custom property to true, and save your changes

5. Restart the server or cluster to make the changes effective.

Related tasks

Creating, installing, and running plug-ins to post-process people query results
People resolution returns a list of the users that are assigned to a specific role, for example, potential owner of a task. You can create a plug-in to change the results of people queries returned by people resolution. For example, to improve workload balancing, you might have a plug-in that removes users from the query result who already have a high workload.

Part 2. Planning and configuring Business Process Choreographer

Chapter 3. Planning to configure Business Process Choreographer

Plan your Business Process Choreographer setup and configuration parameters.

Procedure

1. Perform “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path.”
2. Depending on your chosen configuration path, perform one of the following:
 - For “Basic sample”, perform “Planning to create a basic sample Business Process Choreographer configuration” on page 101.
 - For “Sample with organization”, perform “Planning to create a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration including a sample organization” on page 102.
 - For “Non-production deployment environment”, perform “Planning a non-production deployment environment configuration” on page 103.
 - For “Production deployment environment”, perform “Planning to use the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard” on page 104.
 - For “Flexible custom configuration”, perform “Planning for a custom Business Process Choreographer configuration” on page 109.

Results

You have planned everything you need to be able to perform Chapter 4, “Configuring Business Process Choreographer,” on page 143.

Related concepts

Business Process Choreographer overview

Describes the facilities provided by the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager.

Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path

Your choice of topology and setup affects which Business Process Choreographer configuration paths you can use.

About this task

The different configuration paths vary in complexity, flexibility, and their support for different topologies and databases.

Procedure

1. Be aware that you must choose between five different configuration paths.
 - “Basic sample”
 - “Sample with organization”
 - “Non-production deployment environment”
 - “Production deployment environment”
 - “Flexible custom configuration”

For most configuration paths, you have a choice of configuration tools.

2. Be aware of the different configuration tools that you can use to configure Business Process Choreographer.

Installer or Profile Management Tool

Provide the easiest ways to create a non-production system, and they require the least planning.

- The “Basic sample” configuration includes the following Business Process Choreographer components:
 - Business Process Choreographer
 - Business Process Choreographer Explorer with reporting function
 - A Business Process Choreographer event collector for the reporting function
- The “Sample with organization” configuration also includes a people directory that is preconfigured with 15 users in a sample organization, and has substitution and group work items enabled.
- The “Non-production deployment environment” configuration provides an easy way to configure Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, but Business Process Choreographer cannot have its own database, instead, it uses the common WPRCSDB database.

Administrative console’s deployment environment wizard

Can be used to create a “Production deployment environment” Business Process Choreographer configuration, based on a deployment environment pattern.

Administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page

You can use this administrative console page to configure a “Flexible custom configuration” Business Process Choreographer production system on a server or cluster. It provides the opportunity to set many configuration parameters, which need detailed planning. This page does not configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, which you can configure using its own configuration page in the administrative console, or by running a script. This configuration path is most suitable for creating production systems.

bpeconfig.jacl configuration script

You can use this script to configure a “Flexible custom configuration” Business Process Choreographer production system and all the necessary resources on a given server or cluster. You can run the script interactively, or if you provide all the necessary parameters, it can run in batch mode for repeatable automation. It can create a local database, the necessary messaging resources, and can optionally configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, which includes the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. For some database systems, it can also create a remote database. This configuration path is most suitable for creating production systems.

clientconfig.jacl configuration script

You can only use this script to configure a Business Process Choreographer Explorer, with or without the optional reporting function.

3. Be aware that some of the configuration paths have restrictions that limit their suitability for production systems: For example:
 - After experimenting with one of the sample configurations, it must be removed before you can create a configuration that is suitable for a production system.

- If you create a configuration that uses a Derby Embedded database, or the common WPRCSDB database, it will not be suitable for a high-performance system. You must remove the configuration before you can create a new configuration that uses a separate high-performance database.
 - If your message store uses either a file store or Derby Embedded data store, you cannot federate the profile into a network deployment environment. To be able to federate the profile, you would have to completely remove your Business Process Choreographer configuration and create a new configuration that uses a remotely accessible database for the message store.
4. If you were familiar with the Business Process Choreographer Observer up to version 6.1.2, be aware that it is now integrated in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. It is now referred to as the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, and it can be accessed using the **Reports** tab in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer client. The reporting function uses the same URL as the Business Process Choreographer Explorer .

When configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer in the administrative console, or using the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script or `clientconfig.jacl` configuration script there is an option to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

If you migrated an existing Business Process Choreographer configuration, any Business Process Choreographer Observer configuration is not migrated. To use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you must enable it, as described in “Enabling the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function after migration” on page 258.

5. Identify the main criteria for deciding which configuration path to use. Use the following table to identify choices and constraints:

Table 5. Criteria for selecting a configuration path

Choices			Restrictions		Suitable configuration path
Are you planning a production system?	What is the deployment target?	Type of Business Process Choreographer configuration	Can use a separate BPEDB database?	Which message stores are supported for the messaging engine	Configuration path name, tools, and options
No	Stand-alone server	Basic sample (without the sample organization)	Yes, but only Derby Embedded	Only Derby Embedded	“Basic sample” using one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Installer • Profile Management Tool Select the options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stand-alone server profile • Typical • Enable administrative security
		Sample including a 15 person organization, and substitution is enabled. This sample is identical to the sample that is available in WebSphere Integration Developer when you include the WebSphere Test Environment.		Derby Embedded, File Store, or WPRCSDB	“Sample with organization” using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Profile Management Tool Select the options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stand-alone server profile • Advanced • Create server from development template • Enable administrative security
	Cluster	Choice of deployment environment patterns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote Messaging and Remote Support • Remote Messaging • Single Cluster 	No, it shares WPRCSDB, which can be any database except Derby Embedded and Microsoft SQL Server	Shares WPRCSDB, which can be any supported database except File Store and Derby Embedded	“Non-production deployment environment” using one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Installer • Profile Management Tool Select: Deployment environment

Table 5. Criteria for selecting a configuration path (continued)

Choices		Restrictions		Suitable configuration path	
Are you planning a production system?	What is the deployment target?	Type of Business Process Choreographer configuration	Can use a separate BPEDB database?	Which message stores are supported for the messaging engine	Configuration path name, tools, and options
Yes	Cluster	Choice of deployment environment patterns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote Messaging and Remote Support • Remote Messaging • Single Cluster • Custom 	Yes, any supported database except Derby Embedded	Any supported database except File Store and Derby Embedded	“Production deployment environment” using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Administrative console Select: Deployment environment
		Flexible custom configuration	Yes, any supported database	Any supported database except File Store and Derby Embedded	“Flexible custom configuration” using one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bpeconfig.jacl script • Administrative console Business Process Choreographer configuration page
	Stand-alone server			Any supported database, or File Store	

Note: It is also possible to use any of the configuration paths that are recommended for creating a production system to create a configuration that is not suitable for a production system.

Consider the following options:

- a. Decide whether you are configuring a production system. Typically a production system requires high-performance, scalability, and security. For Business Process Choreographer, a production system should have its own non-Derby BPEDB database.

Restriction: If you use Microsoft SQL Server for the WPRCSDB database, the WPRCSDB database cannot be used for the Business Process Choreographer database because the SQL Server database is created as a case-insensitive database, but the BPEDB database used by Business Process Choreographer must be case-sensitive. Therefore, if you are using Microsoft SQL Server for the WPRCSDB database, you must have a separate case-sensitive BPEDB database.

- b. Decide whether the deployment target for the Business Process Choreographer will be a stand-alone server or a cluster.
- c. If you do not want to create a production system, decide whether a sample configuration on a stand-alone server will meet your needs. If so, decide whether you want the sample to include a sample people directory (populated with a sample organization) for people assignment and substitution enabled.

Note: The sample people directory uses the default file registry configured for the federated repositories, and includes all sample people with the same

password "wid". The WebSphere administration user ID is also added to the directory, using the password that was specified during profile creation. After the sample configuration has been created, you can use the administrative console to view which users and groups are available by clicking **Users and Groups**, then either **Manage Users** or **Manage Groups**.

- d. If you want to configure Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, depending on your performance requirements, decide whether the messaging engines and supporting applications, (such as the Business Process Choreographer Explorer and Common Event Infrastructure) will have their own cluster, or share one. The standard deployment environment patterns are:

Remote Messaging and Remote Support

Three clusters are used. One each for the applications, messaging engines, and support applications.

Remote Messaging

One cluster is used for the applications and support functions. A second cluster is used for the messaging engines.

Single cluster

Only one cluster is used for applications, messaging engines, and support applications.

Custom

More flexible setup.

- e. Decide whether you want a dedicated BPEDB database for Business Process Choreographer.
- f. Business Process Choreographer will use the same type of messages store that is used by SCA:
 - If SCA uses a FILESTORE, then Business Process Choreographer will also use a FILESTORE.
 - If SCA uses a Derby Embedded database, then Business Process Choreographer will use its own Derby Embedded database.
 - If SCA uses any other database, then Business Process Choreographer will use its own schema in the same database.
6. If you want to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which is integrated in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can either configure it at the same time as you create a Business Process Choreographer configuration, or you can create it later. Decide whether Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function will also use the BPEDB database, or whether it will have its own, OBSRVDB, database. Also plan the topology for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function components. To perform the detailed planning now, perform "Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function" on page 134.
7. If you want WebSphere Portal to access Business Process Choreographer, plan to create a WebSphere Process Server client version that is supported by the portal server, for example, for Portal version 6.0.1, use the WebSphere Process Server version 6.0.2 client, and for Portal version 6.1, use a WebSphere Process Server version 6.1.0.1 client. Similarly, you can create a WebSphere Process Server client installation to enable any custom WebSphere Process Server client application to access Business Process Choreographer.
8. If you want a remote Business Process Choreographer client application that runs in a WebSphere Process Server client installation, perform "Planning for a remote client application" on page 137.

9. If you have application security enabled and you have a long-running process that calls a remote EJB method, Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 (CSIv2) identity assertion must be enabled when you configure CSIv2 inbound authentication.

Results

You have planned the topology and know which configuration path and configuration tool you will use.

Related tasks

“Planning for a remote client application” on page 137

Planning for a remote Business Process Choreographer client application that uses the Business Process Choreographer APIs and runs on a WebSphere Process Server client installation.

Related information



Profiles



Deployment Environment Patterns

Planning to create a basic sample Business Process Choreographer configuration

This basic sample, for a stand-alone server, does not include a sample organization.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path” on page 95, and have selected the “Basic sample” configuration path.

Procedure

1. Decide whether you will create the sample using the Installer or Profile Management Tool.
2. If you decided to use the Profile Management Tool, decide whether the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine will use file store, an embedded Derby database, or the common, WPRCSDB, database.
3. If you want the Human Task Manager to be able to send escalation e-mails, plan the following:
 - If there will not be a local Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) mail server available, plan to change the mail session later to point to a suitable mail server.
 - Plan to change the sender address for the e-mails. Otherwise, it will use a dummy sender address.
4. Be aware that this sample configuration uses the WebSphere administrator user ID and password for the various Business Process Choreographer user IDs.

Results

You have planned to create a basic sample Business Process Choreographer configuration.

Planning to create a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration including a sample organization

This sample includes a 15 person sample organization, which is suitable for experimenting with people assignment and substitution on a stand-alone server. This sample is identical to the sample that is available in WebSphere Integration Developer when you include the WebSphere Test Environment.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path” on page 95, and have selected the “Sample with organization” configuration path.

About this task

This sample Business Process Choreographer configuration requires minimal planning.

Procedure

1. Decide whether the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine will use file store, an embedded Derby database, or the common, WPRCSDB, database.
2. Be aware that this sample can only be created using the Profile Management Tool. To get this sample, you must select the following options:
 - **Stand-alone server profile**
 - **Advanced**
 - **Create server from development template**
 - **Enable administrative security**

If for example, you do not enable administrative security, the sample Business Choreographer configuration will not be created.

Note: The sample people directory uses the default file registry configured for the federated repositories, and includes all sample people with the same password “wid”. The WebSphere administration user ID is also added to the directory, using the password that was specified during profile creation. After the sample configuration has been created, you can use the administrative console to view which users and groups are available by clicking **Users and Groups**, then either **Manage Users** or **Manage Groups**.

3. If you want the Human Task Manager to be able to send escalation e-mails, plan the following:
 - If there will not be a local Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) mail server available, plan to change the mail session later to point to a suitable mail server.
 - Plan to change the sender address for the e-mails. Otherwise, it will use a dummy sender address.
4. Be aware that this sample configuration uses the WebSphere administrator user ID and password for the various Business Process Choreographer user IDs.

Results

You have planned to create a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration including a sample organization.

Planning a non-production deployment environment configuration

Planning to use the Installer or Profile Management Tool to create a Business Process Choreographer configuration that is based on a deployment environment pattern.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path” on page 95, and have selected the “Non-production deployment environment” configuration path.

About this task

When using the deployment environment wizard, you must select the deployment environment pattern, then you have the opportunity to change the default database parameters and authentication aliases for the WBI_BPC component, and enter other parameters for Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Decide which deployment environment pattern you will use:
 - **Remote Messaging and Remote Support**
 - **Remote Messaging**
 - **Single Cluster**
2. Plan the user name for the Business Process Choreographer JMS authentication alias that you will enter during the Security step.
3. Plan the **Business Process Choreographer Explorer context root**, which defines part of the URL that browsers must use to reach the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
4. Plan the security parameters for the Business Process Choreographer step. These user IDs and groups will be used for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager:

Administrator User and Group

Plan a list of user IDs or a list or groups, or both, onto which the business administrator role is mapped.

Monitor User and Group

Plan a list of user IDs or a list or groups, or both, onto which the business monitor role is mapped.

JMS API Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Business Flow Manager message driven bean.

Escalation User Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Human Task Manager message driven bean.

Cleanup User Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager cleanup service. This user must be in the business administrator role.

5. If you want to configure an e-mail session for the Human Task Manager escalations, plan the following parameters for the Business Process Choreographer step:

Mail transport host

The host name or IP address where the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) e-mail service is located.

Mail transport user and Mail transport password

If the mail server does not require authentication, you can leave these fields empty.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer URL

This URL is used to provide a link in generated e-mails so that a business administrator who receives an e-mail notification can click on the link to view the related business process or human task in their Web browser.

6. If you are going to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, decide on the context root for the REST API. The default for the Business Flow Manager is `/rest/bpm/bfm`. The default for the Human Task Manager is `/rest/bpm/htm`.
 - When configured on a server, or on a single cluster, or on multiple clusters that are mapped to different Web servers, you can use the default values.
 - When configured in a network deployment environment on multiple deployment targets that are mapped to the same Web server, do not use the default values. The context root for each Business Process Choreographer configuration must be unique for each combination of host name and port. You will have to set these values manually using the administrative console after configuring Business Process Choreographer.
7. If you want to use people assignment, perform “Planning for the people directory provider” on page 130.

Results

You have planned to create a non-production deployment environment configuration.

Planning to use the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard

For a production system plan all the configuration parameters for Business Process Choreographer, including a separate database. For a non-production system you can use a shared database.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path” on page 95, and have selected the “Production deployment environment” configuration path.

About this task

When using the deployment environment wizard, you must select the deployment environment pattern, then you have the opportunity to change the default database parameters and authentication aliases for the WBI_BPC component, and enter other parameters for Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. If you do not have enough information or authority to create the whole configuration on your own, consult and plan with the people who are responsible for other parts of the system. For example:
 - You might need to request information about your organization’s LDAP server, if it uses authentication you will need to request a user ID, and authorization.
 - If you are not authorized to create the database, your database administrator (DBA) must be included in planning the databases. Your DBA will need a copy of the database scripts to customize and run.
2. Perform “Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations” on page 110.
3. Decide which deployment environment pattern you will use:
 - **Remote Messaging and Remote Support**
 - **Remote Messaging**
 - **Single Cluster**
 - **Custom**
4. If you chose the **Custom** deployment environment pattern:
 - a. Decide if you want to install the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. If so, plan the following:
 - Where you will deploy it.
 - If you want to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, also plan where you will deploy the Business Process Choreographer event collector.
 - b. Plan the context root for the SCA bindings.
 - c. Plan whether you want to enable or disable the state observers and audit logging.
5. If you are planning to have dedicated databases for the following:
 - The BPEDB database for Business Process Choreographer, which can be changed in the wizard in a table row for the component WBI_BPC.
 - The BPEME database for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, which can be changed in the wizard in a table row for the component WBI_BPC_ME.
 - The OBSRVSRDB database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which can be changed in the wizard in a table row for the component WBI_BPCEventCollector.

Plan the following parameters for each database, to enter on the wizard’s database page:

Database Instance

The name of the database, for example, BPEDB, BPEME, or OBSRVSRDB instead of the default value, WPRCSDB, which results in sharing the common database. The default value is only suitable for lower performance setups.

Schema

The schema qualifier to be used for each database.

Create Tables

If selected, the tables will be created automatically the first time that the database is accessed. For this option to work, the database must already exist, and the user name provided for creating the data source must have the authority to create tables and indexes in the database. If not selected, the tables will not be created automatically, and you

must create the tables manually by running scripts. For a production system, clear this option, and plan to use the provided SQL scripts to setup the database.

User Name and Password

A user ID that has the authority to connect to the database and to modify the data. If the user ID has the authority to create tables and indexes in the database, then the option to create the tables automatically can be used, and when necessary, the database schema will be updated automatically after applying a service or fix pack.

Server The address of the database server. Specify either the host name or the IP address.

Provider

The JDBC provider.

Also plan the database-specific settings, which you can set using the **Edit** button for the JDBC provider.

Table 6. Database-specific settings

Database / JDBC driver type	Database-specific settings
DB2 UDB – Universal driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Schema name • Server name • Server port number • Driver type • Description • Create tables
DB2 for i5/OS – Native driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Collection name • Description • Create tables
DB2 for i5/OS – Toolbox driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Collection name • Server name • Description • Create tables

Table 6. Database-specific settings (continued)

Database / JDBC driver type	Database-specific settings
DB2 for z/OS® V8 and V9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation type – Connection pool data source or XA data source • User name • Password • Database name • Schema name • Server name • Server port number • Storage group • Description
Derby Network Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Description • Create tables • Server name • Server port number
Derby Embedded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Description • Create tables
Microsoft® SQL Server – Embedded, Datadirect, and Microsoft drivers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Server name • Server port number • Description • Create tables
Informix Dynamic Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Server name • Server port number • ifxIFXHOST • Infomix lock mode wait • Description • Create tables
Oracle 9i, 10g and Oracle 11g – oci driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Schema name • Driver type – oci • Description • Create tables

Table 6. Database-specific settings (continued)

Database / JDBC driver type	Database-specific settings
Oracle 9i, 10g and Oracle 11g – thin driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name • Password • Database name • Schema name • Server name • Server port number • Driver type – thin • Description • Create tables

For more details about planning the databases, see “Planning the databases for Business Process Choreographer” on page 116.

6. Plan the user name for the Business Process Choreographer JMS authentication alias that you will enter during the Security step.
7. Plan the **Business Process Choreographer Explorer context root**, which defines part of the URL that browsers must use to reach the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
8. Plan the security parameters for the Business Process Choreographer step. These user IDs and groups will be used for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager:

Administrator User and Group

Plan a list of user IDs or a list or groups, or both, onto which the business administrator role is mapped.

Monitor User and Group

Plan a list of user IDs or a list or groups, or both, onto which the business monitor role is mapped.

JMS API Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Business Flow Manager message driven bean.

Escalation User Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Human Task Manager message driven bean.

Cleanup User Authentication User and Password

The run-as user ID for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager cleanup service. This user must be in the business administrator role.

9. If you want to configure an e-mail session for the Human Task Manager escalations, plan the following parameters for the Business Process Choreographer step:

Mail transport host

The host name or IP address where the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) e-mail service is located.

Mail transport user and Mail transport password

If the mail server does not require authentication, you can leave these fields empty.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer URL

This URL is used to provide a link in generated e-mails so that a

business administrator who receives an e-mail notification can click on the link to view the related business process or human task in their Web browser.

10. If you are going to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, decide on the context root for the REST API. The default for the Business Flow Manager is `/rest/bpm/bfm`. The default for the Human Task Manager is `/rest/bpm/htm`.
 - When configured on a server, or on a single cluster, or on multiple clusters that are mapped to different Web servers, you can use the default values.
 - When configured in a network deployment environment on multiple deployment targets that are mapped to the same Web server, do not use the default values. The context root for each Business Process Choreographer configuration must be unique for each combination of host name and port. You will have to set these values manually using the administrative console after configuring Business Process Choreographer.
11. If you want to use people assignment, perform “Planning for the people directory provider” on page 130.

Results

You have planned to use the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard.

Planning for a custom Business Process Choreographer configuration

Plan the configuration parameters and options for creating a custom configuration, using either the Administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page or the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the topology, setup, and configuration path” on page 95, and have selected the “Flexible custom configuration” configuration path.

Procedure

1. Know which of the following you will use to configure Business Process Choreographer:
 - Administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page
 - The `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script
2. If you do not have enough information or authority to create the whole configuration on your own, consult and plan with the people who are responsible for other parts of the system. For example:
 - You might need to request information about your organization’s LDAP server, if it uses authentication you will need to request a user ID, and authorization.
 - If you are not authorized to create the database, your database administrator (DBA) must be included in planning the databases. Your DBA will need a copy of the database scripts to customize and run.
3. “Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations” on page 110
4. “Planning the databases for Business Process Choreographer” on page 116
5. “Planning for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager” on page 129

6. “Planning for the people directory provider” on page 130
7. “Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 132
8. If you will use the Administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page, make sure that you have planned all the values that you will enter on the configuration page.
9. If you will use the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script:
 - a. Make sure that you have planned all the options and parameter values that you must specify on the command-line, or in a batch file. The options and parameters are summarized in “Using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154, and are described in detail in “`bpeconfig.jacl` script file” on page 161.
 - b. If you will use a batch file to run the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script, create the batch file or shell script.

Results

You have planned everything you need to be able to create a custom Business Process Choreographer configuration.

What to do next

Perform Chapter 4, “Configuring Business Process Choreographer,” on page 143.

Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations

Plan the user IDs and authorizations for configuring Business Process Choreographer.

About this task

During configuration, you need to use various user IDs and you must specify other user IDs that will be used at runtime. Make sure that you plan and create all user IDs before you start configuring Business Process Choreographer.

For a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration:

You only need the authority to create a new profile. In the Profile Management Tool, using the option to create a typical profile, when you enable administrative security, the Business Process Choreographer sample will also be configured. No other planning or user IDs are required, and you can skip this task.

For a high security configuration:

You must plan all user IDs in detail as described in this task.

For a low security configuration:

If you do not require full security, for example for a non-production system, you can reduce the number of user IDs that are used. You must plan all user IDs in detail, but you can use certain user IDs for multiple purposes. For example, the database user ID used to create the database schema can also be used as the data source user name to connect to the database at runtime.

If you will use the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer:

The user ID used to run the `bpeconfig.jacl` script must have the necessary rights for the configuration actions that the script will perform. Otherwise, you must specify user IDs as parameters for the script that have the

necessary rights, in which case you must plan all user IDs in detail. For user IDs that can be specified as parameters to the `bpeconfig.jacl` script, the parameter names are included in the table. The profile must already exist. If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you need a WebSphere administrator user ID in the configurator role that you can use to invoke the `wsadmin` tool.

Procedure

1. Print a hardcopy of this page so that you can write your planned values in the last column. Keep it for reference when you are configuring Business Process Choreographer, and keep it in your records for future reference.
2. Plan the user ID you will use on the WebSphere Process Server to configure Business Process Choreographer.

Table 7. Planning user IDs for WebSphere Process Server

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
The user who configures Business Process Choreographer	Configuring	Logging onto the administrative console and running administrative scripts.	WebSphere administrator or configurator role, if WebSphere administrative security is enabled.	
		If you are going to run the <code>bpeconfig.jacl</code> script to configure the Business Process Choreographer.	When running the script, you must also provide any user IDs that are necessary for the options that you select. For more information see “ <code>bpeconfig.jacl</code> script file” on page 161.	

3. Plan which people need access to subdirectories of `install_root`. If your security policy does not allow these people to be granted this access, they will need to be given copies of the files in the directories.

Table 8. Planning access to the subdirectories of *install_root*

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Database administrator	Configuring	<p>Running the scripts to setup the following databases:</p> <p>BPEDB: This is the default name for the database for Business Process Choreographer.</p> <p>OBSRVDB: This is the default name for the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.</p>	<p>If you use the <code>bpeconfig.jacl</code> script to configure Business Process Choreographer:</p> <p>Read access to (or a copy of) the <code>createSchema.sql</code> script that <code>bpeconfig.jacl</code> generates in a subdirectory of the directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Windows platforms: <code>profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\</code> • On Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, and in the UNIX System Services (USS) on z/OS platforms: <code>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/</code> 	
			<p>If you want to review the database script files:</p> <p>Read access to (or a copy of the files in) the database scripts provided in the directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Windows platforms: <code>install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type</code> • On Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, and in the UNIX System Services (USS) on z/OS platforms: <code>install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type</code> <p>Where <code>database_type</code> is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DB2 • DB2zOSV8 • DB2zOSV9 • DB2iSeries • Derby • Informix • Oracle • SQLServer 	
Integration developer	Customizing	To use people assignment with a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) or Virtual Member Manager (VMM) people directory provider, you will have to customize a copy of the sample XSL transformation file.	<p>Either read access to the Staff directory, or a copy of the files in the directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Windows platforms: <code>install_root\ProcessChoreographer\Staff</code> • On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: <code>install_root/ProcessChoreographer/Staff</code> <p>The integration developer will also need write access to a suitable directory to make the customized XSL transformation file available to the server.</p>	

4. Plan the user IDs that will be used to create, configure, and access the database that is used by Business Process Choreographer.

Table 9. Planning user IDs for the BPEDB database

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Database administrator	Before configuring	To create the BPEDB database instance. For Oracle: To create the BPEDB database.	Create the database.	
Database administrator or an administrator who will run the bpeconfig.jacl script	Configuring	You or your database administrator must run Business Process Choreographer database scripts, unless you are using the embedded Derby database.	For the BPEDB database: Alter tables, connect, insert tables, and create indexes, schemas, tables, table spaces, and views.	
Data source user name If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this is the -dbUser parameter.	Configuring	If you select the Create Tables option, this user ID is used to create the database tables.	To use the Create Tables configuration option, this user ID must also be authorized to perform the following actions on the BPEDB database: Alter tables, connect, insert tables, and create indexes, tables, and views.	
	Runtime	The Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager use this user ID to connect to the BPEDB database.	This user ID must be authorized to perform the following actions on the BPEDB database: Connect, delete tables, insert tables, select tables and views, and update tables.	
	After applying service or a fix pack	When necessary, the database schema is updated automatically after applying service. This only works if this user ID has the necessary database rights, otherwise schema updates must be performed manually.	This user ID must be authorized to perform the following actions on the BPEDB database: Alter, create, insert and select tables, connect to the database, create and drop indexes and views.	

- If you will configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, plan the user IDs to use to create, configure, and access the reporting database.

Table 10. Planning user IDs for the reporting database

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Database administrator	Before configuring	To create the reporting database instance. For Oracle, to create the reporting database.	Create the database.	
Database administrator or an administrator	Configuring	Running the setupEventCollector tool, or SQL scripts to create the schema.	For the reporting database: Alter tables, connect, create procedure, insert tables, and create tables, table spaces, and views. If you are going to use the Java implementation of the user-defined functions, the user ID must also be authorized to install the JAR file.	

Table 10. Planning user IDs for the reporting database (continued)

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Event collector data source user name	Runtime	Connecting to the reporting database. If you are using the reporting database and it uses the BPEDB database, use the same user name as for the Business Process Choreographer data source.	Connect to the database.	

- If you will have a separate database for the Business Process Choreographer's messaging engine message store (not Derby Embedded nor file store), plan the user ID that will be used to access the database.

Table 11. Planning user ID for the preconfigured BPEME messaging engine database

User ID	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Bus data source user name If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this is the -medbUser parameter.	Configuring and runtime	This user name is used to connect to the BPEME database, and to create the necessary tables and index.	This user ID must be authorized to perform the following actions on the BPEME database: Connect, delete tables, insert tables, select tables and views, and update tables.	

- Plan the Business Process Choreographer user IDs for the Java Message Service (JMS).

Table 12. Planning user IDs for JMS

User ID	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
JMS authentication user	Runtime	The authentication alias for the system integration bus. You must specify it when configuring Business Process Choreographer. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this user IDs and its password are the parameters -mqUser and -mqPwd.	It must be a user name that exists in the WebSphere user registry. It is automatically added to the Bus Connector role for the Business Process Choreographer bus.	
JMS API authentication user	Runtime	Any Business Flow Manager JMS API requests will be processed on using this user ID. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this user IDs and its password are the parameters -jmsBFMRunAsUser and -jmsBFMRunAsPwd.	The user name must exist in the WebSphere user registry.	

Table 12. Planning user IDs for JMS (continued)

User ID	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Escalation authentication user	Runtime	Any Human Task Manager escalations will be processed using this user ID. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this user ID and its password are the parameters -jmsHTMRunAsUser and -jmsHTMRunAsPwd.	The user name must exist in the WebSphere user registry.	

- Plan which groups or user IDs, the J2EE roles for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager will be mapped onto.

Table 13. Planning the security roles for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Planned list of user IDs, groups, or both
Administrator user	Runtime	The system administrator and monitor security roles for both the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager are each mapped to a list of user IDs, groups, or both. The values defined here create the mapping that gives users in this role the access rights that they need. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, these users and groups correspond to the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -adminUsers • -adminGroups • -monitorUsers • -monitorGroups 	
Administrator group	Runtime		
Monitor user	Runtime		
Monitor group	Runtime		

- Plan the cleanup user ID to use as J2EE run-as role for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager cleanup services. The cleanup user must be member of the administrator role user or group planned in Table 13. This single administrator role setting is used for both the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager cleanup service, and the cleanup user setting is also shared, even though the two cleanup services can be configured separately.

Table 14. Planning the user ID for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager cleanup services

User ID	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Planned user ID
Cleanup user ID	Cleanup service jobs	This user ID is used to run the cleanup jobs. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this user ID and its password correspond to the -cleanupUser and -cleanupPwd parameters.	

- If you want human task escalations to send notification e-mails for specific business events, and your Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) server requires authentication, decide which user ID will be used to connect to the e-mail server.

Table 15. Planning the user ID for the e-mail server

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
Mail transport user	Runtime	The Human Task Manager uses this user ID to authenticate against the configured mail server to send escalation e-mails. If you use the bpeconfig.jacl script, this is the -mailUser parameter. The password is the -mailPwd parameter.	Send e-mails.	

- If you will use people assignment for human tasks, and you will use a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider that uses simple authentication, plan the user ID that will be used to log on to the LDAP server.

Table 16. Planning the user ID for the LDAP server

User ID or role	When the user ID is used	What the user ID is used for	Which rights the user ID must have	Planned user ID
LDAP plug-in property: Authentication Alias	Runtime	When configuring a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider that uses simple authentication to connect to LDAP, for example, mycomputer/MyLDAP Alias. You specify this user ID when customizing the properties for the LDAP plug-in.	If the LDAP server uses simple authentication, this user ID must be able to connect to the LDAP server. If the LDAP server uses anonymous authentication this user ID is not required.	

- Create the user IDs that you have planned with the necessary authorizations. If you do not have the authority to create them all yourself, submit a request to the appropriate administrators, and enter the names of the user IDs that they create for you in this table.

Results

You know which user IDs will be required when configuring Business Process Choreographer.

Planning the databases for Business Process Choreographer

Plan the databases for Business Process Choreographer. Depending on your setup, you might need to plan to create up to three databases, or none.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer can share a database with other process server components. The BPEDB database is used by the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager. For a production system plan to have a dedicated database for each deployment target where Business Process Choreographer is configured.

If you have multiple Business Process Choreographer configurations, then each of these needs its own database or database schema. The Business Process Choreographer database tables cannot be shared between multiple Business Process Choreographer configurations.

If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which until Version 6.1.2 was known as the Business Process Choreographer Observer, it can use the same BPEDB database, but using an additional database, gives better performance. Some of the scripts for setting up the reporting database already contain the suggested name OBSRVDB, though you are free to choose a different name.

The Business Process Choreographer messaging engines can either share the database used by the SCA messaging engines, or have their own BPEMEDB database. For more information about which databases are supported for your selected configuration path, see Table 5 on page 98.

Procedure

1. For a production system:
 - a. If performance is important, plan to use a separate database for Business Process Choreographer, as described in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118, otherwise, plan to use the WPRCSDB common database.
 - b. If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:
 - If you want to minimize the impact that its queries have on the performance of your business processes, plan to use a separate database as described in “Planning the reporting database” on page 123.
 - Otherwise, plan to configure it to use the BPEDB database.
 - c. For high-load setups, for example, a large cluster with very high messaging rates, consider improving the performance by using a separate database for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine. This allows the database logging to be parallelized, which can help to prevent it from becoming a bottleneck.
 - If you use the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer, and you want a separate database for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, perform “Planning the messaging engine database” on page 128, otherwise plan to use the default database that is used by the Service Component Architecture (SCA).
 - If you use the bpeconfig.jacl configuration script to configure Business Process Choreographer on a stand-alone server, Business Process Choreographer will use the same type of messages store that is used by SCA.
2. For a non-production system where simplicity of setup is more important than performance, your options depend on the configuration path that you have chosen:
 - If you will use the Installer or Profile Management Tool to create the “Basic sample” or the “Sample with organization” Business Process Choreographer configuration, a separate Derby Embedded BPEDB database is created, which is also used by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. For the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, the default is to have a separate Derby Embedded database (BPEME). If you use the Profile Management Tool, you can also select to use a **File Store** or to share the WPRCSDB database.
 - If you will use the Installer or Profile Management Tool to create a deployment environment that includes a Business Process Choreographer configuration, Business Process Choreographer, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, and the Business Process

Choreographer messaging engine will all use the WPRCSDB database. Therefore, you do not need to do any database planning for Business Process Choreographer.

Results

You have planned all the databases for your Business Process Choreographer configuration.

Planning the BPEDB database

Plan the database for Business Process Choreographer.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer requires a database. SQL scripts are provided for all supported database systems to create and administer the database schema. When a database is in place, JDBC access to the database has to be configured for Business Process Choreographer. Depending on the database system, your topology, the purpose of the installation, and the administrative tool you choose to use, some or all of the tasks to create the database and to configure JDBC access can be automated. For a production system, Business Process Choreographer should have its own database, but if performance is not important, you can also configure Business Process Choreographer to share a database with other WebSphere Process Server components.

Procedure

1. Make sure that your choice of BPEDB database and configuration path are compatible: The following databases are supported:
 - DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows
 - DB2 for iSeries®
 - DB2 for z/OS
 - Derby
 - Informix Dynamic Server
 - Microsoft SQL Server
 - Oracle

If you have already decided how you are going to configure Business Process Choreographer, your choice of configuration path has implications on how you can create the database. If you have not yet decided which configuration path to use to configure Business Process Choreographer, identifying your database requirements will help eliminate the configuration paths that do not support your needs. For details about which databases are supported by each configuration path, see Table 5 on page 98.

2. If you do not need the performance, scalability, and security that is normally required for a production system, you can have the database objects created in a single table space on a database server that is local to the WebSphere Process Server. This minimizes the planning and effort necessary to create the database, but requires that the user ID used to access the database also has database administration rights. The options that you need to plan depend on the configuration path that you choose:
 - a. If you use the **Installer** or **Profile Management Tool** to get a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration, a separate Derby BPEDB database is created for Business Process Choreographer, which requires no further planning.
 - b. If you use the administrative console's **Deployment Environment wizard** to configure Business Process Choreographer, plan to use a copy of the

provided SQL script to create the BPEDB database, which will create the default schema in a single table space.

- c. If you use the **bpeconfig.jacl** tool to configure Business Process Choreographer, plan which of the following apply in your case.
 - If you will run the bpeconfig.jacl script in interactive mode, you can select to create the tables in an existing database.
 - If you have a user ID with the authority to create the database objects, you can use the -createDB yes option, which causes the bpeconfig.jacl script to generate and run an SQL file to create the database objects in the default table space. In this case also plan to stop the server and use the -conntype NONE option for the wsadmin utility.
 - If you are using an Oracle database, the database must already exist. If you are using a DB2 for z/OS database, the database instance must already exist. For other database types, bpeconfig.jacl will try to create the database instance.
 - If any error occurs while creating the database or objects, you can use the generated SQL scripts as if you used the -createDB no option.
 - If you do not have a user ID with the authority to create the database objects, you must use the -createDB no option, which causes the bpeconfig.jacl script to generate an SQL file to create the database objects in the default table space, but it does not run the script. In this case, plan to ask your database administrator to customize and run the script for you.

For more information about the tool and other database parameters, see “bpeconfig.jacl script file” on page 161.

- d. If you use the administrative console’s **Business Process Choreographer configuration page**:
 - To have the Business Process Choreographer database objects created in the common database WPRCSDB, plan to use the default database as the target for the Business Process Choreographer data source.
 - To reuse an existing database, plan to specify the existing database instance as the target for the Business Process Choreographer data source.
 - If you select the Create tables option, Business Process Choreographer will create the database objects that it needs in the default table space, the first time that it uses the database. This option cannot be used for a DB2 on z/OS database nor for a remote Oracle database. To use this option for a DB2 UDB database, the database must have AUTOMATIC STORAGE YES enabled.
 - To create the database using scripts, plan not to use the Create tables option.
 - e. Skip to step 12 on page 122.
3. Perform all of the following steps if you want a **high performance** database setup for Business Process Choreographer with the following characteristics:
 - The database is only used by Business Process Choreographer.
 - Ideally, the database is on a dedicated server, however it can also be local to the WebSphere Process Server system.
 - You can customize the allocation of tables space to disks for better performance.
 - You can use a different user ID to access the database to the one used to administer it.

4. If you have not already planned the user IDs for the database, perform Table 9 on page 113.
5. Plan the allocation of disks and table spaces. Ideally, the database host should have a fast storage subsystem, such as network-attached storage or a storage area network. For a production system, take into account the results of your experiences during development and system testing. The size of your database depends on many factors. Processes that run as microflows use very little space, yet each process template can require tens or hundreds of kilobytes.

If you will use individual disks, and your database system supports allocating database tables to different disks, plan how many disks you will use and how you will allocate them. Hardware-assisted disk arrays usually offer better performance than single disks.

For DB2 for z/OS, a table space is created for each table, and additional larger object (LOB) table spaces for LOB columns.

If you use one of the following:

- DB2
- Informix (table spaces are known as named dbspaces)
- Oracle

Plan where to locate the BPEDB database table spaces.

- The AUDITLOG table space stores audit events mainly for compatibility with earlier versions. It is not used much.
- The INDEXTS table space is only created for Oracle databases. It stores indexes, is used intensively and its growth rate correlates with the number of instances.
- The INSTANCE table space is only created for Oracle databases. It stores instance data for instances of business processes and human tasks. It is used intensively and its growth rate depends on your business applications.
- The LOBTS table space stores large data objects of instances of business processes and human tasks. It is used intensively and its growth rate correlates with the number of instances.
- The SCHEDTS table space stores scheduler information related to business processes and human tasks. It is used frequently and its growth rate correlates to the number of instances.
- The STAFFQRY table space stores authorization data for business process. It is used frequently and its growth rate depends on how you have modelled authorization.
- The TEMPLATE table space stores template information. It is used frequently and its growth rate correlates to the number and size of installed business process and human task applications.
- The WORKITEM table space stores authorization data for business process and human tasks. It is used intensively, and its growth rate correlates with the number of instances.
- For DB2 UDB, the following are also created:
 - BUFFERPOOL BPEBP8K
 - TEMPORARY TABLESPACE BPETEMP8K
 - TABLESPACE BPETS8K

They can be all on one high-performance RAID-array, but each table space should be in a different file to allow parallel access. Keep in mind that for a given number of disks, using a RAID configuration will have better performance than allocating table spaces to separate disks. For example, for a

DB2 database that is running on a dedicated server with N processors, consider using the following guidelines:

- For the table spaces, use a RAID-1 array with 2*N primary disks, 2*N mirror disks, and a stripe size of 256 kb.
- For the database transaction log, use a RAID-1 array with 1.5*N primary disks, 1.5*N mirror disks, and a stripe size of 64 kb.

If you are using a DB2 database, running on a four-processor server, and will use 15 disk drives on a RAID controller, consider using the following allocations:

- One disk for the operating system and paging (known as the page file on Windows, paging space on AIX® and HP-UX, and swap space on Solaris).
- Use eight disks in a RAID-1 configuration (four primary disks and four mirrors) as one logical disk for the database control files and table spaces, using a stripe size of 256 kB.
- Use six disks in a RAID-1 configuration (three primary disks and three mirrors) as one logical disk for the database transaction log, using a stripe size of 64 kB.

If you are using an Oracle database, consider the following guidelines:

- Stripe and mirror everything (SAME) for all files, across all disks, using a one megabyte stripe width.
 - Mirror data for high availability.
 - Create a partition (for the tables space) that is on the outside half of the disk drives.
 - Subset data by partition, not by disk.
 - Use the Automatic Storage Management (ASM) file system.
 - Do not separate redo logs from other data files.
6. Plan that you or your database administrator will customize the SQL scripts that create the database objects before running them.
- If you use the **bpeconfig.jacl** tool to configure Business Process Choreographer, use the `-createDB no` option. This prevents the tool from running the SQL script that it generates. The generated SQL files are based on the original SQL files that are provided for your database, but with all configuration parameters that are provided to the `bpeconfig.jacl` tool pre-filled in the SQL file, which minimizes the customization necessary.
 - If you use the administrative console's **Business Process Choreographer configuration page** or **Deployment Environment wizard** to configure Business Process Choreographer, plan to clear the `Create tables` option, to make sure that you do not get the default schema. The generated SQL files are based on the original SQL files that are provided for your database, but all configuration parameters that you enter in the administrative console are pre-filled in the generated SQL file, which minimizes the customization necessary.

For more information about using the generated SQL scripts, refer to "Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer" on page 182. If you want to preview the original SQL files for your database, so that you can plan what customizations you will make, locate and view the `SQL createSchema.sql` script for your database, but do not modify it. The original SQL files are located in the following directory:

- On Windows platforms: `install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type`

- On Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, and in the UNIX System Services (USS) on z/OS platforms: *install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type*

Where *database_type* is one of the following:

- DB2
 - DB2zOSV8
 - DB2zOSV9
 - DB2iSeries
 - Derby
 - Informix
 - Oracle
 - SQLServer
7. If the database server is remote to the WebSphere Process Server system, plan to install either a Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) driver or a database client on the WebSphere Process Server system:
 - For a Type 2 JDBC driver: Decide which database client to install, and where to install it.
 - For a Type 4 JDBC driver: Locate the JAR file for the driver, which is provided as part of your product installation, and decide where to install it.
 8. If the database server is local to the process server, the JDBC JAR files required to access the database are installed with the database system. Find and note the location of these JAR files.
 9. If you use DB2 for z/OS, decide on the subsystem to use. Plan the values that you will substitute for storage group name, database name (not the subsystem name), and schema qualifier in the script files *createTablespace.sql* and *createSchema.sql*.
 10. Decide which server will host the database. If the database server is remote, you need a suitable database client or a type-4 JDBC driver that has XA-support.
 11. Decide the values for the following configuration parameters that you will need to specify for the database:
 - The Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) provider can be type-2 or type-4. For Oracle, decide between using the *oci* or *thin* driver.
 - Database instance (for Oracle, the database name, for DB2 on z/OS: the subsystem name).
 - Schema qualifier. The default is to use the connection user ID as the implicit schema qualifier.
 - User name to create the schema.
 - If you are using a type-4 JDBC driver: the name or IP address of the database server.
 - The port number used by the database server. This is only required if you are using a type-4 JDBC driver.
 - The user ID and password for the authentication alias. This is the user ID that the *jdbc/BPEDB* data source uses to access the database at runtime. These are the *-dbUser* and *-dbPwd* parameters for *bpeconfig.jacl*.
 12. Plan to support enough parallel JDBC connections:
 - a. Estimate the maximum number of parallel JDBC connection required to the Business Process Choreographer BPEDB database. This will depend on the nature of your business processes and the number of users. A good estimate is the maximum number of clients that can concurrently connect through the Business Process Choreographer API plus the number of concurrent endpoints defined in the *BPEInternalActivationSpec* and

- HTMInternalActivationSpec JMS activation specifications, plus a 10% safety margin to allow for overload situations.
 - b. Make sure that your database system can support the necessary number of parallel JDBC connections.
 - c. Plan suitable settings according to the best practices for your database system to support the expected number of parallel JDBC connections.
13. For a production system, make plans for the following administration tasks:
- Tune your database after it is populated with typical production data.
 - Regularly delete completed process instances and task instances from the database. For an overview of the tools and scripts that are available, see Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer.

Results

You have planned the database for Business Process Choreographer.

Related tasks

Balancing the hardware resources

You can improve the performance of long-running business processes by balancing the hardware resources.

Planning the reporting database

Plan the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function can use the same database, but using an additional database gives better performance. If you will not reuse the BPEDB database, perform the following:

Procedure

1. If you plan to have multiple event collector instances, and they are going to use the same database, plan unique schema names for each event collector. For better performance, plan a database for each event collector.
2. Decide which database system to use for the database:
 - Derby
 - DB2 UDB for Linux, UNIX, and Windows
 - DB2 for iSeries
 - DB2 for z/OS
 - Oracle

Restriction: The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function does not support using an Informix or SQL Server database.

3. Decide which server will host the database.
4. If you have not already planned the user IDs for the database, perform Table 10 on page 113.
5. If you are **not** using a Derby database for the reporting database, decide whether you will use SQL-based or Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs).
 - The Java UDFs are more precise, but to be able to use them, you must install a JAR file in the database.

- If you use a DB2 for z/OS database, and would prefer that the database is created using Java-based UDFs, rather than SQL-based UDFs, then you have no choice but to use the menu-driven administration tool, `setupEventCollector`.
- If you use a Derby database, Java-based UDFs will be used because the embedded Derby database does not support SQL UDFs.

For more information about UDFs, see “User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 245.

6. If you will not use the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector to use the BPEDB database, decide how you will create the reporting database.

Using the menu-driven administration tool, `setupEventCollector`

You can use this tool to create the database in an interactive mode, with your input validated against the runtime environment. If you use this tool, decide whether you want the tool to create an SQL file, but not run it – use this option if you want to customize the SQL before running it or to give to your database administrator to customize and run. For more information about this tool, see “`setupEventCollector` tool” on page 268.

Unlike the other ways to create the database, this tool allows you to create either Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs) or SQL-based UDFs. You can also use it to switch between these two options, and also to install and remove the JAR file that is required to support the UDFs. For a non-Derby database, the tool supports creating the database using either Java-based user defined functions (UDFs) or SQL-based UDFs. For a Derby database, only Java-based UDFs are used to create the database.

Running SQL scripts

You might need to use the SQL scripts if you are not allowed to use a tool to access the database. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in batch mode or using the administrative console, an SQL script is generated that has all necessary parameters substituted. Otherwise, you can use the standard SQL scripts which must be customized.

For a non-Derby database, all SQL scripts create the UDFs for the reporting database using the SQL implementation. For a Derby database, only Java-based UDFs are used to create the database.

Automatically create tables on first use

Selecting the **Create tables** option on the administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration page is an easy way to get a default database schema. This option is not suitable for high performance systems. For a non-Derby database, SQL-based UDFs are used. This option cannot be used for a DB2 on z/OS database. For a Derby database, only Java-based UDFs are used to create the database.

Note: If you use a Derby Network server data source, you must start the Derby network server from the directory `install_root/derby/bin/networkServer`, otherwise creating the tables will fail with the error `CWWB04013E: The bpcodbutil.jar file could not be found on the Derby network server`.

7. If you use a DB2 for Linux, UNIX, or Windows database, plan the following:

- The database name. If performance is not a priority, you can use the value BPEDB, so that the reporting database uses the Business Process Choreographer database. For better performance, plan to use a separate database, for example, named OBSRVDRDB.
 - The user ID to use to connect to the database. You must also know the password for this user ID.
 - The database schema name to use to create the database objects. The default value is the connection user ID.
 - Plan the fully qualified location for the table space OBSVRTS.
 - Decide whether you want to use the SQL-based user-defined function (UDFs) rather than the default, Java-based ones.
 - If you will use the setupEventCollector tool to setup the database, also plan the following:
 - Decide which type of JDBC driver to use:
 - Type 2, connecting using a native database client. This is the default.
 - Type 4, connecting directly via JDBC. In this case, also make sure that you know the following:
 - The host name or IP address of the database server. The default is localhost.
 - The port number used for the database. The default is 50000.
 - Locate the directory where the DB2 JDBC driver files, db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cu.jar are installed.
8. If you use a DB2 for i5/OS database, plan the following:
- The database name. If you configure the database in the native i/Series environment, for example, in qshell, use *LOCAL. Otherwise, use *SYSBAS.
 - The user ID to use to connect to the database. You must also know the password for this user ID.
 - The database schema name, under which, the database objects are created. The default value is the connection user ID.
 - Decide whether you want to use the SQL-based user-defined function (UDFs) rather than the default, Java-based ones.
 - If you will use the setupEventCollector tool to setup the database, also plan the following:
 - The host name of the database server. Typically this is always localhost. The port number is always 446.
 - The directory for the JDBC driver:
 - If the database is in a native i/Series environment, for example, in qshell, this is the path where the db2_classes.jar file is located, which is normally /QIBM/ProdData/Java400/ext.
 - If the database is remote, this is the path where the jt400.jar file is located.
9. If you use a DB2 for z/OS database, plan the following:
- Location name (network name) of the subsystem.
 - The storage group name.
 - The database name as known by the subsystem. The default value is OBSRVDRDB
 - The user ID to use to connect to the database. You must also know the password for this user ID.

- The database schema name (SQLID), under which, the database objects are created.
 - Plan in which storage group the table spaces will be created:
 - Regular table space for OBSVR01, OBSVR02, OBSVR03, OBSVR04, OBSVR05, OBSVR06, OBSVR07, and OBSVR08.
 - LOB table space for OS26201, OS26202, OS26203, and OS26204.
 - If you want to use the Java-based user-defined function (UDFs) rather than the default SQL ones, decide on the name of the WLM environment that you will use to run the functions in.
 - If you will use the setupEventCollector tool to setup the database, also plan the following:
 - Decide which type of JDBC driver to use:
 - Type 4, connecting directly via JDBC. In this case, also make sure that you know the following:
 - The host name or IP address of the database server. The default is localhost.
 - The port number used for the database. The default is 446.
 - The directory for the JDBC driver JAR files, db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar.
 - Type 2, connecting using a native database client. In this case, also plan what the database alias will be in the local catalog.
10. If you use a Derby database, plan the following:
- The database name. This must be the fully qualified path on the server's file system. The default value is *install_root/databases/BPEDB*.
 - The database schema name, under which, the database objects are created. The default value is APP.
 - If you will use the setupEventCollector tool to setup the database, also plan the following:
 - If you use the Derby Network JDBC driver, plan the user ID to use to connect to the database. You must also know the password for this user ID.
 - Decide which type of JDBC driver to use:
 - Embedded JDBC driver. In this case, also plan the directory for the JDBC driver JAR file derby.jar. The default location is *install_root/derby/lib*.
 - Network JDBC driver. In this case, also make sure that you know the following:
 - The directory for the JDBC driver JAR file derbyclient.jar. The default location is *install_root/derby/lib*.
 - If using a Derby Network server, decide on the location of the UDF JAR file bpcodbutil.jar on the Derby network server. The default location is *install_root/derby/lib*.
 - The host name of the database server. The default is localhost.
 - The port number used for the database. The default is 1527.
11. If you use an Oracle database, plan the following:
- The SID name. The default value is BPEDB.
 - Decide which Oracle user ID to use to connect to the database. It must have the roles CONNECT and RESOURCE. The default user ID is system . You must also know the password for this user ID.

- The database schema name, under which, the database objects are created. The default value is the user ID used to connect to the database.
 - Plan the fully qualified locations for each of the following table spaces:
 - OBSVRIDX
 - OBSVRLOB
 - OBSVRTS
 - Decide whether you want to use the SQL-based user-defined function (UDFs) rather than the default, Java-based ones.
 - If you will use the setupEventCollector tool to setup the database, also plan the following:
 - The location of the JDBC driver file. For Oracle 10g use the ojdbc14.jar driver. For Oracle 11g use the ojdbc5.jar driver.
 - The host name of the database server. The default is localhost.
 - The port number used for the database. The default is 1521.
12. If you use the **bpeconfig.jacl** tool in batch mode with the `-createEventCollector yes` option, plan one of the following:
- The `-createDB yes` option causes the tool to run the SQL script that `bpeconfig.jacl` generates. You can use the `-dbSchema` parameter to specify a schema qualifier for the BPEDB database, and you can use the `-reportSchemaName` and `-reportDataSource` parameters to make the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function use a different database rather than using the BPEDB database.
 - The `-createDB no` option prevents the tool from running the SQL script that it generates. The generated SQL files are based on the standard SQL files that are provided for your database, but with all configuration parameters that are provided to the `bpeconfig.jacl` tool pre-filled in the SQL file, which minimizes the customization necessary. Plan that you or your database administrator will customize the generated SQL script that creates the database objects before running it. For more information about the tool and other database parameters, see “Using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154.
13. If you will use administrative console’s **Business Process Choreographer event collector page** to create the database tables, plan one of the following:
- For all database types except for DB2 on z/OS, you can use the Create tables option to cause the tool to create the default schema in the specified database the first time that Business Process Choreographer accesses the database.
 - If you want to run an SQL script to prepare the database tables, do not use the Create tables option. Plan that you or your database administrator will customize a copy of the SQL script that creates the database objects before running it. This option is most suitable for a production system.
14. If you want to preview the SQL script for your database, so that you can plan what customizations you will make: Locate and view the `createSchema_Observer.sql` file for your database, but do not modify it. The SQL files are located in:
- On Windows platforms: `install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type`
 - On Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, and in the UNIX System Services (USS) on z/OS platforms: `install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type`
- Where `database_type` is one of the following:
- DB2
 - DB2zOSV8

- DB2zOSV9
- DB2iSeries
- Derby
- Oracle

Note: If you use the `bpeconfig.jacl` tool to configure Business Process Choreographer, plan to use the SQL script that the tool generates, which does not need to be edited to substitute values for placeholders for configuration parameters. The generated scripts are only available after running the tool, but they are based on the scripts in the locations listed above. You will still have to edit the generated script file if you want to customize the table space allocations.

Results

You have planned the reporting database.

Planning the messaging engine database

For high-load setups, where database logging might become a bottleneck, you can improve performance by using a separate database for the messaging engine for the Business Process Choreographer bus.

About this task

You can use the same messaging database for each messaging engine for the Service Component Architecture (SCA) system bus, each messaging engine for the SCA application bus, each messaging engine for the Common Event Infrastructure bus, and each messaging engine for the Business Process Choreographer bus. The database should be accessible to all members of the cluster that hosts the message engine to ensure failover availability of the message engine. If performance is important, plan to use a dedicated database for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, rather than using the default MEDB that is used for the SCA bus and applications.

Procedure

1. If you use the **Installer** or **Profile Management Tool** to get one of the sample Business Process Choreographer configurations, decide whether the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine will use Derby embedded, file store, or the WPRCSDB database.
2. The Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) provider. Note that the file store and embedded Derby database are not available in a network deployment environment.
3. If you want to use WebSphere MQ, you must use the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script to configure Business Process Choreographer. Using WebSphere MQ is deprecated.
4. If you use the `bpeconfig.jacl` configuration script to configure Business Process Choreographer on a stand-alone server, Business Process Choreographer will use the same type of messages store that is used by SCA.
 - If SCA uses a FILESTORE, then Business Process Choreographer will also use a FILESTORE.
 - If SCA uses a Derby Embedded database, then Business Process Choreographer will use its own Derby Embedded database.
 - If SCA uses any other database, then Business Process Choreographer will use its own schema in the same database.

5. If you use the administrative console's Business Process Choreographer configuration page, if you want to use the default configuration that is based on the SCA message store settings, plan to select the **Use the default configuration** check box, otherwise, plan the following configuration parameters:
 - Local or remote bus member location.
 - The name of the database.
 - The schema name. The default is MEDBPM00.
6. If you are using a file store or the embedded Derby JDBC provider, the message stores will be created automatically.
7. If you are not using a file store or the embedded Derby JDBC provider, plan the following configuration parameters.
 - a. Plan that the database will already exist before Business Process Choreographer is started.
 - b. The host name or IP address of the database server, and the port number that it uses.
 - c. The user name used to connect to the database and to create the schema. This is the user ID that you planned in Table 11 on page 114.

Results

You have planned the database for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine.

Planning for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager

The core of a Business Process Choreographer configuration consists of the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager. You must plan their configuration parameters.

Procedure

1. Make sure you know the Java Message Service (JMS) provider user ID that will be used as the run-as user ID for the Business Flow Manager message driven bean. In the administrative console, and in Table 12 on page 114, it is known as the **JMS API Authentication User**.
2. Make sure you know the Java Message Service (JMS) provider user ID that will be used as the run-as user ID for the Human Task Manager message driven bean. In the administrative console, and in Table 12 on page 114, it is known as the **Escalation User Authentication User**.
3. Make sure you know which groups or user IDs the security roles for administrator and monitor will map onto. For details, see Table 13 on page 115.
4. If you want the Human Task Manager to send e-mail notifications of escalation events, identify the host name or IP address where the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) e-mail server is located. Plan what the sender address should be for email notifications. If the e-mail service requires authentication, make sure you know the user ID and password to use to connect to the service.
5. Decide on the context root for the Web service binding of the API.
 - When configured on a server:
 - The default for the Business Flow Manager is `/BFMIF_nodeName_serverName`.

- The default for the Human Task Manager is `/HTMIF_nodeName_serverName`
 - When configured on a cluster:
 - The default for the Business Flow Manager is `/BFMIF_clusterName`
 - The default for the Human Task Manager is `/HTMIF_clusterName`
6. If you are going to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, decide on the context root for the REST API. The default for the Business Flow Manager is `/rest/bpm/bfm`. The default for the Human Task Manager is `/rest/bpm/htm`.
 - When configured on a server, or on a single cluster, or on multiple clusters that are mapped to different Web servers, you can use the default values.
 - When configured in a network deployment environment on multiple deployment targets that are mapped to the same Web server, do not use the default values. The context root for each Business Process Choreographer configuration must be unique for each combination of host name and port. You will have to set these values manually using the administrative console after configuring Business Process Choreographer.
 7. Decide whether you want to initially enable audit logging for the Business Flow Manager, or Human Task Manager, or both.
 8. If you are going to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, decide whether you want the Business Flow Manager to be initially configured to generate Common Event Infrastructure logging events.

Results

You have planned all the initial configuration parameters for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager. You can change any of these setting anytime later using the administrative console.

Planning for the people directory provider

Plan the people directory provider, people substitution, virtual member manager, and Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) settings for Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. If you are going to use human tasks, decide which people directory providers you will use:

Virtual member manager (VMM) people directory provider

The VMM people directory provider is ready to use federated repositories (also known as virtual member manager) as is preconfigured for WebSphere security – using a file repository. If you want to use a different user repository with federated repositories, you will need to reconfigure federated repositories. The VMM people directory provider supports all Business Process Choreographer people assignment features including substitution. It relies on the features provided by federated repositories, such as support for different repository types, such as LDAP, database, file based, and property extension repository.

To use the VMM people directory provider requires that you have configured federated repositories for WebSphere Application Server security. You can associate federated repositories with one or more user

repositories, based on a file, LDAP, or a database. For more information about this, see Managing the realm in a federated repository configuration. For more information about using federated repositories, see IBM WebSphere Developer Technical Journal.

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider

This people directory provider must be configured before you can use it. Perform the planning in step 2.

System people directory provider

This people directory provider can be used without configuring it. Do not use this provider for a production system, it is only intended for application development testing.

User registry people directory provider

This people directory provider can be used without configuring it. Depending on the WebSphere security realm definition, the user registry can use one of the following repositories:

- Federated repository – which can use the following:
 - File registry
 - One or more LDAPs
 - One or more databases
- Standalone LDAP
- Standalone custom
- Local operating system

2. If you are going to use the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), plan the following.
 - a. You might need to customize your own version of the LDAPTransformation.xml file. For the location of that file and a list of properties that you might need to customize, see “Configuring the LDAP people directory provider” on page 199.
 - b. Plan the following LDAP custom properties:

LDAP plug-in property	Required or optional	Description
AuthenticationAlias	Optional	The authentication alias used to connect to LDAP, for example, mycomputer/My LDAP Alias. You must define this alias in the administrative console by clicking Security → Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure → Java Authentication and Authorization Service → J2C Authentication Data . If this alias is not set or if AuthenticationType is not set to simple then an anonymous logon to the LDAP server is used.
AuthenticationType	Optional	If this property is set to simple, for simple authentication, then the AuthenticationAlias parameter is required. Otherwise, if it is not set, anonymous authentication is used.
BaseDN	Required	The base distinguished name (DN) for all LDAP search operations, for example, o=mycompany, c=us. To specify the directory root, specify an empty string using two single quotes, ''.
Casesentiveness ForObjectclasses	Optional	Determines whether the names of LDAP object classes are case-sensitive.
ContextFactory	Required	Sets the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) context factory, for example, com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory

LDAP plug-in property	Required or optional	Description
ProviderURL	Required	This Web address must point to the LDAP JNDI directory server and port. The format must be in normal JNDI syntax, for example, <code>ldap://localhost:389</code> . For SSL connections, use the LDAP's URL. For a high availability configuration, where you have two or more LDAP servers that maintain mirrored data, plan to specify a URL for each LDAP server and use the space character to separate them.
SearchScope	Required	The default search scope for all search operations. Determines how deep to search beneath the baseDN property. Specify one of the following values: <code>objectScope</code> , <code>oneLevelScope</code> , or <code>subtreeScope</code>
additionalParameter Name1-5 and additionalParameter Value1-5	Optional	Use these name-value pairs to set up to five arbitrary JNDI properties for the connection to the LDAP server.

3. If you are going to use the virtual member manager, plan the following.
 - a. You might need to customize your own version of the `VMMTransformation.xml` file. For the location of that file and a list of properties that you might need to customize, refer to “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198.
4. If you want to use people substitution, consider the following:
 - You must use the VMM people directory provider. The LDAP, system, and user registry people directory providers do not support people substitution.
 - If you are going to use people substitution in a production environment, plan to use the VMM Property Extension Repository to store the substitution information. The Property Extension Repository and, implicitly, the selected database must be unique and accessible from within the whole cell. As the BPEDB database is not necessarily unique within a cell, BPEDB cannot be used. You can use the common database, WPSRCDB, to host the Property Extension Repository, however, for a production environment, it is recommended to use a database that is independent of other WebSphere Process Server databases.
 - To use people substitution in a single-server test environment, you can store people substitution information in the internal file registry that is configured for federated repositories.

Results

You have planned the people directory provider and people assignment options.

Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Plan the configuration options and parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

About this task

If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer you can either configure it at the same time as you configure Business Process Choreographer, or you can do it later. The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is optional.

Procedure

1. Decide how many Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances you want to configure. You can easily create the first instance while configuring Business Process Choreographer. Possible reasons and considerations include:
 - Because each Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance can only connect to one Business Process Choreographer configuration, if you have more than one Business Process Choreographer configuration in your environment, it makes sense to set up a Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance for each configuration.
 - You might want to have two or more different customized versions of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer connecting to the same Business Process Choreographer configuration. You can customize each version independently, for more information about what you can customize, see “Customizing Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 352.
 - You can configure multiple Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances on each server or cluster.
 - The instances can be created on any deployment target regardless of where there are Business Process Choreographer or Business Process Choreographer event collector configurations.
 - Because each Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance’s reporting function can only connect to one Business Process Choreographer event collector, plan to configure equal numbers of Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances with the reporting function as there are Business Process Choreographer event collectors.
2. For each Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance that you want, plan the following:
 - a. The context root for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. It must be unique within the cell. The default is /bpc.
 - b. The URL for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer that will be inserted in escalation e-mails.
 - c. The URL for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager representational state transfer (REST) APIs endpoints. They must match the values for the context roots that you planned for the REST APIs. For example, if the context root for the Human Task Manager Web service is /rest/bpm/htm, the endpoint URL for the Human Task Manager REST API endpoint would be `http://hostname:port/rest/bpm/htm`.
 - d. The maximum number of results to be returned for a query - the default is 10000.
 - e. The deployment target (server or cluster) of the Business Process Choreographer instance that this Business Process Choreographer Explorer will manage.
 - f. Optional: If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, perform “Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 134. You can also plan and configure it later.

Results

You have planned the configuration options for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

Plan to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector.

About this task

If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, you can either configure it when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, or you can do it later.

Procedure

1. Because security roles are not used to restrict access to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, if you do not want all Business Process Choreographer Explorer users to have access to the reporting function, plan to configure a separate Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance for the reporting function, and make it inaccessible to normal users.
2. Understand the purpose and relationships between the different Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function topology elements.

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Before version 6.2, this feature was available as the Business Process Choreographer Observer. Since version 6.2, this feature is integrated in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and is available on the **Reports** tab. You must configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function before you can use it.

The event collector application.

This application must be deployed on a server or cluster where the Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) server is configured. You can only have one event collector on each CEI deployment target. It does not need to be deployed where Business Process Choreographer has been configured. It receives business process events from CEI, transforms them, and writes them to the reporting database.

The reporting database.

The event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function communicate by using the same database. For non-production systems, the database can be shared with other components.

Your choices are independent of the topology you have for your Business Process Choreographer setup. For more insight into the possibilities, see “Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function overview” on page 139.

3. Identify the purpose of your setup, your system requirements, and the topology implications.

Simple setup

For simpler configuration and administration, but lower performance, deploy the event collector application on the same deployment target as you have the Business Process Choreographer Explorer and CEI configured on, and use a local database system.

High load production system: network deployment

Use a cell of multiple nodes, with multiple clusters. Install instances of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer on any deployment

targets in the cell. Install the event collector application on the cluster where you have configured the Common Event Infrastructure (CEI). Use a separate database server.

4. If you have not already planned the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, perform “Planning the reporting database” on page 123.
5. For each event collector instance that you want to configure, plan the following:
 - a. Decide where you will install it. You can only install one event collector instance per deployment target, and the deployment target must have CEI configured on it.
 - b. Decide how you will configure this event collector instance:
 - Using the administrative console page. For more information about this option, see “Using the administrative console to configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector” on page 258.
 - Using the interactive setupEventCollector tool. For more information about this option, see “Using the setupEventCollector tool to configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector” on page 255.
 - At the same time as creating a Business Process Choreographer configuration, using the bpeconfig.jacl script. The -createEventCollector option has the default value yes.

Note: Do not use bpeconfig.jacl to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function for a high-performance system, because bpeconfig.jacl will configure the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function applications on the same deployment target as the Business Process Choreographer configuration. For more information about this option, see “Using the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154.

You cannot use bpeconfig.jacl to configure the event collector in interactive mode.

- c. Plan the data source:
 - If the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function shares the same physical database as Business Process Choreographer, plan to use a separate data source for the reporting database, and plan its JNDI name.
 - Plan an authentication alias that will be used for the database.
 - Plan to create the data source with a cell scope.
- d. Plan the configuration parameters required when configuring the event collector:
 - The JNDI data source name for the reporting database.
 - The schema to be used for the database objects. The default is the user ID that is used to connect to the database.
 - The user ID to use to connect to the database. The default depends on the database: For DB2 the default is db2admin, for Oracle the default is system, and for other databases the default is the user ID of the logged on user.
 - The password for the user ID.
 - If you are using a type 4 JDBC connection, also collect the host name or IP address of the database server and the port number that it uses

- Decide where the event collector will be deployed. The deployment target must have CEI configured on it, so if you have a separate cluster for CEI, plan to deploy the event collector on the same cluster.
 - If you will deploy the event collector in a network deployment environment, know on which deployment target the messaging engine for the CEI bus is configured.
 - If the CEI bus has security enabled, plan the JMS user ID that will be used to authenticate with the CEI bus.
 - Decide whether you want to enable CEI event logging business events when configuring the event collector, or whether you will enable it later using the administrative console or by running a script.
- e. Plan the runtime configuration values, which you might need to customize to suit your needs after configuring the event collector:
- BpcEventTransformerEventCount
 - BpcEventTransformerMaxWaitTime
 - BpcEventTransformerToleranceTime
 - ObserverCreateTables
 - If the authentication alias user ID will not own the database schema, plan the ObserverSchemaName.

For more information about these values, see “Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 263.

6. For each Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function that you configure, plan the following:
- Decide how you will configure this instance:
 - At the same time as creating the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, using the administrative console page for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. For more information about this option, see “Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 260.
 - At the same time as creating the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, using the clientconfig.jacl script.
 - At the same time as creating a Business Process Choreographer configuration, using the bpeconfig.jacl script.

Note: Do not use bpeconfig.jacl to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function for a high-performance system, because bpeconfig.jacl will configure the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function applications on the same deployment target as the Business Process Choreographer configuration. For more information about this option, see “Using the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154.

- The schema name for the reporting database.
 - The JNDI name for the data source that is used by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer to connect to the reporting database.
7. If you will use the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer:
- When the script is run in batch mode, the default is that it will also configure the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer

applications, and that they will be configured on the same deployment target as the Business Process Choreographer configuration.

- If you do not want bpeconfig.jacl to configure one or both of the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, plan to use one or both of the bpeconfig.jacl options `-createEventCollector no` and `-reportFunction no`, which prevent bpeconfig.jacl from configuring them.

Results

You have planned the configuration options for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector.

Planning for a remote client application

Planning for a remote Business Process Choreographer client application that uses the Business Process Choreographer APIs and runs on a WebSphere Process Server client installation.

About this task

If you want an application to use the Business Process Choreographer APIs, you can use a WebSphere Process Server client installation to run the applications remotely against a full WebSphere Process Server server installation. The client is easier to configure and administer than a full WebSphere Process Server installation.

The WebSphere Process Server client installation does not contain WebSphere Process Server profile templates, and does not need to augment the underlying WebSphere Application Server profile. This means that you can even install the WebSphere Process Server client on top of an existing WebSphere Application Server installation that has federated profiles and those federated WebSphere Application Server profiles can take advantage of the WebSphere Process Server client functionality immediately. This scenario is not possible with the full WebSphere Process Server server because WebSphere Process Server does not support augmentation of already federated profiles.

Procedure

1. Plan to install a WebSphere Process Server client.
 - You can install it on an existing WebSphere Application Server that matches the version of the WebSphere Process Server client, for example, WebSphere Portal Server 6.1.0 includes WebSphere Application Server 6.1.0, which would need a WebSphere Process Server 6.1.0 client installation and WebSphere Portal Server 6.0.1 includes WebSphere Application Server 6.0.2, which would need a WebSphere Process Server 6.0.2 client installation. Any existing profiles, including already federated profiles, can use WebSphere Process Server client immediately, because the client installation does not augment the base profile.
 - If there is no existing WebSphere Application Server installation, a WebSphere Application Server network deployment installation will be created.
2. Decide which type of Business Process Choreographer client application you will use:
 - Custom client application
 - Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Note: If you use customized JavaServer Pages (JSP), as described in Chapter 15, “Developing JSP pages for task and process messages,” on page 609, make sure that you know where they are located.

3. If you are going to develop a custom client application that will use Business Process Choreographer, plan which interfaces the application will use. You can handle processes and tasks using one of the following:
 - Web services API, Java Messaging Service (JMS) API or representational state transfer (REST) API – remote client applications that are based on these APIs do not need any WebSphere Process Server installation.
 - JavaServer Faces (JSF) components
 - Enterprise JavaBeans™ (EJB) API

Note: If you develop a client application, which uses the Business Process Choreographer EJB APIs, it must be packaged in the way that is described in “Accessing the remote interface of the session bean” on page 492.

4. Decide or identify the type of cell where the WebSphere Process Server client will be installed:
 - a. In a cell where a managed server or cluster is located, on which Business Process Choreographer is configured, the default configuration of the Remote Artifact Loader (RAL) allows the unsecured transmission of artifacts between the client and the server. This is known as the “single-cell” scenario.
 - b. In a cell that does not have a managed server or cluster with Business Process Choreographer configured on it, there are different deployment managers. This is known as the “cross-cell” scenario. If your client application uses the EJB API, you must define a namespace binding so that the client application can locate the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured.

Results

You have planned for a remote Business Process Choreographer client application.

Business Process Choreographer overview

Describes the facilities provided by the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager.

Business Process Choreographer is an enterprise workflow engine that supports both business processes and human tasks in a WebSphere Application Server environment. These constructs can be used to orchestrate services as well as integrate activities that involve people in business processes. Business Process Choreographer manages the life cycle of business processes and human tasks, navigates through the associated model, and invokes the appropriate services.

Business Process Choreographer provides the following facilities:

- Support for business processes and human tasks. Business processes offer the standard way to model your business process using the Web Services Business Process Execution Language (WS-BPEL, abbreviated to BPEL). With human tasks, you can use the Task Execution Language (TEL) to model activities that involve people. Both business processes and human tasks are exposed as services in a service-oriented architecture (SOA) or Service Component Architecture (SCA); they also support simple data objects and business objects.

- Application programming interfaces for developing customized applications for interacting with business processes and human tasks.
- Business Process Choreographer Explorer. This Web application allows you to administer business processes and human tasks. It also includes the optional Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, formerly known as the Business Process Choreographer Observer, which allows you to observe the states of running processes.
- Human workflow widgets as part of Business Space. These widgets allow you to manage work, create tasks for other people, and initiate services and processes.

Related tasks

Planning to configure Business Process Choreographer

Plan your Business Process Choreographer setup and configuration parameters.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer overview

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is a Web application that implements a generic Web user interface for interacting with business processes and human tasks.

It also includes an optional reporting function, which was previously known as the Business Process Choreographer Observer.

You can configure one or more Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances on a server or cluster. It is sufficient to have a WebSphere Process Server installation with a WebSphere Process Server profile, or a WebSphere Process Server client installation – it is not necessary to have Business Process Choreographer configured on the server or cluster. The WebSphere Process Server client installation is only the infrastructure that you need to connect a client to a WebSphere Process Server, it does not contain the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. Use the deployment manager to install the Business Process Choreographer Explorer on the servers in the WebSphere Process Server client installation as well.

A single Business Process Choreographer Explorer can only connect to one Business Process Choreographer configuration, though it does not have to connect to a local configuration. However, you can configure multiple instances of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer on the same server or cluster, and each instance can connect to different Business Process Choreographer configurations.

When you start Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the objects that you see in the user interface and the actions that you can take depend on the user group that you belong to and the authorization granted to that group. For example, if you are a business process administrator, you are responsible for the smooth operation of deployed business processes. You can view information about process and task templates, process instances, task instances, and their associated objects. You can also act on these objects; for example, you can start new process instances, create and start tasks, repair and restart failed activities, manage work items, and delete completed process instances and task instances. However, if you are a user, you can view and act on only those tasks that have been assigned to you.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function overview

About Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

You can use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function to create reports on processes that have been completed. You can also use it to view the status of running processes. This describes the architecture and possible configuration paths.

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function uses the Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) to collect events that are emitted by WebSphere Process Server. You can either use a number of predefined reports or define your own reports to get an overview of the number of processes, activities, or other aggregate data. You can also get information about specific processes or activities.

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is based on two J2EE enterprise applications, which are shown in the following figure:

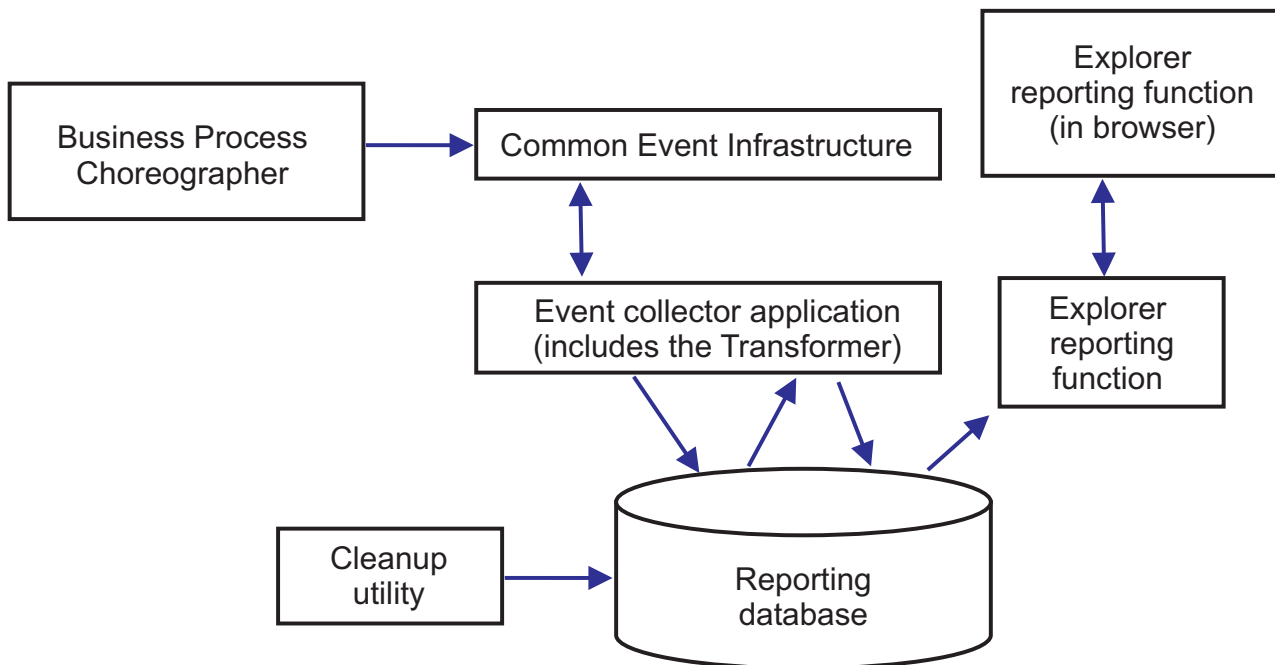


Figure 1. Architecture

- The event collector application reads event information from the CEI bus and stores it in the event collector table in the reporting database.
- The reporting database is a set of database tables that store the event data.
- Periodically the event transformer is triggered, which transforms the raw event data into a format that is suitable for queries from the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
- The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function generates the reports and performs other actions that the user can initiate using the graphical user interface (GUI).
- You can use the GUI to generate your reports. You can also store and retrieve reports that you have defined.
- A cleanup utility can be used to remove records from the database, which can help to improve the performance.

Simple configurations

A simple configuration, where performance is not an important consideration is illustrated in the following figure.

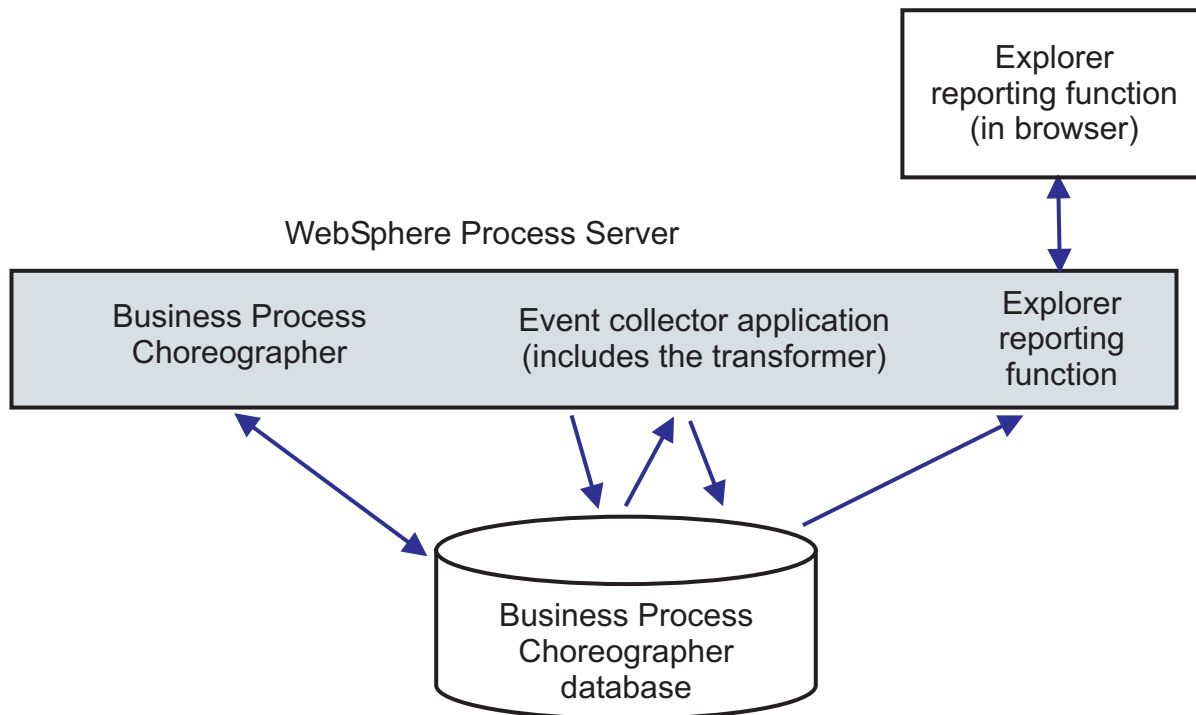


Figure 2. Stand-alone setup

Everything is installed on a single system, and Business Process Choreographer and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function use the same database.

This kind of simple configuration is created if you create a sample Business Process Choreographer configuration. Also the `bpeconfig.jacl` tool defaults to configuring this kind of setup on the same deployment target as the Business Process Choreographer configuration. Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) logging will be enabled and the necessary database schema is created in the Business Process Choreographer Derby database BPEDB. This configuration path can be ideal if performance is not an important consideration.

High-performance configurations

Interactive configuration tools are provided which give you the freedom to exploit the full potential of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function architecture. For example, in an ideal configuration for performance, the Business Process Choreographer configuration, CEI event server, and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer (with reporting function) run on separate systems, and Business Process Choreographer and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function have their own databases.

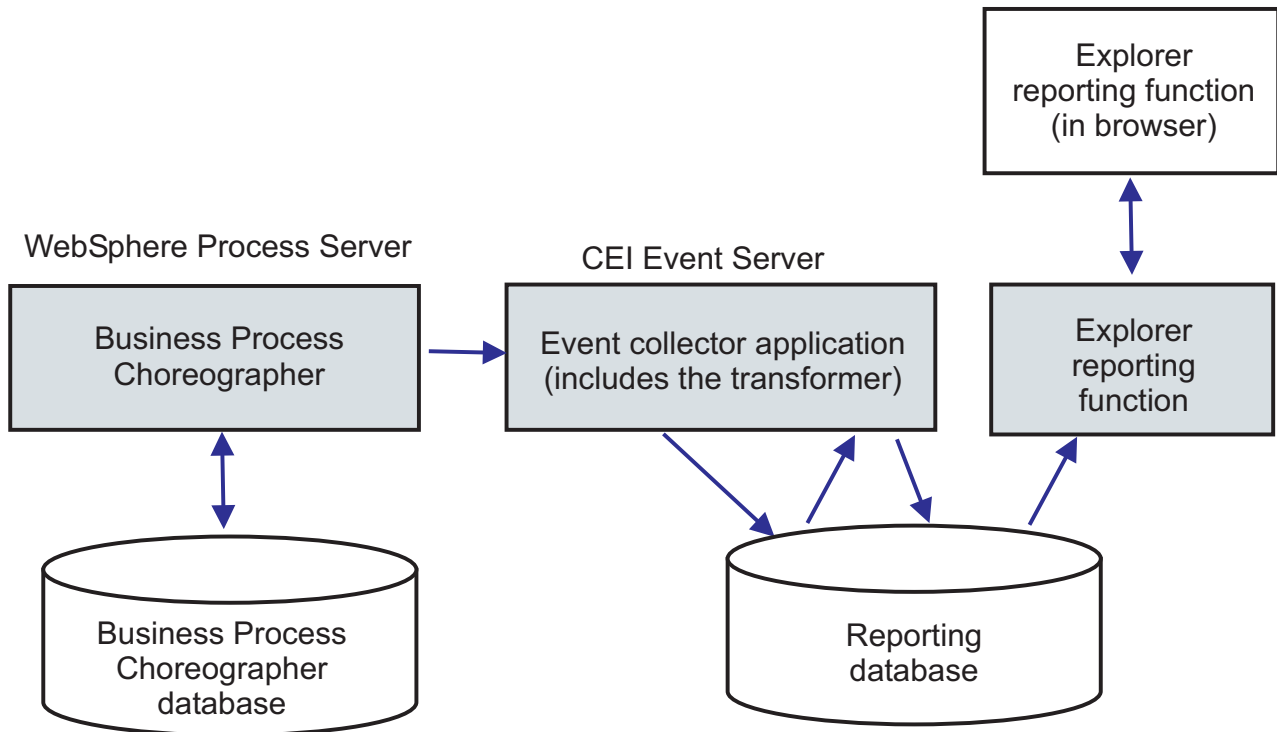


Figure 3. Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting setup for production performance

If you want to use a separate database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, or to add the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function to an existing Business Process Choreographer configuration in a clustered setup, or to use more sophisticated database options, perform “Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector” on page 213.

In a network deployment environment

The following constraints apply if you want to configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function in a network deployment environment.

- CEI must be configured in your cell.
- As illustrated in the previous figure, the Business Process Choreographer event collector must be configured on a deployment target where the CEI Event server is configured. If the CEI Event server is configured on a different cluster than Business Process Choreographer, you must configure the Business Process Choreographer event collector on a deployment target where the CEI Event server is configured. The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function application does not need to be installed on the same system as the event collector.

Chapter 4. Configuring Business Process Choreographer

You must configure Business Process Choreographer on a server or cluster before you install any enterprise applications that contain business processes, human tasks, or both.

Before you begin

It is important that you have completed Chapter 3, “Planning to configure Business Process Choreographer,” on page 95.

About this task

For each server or cluster where you want to configure Business Process Choreographer, and depending on the configuration path that you have chosen, perform one of the following.

- For any of the following non-production configuration paths:
 - “Basic sample”
 - “Sample with organization”
 - “Non-production deployment environment”

Perform “Using the Installer or Profile Management Tool to configure Business Process Choreographer.”

- For the “Production deployment environment” configuration path, perform “Using the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 146.
- For the “Flexible custom configuration” configuration path, perform the actions described for the configuration tool that you want to use:
 - “Using the administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page” on page 149.
 - “Using the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is configured.

What to do next

- To create more Business Process Choreographer configurations on other servers or clusters, repeat this task.
- If you have not configured the Common Event Infrastructure yet, perform Configuring Common Event Infrastructure.

Using the Installer or Profile Management Tool to configure Business Process Choreographer

There are five easy ways to create a non-production Business Process Choreographer configuration.

Before you begin

You have completed “Planning to create a basic sample Business Process Choreographer configuration” on page 101 and you have decided which flavor of non-production system you want, as summarized in Table 5 on page 98.

Procedure

1. Depending on the configuration path you selected, perform one of steps 1a - 1c.
 - a. If you want the “Basic sample” Business Process Choreographer configuration which does not include a sample organization for people assignment and substitution:
 - 1) Start the Installer or Profile Management Tool.
 - For the Installer:
 - Make sure that you select the **Typical Installation** option.
 - Make sure that you select the **Stand-alone server** option.
 - Make sure that you enable **Administrative security**.
 - For the Profile Management Tool:
 - Make sure that you create a **WebSphere Process Server** profile.
 - Make sure that you select the **Stand-alone server profile** option.
 - Make sure that you select the **Typical** profile creation option.
 - Make sure that you select **Enable administrative security**.
 - b. If you want the “Sample with organization” Business Process Choreographer configuration which includes a sample 15 person organization for people assignment and substitution:
 - 1) Start the Profile Management Tool.
 - 2) Make sure that you create a **WebSphere Process Server** profile.
 - 3) Make sure that you select the **Stand-alone server profile** option.
 - 4) Make sure that you select the **Advanced** option.
 - 5) Make sure that you select the **Create server from development template** option.
 - 6) Make sure that you select **Enable administrative security**.
 - 7) Make sure that you select **Configure a sample Business Process Choreographer**.
 - c. If you want a “Non-production deployment environment” Business Process Choreographer configuration based on a deployment environment pattern:
 - 1) Start the Installer or Profile Management Tool.
 - For the Installer:
 - Make sure that you select the **Deployment environment installation** option.
 - Make sure that you create a deployment manager.
 - You can base the Business Process Choreographer configuration on any of the following patterns:
 - Remote Messaging and Remote Support
 - Remote Messaging
 - Single Cluster
 - Make sure that you enable **Administrative security**, otherwise you will not get a Business Process Choreographer configuration.

- For the Profile Management Tool:
 - Make sure that you create a **WebSphere Process Server** profile.
 - Make sure that you select the **Deployment manager profile** option.
 - You can base the Business Process Choreographer configuration on any of the following patterns:
 - Remote Messaging and Remote Support
 - Remote Messaging
 - Single Cluster
 - Make sure that you enable **Administrative security**, otherwise you will not get the Business Process Choreographer sample.
- 2) Create and federate the custom profiles.
2. Optional: Perform “Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works” on page 276.
 3. Optional: If you want to change the JMS authentication user IDs, the run-as user IDs, or the mappings of roles onto users and groups, click **Security** → **Business Integration security** to change the security settings.
 4. If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a clustered environment:
 - a. Map the Web modules for the BPEContainer and TaskContainer applications to a Web server to achieve load balancing and failover.
 - b. If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, you must change the default context roots for the REST API so that they are unique for each combination of host name and port. To set the context roots perform the following:
 - 1) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 2) Make sure that the context root for the Web module BFMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 3) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **TaskContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 4) Make sure that the context root for the Web module HTMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 5) If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**, and set the new value. For example, if the context root for the Business Flow Manager REST API is /rest/bpm/bfm then the full URL might be something like http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm.
 - 6) If you use the Business Space: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click either **Business Flow Manager** or **Human Task Manager**, then under **Additional Properties** click **REST Service Endpoint**, and set the new value.
 5. Optional: Change settings for the Human Task Manager:

- If you want to change any of the Human Task Manager settings for the escalation e-mails, such as the sender address or the URL prefix for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and make your changes.
 - If you want to change the e-mail server address, port number, the user ID, or password for the e-mail server, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail sessions**, select **Cell** scope, then click **HTM mail session_suffix**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or *cluster_name*, depending on where Business Process Choreographer is configured. Make your changes.
6. Depending on the type of people directory provider that you use for people assignment, you might need to configure it:
 - The system and user registry people directory providers can be used without configuring them.
 - If you are using Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), perform “Configuring the LDAP people directory provider” on page 199.
 - If you are using the Virtual Member Manager (VMM), perform “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198.
 7. Optional: If you configured VMM, and you want to use people substitution, perform “Configuring people substitution” on page 205.
 8. Optional: If you want to use group work items, use the administrative console to enable them. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and select **Enable group work items**.
 9. Optional: If you want to configure a remote Business Process Choreographer client that uses the WebSphere Process Server client, perform, “Configuring a remote client application” on page 271.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is configured.

Using the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard to configure Business Process Choreographer

Using the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard, you can create a pattern-based configuration that includes Business Process Choreographer. If the Business Process Choreographer configuration has its own database, the configuration can be suitable for a production system.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning to use the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard” on page 104.

Procedure

1. Start the deployment environment wizard. In the administrative console click **Servers** → **Deployment Environments** → **New**. As you enter other

configuration parameters, make sure that you enter the values that you planned in “Planning to use the administrative console’s deployment environment wizard” on page 104:

- a. You can base the Business Process Choreographer configuration on any of the following patterns:
 - Remote Messaging and Remote Support
 - Remote Messaging
 - Single Cluster
 - Custom
 - b. On the security page, you can set the user name and password that will be used as the authentication alias for Business Process Choreographer, which is identified as component WBI_BPC.
 - c. On the database page, if you want to use separate databases for Business Process Choreographer, the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, or the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, change the default data sources from the default values to the values that you planned.
 - d. On the Business Process Choreographer page, specify the context roots, security parameters, and mail session parameters that you planned for this configuration.
2. If you specified a separate database for Business Process Choreographer, perform “Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182. Otherwise, if you did not specify a separate database and you are not using a Derby database, make sure that the empty database exists so that Business Process Choreographer can create the default schema in the database the first time that it accesses the database.
 3. If you specified a separate database for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, perform “Preparing the reporting database” on page 214. Otherwise, for a non-Derby database, make sure that the empty database exists so that Business Process Choreographer can create the default schema in the database the first time that it accesses the database.
 4. If you specified a separate database for Business Process Choreographer messaging engine, make sure that the database exists.
 - If you want to use the **Create tables** option to have the messaging engine create the default schema the first time that it uses the database, grant the database user ID the rights to create tables and views in the schema that you planned to use.
 - Otherwise, if you will **not** use the **Create tables** option, create the tables before the default messaging provider tries to access the database. You can use the sibDDLGenerator utility that is in the bin subdirectory of your *install_root* directory to generate a DDL file that can be used to create the tables.
 5. For each node where you want to configure Business Process Choreographer, make sure that the environment variables for the JDBC drivers are set. On a cluster, you must perform this for every node that hosts a cluster member.
 - a. Click **Environment** → **WebSphere variables**, for **Scope**, select the node where Business Process Choreographer will be configured.
 - b. Select the environment variable for your JDBC provider:
 - For Derby, you do not need to set any environment variable.
 - For DB2 on Linux, UNIX, Windows, or z/OS, using the Universal driver, select DB2UNIVERSAL_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.

- For DB2 on i5/OS, using the native driver, select OS400_NATIVE_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For DB2 on i5/OS, using the toolbox driver, select OS400_TOOLBOX_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Oracle, select ORACLE_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Informix, select INFORMIX_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the WebSphere embedded ConnectJDBC driver you do not need to set any environment variable.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the DataDirect ConnectJDBC type-4 driver, select CONNECTJDBC_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC Driver, select MICROSOFT_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH
- c. Set the environment variable to point to the location of the JDBC driver's JAR file, or files.
6. Activate Business Process Choreographer: Perform "Activating Business Process Choreographer" on page 275.
 7. Optional: Verify that the basic Business Process Choreographer configuration works: Perform "Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works" on page 276.
 8. Optional: Change settings for the Human Task Manager:
 - If you want to change any of the Human Task Manager settings for the escalation e-mails, such as the sender address or the URL prefix for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and make your changes.
 - If you want to change the e-mail server address, port number, the user ID, or password for the e-mail server, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail sessions**, select **Cell** scope, then click **HTM mail session_suffix**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or *cluster_name*, depending on where Business Process Choreographer is configured. Make your changes.
 9. If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a clustered environment:
 - a. Map the Web modules for the BPEContainer and TaskContainer applications to a Web server to achieve load balancing and failover.
 - b. If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, you must change the default context roots for the REST API so that they are unique for each combination of host name and port. To set the context roots perform the following:
 - 1) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 2) Make sure that the context root for the Web module BFMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 3) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **TaskContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.

- 4) Make sure that the context root for the Web module HTMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 5) If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**, and set the new value. For example, if the context root for the Business Flow Manager REST API is /rest/bpm/bfm then the full URL might be something like http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm.
 - 6) If you use the Business Space: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click either **Business Flow Manager** or **Human Task Manager**, then under **Additional Properties** click **REST Service Endpoint**, and set the new value.
10. Depending on the type of people directory provider that you use for people assignment, you might need to configure it:
 - The system and user registry people directory providers can be used without configuring them.
 - If you are using Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), perform “Configuring the LDAP people directory provider” on page 199.
 - If you are using the Virtual Member Manager (VMM), perform “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198.
 11. Optional: If you configured VMM, and you want to use people substitution, perform “Configuring people substitution” on page 205.
 12. Optional: If you want to use group work items, use the administrative console to enable them. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and select **Enable group work items**.
 13. Optional: If you want to configure a remote Business Process Choreographer client that uses the WebSphere Process Server client, perform, “Configuring a remote client application” on page 271.
 14. If you have WebSphere application security enabled and you have a long-running process that calls a remote EJB method, make sure that your Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 (CSIV2) inbound authentication configuration has CSIV2 identity assertion enabled. For more information about this, refer to Configuring Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 inbound authentication.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is configured for the deployment environment that you selected.

Using the administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page

Describes how to use the administrative console’s Business Process Choreographer configuration page to create a configuration on a given server or cluster.

About this task

You must configure the necessary resources and install the Business Process Choreographer applications before you can run applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Procedure

1. If you selected the Business Process Choreographer sample configuration option when you created a default profile, the Business Flow Manager, Human Task Manager, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function are already configured.

You can check if they are configured, by looking in the administrative console for enterprise applications with names that start with:

- BPCECollector
- BPCEExplorer
- BPEContainer
- HTM_PredefinedTasksMsg
- HTM_PredefinedTasks
- TaskContainer

The sample configuration uses a Derby database, and is not suitable for a production system. Because you can only have one Business Process Choreographer configuration on a deployment target, you must remove the sample configuration, as described in Chapter 5, “Removing the Business Process Choreographer configuration,” on page 279 before you can continue configuring Business Process Choreographer.

2. If you have a network deployment environment, make sure that the Service Component Architecture (SCA) is configured:
 - a. If you want to configure Business Process Choreographer on a server, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *serverName*, then in the **Business Integration** section, click **Service Component Architecture**.
 - b. If you want to configure Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *clusterName*, then in the **Business Integration** section, click **Service Component Architecture**.
 - c. If it is not enabled, select **Support the Service Component Architecture components**, then click **Apply** and **Save**.
3. Create the Business Process Choreographer BPEDB database:
 - If you want to use the **Create tables** option on the Business Process Choreographer configuration page, to have Business Process Choreographer create the default schema the first time that it uses the database, perform the following:
 - a. If the database does not already exist, create an empty database using the database tool of your choice.
 - b. Grant the database user ID the rights to create tables and views in the schema that you planned to use.
 - Otherwise, if you will **not** use the **Create tables** option, create the tables before Business Process Choreographer tries to access the database. You can use the SQL scripts that are generated by the administrative console wizard to create the tables, as described in “Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182.
4. Create the database for the data store for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine:

- If you want to use the **Create tables** option on the Business Process Choreographer configuration page, to have the messaging engine create the default schema the first time that it uses the database, perform the following:
 - a. If the database does not already exist, create an empty database using the database tool of your choice.
 - b. Grant the database user ID the rights to create tables and views in the schema that you planned to use.
 - Otherwise, if you will **not** use the **Create tables** option, create the tables before the default messaging provider tries to access the database. You can use the sibDDLGenerator utility that is in the bin subdirectory of your *install_root* directory to generate a DDL file that can be used to create the tables.
5. For each node where you want to configure Business Process Choreographer, make sure that the environment variables for the JDBC drivers are set. On a cluster, you must perform this for every node that hosts a cluster member.
 - a. Click **Environment** → **WebSphere variables**, for **Scope**, select the node where Business Process Choreographer will be configured.
 - b. Select the environment variable for your JDBC provider:
 - For Derby, you do not need to set any environment variable.
 - For DB2 on Linux, UNIX, Windows, or z/OS, using the Universal driver, select DB2UNIVERSAL_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For DB2 on i5/OS, using the native driver, select OS400_NATIVE_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For DB2 on i5/OS, using the toolbox driver, select OS400_TOOLBOX_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Oracle, select ORACLE_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Informix, select INFORMIX_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the WebSphere embedded ConnectJDBC driver you do not need to set any environment variable.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the DataDirect ConnectJDBC type-4 driver, select CONNECTJDBC_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH.
 - For Microsoft SQL Server using the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC Driver, select MICROSOFT_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH
 - c. Set the environment variable to point to the location of the JDBC driver's JAR file, or files.
 6. In the administrative console, select the server or cluster where you want to configure Business Process Choreographer. Click one of the following:
 - **Servers** → **Application Servers** → *serverName*
 - **Servers** → **Clusters** → *clusterName*
 Where *serverName* or *clusterName* is the name of the server or cluster.
 7. Go to the Business Process Choreographer configuration page: In the **Business Integration** section, expand **Business Process Choreographer** and click **Business Process Choreographer Containers**.
 8. Verify that Business Process Choreographer is not configured. There should be a message indicating that the Business Process Choreographer containers (Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager) are not currently installed.

If the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager are already installed, perform Chapter 5, “Removing the Business Process Choreographer configuration,” on page 279 before continuing with the next step.

9. Enter the values and select the options that you planned for the Business Process Choreographer configuration on this server or cluster.
10. Click **Apply**. Information is displayed reporting the progress deploying and configuring Business Process Choreographer.
11. If the installation succeeded, click **Save Changes**. Otherwise, discard the changes, check the administrative console and the SystemOut.log file on the Deployment Manager or server for any error messages that can help you correct the problem, then try again.
12. To create the database schema, you or your database administrator should perform the actions described in “Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182 before you activate Business Process Choreographer in step 13.

Note: If your database will exist by the time you activate Business Process Choreographer in step 9 on page 160, and you do not perform the actions described in “Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182, the default schema will be created the first time that Business Process Choreographer accesses the database.

13. Activate Business Process Choreographer: Perform “Activating Business Process Choreographer” on page 275.
14. Optional: Verify that the basic Business Process Choreographer configuration works: Perform “Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works” on page 276.
15. Optional: Change settings for the Human Task Manager:
 - If you want to change any of the Human Task Manager settings for the escalation e-mails, such as the sender address or the URL prefix for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and make your changes.
 - If you want to change the e-mail server address, port number, the user ID, or password for the e-mail server, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail sessions**, select **Cell** scope, then click **HTM mail session_suffix**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or *cluster_name*, depending on where Business Process Choreographer is configured. Make your changes.
16. Depending on the type of people directory provider that you use for people assignment, you might need to configure it:
 - The system and user registry people directory providers can be used without configuring them.
 - If you are using Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), perform “Configuring the LDAP people directory provider” on page 199.
 - If you are using the Virtual Member Manager (VMM), perform “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198.
17. Optional: If you configured VMM, and you want to use people substitution, perform “Configuring people substitution” on page 205.

18. Optional: If you want to use group work items, use the administrative console to enable them. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and select **Enable group work items**.
19. If you have WebSphere application security enabled and you have a long-running process that calls a remote EJB method, make sure that your Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 (CSIv2) inbound authentication configuration has CSIv2 identity assertion enabled. For more information about this, refer to Configuring Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 inbound authentication.
20. If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a clustered environment:
 - a. Map the Web modules for the BPEContainer and TaskContainer applications to a Web server to achieve load balancing and failover.
 - b. If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, you must change the default context roots for the REST API so that they are unique for each combination of host name and port. To set the context roots perform the following:
 - 1) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 2) Make sure that the context root for the Web module BFMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 3) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **TaskContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 4) Make sure that the context root for the Web module HTMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 5) If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**, and set the new value. For example, if the context root for the Business Flow Manager REST API is /rest/bpm/bfm then the full URL might be something like http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm.
 - 6) If you use the Business Space: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click either **Business Flow Manager** or **Human Task Manager**, then under **Additional Properties** click **REST Service Endpoint**, and set the new value.
21. Optional: If you have not yet installed and configured Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can configure it now. Perform “Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 208.
22. Optional: If you want to configure a remote Business Process Choreographer client that uses the WebSphere Process Server client, perform, “Configuring a remote client application” on page 271.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is configured.

Using the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer

Describes how to use the bpeconfig.jacl script to configure Business Process Choreographer and all the necessary resources on a given server or cluster.

Procedure

1. Make sure that you know which options and parameters you are going to use. Refer to the values you planned in Chapter 3, “Planning to configure Business Process Choreographer,” on page 95. If you run the script in batch mode, you must include all required parameters. If you run the script interactively, any required parameters that are not provided on the command line are prompted for. For detailed information about the script, examples, its options and parameters, see “bpeconfig.jacl script file” on page 161.

Option	Description
If the server (or in a network deployment environment, the deployment manager) is not running	Use the option: -conntype NONE Do not use this option if the server (or deployment manager) is running.
If administrative security is enabled	Include the parameters: -user <i>userName</i> -password <i>userPassword</i>
If you are not using the default profile	Include the parameter: -profileName <i>profileName</i>
If you are not configuring Business Process Choreographer on the default server	Include either the parameter: -cluster <i>clusterName</i> or both parameters: -node <i>nodeName</i> -server <i>serverName</i>

Option	Description
<p>Because the script always creates a Business Process Choreographer configuration</p>	<p>Include the parameters required for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager:</p> <pre> {-adminUsers <i>userList</i> -adminGroups <i>groupList</i>} {-monitorUsers <i>userList</i> -monitorGroups <i>groupList</i>} -jmsBFMRUNAsUser <i>userID</i> -jmsBFMRUNAsPwD <i>password</i> -jmsHTMRUNAsUser <i>userID</i> -jmsHTMRUNAsPwD <i>password</i> -contextRootBFMWS <i>contextRootBFMWS</i> -contextRootBFMREST <i>contextRootBFMREST</i> -contextRootHTMWS <i>contextRootHTMWS</i> -contextRootHTMREST <i>contextRootHTMREST</i> [-cleanupUser <i>userID</i> -cleanupPwD <i>password</i>] </pre> <p>For the parameter pairs ending in <i>Users</i> and <i>Groups</i> you must specify either one or both parameters. The two parameters starting with <i>contextRoot</i> are optional.</p>
<p>If you want to enable a simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) server for sending escalation e-mails</p>	<p>Include the parameter:</p> <pre>-mailServerName <i>mailServerName</i></pre> <p>If the mail server requires authentication, also include the parameters:</p> <pre>-mailUser <i>mailUserID</i> -mailPwD <i>mailPassword</i></pre>

Option	Description
<p>Because you can either have the script file create the database, or just have it generate the SQL script without running the scripts</p>	<p>Use the option <code>-createDB { yes no }</code></p> <p>If you select yes, the bpeconfig.jacl script will generate and run an SQL file to create the database objects in the default table space, which is not suitable for a high-performance system. In this case also plan to stop the server and use the <code>-conntype NONE</code> option.</p> <p>If you select no, and the database does not already exist, then you or your database administrator must run the generated SQL script. For a high-performance system, specify no, because you will need to customize the SQL script before running it. Also specify no if you do not have the authority to create the database yourself, so that you can provide the SQL script to your database administrator to customize and run.</p> <p>You must also specify no if you are using a database which has restricted support. Restriction: The script cannot create the following types of databases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DB2 for z/OS • Oracle • A remote Microsoft SQL Server • A remote Informix Dynamic Server <p>If you select yes and you are running the script in connected mode, creating the database or schema can fail if it takes longer than the a default timeout of 3 minutes.</p>

Option	Description
<p>Because every Business Process Choreographer configuration requires access to a database</p>	<p>Include the parameter:</p> <pre>-dbType <i>databaseType</i></pre> <p>Also provide the parameters required for your database type (see “bpeconfig.jacl script file” on page 161 for details):</p> <pre>-dbVersion <i>version</i> -dbHome <i>databaseInstallPath</i> -dbJava <i>JDBCDriverPath</i> -dbName <i>databaseName</i> -dbUser <i>databaseUser</i> -dbPwd <i>databasePassword</i> -dbAdmin <i>databaseAdministratorUserID</i> -driverType <i>JDBCDriverType</i> -dbTablespaceDir <i>databaseTablespacePath</i> -dbServerName <i>databaseServerName</i> -dbServerPort <i>databaseServerPort</i> -dbStorageGroup <i>DB2zOSSStorageGroup</i> -dbConnectionTarget <i>DB2zOSSSubSystem</i> -dbSchema <i>schemaQualifier</i> -dbInstance <i>InformixInstance</i></pre> <p>When running the script in batch mode on a cluster, if your database requires the -dbJava parameter, specify the parameter for each node that hosts a cluster member in the following way:</p> <pre>-dbJava.<i>nodeName</i> <i>JDBCDriverPath</i> _on_<i>nodeName</i></pre> <p>Note: If you are using one of the following databases, bpeconfig.jacl can also create the database instance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A local DB2 for Linux, UNIX, or Windows • DB2 on iSeries • Derby Embedded • Derby Network database and the server is running
<p>Because every Business Process Choreographer configuration uses a JMS provider</p>	<p>Include the parameter:</p> <pre>-mqType { WPM MQSeries }</pre> <p>Also provide the parameters required for your JMS provider (see “bpeconfig.jacl script file” on page 161 for details).</p> <pre>-createQM { yes no } -qmNameGet <i>getQueueManagerName</i> -mqClusterName <i>mqClusterName</i> -qmNamePut <i>putQueueManagerName</i> -mqHome <i>MQInstallationDirectory</i> -mqUser <i>JMSProviderUserID</i> -mqPwd <i>JMSProviderPassword</i></pre> <p>Note: The MQSeries® option is deprecated.</p>

Option	Description
<p>If you are using the <code>-mqType WPM</code> option, and SCA uses a database as its message store, specify the Business Process Choreographer message engine store settings</p>	<p>Include the following parameters:</p> <pre>-mqCreateTables { true false } -mqSchemaName <i>mqSchemaName</i> -medbUser <i>meDatabaseUser</i> -medbPwd <i>meDatabasePassword</i></pre>
<p>Because the script always configures a Business Process Choreographer Explorer</p>	<p>Include any of these parameters:</p> <pre>-contextRootExplorer <i>explorerContextRoot</i> -explorerHost <i>explorerURL</i> -hostName <i>explorerVirtualHostname</i> -maxListEntries <i>maximum</i> -remoteCluster <i>clusterName</i> -remoteNode <i>nodeName</i> -remoteServer <i>serverName</i> -restAPIBFM <i>restAPIURL*</i> -restAPIHTM <i>restAPIURL*</i></pre> <p>To configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, and event collector application, use the options:</p> <pre>-createEventCollector { yes no } -reportFunction { yes no } -reportAtSnapshotRange <i>number</i> -reportCreateTables { true false } -reportDataSource <i>jndiName</i> -reportSchemaName <i>schemaName</i></pre> <p>For more information about these parameters, including default values, see “bpeconfig.jacl script file” on page 161.</p> <p>Note: * In a network deployment environment, <code>-restAPIBFM</code> and <code>-restAPIHTM</code> are required.</p> <p>Restriction: The option <code>-createEventCollector yes</code> is only supported when running the script in batch mode.</p>

2. If you selected the Business Process Choreographer sample configuration option when you created a default profile, the Business Flow Manager, Human Task Manager, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function are already configured.

You can check if they are configured, by looking in the administrative console for enterprise applications with names that start with:

- BPCECollector
- BPCEplorer
- BPEContainer
- HTM_PredefinedTasksMsg
- HTM_PredefinedTasks
- TaskContainer

The sample configuration uses a Derby database, and is not suitable for a production system. Because you can only have one Business Process Choreographer configuration on a deployment target, you must remove the sample configuration, as described in Chapter 5, “Removing the Business

Process Choreographer configuration,” on page 279 before you can continue configuring Business Process Choreographer.

3. If you have a network deployment environment, make sure that the Service Component Architecture (SCA) is configured:
 - a. If you want to configure Business Process Choreographer on a server, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *serverName*, then in the **Business Integration** section, click **Service Component Architecture**.
 - b. If you want to configure Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *clusterName*, then in the **Business Integration** section, click **Service Component Architecture**.
 - c. If it is not enabled, select **Support the Service Component Architecture components**, then click **Apply** and **Save**.
4. If you are using WebSphere Platform Messaging (WPM) as the JMS provider and SCA uses a database other than Derby Embedded as its message store then create the database for the data store for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine:
 - If you want to use the `-mqCreateTables yes` option to have the messaging engine create the default schema the first time that it uses the database, perform the following:
 - a. If the database does not already exist, create it.
 - b. Grant the database user ID the rights to create tables and views in the schema that you planned to use.
 - Otherwise, if you will use the `-mqCreateTables no` option, create the tables before the default messaging provider tries to access the database. You can use the `sibDDLGenerator` utility that is in the `bin` subdirectory of your `install_root` directory to generate a DDL file that can be used to create the tables.
5. If you plan to use the option `-createdB yes` to run the generated SQL scripts to create the database schema:
 - a. If you are using one of the following databases:
 - DB2 for z/OS
 - Oracle
 - a remote Microsoft SQL Server
 - a remote Informix Dynamic Serverand your database does not already exist, create an empty database manually according to the documentation for your database.
 - b. Make sure that the database client, for example `db2.exe`, is on the path for the scripting client.
 - c. Make sure that the application server is stopped.
6. If you either used the `-createdB no` option to defer that creation of the database, or if the `bpeconfig.jacl` script failed create the database, you or your database administrator should perform the actions described in “Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182 before you activate Business Process Choreographer in step 9 on page 160.

Note: If your database is local, and it will exist by the time you activate Business Process Choreographer in step 9 on page 160, and you do not perform the actions described in “Using a generated SQL script to create the

database schema for Business Process Choreographer” on page 182, the default schema will be created the first time that Business Process Choreographer accesses the database.

7. Invoke the `bpeconfig.jacl` script file, either in batch mode providing the options and configuration parameters that you planned, or in interactive mode. For details about the script file, refer to “`bpeconfig.jacl` script file” on page 161.
8. If you are using the WebSphere MQ Java Message Service (JMS) provider, and you used the `-createQM no` option to prevent the script from creating the queue manager and queues, create the queue manager and queues now by performing “Creating the queue manager and queues for Business Process Choreographer” on page 177.
9. Activate Business Process Choreographer: Perform “Activating Business Process Choreographer” on page 275.
10. Optional: Verify that the basic Business Process Choreographer configuration works: Perform “Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works” on page 276.
11. Optional: If you want to change the JMS authentication user IDs, the run-as user IDs, or the mappings of roles onto users and groups, click **Security** → **Business Integration security** to change the security settings.
12. Optional: Change settings for the Human Task Manager:
 - If you want to change any of the Human Task Manager settings for the escalation e-mails, such as the sender address or the URL prefix for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and make your changes.
 - If you want to change the e-mail server address, port number, the user ID, or password for the e-mail server, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail sessions**, select **Cell** scope, then click **HTM mail session_suffix**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or *cluster_name*, depending on where Business Process Choreographer is configured. Make your changes.
13. Depending on the type of people directory provider that you use for people assignment, you might need to configure it:
 - The system and user registry people directory providers can be used without configuring them.
 - If you are using Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), perform “Configuring the LDAP people directory provider” on page 199.
 - If you are using the Virtual Member Manager (VMM), perform “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198.
14. Optional: If you configured VMM, and you want to use people substitution, perform “Configuring people substitution” on page 205.
15. Optional: If you want to use group work items, use the administrative console to enable them. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, click **Human Task Manager**, and select **Enable group work items**.
16. If you have WebSphere application security enabled and you have a long-running process that calls a remote EJB method, make sure that your

Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 (CSIv2) inbound authentication configuration has CSIv2 identity assertion enabled. For more information about this, refer to Configuring Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 inbound authentication.

17. Optional: If you have not yet installed and configured Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can configure it now. Perform “Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 208.
18. If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a clustered environment:
 - a. Map the Web modules for the BPEContainer and TaskContainer applications to a Web server to achieve load balancing and failover.
 - b. If you will use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Business Space, or a client that uses the Representational State Transfer (REST) API, you must change the default context roots for the REST API so that they are unique for each combination of host name and port. To set the context roots perform the following:
 - 1) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 2) Make sure that the context root for the Web module BFMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 3) In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **TaskContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 - 4) Make sure that the context root for the Web module HTMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 - 5) If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**, and set the new value. For example, if the context root for the Business Flow Manager REST API is `/rest/bpm/bfm` then the full URL might be something like `http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm`.
 - 6) If you use the Business Space: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click either **Business Flow Manager** or **Human Task Manager**, then under **Additional Properties** click **REST Service Endpoint**, and set the new value.
19. Optional: If you want to configure a remote Business Process Choreographer client that uses the WebSphere Process Server client, perform, “Configuring a remote client application” on page 271.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is configured.

bpeconfig.jacl script file

This script file configures Business Process Choreographer and all the necessary resources on a server or cluster.

Purpose

This script can either be run interactively, or in batch mode. It can create a local database, the necessary messaging resources, and can optionally configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Location

The `bpeconfig.jacl` script file is located in the Business Process Choreographer config directory:

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`
- On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`

Restrictions

This script has the following restrictions:

For a DB2 for z/OS database

The `bpeconfig.jacl` script cannot create a DB2 for z/OS database. You must create it manually.

For a DB2 database

The `bpeconfig.jacl` script cannot create a database if the Universal Driver type 4 is selected even if DB2 is installed locally.

For an Oracle database

The `bpeconfig.jacl` script cannot create an Oracle database. If you want to use an Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer, you must create the database manually.

For a Microsoft SQL Server database

The `bpeconfig.jacl` script cannot create a remote database. To create a local database, use a type-2 JDBC driver, and do not specify the `-dbServerName` parameter. If you want to use a remote Microsoft SQL Server database for Business Process Choreographer, you must create the database manually.

Running the script in a stand-alone server environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a stand-alone server environment:

- Include the `-conntype NONE` option only if the application server is not running.
- If the server is running and WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Running the script in a network deployment environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a network deployment environment:

- Run the script on the deployment manager node.
- Include the `-conntype NONE` option only if the deployment manager is not running.

- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Configuring the business process container, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function non-interactively

If you provide the necessary parameters on the command line, you will not be prompted for them. To configure Business Process Choreographer, enter one of the following commands:

On Linux and UNIX platforms, if your current directory is `install_root`, enter the command:

```
bin/wsadmin.sh -f ProcessChoreographer/config/bpeconfig.jacl parameters
```

On i5/OS platforms, if your current directory is `install_root`, enter the command:

```
bin/wsadmin -f ProcessChoreographer/config/bpeconfig.jacl parameters
```

On Windows platforms, if your current directory is `install_root`, enter the command:

```
bin\wsadmin -f ProcessChoreographer/config/bpeconfig.jacl parameters
```

where *parameters* are as follows:

```
-adminUsers userList
-adminGroups groupList
-cleanupPwd password
-cleanupUser userID
-cluster clusterName
-conntype NONE
-contextRootBFMWS contextRootBFMWS
-contextRootBFMREST contextRootBFMREST
-contextRootExplorer explorerContextRoot
-contextRootHTMWS contextRootHTMWS
-contextRootHTMREST contextRootHTMREST
-createDB { yes | no }
-createEventCollector { yes | no }
-createQM { yes | no }
-dbConnectionTarget DB2zOSSubSystem
-dbHome databaseInstallPath
-dbInstance InformixInstance
-dbJava JDBCdriverPath
-dbName databaseName
-dbPwd databasePassword
-dbSchema schemaQualifier
-dbServerName databaseServerName
-dbServerPort databaseServerPort
-dbStorageGroup DB2zOSSStorageGroup
-dbTablespaceDir databaseTableSpacePath
-dbType databaseType
-dbUser databaseUser
-dbVersion version
-driverType JDBCdriverType
-explorerHost explorerURL
-hostName VirtualHostname
-jmsBFMRUNAsPwd password
-jmsBFMRUNAsUser userID
-jmsHTMRUNAsPwd password
-jmsHTMRUNAsUser userID
-mailPwd mailPassword
-mailServerName mailServerName
-mailUser mailUserID
```

```

-maxListEntries max
-medbPwd meDatabasePassword
-medbUser meDatabaseUser
-monitorGroups groupList
-monitorUsers userList
-mqClusterName mqClusterName
-mqCreateTables { true | false }
-mqHome MQInstallationDirectory
-mqPwd JMSProviderPassword
-mqSchemaName mqSchemaName
-mqType JMSProviderType
-mqUser JMSProviderUserID
-node nodeName
-password userPassword
-precompileJSPs { yes | no }
-profileName profileName
-qmNameGet getQueueManagerName
-qmNamePut putQueueManagerName
-remoteCluster clusterName
-remoteNode nodeName
-remoteServer serverName
-reportAtSnapshotRange number
-reportCreateTables { true | false }
-reportDataSource jndiName
-reportFunction { yes | no }
-reportSchemaName schemaName
-restAPIBFM restAPIURL
-restAPIHTM restAPIURL
-server serverName
-user userName

```

Note: Some of the above parameters are optional, depending on the values provided for other parameters. The dependencies between parameters and the conditions that determine whether a parameter is optional or required are described for each parameter in the following descriptions. Any required parameters that are not specified on the command line are prompted for interactively. If the same parameter is specified more than once, the last value specified is used.

Parameters

You can use the following parameters when invoking the script using wsadmin:

-adminUsers *userList*

Where *userList* is the list of names of users, from the user registry, to which to map the BPESystemAdministrator and TaskSystemAdministrator Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) roles. The separator character is the vertical line (|). This property is needed to install the business process container. This parameter has no default value. Either one or both of the adminUsers or adminGroups options must be set.

-adminGroups *groupList*

Where *groupList* is the list of names of groups, from the user registry, to which to map the BPESystemAdministrator and TaskSystemAdministrator J2EE role. The separator character is the vertical line (|). This property is needed to install the business process container. This parameter has no default value. Either one or both of the adminUsers or adminGroups options must be set.

-cleanupPwd *password*

Where *password* is the password for the cleanup user ID.

-cleanupUser *userID*

Specifies the user ID to use as J2EE run-as role for the Business Flow Manager

and Human Task Manager cleanup services. The user ID specified here must be member of the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role for the Business Flow Manager cleanup service, or the TaskSystemAdministrator J2EE role for the Human Task Manager cleanup service, or both.

-cluster *clusterName*

Where *clusterName* is the name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer will be configured. This parameter is optional. Do not specify this option in a standalone server environment, nor if you specify the node and server.

-contntype NONE

This specifies that no administration connection is available. Only include this option if the application server (for stand-alone) or deployment manager (for network deployment) is not running. This is a wsadmin parameter, if you do not specify it, you will not be prompted for it.

-contextRootBFMREST *contextRootBFMREST*

Where *contextRootBFMREST* is the context root for the REST API endpoint URL. For the Business Flow Manager (BFM) the default context root on a server or a cluster is `/rest/bpm/bfm`.

-contextRootBFMWS *contextRootBFMWS*

Where *contextRootBFMWS* is the context root for the Web Service Endpoint URL. For a Business Flow Manager (BFM), on a server, the default context root is `/BFMIF_nodeName_serverName`. On a cluster, the default is `/BFMIF_clusterName`.

-contextRootExplorer *contextRootExplorer*

Where *contextRootExplorer* is the context root for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The default value is `/bpc`, which results in the default URL of `http://host:port/bpc`. The context root must be unique for each combination of host name and port.

-contextRootHTMREST *contextRootHTMREST*

Where *contextRootHTMREST* is the context root for the REST API endpoint URL. For the Human Task Manager (HTM) the default context root on a server or a cluster is `/rest/bpm/htm`.

-contextRootHTMWS *contextRootHTMWS*

Where *contextRootHTMWS* is the context root for the Web Service Endpoint URL. For a Human Task Manager (HTM), on a server, the default context root is `/HTMIF_nodeName_serverName`. On a cluster, the default is `/HTMIF_clusterName`.

-createDB { *yes* | *no* }

Possible values are *yes* or *no*. If set to *yes*, the script will create the database. For z/OS databases and Oracle, this script cannot create the database, it can only create the table spaces and tables. For other database types, the default value is *yes*. For production systems, use *no*. If you use *yes*, the command prompt from which `bpeconfig.jacl` is invoked must have the appropriate paths set to run the corresponding database commands, for example, `db2.exe`.

-createEventCollector { *yes* | *no* }

When run in batch mode, the default is *yes*, which causes the Business Process Choreographer event collector application to be configured, which is required by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. When `-createEventCollector` has the value *yes*, you can use the `-report*` parameters to specify options for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function (previously known as the Business Process Choreographer Observer),

for example, `-reportDataSource` to specify a separate reporting database rather than sharing the Business Process Choreographer BPEDB database. If you do not want the Business Process Choreographer event collector application to be installed, set the value of this parameter to `no`.

-createQM { *yes* | *no* }

Controls whether the script creates a local WebSphere MQ queue manager. This option only has an effect if the parameter `mqType` has the value `MQSeries`, which is deprecated. The default value for this parameter is `yes`. Use the value `no` if you do not want the script to create the WebSphere MQ queue manager, for example, if you want to create the queue manager on a different server to the one where you are running the script.

-dbConnectionTarget *DB2zOSSubSystem*

Where *DB2zOSSubSystem* is the DB2 connection target location used to create the Business Process Choreographer database tables and the data source. This parameter is only required for DB2 on z/OS. The default value is `BPEDB`.

-dbHome *databaseInstallPath*

Where *databaseInstallPath* is the installation directory of the database system. This parameter is only required for Informix and optionally for DB2 if the `createDB` parameter is set to **Yes**. It is used to create the database or the database tables, and for creating the data source. The default value, and requirements depend on the database and on the platform:

For DB2:

- On Windows platforms, the default is *current_drive*\Program Files\IBM\SQLLIB where *current_drive* is the current drive letter and *dbHome* is the installation database home directory.
- On Solaris platforms, the default is `/export/home/dbUser/sqllib`.
- On other platforms, the default is `/home/dbUser/sqllib`.

The directories *dbHome/bnd* and *dbHome/bin* must exist.

For Informix:

- On Windows platforms, the default is *current_drive*\Program Files\Informix where *current_drive* is the current drive letter and *dbHome* is the database home directory.
- On Solaris and HP-UX platforms, the default is `/opt/informix`.
- On Linux and AIX platforms, the default is `/usr/informix`.

The file *dbHome/jdbc/lib/ifxjdbc.jar* must exist.

-dbInstance *InformixInstance*

Where *InformixInstance* is the instance name for a Business Process Choreographer Informix database. The default value is `ids1`.

-dbJava *JDBCdriverPath*

Where *JDBCdriverPath* is the directory where the JDBC driver is located. This parameter is only required for the following combinations of database and driver types:

- DB2 Universal with a type-4 driver. The default value is *databaseInstallPath/java*.
- DB2 for i5/OS with a type-2 (Native) driver. The default value is `/QIBM/ProdData/Java400/ext`.
- DB2 for i5/OS with the type-4 (Toolbox) driver. The default value is `/QIBM/ProdData/HTTP/Public/jt400/lib/java`.

- DB2 for z/OS, with a type-4 driver. The default value is *databaseInstallPath/java*.
- Informix. The default value is *databaseInstallPath/jdbc/lib*.
- MSSQL DataSource with either theMicrosoft or the DataDirect driver type. There is no default value.
- Oracle. There is no default value.

Where *databaseInstallPath* is the installation directory for the database system.

When running the script in batch mode to configure a cluster, if your database requires the `-dbJava` parameter, specify the parameter for each node that hosts a cluster member in the following way:

```
-dbJava.nodeName JDBCdriverPath_on_nodeName
```

Where *JDBCdriverPath* is the path to the JDBC driver and *nodeName* is the name of the node.

-dbName *databaseName*

Where *databaseName* is the name of the Business Process Choreographer database. It is used to create the database or the database tables, and for creating the data source. The default value is BPEDB.

- For Oracle, this is the TNS.
- For Derby Network (not Derby Embedded) this must be an absolute path name.
- For i5/OS, it is the database name or IASP hardware device name. When using the Toolbox JDBC driver, the default is *SYSBAS, when using the Native driver the default is *LOCAL.

-dbPwd *databasePassword*

Where *databasePassword* is the password for the user ID *databaseUser*.

-dbSchema *schemaQualifier*

For i5/OS, *schemaQualifier* is the collection name, the default value is BPEDB. For all other platforms *schemaQualifier* is the schema qualifier used to create the Business Process Choreographer database tables and the data source. The default value is empty, which means to use the implicit schema qualifier, which depends on the database type being used.

-dbServerName *databaseServerName*

Where *databaseServerName* is the name server that hosts the database for Business Process Choreographer. It is used to create the data source.

- For DB2, the default value is empty. For DB2 UDB, this parameter is optional, and if it is not specified, a type 2 JDBC driver will be configured for DB2, otherwise a type 4 JDBC provider will be configured.
- For DB2 on i5/OS, specify the server short name. When using the Toolbox driver, the default is the short name of the local host.
- For all other database types, the default value is the fully qualified host name of the local host.

-dbServerPort *databaseServerPort*

Where *databaseServerPort* is the TCP/IP port for the database server for Business Process Choreographer. This parameter is required if *dbServerName* is specified.

- For DB2, the default value is 50000.
- For Derby Network, the default value is 1527.
- For Informix, the default value is 1526.

- For MSSQL, the default value is 1433.
- For Oracle with the driver type thin, the default value is 1521.

-dbStorageGroup *DB2zOSStorageGroup*

Where *DB2zOSStorageGroup* is the storage group used to create the Business Process Choreographer database tables. This parameter is only required for DB2 on z/OS. There is no default value, and must not be empty.

-dbTablespaceDir *databaseTableSpacePath*

Where *databaseTableSpacePath* is the directory where the database table spaces are created. It is used to create the database and database tables. This parameter is only required for the following database types:

- For Oracle, there is no default value. You must provide a value.
- For DB2, the default value is empty, which means that no table spaces are created.

-dbType *databaseType*

Where *databaseType* is the database type. This is needed for installing the business process container, for creating the database or database tables, and for creating the data source. There is no default value. Possible values are:

- Derby
- DB2
- zOS-DB2
- Informix
- iSeries-DB2
- MSSQL
- Oracle

-dbUser *databaseUser*

Where *databaseUser* is the user ID to access the database. It is used to create the data source. The default value depends on the database and platform:

- For DB2 on Windows platforms: "db2admin"
- For DB2 on other platforms: "db2inst1"
- For Derby Network: The user ID of the currently logged on user
- For Informix: "informix"
- For Oracle: "system"
- For MSSQL: The user ID of the currently logged on user

-dbVersion *version*

Where *version* is the database version number. It has no default value. It is only required for the following database types:

- For DB2 for z/OS, *version* must have either the value 8 or 9.
- For Oracle, *version* must have either the value 9, 10, or 11.
- For MSSQL, *version* must have either the value 2500 if the database has no Unicode support, or 2500U if the database has Unicode support.

-driverType *JDBCdriverType*

Where *JDBCdriverType* is the type of JDBC driver. It is used to create the data source.

- For DB2, you must use the value Universal.
- For DB2 on i5/OS: possible values are native or toolbox .
- For Derby: possible values are Embedded or Network.
- For Oracle, possible values are oci or thin.

- For MSSQL, possible values are Microsoft, Embedded or DataDirect. The Embedded driver type is deprecated.

-explorerHost *explorerURL*

Where *explorerURL* is the URL of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. If this parameter is not specified for a non-cluster environments, a default value is computed, for example, `http://localhost:9080`. The value of this parameter is used by the Human Task Manager to link to this explorer instance.

-hostName *VirtualHostname*

Where *VirtualHostname* is the virtual host where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, the Web service bindings of the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager APIs, and the REST bindings of the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager APIs will run. The default value is `default_host`.

-jmsBFMRunAsPwd *password*

Where *password* is the password for the `jmsBFMRunAsUser` user ID. This property is required to configure the business process container. This parameter has no default value. It must be set.

-jmsBFMRunAsUser *userID*

Where *userID* is the run-as user ID from the user registry for the J2EE role `JMSAPIUser`. This property is required to configure the business process container. This parameter has no default value. It must be set.

-jmsHTMRunAsPwd *password*

Where *password* is the password for the `jmsHTMRunAsUser` user ID. This property is required to configure the human task container. This parameter has no default value. It must be set.

-jmsHTMRunAsUser *userID*

Where *userID* is the run-as user ID from the user registry for the J2EE role `EscalationUser`. This property is required to configure the human task container. This parameter has no default value. It must be set.

-mailPwd *mailPassword*

Where *mailPassword* is the password for the user ID *mailUserID*. This parameter is only needed if the mail server requires authentication. Otherwise, it can be omitted. This parameter is needed to create the mail session for the Human Task Manager to send notification mails.

-mailServerName *mailServerName*

Where *mailServerName* is the host name of the mail server to be used by the Human Task Manager to send notification mails. It is needed when configuring the mail session. If this parameter is set to an empty value, the mail session configuration will be skipped. The default value is the fully qualified host name of the local host.

-mailUser *mailUserID*

Where *mailUserID* is the user ID to access the mail server. This parameter is only needed if the mail server requires authentication. Otherwise, it can be omitted. This parameter is needed to create the mail session for the Human Task Manager to send notification mails. The default value is empty, which is only appropriate if no authentication is required.

-maxListEntries *maximum*

Where *maximum* is the maximum number of results that the Business Process Choreographer Explorer will return for a query. The default is 10000.

-medbPwd *MEDBPassword*

Where *MEDBPassword* is the password for the user ID that is provided for the *medbUser* parameter. This parameter has no default value.

-medbUser *MEDBUserID*

Where *MEDBUserID* is the user ID to access the messaging engine database. The default value for this parameter is the value of the *dbUser* parameter. The parameter is only required when SCA is using a database, and the messaging engine database is not accessed through the Derby Embedded JDBC provider.

-monitorGroups *groupList*

Where *groupList* is the list of names of groups, from the user registry, to which to map the *BPESystemMonitor* and *TaskSystemMonitor* J2EE roles. The separator character is the vertical line (|). This property is needed to install the business process container. This parameter has no default value. Either or both *monitorUsers* or *monitorGroups* must be set.

-monitorUsers *userList*

Where *userList* is the list of names of users, from the user registry, to which to map the *BPESystemMonitor* and *TaskSystemMonitor* J2EE roles. The separator character is the vertical line (|). This property is needed to install the business process container. This parameter has no default value. Either or both *monitorUsers* or *monitorGroups* must be set.

-mqType *JMSProviderType*

Where *JMSProviderType* is the type of Java Message Service (JMS) provider to use for Business Process Choreographer. It is used to create the queue manager and the queues, the listener ports or *ActivationSpecs*, and the queue connection factories.

Where *JMSProviderType* is one of the following values:

WPM For default messaging (WebSphere Platform Messaging). This option is always available.

MQSeries

For WebSphere MQ. This option requires that the product WebSphere MQ is installed. Using this value is deprecated.

-mqClusterName *mqClusterName*

Where *mqClusterName* is the name of the WebSphere MQ cluster that the queue manager will join. This parameter is optional. The default value is *MQCluster*. This option only has an effect if the parameter *mqType* has the value *MQSeries*, which is deprecated.

-mqCreateTables { *true* | *false* }

This Boolean parameter only has an effect when the *mqType* option is set to *WPM* and the Service Component Architecture (SCA) is using a database for its message store rather than using a *FILESTORE*. This parameter controls whether the default JMS provider automatically creates its tables in the message engine database upon the first connection. The default is inherited from the SCA setting, you can use this parameter to override the default.

-mqHome *MQInstallationDirectory*

Where *MQInstallationDirectory* is the installation directory of WebSphere MQ. This is used to create the queue manager and the queues (Windows platforms only) and for creating the listener ports and the queue connection factories. If the WebSphere variable *MQ_INSTALL_ROOT* is set, its value is used, and is not modified. This option only has an effect if the parameter *mqType* has the value *MQSeries*, which is deprecated.

If `MQ_INSTALL_ROOT` is not set, the default value used for `MQInstallationDirectory` depends on the platform:

Windows platforms:

`current_drive\Program Files\IBM\WebSphere MQ`

AIX: `/usr/mqm`

i5/OS: `/QIBM/ProdData/mqm`

Solaris, HP-UX, and Linux:

`/opt/mqm`

-mqPwd *JMSProviderPassword*

Where *JMSProviderPassword* is the password for the user ID provided for `mqUser`. This parameter has no default value.

-mqSchemaName *mqSchemaName*

Where *mqSchemaName* is the name of the database schema for the default JMS provider's messaging engine. This only has an effect when SCA uses a database as its message store, rather than using a FILESTORE. Business Process Choreographer will use the same database as SCA, but uses a different schema. You can use this parameter to override the default schema name. The default value for Oracle databases is the user ID specified for *medbUser*, for other databases, the default is a generated value, for example `WPRBM00`.

-mqUser *JMSProviderUserID*

Where *JMSProviderUserID* is the user ID to access the JMS provider.

- If `mqType` has the value `WPM`, this parameter is used to authenticate against the Business Process Choreographer SI bus; the default value is the currently logged on user.
- If `mqType` has the value `MQSeries`, this parameter is used on Linux and UNIX platforms to create the queue manager and the queues. The default value for *JMSProviderUserID* is `mqm`.

-node *nodeName*

Where *nodeName* is the name of the node where Business Process Choreographer will be configured. If you have only one node and exactly one server, this parameter is optional.

-password *userPassword*

If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must provide the password for the user ID *userName*. This is a `wsadmin` parameter, if you do not specify it, you will not be prompted for it.

-profileName *profileName*

Where *profileName* is the name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not configuring the default profile. This is a `wsadmin` parameter, if you do not specify it, you will not be prompted for it.

-precompileJSPs { `no` | `yes` }

Determines whether Java Server Pages (JSPs) will be precompiled, or not. The default is `no`. Note that it is not possible to debug precompiled JSPs.

-qmNameGet *getQueueManagerName*

Where *getQueueManagerName* is the name of the queue manager for GET requests. It is used to create the queue manager and the queues, and to create the listener ports and the queue connection factories. It must not contain the `-` character. The default value for *getQueueManagerName* is `BPC_nodeName_serverName`. This option only has an effect if the parameter `mqType` has the value `MQSeries`, which is deprecated.

-qmNamePut *putQueueManagerName*

Where *putQueueManagerName* is the queue manager name for PUT requests. It is used only when the *mqClusterName* parameter has been set. It is used to create the queue manager and the queues, and to create the listener ports and the queue connection factories. It must not contain the - character, and it must not be the same as the queue manager name specified for the *qmNameGet* parameter. The default value for *putQueueManagerName* is *BPCC_nodeName_serverName*.

-remoteCluster *clusterName*

Use this parameter, if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration and you do not specify *remoteNode* and *remoteServer*. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the *-cluster* parameter.

-remoteNode *nodeName*

Use this parameter and *remoteServer* if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the *-node* parameter.

-remoteServer *serverName*

Use this parameter and *remoteNode* if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the *-server* parameter.

-reportAtSnapshotRange *number*

A snapshot report is built by evaluating all events that are older than the qualifying snapshot date and time. This optional parameter defines the number of days for which events can be included in a snapshot report. Only events that have been emitted within this period are evaluated by the snapshot report. The default is 60 days. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option *-reportFunction yes*.

If this value is too high, a very large number of events might have to be processed, and generating a report can take a long time. Try setting this value to the maximum duration of a process instance in your business environment.

-reportCreateTables { *true* | *false* }

This optional parameter indicates if the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function schema is created when Business Process Choreographer Explorer connects to the database the first time. The default is *true*. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option *-reportFunction yes*.

-reportDataSource *jndiName*

Where *jndiName* is the JNDI name of the data source JNDI that is used to connect to the database. Mandatory parameter when *-reportFunction yes* is specified. The data source is not created automatically.

-reportFunction { *yes* | *no* }

This optional parameter controls whether the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is enabled. In interactive mode, the default is *no*. In batch mode, for compatibility with earlier versions, the default is *yes*.

-reportSchemaName *schemaName*

This optional parameter identifies the database schema that is used as a prefix for all reporting database objects. If you specify no schema name, a unique schema name is generated. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option *-reportFunction yes*. The default value is *WPRBC00*.

-restAPIBFM *restAPIURL*

Where *restAPIURL* is the URL for the Business Flow Manager REST API, which is needed to support the graphical process widget for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. On a standalone server, the default is computed, for example, `http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm`. In a network deployment environment there is no default value.

-restAPIHTM *restAPIURL*

Where *restAPIURL* is the URL for the Human Task Manager REST API, which is needed to support the graphical process widget for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. On a standalone server, the default is computed, for example, `http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/htm`. In a network deployment environment there is no default value.

-server *serverName*

Where *serverName* is the name of the server where Business Process Choreographer will be configured. If you have only one node and exactly one server, this parameter is optional.

-user *userName*

If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must provide a user ID for authentication. This is a `wsadmin` parameter, if you do not specify it, you will not be prompted for it.

Example: Configuring a stand-alone server non-interactively

To configure Business Process Choreographer on a stand-alone server on a Windows platform, using a DB2 database, the batch mode command might be like the following:

```
wsadmin -conntype none -f bpeconfig.jacl
-adminGroups bpcadmins -monitorGroups bpcmonitors
-jmsBFMRUNAsUser jmsuser -jmsBFMRUNAsPwd secret
-dbType DB2 -dbName BPEDB -dbSchema WPRBE00 -dbUser db2user -dbPwd secret
-dbServerName db2host.acme.com -dbJava d:\programs\IBM\SQLLIB\java
-createDB no -dbTablespaceDir d:\DB2\tablespacedir -mqType WPM
-mqUser sibuser -mqPwd secret
-mqSchemaName WPRBM00 -mqCreateTables true
-jmsHTMRUNAsUser escalationuser -jmsHTMRUNAsPwd secret
-mailServerName smtpost.acme.com -mailUser {}
-restAPIBFM http://wpshost.acme.com:80/rest/bpm/bfm
-restAPIHTM http://wpshost.acme.com:80/rest/bpm/htm
-reportFunction no -explorerHost http://wpshost.acme.com:80/bpc
-createEventCollector no
```

For other platforms, the file system paths would be different.

Example: Configuring on a cluster non-interactively

To configure Business Process Choreographer on a cluster “cluster1”, consisting of two nodes; a Windows node “Node01” and a UNIX node “Node02”, using a DB2 database, the batch mode command might be like the following:

```
wsadmin -conntype none -profileName Dmgr01 -f bpeconfig.jacl
-cluster cluster1
-adminUsers bpcadmins -monitorUsers bpcmonitors
-jmsBFMRUNAsUser jmsuser -jmsBFMRUNAsPwd secret
-mqType WPM -hostName default_host
-contextRootBFMWS /BFMIF_cluster1 -contextRootBFMREST /rest/bpm/bfm
-dbType DB2 -dbName BPEDB62 -dbSchema WPRBE00 -dbUser db2user -dbPwd secret
-dbJava.acmeNode01 "c:\Progam Files\IBM\SQLLIB\java"
-dbJava.acmeNode02 /home/db2inst1/sqllib
-createDB no -mqUser sibuser -mqPwd secret
-medbUser db2user -mqSchemaName WPRBM00 -mqCreateTables true
-jmsHTMRUNAsUser escalationuser -jmsHTMRUNAsPwd secret
-contextRootHTMWS /HTMIF_cluster1
-contextRootHTMREST /rest/bpm/htm
```

```

-mailServerName smtp.acme.com -mailUser {}
-contextRootExplorer /bpc -maxListEntries 5000
-restAPIBFM http://wps.acme.com/rest/bpm/bfm
-restAPIHTM http://wps.acme.com/rest/bpm/htm
-explorerHost http://wps.acme.com/bpc
-reportFunction no -createEventCollector no

```

For other platforms, the file system paths would be different.

Example: Configuring interactively

This example, illustrates running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to install and configure Business Process Choreographer using an existing DB2 database, a human task container, and a Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Restriction: When run interactively, this script cannot configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, nor the necessary event collector application. If you want to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, perform “Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector” on page 213.

1. On the server, or for network deployment, on the deployment manager, start the script:
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter the command:


```

install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh
  -f install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config/bpeconfig.jacl
  ( [-user userName] [-password password] | [-conntype NONE])
  [-profileName profileName]
          
```
 - On i5/OS platforms, enter the command:


```

install_root/bin/wsadmin
  -f install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config/bpeconfig.jacl
  ( [-user userName] [-password password] | [-conntype NONE])
  [-profileName profileName]
          
```
 - On Windows platforms, enter the command:


```

install_root\bin\wsadmin.bat
  -f install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config\bpeconfig.jacl
  ( [-user userName] [-password password] | [-conntype NONE])
  [-profileName profileName]
          
```
2. Interactively enter responses to the questions that are displayed:
 - a. In a network deployment environment, you will be offered a server, or cluster, to configure in. If it is not the correct server, or cluster, enter **No** to be offered the next server, or cluster. If it is the correct server, or cluster, enter **Yes**.
 - b. For the question Install the business process container?, enter **Yes**.
 - c. For the question User(s) to add to role BPSystemAdministrator, enter the user IDs for the users who will perform the role of business process administrator.
 - d. For the question Group(s) to add to role BPSystemAdministrator, enter the groups from the domain user registry that are mapped onto the role of business process administrator.
 - e. For the question User(s) to add to role BPSystemMonitor, enter the user IDs for the users who will perform the role of business process monitor.
 - f. For the question Group(s) to add to role BPSystemMonitor, enter the groups from the domain user registry that are mapped onto the role of business process monitor.
 - g. For the question Run-as UserId for role JMSAPIUser, enter the run-as user ID that will be used for the JMSAPIUser role.

- h. Enter the password for the run-as user ID.
- i. For the question Use WebSphere default messaging or WebSphere MQ [WPM/MQSeries]?, select the JMS provider that you want to use.
- j. Enter the following:
 - 1) For the question Virtual Host for the SCA Web Service [default_host]: , press **Enter** to accept the default value default_host for the Service Component Architecture (SCA) Web server virtual host.
 - 2) For the question Context root for the SCA Web Service [/BFMIF_PNODE_server1]:, press **Enter** to accept the default value BFMIF_nodeName_serverName.
 - 3) For the question Context root for the REST API [/rest/bpm/bfm]:, press **Enter** to accept the default value /rest/bpm/bfm.
- k. For the question Create the DataSource for the Process Choreographer database?, enter **Yes**.
- l. For the question Create DataSource for a Derby, a DB2, an Informix, an Oracle, or an SQL Server database [Derby/DB2/zOS-DB2/iSeries-DB2/Informix/Oracle/MSSQL]?, for this example, enter **DB2**. Selecting a different database results in other database-specific questions.
- m. Enter the database name.
- n. At the Database schema name (may be empty) prompt, hit **Enter** to use the implicit schema qualifier.
- o. For the question DB2 User ID, enter the user ID to access the database.
- p. Enter the password for the database user ID.
- q. For the question Database server name (may be empty, set to use the type 2 driver), enter the name of the server that hosts the database.
- r. For the question Database server port, enter the database server port, for example, 50000.
- s. At the JDBC driver directory on [yourHost] prompt, enter the directory where the DB2 JDBC driver JAR files are located.
- t. For the question Create the Process Choreographer database objects?, if your currently logged on user ID has sufficient authority to create the database, and DB2 has been set up in your current environment (for example, the 'db2' executable is on the PATH), you can enter **Yes**, otherwise, if your currently logged on user ID does not have sufficient authority to create the database, enter **No**.
If the answer is **Yes**:
 - 1) For the question DB2 tablespace directory (may be empty) hit **Enter** to leave it empty.
 - 2) For the question Is 'BPEDB' an existing database (the Process Choreographer schema must not yet exist) enter **Yes** if the BPEDB database already exists, otherwise enter **No**.
- u. If you get the question User ID for access to Process Choreographer SI bus, enter the user ID to use to access the default JMS provider.
- v. Enter the password for the SI bus authentication user ID.
- w. For the question Message store type to use [DATASTORE/FILESTORE]: DATASTORE , select which type of store to use for messages.
- x. For the question Messaging engine database schema qualifier [WPRBM00]: WPRBM00, press **Enter** to accept the default schema qualifier for the messaging engine database, or enter a different one.

- y. For the question Automatically create the database tables when the messaging engine connects for the first time [True/false]? true, press **Enter** to accept the default that the database tables for the messaging engine the first time that it connects to the database, or enter **false** if you will create them manually.
- z. For the question Install the task container?, enter **Yes**.
- aa. For the question User(s) to add to role TaskSystemAdministrator, enter the user IDs for the users who will perform the role of task administrator.
- ab. For the question Group(s) to add to role TaskSystemAdministrator, enter the groups from the domain user registry that are mapped onto the role of task administrator.
- ac. For the question User(s) to add to role TaskSystemMonitor, enter the user IDs for the users who will perform the role of task monitor.
- ad. For the question Group(s) to add to role TaskSystemMonitor, enter the groups from the domain user registry that are mapped onto the role of task monitor.
- ae. For the question Run-as UserID for role EscalationUser, enter the run-as user ID for the role of escalation user, for example db2admin.
- af. Enter the password for the escalation user ID. This prompt will be hidden if you used the same user ID as for step 2g on page 174.
- ag. For the question Context root for the SCA Web Service [/HTMIF_PNODE_server1]:, press **Enter** to accept the default value HTMIF_nodeName_serverName.
- ah. For the question Context root for the REST API [/rest/bpm/htm]:, press **Enter** to accept the default value /rest/bpm/htm.
- ai. For the question Create the mail notification session for the human task manager?, enter **No** if you do not want to create the mail notification session for the Human Task Manager. Otherwise, enter **Yes**, and specify the mail transport host. Optionally, you can specify the user ID and password.
- aj. For the question Context root for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer [/bpc]: , enter the context root for Business Process Choreographer Explorer or press **Enter** to use the default value /bpc.
- ak. For the question Install the Business Process Choreographer Explorer?, enter **Yes** to install Business Process Choreographer Explorer, then for the question Precompile JSPs?, enter **Yes** if you want Java Server Pages (JSPs) to be precompiled, otherwise enter **No**. For a remote Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for the question Node of Process Choreographer to connect to [PNODE]: enter the name of the Business Process Choreographer node to connect to, and for the question Server of Process Choreographer to connect to [server1]: enter the name of the Business Process Choreographer server to connect to or press **Enter** to accept the default.
- al. For the question Maximum number of list entries for the Process Choreographer Explorer , press **Enter** to use the default value 10000.
- am. The following reminder is displayed:


```
*****
* NOTE: The Process Choreographer REST API URLs are needed by the
* Process Choreographer Explorer's graphical process widget.
*****
```
- an. For the question URL for the Business Flow Manager REST API , press **Enter** to use the default value http://host_name:9080/rest/bpm/bfm.
- ao. For the question URL for the Human Task Manager REST API , press **Enter** to use the default value http://host_name:9080/rest/bpm/htm.

ap. For the question Enable the reporting function (formerly known as 'Observer') [No/yes]? no, press **Enter** to accept the default that the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function will not be enabled . Otherwise, enter **Yes** to enable it.

aq. Various information is displayed, for example providing the URL of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. For example:

```
*****
* NOTE: The Process Choreographer URL will be used by the
* Human Task Manager on server server1 of node viennaNode01
* to link to this Explorer instance. Set an empty URL to not create this link.
* To clear the default value, enter a space character.
*****
URL for this Process Choreographer Explorer [http://host_name:9080/bpc]:
```

Enter the URL for this Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance, or press **Enter** to accept the default.

ar. A reminder is displayed about where to find the script files that you can use to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

To interactively configure the EventCollector, please use the script `setupEventCollector` located in `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`.

3. In case of problems, check the log files.

Log files

If you have problems creating the configuration using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script file, check the following log files:

- `bpeconfig.log`
- `wsadmin.traceout` – Unless you used the `wsadmin -tracefile` parameter to specify a different file name.

Both files can be found in the logs directory for your profile:

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `profile_root/logs`
- On Windows platforms: In the directory `profile_root\logs`

If you run the script in connected mode, also check the files `SystemOut.log` and `SystemErr.log` that can be found in the subdirectory of the logs directory that is named after the application server or deployment manager that the `wsadmin` scripting client connected to.

Related tasks

“Using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer” on page 154

Describes how to use the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer and all the necessary resources on a given server or cluster.

Creating the queue manager and queues for Business Process Choreographer

This describes how to create the WebSphere MQ queue manager and queues.

Before you begin

WebSphere MQ must already be installed.

Note: Support for WebSphere MQ is deprecated.

About this task

If you are using WebSphere MQ as an external Java Message Service (JMS) provider, you must create the queue manager and queues.

Procedure

1. Optional: If you are creating a production system, plan which disk drives the queue manager will use. Using default locations for persistent queue data and WebSphere MQ logs can have a negative impact on the performance of the queue manager. Consider changing these locations according to recommendations in the WebSphere MQ documentation.
2. If you are not creating a WebSphere MQ cluster setup, perform the following actions:

- a. Make sure that your user ID has the authority to create WebSphere MQ queues.
- b. Create the queue manager and queues: On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config  
createQueues.bat queueManager
```

On UNIX and Linux platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config  
createQueues.sh queueManager
```

where *queueManager* is the name of an existing queue manager, or the name to give to a new queue manager. If the named queue manager already exists, it is used to create the queues. If the queue manager does not exist, it is created and started before the default queues are created.

3. If you are creating a WebSphere cluster setup that uses a WebSphere MQ cluster, only perform Creating clustered queue managers and queues.
4. If you are creating a WebSphere cluster setup that uses a central queue manager, perform the following actions:

- a. Copy the create queues script file from the config subdirectory of the ProcessChoreographer directory on the server that hosts WebSphere Process Server to the server that hosts the central queue manager:

- If your central queue manager is on a Windows workstation, copy the file: `createQueues.bat`
- If your central queue manager is on a UNIX or Linux server, copy the file: `createQueues.sh`
- If your central queue manager is on an i5/OS server, copy the file: `createQueues`

- b. On the server that hosts the queue manager, make sure that WebSphere MQ is installed, and that your user ID has the authority to create WebSphere MQ queues.

- c. Create the queue manager and queues: On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config  
createQueues.bat queueManager
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config  
createQueues.sh queueManager
```

On the i5/OS platform, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
createQueues queueManager
```

where *queueManager* is the name to give the new queue manager.

- d. Add a listener for the new queue manager:

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
runmq1sr -t tcp -p port -m queueManager
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:

```
runmq1sr -t tcp -p port -m queueManager &
```

Where *port* is the port on which the listener listens.

Results

The queue manager and queues exist.

Creating clustered queue managers and queues for Business Process Choreographer

If you are creating a WebSphere cluster setup of Business Process Choreographer using a WebSphere MQ cluster, you must create the queue managers, queues, cluster, repositories, channels, and listeners.

Procedure

1. If your WebSphere cluster consists of UNIX nodes, perform the following actions on each node:
 - a. Make sure that your user ID has the authority to create WebSphere MQ queues.
 - b. Create the get and put queue managers, make them members of the WebSphere MQ cluster, and create the queues by entering the commands:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
createQueues.sh getQueueManager clusterName putQueueManager
```

where:

getQueueManager

The unique name to give to the get queue manager. This queue manager hosts all of the local queues.

clusterName

The name of the WebSphere MQ cluster of which all the queue managers are a member.

putQueueManager

The unique name for the put queue manager. This queue manager hosts no queues, which ensures that messages are distributed across all the get queues.

If the queue managers already exist, they are used. If the queue managers do not exist, they are created and used.

- c. Start the WebSphere MQ command processor by entering the command:

```
runmqsc getQueueManager
```

- d. For complex setups, it is recommended to enable remote administration of the queue manager by entering the following MQ command:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('SYSTEM.ADMIN.SVRCONN') TYPE(CHLTYPE)
```

- e. If this queue manager is to be a repository for the WebSphere MQ cluster enter the MQ command:

```
ALTER QMGR REPOS('clusterName') REPOSNL(' ')
```

- f. Define a sender and a receiver channel for the queue manager to each repository that is not hosted on this server, by entering the following MQ commands. For each cluster receiver channel:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('TO.repositoryQueueManager.TCP') +
  CHLTYPE(CLUSRCVR) +
  CLUSTER('clusterName') +
  CLUSNL(' ') +
  CONNAME('repositoryIP-Address(port)') +
  DESCR('Cluster receiver channel at repositoryQueueManager TCP/IP') +
  MAXMSGL(4194304) +
  TRPTYPE(TCP) +
  MCAUSER('principal') +
  REPLACE
```

For each cluster sender channel:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('TO.repositoryQueueManager.TCP') +
  CHLTYPE(CLUSSDR) +
  CONNAME('repositoryIP-Address(port)') +
  CLUSTER('clusterName') +
  CLUSNL(' ') +
  DESCR('Cluster sender channel to repositoryQueueManager TCP/IP') +
  MAXMSGL(4194304) +
  TRPTYPE(TCP) +
  MCAUSER('targetPrincipal') +
  REPLACE +
  NPMSPEED (NORMAL)
```

where:

repositoryQueueManager

The name of the queue manager hosting a repository.

clusterName

The name of the WebSphere MQ cluster of which all the queue managers are a member.

repositoryIP-Address

The IP address of the node where the repository queue manager resides.

port

The IP port that the repository queue manager is using.

principal, targetPrincipal

The MCAUSER to use for the receive and send channels. For more information about this value refer to the WebSphere MQ documentation.

- g. For each queue manager, start a listener by entering the MQ command:

```
runmq1sr -t tcp -p port -m QueueManager
```

2. If your WebSphere cluster consists of Windows nodes, perform the following actions on each node:

- a. Make sure that your user ID has the authority to create WebSphere MQ queues.
- b. Create the "get" queue manager, make it a member of the WebSphere MQ cluster, and create the queues by entering the commands:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
createQueues.bat getQueueManager clusterName putQueueManager
```

where:

getQueueManager

The unique name to give to the get queue manager. This queue manager hosts all of the local queues.

clusterName

The name of the WebSphere MQ cluster of which all the queue managers are a member.

putQueueManager

The unique name for the put queue manager. This queue manager hosts no queues, which ensures that messages are distributed across all the get queues.

If the queues already exist they are used. If the queues do not exist, they are created and used.

- c. Start the WebSphere MQ command processor by entering the command:

```
runmqsc queueManager
```

- d. For complex setups, it is recommended that you enable remote administration of the queue manager by entering the following MQ command:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('SYSTEM.ADMIN.SVRCONN') TYPE(CHLTYPE)
```

- e. If this queue manager is to be a repository for the WebSphere MQ cluster enter the MQ command:

```
ALTER QMGR REPOS('clusterName') REPOSNL(' ')
```

- f. Define a sender and a receiver channel for the queue manager to each repository that is not hosted on this server, by entering the following MQ commands. For each cluster receiver channel:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('TO.repositoryQueueManager.TCP') +  
  CHLTYPE(CLUSRCVR) +  
  CLUSTER('clusterName') +  
  CLUSNL(' ') +  
  CONNAME('repositoryIP-Address(port)') +  
  DESCR('Cluster receiver channel at repositoryQueueManager TCP/IP') +  
  MAXMSGL(4194304) +  
  TRPTYPE(TCP) +  
  MCAUSER('principal') +  
  REPLACE
```

For each cluster sender channel:

```
DEFINE CHANNEL('TO.repositoryQueueManager.TCP') +  
  CHLTYPE(CLUSSDR) +  
  CONNAME('repositoryIP-Address(port)') +  
  CLUSTER('clusterName') +  
  CLUSNL(' ') +  
  DESCR('Cluster sender channel to repositoryQueueManager TCP/IP') +  
  MAXMSGL(4194304) +  
  TRPTYPE(TCP) +  
  MCAUSER('principal') +  
  REPLACE +  
  NPMSPEED (NORMAL)
```

where:

repositoryQueueManager

The name of the queue manager hosting a repository.

clusterName

The name of the WebSphere MQ cluster to which all the queue managers are a member.

repositoryIP-Address

The IP address of the node where the repository queue manager resides.

port The IP port that the repository queue manager is using.

principal

The MCAUSER to use. For more information about this value, refer to the WebSphere MQ documentation.

- g. For each queue manager, start a listener by entering the MQ command:

```
runmqslsr -t tcp -p port -m QueueManager
```

- Optional: To verify the status of the channels on a server, enter the MQ command:
`display chstatus(*)`

Results

The queue managers, queues, cluster, repositories, channels, and listeners exist.

Using a generated SQL script to create the database schema for Business Process Choreographer

When you configure Business Process Choreographer, an SQL script is generated that creates the database objects for Business Process Choreographer.

Before you begin

You have used the administrative console or the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer. If you used the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer, either you used the `-createDB no` option to defer creating the database objects, or the `bpeconfig.jacl` script failed to create the database.

About this task

All the relevant configuration parameters that you provided when configuring Business Process Choreographer have been substituted in the generated SQL file. You either want the database for a high-performance Business Process Choreographer configuration, or your database administrator must create the database for you, or both.

Procedure

- Locate the generated `createSchema.sql` SQL script.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a network deployment environment using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema.sql` script file will be generated on the node of the deployment manager.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a standalone server using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema.sql` script file will be generated on the node where you invoked `wsadmin`.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in disconnected mode, the `createSchema.sql` script file will be generated on the node of the standalone server.

Option	Description
For Linux and UNIX	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is: <code>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type/database_name/database_schema/createSchema.sql</code>. If you did not specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is: <code>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type/database_name/createSchema.sql</code>.

Option	Description
For i5/OS	The generated script is: <i>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type/collection_name/createSchema.sql</i> .
For Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is: <i>profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type\database_name\database_schema\createSchema.sql</i> If you did not specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is: <i>profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type\database_name\createSchema.sql</i> <p>Note: For SQL Server, there is also a version named <i>createSchemaUnicode.sql</i>, which you should use if your database is configured for Unicode.</p>
For z/OS	<p>There is an ASCII SQL script, named <i>createSchema.sql</i>, and an equivalent EBCDIC DDL script, named <i>createSchema.ddl</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you specified a schema qualifier, both files are located in <i>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type/database_name/database_schema</i> If you did not specify a schema qualifier, both files are located in <i>profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type/database_name</i>

Where:

database_type

is one of the following strings, which identify the database systems that are supported by the generated scripts:

- DB2
- DB2zOSV8
- DB2zOSV9
- DB2iSeries
- Derby
- Informix
- Oracle
- SQLServer

database_name

is the name of your database.

database_schema

is the name of the schema, if you are using one.

collection_name

is the name of the collection; only for DB2 on iSeries.

2. If the database does not yet exist, get your database administrator to create the database and user IDs according to the values you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118 and “Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations” on page 110.

Note: This step is not necessary if your database is one of the following, because the generated script will create the database instance:

- Derby Embedded
 - Derby Network and the database server is running
 - DB2 on iSeries
 - DB2 for Linux, UNIX, or Windows local database
3. If the database is remote, copy the generated script to the database host. If you are not authorized to perform this, give your database administrator a copy of the script and discuss your requirements with her.
 4. You or your database administrator can customize the SQL script:
 - a. If you used the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer, substitute actual values for the following placeholders:
 - For DB2 on z/OS: Replace @ST0GRP@ with the storage group name, the default value is SYSDEFLT.
 - Replace @location@ (or for Oracle, replace &1) with the table space directory.
 - b. For a high-performance system specify the allocation of disks and table spaces that you planned in step 5 on page 120 of “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.
 5. Run the SQL script on the database host using one of the following commands:

Option	Description
For DB2 on Linux, UNIX, or Windows	db2 -tf createSchema.sql
For DB2 on iSeries	db2 -tf createSchema.sql
For DB2 on z/OS	For the ASCII version: db2 -tf createSchema.sql For the EBCDIC version: db2 -tf createSchema.ddl
For a Derby database	java -Dij.protocol=jdbc:derby: -Dij.database=database_name org.apache.derby.tools.ij createSchema.sql
For an Informix database	dbaccess database_name createSchema.sql
For an Oracle database	sqlplus userID/password @database_name@createSchema.sql
For an SQL Server database	For an ASCII database: sqlcmd -U userID -P password -d database_name -i createSchema.sql For a Unicode database: sqlcmd -U userID -P password -d database_name -i createSchemaUnicode.sql

6. For all existing Business Process Choreographer configurations, configure Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) to access the database remotely: Perform the following steps:
 - On each node that hosts a member of the cluster where you configured Business Process Choreographer.
 - On any server that runs Business Process Choreographer.
 - a. If the database server is different to the Business Process Choreographer server, install a suitable type-2 database client or type-4 JDBC driver on the server that hosts the application server.
 - b. If you are using a type-2 JDBC driver, make the new database known to the database client. The database must be catalogued and accessible through an alias name. If you are using a type-2 JDBC driver, make the new database known to the database client by performing the following:

For Derby

This step does not apply because only the type-4 JDBC provider is supported.

For DB2[®] Universal Database[™]

The database must be catalogued and accessible through an alias name.

For DB2 for iSeries

The database must be catalogued and accessible through an alias name.

For DB2 for z/OS

The database must be catalogued and accessible through an alias name.

For Informix Dynamic Server

This step does not apply because only the type-4 JDBC provider is supported.

For Microsoft SQL Server

This step does not apply because only type-4 JDBC providers are supported.

For Oracle

The TCP net service name (TNS) is used to access the database.

- c. Using the administrative console, test the connection to the database.
 - 1) Click **Resources** → **JDBC** → **Business Integration Data Sources**
 - 2) If necessary, select a different scope and click **Apply**.

Note: For clustered Business Process Choreographer configurations, the data source is defined at the cluster level. For non-clustered configurations, the data source is defined at the server level.

- 3) Locate and select the data source with the JNDI name jdbc/BPEDB.
- 4) Click **Test connection**.
- 5) You should see a message indicating that the test connection was successful.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer database exists.

Using SQL scripts to create the database for Business Process Choreographer

You might choose to create the database for Business Process Choreographer manually before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or even before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

About this task

Your organization might require that databases be created by a separate database administrator. If you use the administrative console or the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer, customized SQL scripts are generated that you can give to your DBA to create the BPEDB database. However, if you want to create the database before configuring Business Process Choreographer, or even before product installation, your DBA must use the non-customized SQL scripts. This topic describes how to use the non-customized SQL scripts, which are available on the product media.

Procedure

On the server that hosts the database, create the database according to the description for your database system.

- “Creating a Derby database for Business Process Choreographer.”
- “Creating a DB2 for i5/OS database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 187.
- “Creating a DB2 for Linux, UNIX, and Windows database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 188.
- “Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 190.
- “Creating an Informix Dynamic Server database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 193.
- “Creating a Microsoft SQL Server database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 194.
- “Creating an Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer” on page 195.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer database exists.

Creating a Derby database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create a Derby database for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118. The Derby database is installed with the WebSphere Process Server. However, if you want to create the

database before installing the product, you must already have a Derby installation on your database server.

About this task

To create a Derby database named BPEDB, perform the following actions:

Procedure

1. If you want to create a Derby Network Server database, rather than a Derby Embedded database, make sure that the for Derby Network Server is running, and that you have planned to use the Derby Network Server JDBC provider.
2. Create the parent directory for the database by performing one of the following:
 - To prepare to create the database in the default location, manually create a databases subdirectory in the appropriate profile directory.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms create *profile_root*/databases.
 - On Windows platforms, create *profile_root*\databases.
 - Change to the new directory.
 - To prepare to create a database location other than the default location, change to the directory where you want the new database created.
3. Copy the database creation script to the directory that you created in step 2. The script is located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby/createDatabase.sql
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby/createDatabase.sql
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Derby\createDatabase.sql
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Derby\createDatabase.sql
4. Customize your copy of the database creation script, `createDatabase.sql`, according to the instructions in the header. You must include the name of the database. On Windows platforms, avoid using the Notepad editor, as it does not display the file in a readable format.
5. Create the database. From the directory where the database is to be created, run your customized version of the database creation script file `createDatabase.sql` as described in the header.

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating a DB2 for i5/OS database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create the DB2 for i5/OS database schema for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

Procedure

1. On the system that hosts the database: If no collection exists for the user ID that owns the database, create a collection.
2. Copy the create schema script to the system that hosts the database. The script is located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2iSeries/createSchema.sql
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2iSeries/createSchema.sql
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2iSeries\createSchema.sql
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2iSeries\createSchema.sql
3. Customize a copy of the SQL file createSchema.sql according to the values you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118, “Planning security, user IDs, and authorizations” on page 110, and the instructions in the header of the file.
4. Create the database objects. In a qshell environment, run your customized script. For example, if the script is in your current directory, enter the command:

```
db2 -tf createSchema.sql
```
5. If the database is remote from the Business Process Choreographer configuration, plan to use the Toolbox JDBC driver. Copy the JAR file /QIBM/ProdData/HTTP/Public/jt400/lib/jt400.jar from the database host to the WebSphere Process Server.
6. If the database is local to the Business Process Choreographer configuration, use the Native JDBC driver. Make sure that your class path includes /QIBM/ProdData/Java400/ext/db2_classes.jar.

Results

The DB2 for i5/OS schema for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating a DB2 for Linux, UNIX, and Windows database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create a DB2 database for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

Procedure

1. Install DB2 on the server that hosts the database.

2. Install a DB2 client on all remote application servers that use a type-2 Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) driver to access the database.
3. Copy all the Business Process Choreographer database SQL script files to the server that hosts the database. The scripts are located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, and UNIX platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2
4. Change to the directory where you copied the SQL scripts.
5. If you want to use an existing database, skip to step 10.
6. Create a DB2 instance on the database server.
7. If you have a Symmetric Multi-Processor (SMP) server check how many processors can be used by DB2. Check your license:
 - On AIX systems, enter the command:
`/usr/opt/db2_08_01/adm/db2licm -l`
 - On other UNIX or Linux systems, enter the command:
`/opt/IBM/db2/V8.1/adm/db2licm -l`

If necessary, change the number of processor licenses using either the `db2clim` command or the DB2 License Center.
8. Create a new database. Make sure that the database supports Unicode (UTF-8). Without Unicode support, it cannot store all characters that can be handled in Java code, and you can run into code page conversion problems when a client uses an incompatible code page.
9. Optional: If you only want to create a non-production database, named BPEDB, using default settings, for stand-alone development, evaluation, or demonstration purposes:
 - a. Enter the following command:
`db2 -tf createDatabase.sql`
 - b. Skip to step 11 on page 190.
10. If the database is for a production system, create the table space and schema:
 - a. Make sure that you use a user ID that has administrator rights for the database system.
 - b. Customize a copy of the `createTablespace.sql` table space creation script according to the instructions in the file's header, using the values that you planned in "Planning the BPEDB database" on page 118.
 - c. Make sure that you have administrator rights for the database system. The user ID that you use to create the schema must be the same one that you specify when configuring the data source for Business Process Choreographer.
 - d. Make sure that you are attached to the correct instance. Check the `DB2INSTANCE` environment variable.

- e. To connect to a database named *database_name*, in the DB2 command-line processor, enter the command:
`db2 connect to database_name`

- f. To create the table spaces, enter the command:
`db2 -tf createTablespace.sql`

Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the table space using the `dropTablespace.sql` script.

- g. Customize a copy of the `createSchema.sql` schema creation script according to the instructions in the file's header, using that values that you planned in "Planning the BPEDB database" on page 118.
- h. To create the schema (tables, indexes, and views) in the DB2 command-line processor, enter the command:
`db2 -tf createSchema.sql`

Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If you want to drop the schema, use the `dropSchema.sql` script.

Note: If you do not create the table space and schema now, you must use the **Create tables** option later so that the default table space and schema will be created the first time that Business Process Choreographer attempts to use the database.

11. On each application server that remotely accesses the database:
 - a. Catalog the database by entering the command:
`db2 catalog database database_name as database_alias at node node_name`

For more information about cataloging a database refer to the DB2 documentation.
 - b. Verify that you can connect to the database by entering the commands:
`db2 connect to database_alias user user_ID using password`
`db2 connect reset`

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create a DB2 for z/OS database for use by WebSphere Process Server Business Process Choreographer that is running on a Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, or Windows platform and have not yet configured Business Process Choreographer, or you have not yet installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed "Planning the BPEDB database" on page 118.

About this task

This topic describes how to create a DB2 for z/OS database and, optionally, to verify that it is reachable from the server that hosts the application server.

Procedure

1. Optional: You have already installed WebSphere Process Server on a UNIX, Linux, Windows, or i5/OS server.
2. Copy all the Business Process Choreographer database script files to the z/OS server that hosts the database. The scripts are located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, UNIX, i5/OS, and z/OS platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type*
 - Location after installation: *install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type*
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type*
 - Location after installation: *install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type*

Where *database_type* is one of the following:

- DB2zOSV8
 - DB2zOSV9
3. On the z/OS server that hosts the database:
 - a. Log on the native z/OS environment.
 - b. If multiple DB2 systems are installed, decide which subsystem you want to use.
 - c. Make a note of the IP port to which the DB2 subsystem is listening.
 - d. Create the database and storage group. Perform one of the following:
 - Use the DB2 administration menu to create a new database and storage group.
 - Edit a copy of the createDatabase.sql script file according to the instructions in the header, using the values that you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118, then run the script. To run the script, enter the command:


```
db2 -tf createDatabase.sql
```
 - e. Decide which user ID is used to connect to the database from the remote server running WebSphere Process Server. Normally, for security reasons, this user ID is not the one that you used to create the database.
 - f. Grant the user ID the rights to access the database and storage group. This user ID must also have permission to create new tables for the database.
 - g. Decide if you want to create the tables and views in the schema of the connected user ID or if you want to customize the schema qualifier. If a single user ID accesses multiple databases with tables of the same name, you must use different schema qualifiers to avoid name collisions.
 - h. Customize a copy of the createTablespace.sql table space creation script according to what you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118 and the instructions in the header. Replace @STOGRP@ with the storage group name and replace @DBNAME@ with the database name (not the subsystem name).
 - i. Run your customized version of the table space creation script. For example, to run the script, enter the command:


```
db2 -tf createTablespace.sql
```

If you want to drop the table space, customize and run the dropTablespace.sql script.

- j. Edit the createSchema.sql create schema script according to what you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118 and the instructions in the header.
 - 1) Replace @STOGRP@ with the storage group name.
 - 2) Replace @DBNAME@ with the database name (not the subsystem name).
 - 3) Replace @SCHEMA@ with the schema qualifier or remove @SCHEMA@ (including the following dot) from the script. A custom schema qualifier can only be used with the DB2 Universal JDBC driver.
- k. Run your customized version of the create schema script. For example, to run the script, enter the command:
db2 -tf createSchema.sql

If this script does not work, or if you want to remove the tables and views, use the dropSchema.sql script to drop the schema, but replace @SCHEMA@ before running the script.

4. Optional: On any server that will host a WebSphere Process Server Business Process Choreographer configuration:
 - a. Make sure that you have DB2® Connect™ Gateway installed. DB2 Connect Gateway is part of the DB2 UDB ESE package, but you can also install it separately.
 - b. Catalog the remote database using the following commands in a DB2 command line window:

```
catalog tcpip node zosnode remote host_name server IP_port ostype mvs
catalog database location as database_alias at node zosnode
authentication dcs
catalog dcs database database_alias parms ',,INTERRUPT_ENABLED'
```

where

zosnode

is a local alias for the remote z/OS node.

host_name

is either the TCP/IP address or alias of the remote z/OS system.

IP_port

is the port number where the DB2 subsystem is listening.

database_alias

is the local alias to access the remote database.

location

is the remote DB2 location name. To find out the location name, log on to TSO and enter the following SQL query on the selected subsystem using one of the available query tools.

```
select current server from sysibm.sysdummy1
```

- c. Make sure that the sync point manager instance name is specified. Enter the following commands:
db2 update dbm cfg using SPM_NAME *host_name*
db2 update dbm cfg using SPM_LOG_FILE_SZ *log_file_size*
- d. Verify that you can establish a connection to the remote subsystem by entering the following command:
db2 connect to *database_alias* user *user_ID* using *password*
db2 connect reset

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating an Informix Dynamic Server database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create an Informix Dynamic Server database for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

Procedure

1. Install the Informix server on the computer that hosts the database.
2. Create an Informix server instance. Make sure that the following Informix environment variables are set correctly:
 - *INFORMIXSERVER* must point to the new instance
 - *ONCONFIG* must point to the configuration file for the instance.
 - The environment variables relating to Global Language Support (GLS) must be set to Unicode (UTF-8) support, which is required to store all the characters that can be handled in Java code.

For more details about the different environment variables, refer to the Informix Dynamic Server documentation.

3. Copy and configure the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) driver on all remote application servers that use the database server.
4. Copy all the Business Process Choreographer database script files to the server that hosts the database.
 - On Linux, and UNIX platforms, copy all the SQL and SH files:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Informix
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Informix
 - On Windows platforms, copy all the SQL and BAT files:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Informix
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Informix
5. Change to the directory where you copied the files.
6. If you want to create a non-production database using default settings that is suitable for standalone development, evaluation, or demonstration purposes, enter the command:

```
dbaccess - createDatabase.sql
```

This command creates an Informix database BPEDB for the user ID that you are using. Make sure that the script output contains no errors. You can use the *dropSchema.sql* script to drop only the schema or the SQL command *DROP DATABASE* to drop the whole database.

7. If you want to create a database for a production system, you must create your database manually:
 - a. Create a database, for example named BPEDB.
 - b. Create the Dbspaces for your database.

On Windows systems, read the instructions in the createDbSpace.bat file. Adjust the value parameters in the script to values appropriate for your environment, then run the file.

On UNIX and Linux systems, read the instructions in the createDbSpace.sh file. Adjust the value parameters in the script to values appropriate for your environment, then run the file.
 - c. Run the script to create the schema, by entering the command:

```
dbaccess databaseName createSchema.sql
```

where *databaseName* is the name of the database, for example BPEDB.
 - d. Check the script output for any errors. If you want to drop the schema, use the dropSchema.sql script.

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating a Microsoft SQL Server database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create a Microsoft SQL Server database for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

Procedure

1. Install a Microsoft SQL Server, on the server that hosts the database. Make sure that the following requirements are met:
 - The server must support Unicode.
 - The database server must be configured for distributed transactions.
 - The instance must be case-sensitive instance. If you already have an SQL Server that was created with the case-insensitive option, run the rebuild master tool and change the collation settings to case-sensitive.

For more information about these configuration options, refer to the documentation for Microsoft SQL Server.
2. Make sure that the database server and the Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) are running.
3. Copy all the Business Process Choreographer database SQL script files to the server that hosts the database. The scripts are located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, and UNIX platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/SQLServer
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/SQLServer

- On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\SQLServer
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\SQLServer
4. Change to the directory where you copied the SQL scripts.
 5. Perform one of the following:
 - If you want to create a non-production SQL Server database, named “BPEDB”, for stand-alone development, evaluation, or demonstration purposes:
 - a. Run one of the following scripts, as described in the header of the file.
 - createDatabase.sql
 - createDatabaseUnicode.sql for a Unicode database
 - For example, enter:


```
sqlcmd -U userID -P password -i createDatabase.sql
```
 - b. Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the schema using the dropSchema.sql script.
 - If you want to create a production SQL Server database, create your database manually:
 - a. Create the database, for example, named “BPEDB”.
 - b. To create the schema, customize a copy of one of the following scripts, as described in the header of the file, using the values you planned, then run it.
 - createSchema.sql
 - createSchemaUnicode.sql if you created a Unicode database
 - For example, enter:


```
sqlcmd -U userID -P password -i createSchema.sql
```
 - c. Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the schema using the dropSchema.sql script.

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Creating an Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer

Only use this task if you want to create an Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You completed “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118.

Procedure

1. Install the Oracle server on the computer that hosts the database. Make sure that you are using the 32-bit Oracle libraries that are located in the lib32 subdirectory.
2. On Linux and UNIX systems, make sure that the environment variables *ORACLE_BASE* and *ORACLE_HOME* are set for the root user.

3. Check the class path to be sure that your JDBC driver is using the correct JAR file:
 - For Oracle 9i and 10g, use the ojdbc14.jar file.
 - For Oracle 11g, use either the ojdbc5.jar file.
4. On Linux and UNIX systems, create soft links to the following Oracle libraries in the /usr/lib directory:
 - For Oracle 10g: Link to: libclnt.so.10.1.
 - For Oracle 9i: Link to: libnnz10.so, libclnt.so.10.1, libclntsh.so.10.1, and libocijdbc10.so.

For more detailed information on how to set up the Oracle OCI client, refer to the documentation provided by Oracle.

5. Create an Oracle database using the Database Configuration Assistant, for example, with the name BPEDB. There is no script to quickly create a default Oracle database for Business Process Choreographer. Make sure that you select the JServer option for the database. The database must be created to have a Unicode code page.
6. Start the Oracle listener by entering the command:


```
lsnrctl start
```
7. Optional: If you do not want to customize the table space and schema, you can skip the rest of the steps in this task, in which case, the default table space and schema will be created the first time that Business Process Choreographer attempts to use the database.
8. Copy all the Business Process Choreographer database SQL script files to the server that hosts the database. The scripts are located in the following directories:
 - On Linux, and UNIX platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle
 - Location after installation: *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle
 - Location after installation: *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle
9. Change to the directory where you copied the SQL scripts.
10. If you do not want to create the schema in the default instance, set the *ORACLE_SID* environment variable to the SID of the database you created in step 5.
11. Make sure that the user who runs these scripts has at least the following database privileges: CREATE SESSION, CREATE TABLESPACE, DROP TABLESPACE, CREATE TABLE, and CREATE VIEW.
12. Customize a copy of the createTablespace.sql table space creation script according to what you planned in “Planning the BPEDB database” on page 118 and the instructions in the header of the script file.
13. To create the table spaces, run the createTablespace.sql script. For test purposes, you can use the same location for all table spaces and pass the path as a command-line argument to the script, for example, on a Windows system, using user ID “bpeuser”, password “bpepwd”, database name “BPEDB”, and table space path d:\mydb\ts, enter:


```
sqlplus bpeuser/bpepwd@BPEDB @createTablespace.sql d:\mydb\ts
```

If you want to drop the table spaces, you can use the dropTablespace.sql script.

14. Make sure that the user who will own the tables is granted sufficient quota on all the table spaces that were created in the previous step.
15. Edit the schema creation script createSchema.sql according to the instructions at the top of the file, and replace the placeholder @SCHEMA@ with the name of the schema. If the @SCHEMA@ is different from the user who runs the createSchema.sql script, ensure that this user has the following database privileges: CREATE ANY TABLE, ALTER ANY TABLE, CREATE ANY INDEX, and CREATE ANY VIEW.
16. To create the schema, run the createSchema.sql script. For example, on Windows systems, enter:

```
sqlplus bpeuser/bpepwd@BPEDB @createSchema.sql
```

Results

The database for Business Process Choreographer exists.

Configuring the people directory provider

Business Process Choreographer can use one of four people directory providers to determine who can start processes or claim activities or tasks. Two providers can be used in their default configurations (Local operating system user registry, WebSphere Application Server user registry). The Virtual Member Manager and LDAP people directory providers can usually be used in its default configuration, but in some cases, it must be configured.

About this task

Each type of supported people directory service requires a corresponding people directory provider plug-in. Table 17 lists the supported people directory providers and corresponding plug-ins, which are installed by default.

Table 17. Supported people directory providers and their plug-ins

People directory provider	People directory provider plug-in name
Virtual Member Manager (VMM)	VMM people directory provider
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory	LDAP people directory provider
Local operating system user registry	System people directory provider
WebSphere Application Server user registry	User Registry people directory provider

- To use VMM and LDAP, you will probably need to customize the configuration before using it, as described in the following topics.
- You can use the user registry and system plug-ins with the default configurations. Because you can use these people directory providers without further customization, they are often ideal for development and test environments.

Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider

You configure the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks. The default configuration of the VMM people directory provider is ready to use, and only needs to be configured if you introduce custom people assignment criteria.

Before you begin

To configure the VMM people directory provider, you must have a configured federated repository.

Procedure

1. Make a copy of the standard transformation file for VMM, and give it another name, for example, `myVMMtransformation.xml`.
 - On Windows platforms, standard XSL transformation for VMM is located in `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\Staff\VMMtransformation.xml`
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms standard XSL transformation for VMM is located in `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/Staff/VMMtransformation.xml`
2. Adapt the copy of the transformation file to suit the schema for your organization, as described in “Adapting the LDAP transformation file” on page 201.

CAUTION:

Do not modify the original version of the transformation file because it can be overwritten without warning when you apply a service pack or fix pack.

3. If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, place the copy of the transformation file in the `ProcessChoreographer\Staff` directory to make it available on each WebSphere Process Server installation that hosts members of the cluster.
4. In the administrative console, navigate to **Resources** → **People directory provider**.
5. Select the appropriate node from the following list:

Option	Description
For a standalone profile	Only one node is displayed.
In a network deployment environment, where Business Process Choreographer is configured on one server	Select the node that contains the server.
In a network deployment environment, where Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster	You must configure the people directory provider (perform step 6) on every node that hosts members of the cluster. Select the first node, configure the people directory provider on that node, then repeat the configuration (step 6) for all of the other nodes that host members of the cluster.

6. To create a new VMM people directory configuration:
 - a. Click **VMM People Directory Provider**.
 - b. In the **Additional Properties**, select **People directory configuration**.

- c. Click **New** → **Browse**, and select the copy of the Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL) transformation file that you adapted in step 2 on page 198. If the node agent is running, you can browse the file system of remote nodes to select the file.
 - d. Click **Next** to copy the file to the ProcessChoreographer\Staff directory on the selected node.
 - e. Enter an administrative name for the new people directory configuration, and optionally, a description
 - f. Enter a unique Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) name to identify this configuration to the system, for example, bpe/staff/myvmmconfiguration.
- Note:** There are no other configuration parameters
- g. Click **OK**, then click **Save**.
7. To activate the provider configuration, stop and start the server or servers where you configured the provider.
 - 8.

Results

The VMM people directory provider is configured. If you have problems with this procedure, refer to the *Troubleshooting WebSphere Process Server* PDF.

Configuring the LDAP people directory provider

You configure the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks.

Before you begin

To configure LDAP, you must have planning for it, as described in “Planning for the people directory provider” on page 130.

About this task

The LDAP people directory provider configuration is initialized with a URL that points to a local LDAP server. You must change the URL later, to point to the actual LDAP server, which is normally remote to the application server. The LDAP people directory provider is configured for an LDAP server that allows anonymous access.

Procedure

1. Make a copy of the standard transformation file for LDAP, and give it another name, for example, myLDAPTransformation.xml.
 - On Windows platforms, the file is located in *install_root*\ProcessChoreographer\Staff\LDAPTransformation.xml.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms the file is located in *install_root*/ProcessChoreographer/Staff/LDAPTransformation.xml.
2. Adapt the copy of the transformation file to suit the schema for your organization, as described in “Adapting the LDAP transformation file” on page 201.

CAUTION:

Do not modify the original version of the transformation file because it can be overwritten without warning when you apply a service pack or fix pack.

3. If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, place the copy of the transformation file in the ProcessChoreographer\Staff directory to make it available on each WebSphere Process Server installation that hosts members of the cluster.
4. In the administrative console, navigate to **Resources** → **People directory provider**.
5. Select the appropriate node from the following list:

Option	Description
For a standalone profile	Only one node is displayed.
In a network deployment environment, where Business Process Choreographer is configured on one server	Select the node that contains the server.
In a network deployment environment, where Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster	You must configure the people directory provider (perform step 6) on every node that hosts members of the cluster. Select the first node, configure the people directory provider on that node, then repeat the configuration (step 6) for all of the other nodes that host members of the cluster.

6. Create a new LDAP configuration on the selected node:
 - a. Click **LDAP People Directory Provider**.
 - b. Under Additional Properties, click **People directory configuration**.
 - c. Click **New** → **Browse**, and select the copy of the Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL) transformation file that you adapted in step 2 on page 199. If the node agent is running, you can browse the file system of remote nodes to select the file.
 - d. Click **Next** to copy the file to the ProcessChoreographer\Staff directory on the selected node.
 - e. Enter an administrative name for the new people directory configuration, and optionally, a description
 - f. Enter a unique Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) name for human tasks to use to reference this provider. For example, bpe/staff/ldapserver1
 - g. Click **Apply**, then click **Custom Properties**.
 - h. For each of the required properties and for any optional properties that you planned in 2 on page 131, click the name of the property, enter a value, and click **OK**. For the optional additional properties, you can set properties that are defined for JNDI, for example to enable LDAP referrals, create an additional property named `java.naming.referral` with the value `follow`.
For **providerURL**, you can specify a URL that starts with `ldap://` or `ldaps://`. If you have multiple LDAP servers that contain mirrored data for high availability, enter the URLs for the LDAP servers, using the space character to separate them.
 - i. To apply the changes, click **Save**.
7. To activate the provider configuration, stop and start the server or servers where you configured the provider.
8. If you have problems with any of these steps, refer to the *Troubleshooting WebSphere Process Server* PDF.

Results

Human tasks and processes can now use the people assignment services to resolve people assignment queries and to determine which activities can be performed by which people.

Adapting the LDAP transformation file

Describes how to adapt the LDAP transformation XSL file to suit your organization's LDAP schema.

The default `LDAPTransformation.xsl` file maps predefined people assignment criteria to LDAP queries, which make use of elements of the default LDAP schema. This schema assumes the following:

- The LDAP object class for group entries is `groupOfName`.
- The group entry attribute that contains the member distinguished names (DNs) for the group is `member`.
- The LDAP object class for person entries is `inetOrgPerson`.
- The attribute that contains the login ID in a person entry is `uid`.
- The person entry attribute that contains their e-mail address is `mail`.
- The person entry attribute containing the distinguished name of the manager of a person is `manager`.

If your LDAP schema uses name for object class and attribute names that are different from those listed above, you perform the following steps.

1. Make a copy of the standard transformation file for LDAP, and give it another name, for example, `myLDAPTransformation.xsl`.
 - On Windows platforms, the file is located in `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\Staff\LDAPTransformation.xsl`.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms the file is located in `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/Staff/LDAPTransformation.xsl`.
2. In the copy of the file, change the names of the object classes and attributes to match the names used by your LDAP schema. For most situations, you can change the settings for all people assignment criteria by editing the variable declaration part of the file:

```
<xsl:variable name="DefaultGroupClass">groupOfNames</xsl:variable>
<xsl:variable name="DefaultGroupClassMemberAttribute">member</xsl:variable>

<xsl:variable name="DefaultPersonClass">inetOrgPerson</xsl:variable>
<xsl:variable name="DefaultUserIDAttribute">uid</xsl:variable>
<xsl:variable name="DefaultMailAttribute">mail</xsl:variable>
<xsl:variable name="DefaultManagerAttribute">manager</xsl:variable>
```

CAUTION:

Do not modify the original version of the standard transformation file because it might be overwritten without warning when you apply a service pack or fix pack.

You can apply changes within the XSL templates that transform the individual staff assignment criteria, as illustrated in the following examples.

Example: GroupMembers

Changing the object class for group entries to `groupOfUniqueNames`, the group entry attribute containing the member DN list to `uniqueMember`, and the person entry attribute containing the login in to `cn`:

```

<ldap:usersOfGroup>
...
<ldap:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">uniqueMember</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">groupOfUniqueNames</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">recursive</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:attribute>

...
<ldap:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">cn</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">inetOrgPerson</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:attribute>
...
<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">groupOfUniqueNames</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">recursive</xsl:attribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">uniqueMember</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">intermediate</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>

<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultPersonClass"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">cn</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">userID</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultMailAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">eMailAddress</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultLocaleAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">preferredLocale</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>

</ldap:usersOfGroup>

```

Example: GroupMembersWithoutFilteredUsers

Changing the LDAP filter operator to >=.

```

<ldap:StaffQueries>
<ldap:usersOfGroup>
...
</ldap:usersOfGroup>

<ldap:intermediateResult>
<xsl:attribute name="name">filteredusers</xsl:attribute>
<ldap:search>
<xsl:attribute name="filter">
<xsl:value-of select="staff:parameter[@id='FilterAttribute']"/>
  >=
<xsl:value-of select="staff:parameter[@id='FilterValue']"/>
</xsl:attribute>
...
</ldap:search>
...

</ldap:intermediateResult>
...
</ldap:StaffQueries>

```

Example: GroupSearch

Changing the search attribute to MyType, the object class to mypersonclass, and the attribute containing the login ID to myuid.

```

<ldap:StaffQueries>
...
<ldap:search>
<xsl:attribute name="filter">
(&
...
<xsl:if test="staff:parameter[@id='MyType']!="">
(<xsl:value-of select="$GS_Type"/>=
<xsl:value-of select=staff:parameter[@id='Type']"/>)
</xsl:if>
)
...
</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:attribute>
...
<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">userID</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultMailAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">eMailAddress</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultLocaleAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">preferredLocale</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>

<ldap:search>
</ldap:StaffQueries>

```

Example: Manager of Employee

Changing the attribute containing the manager DN to managerentry and the source of the manager login ID attribute to name.

```

<ldap:StaffQueries>

<ldap:intermediateResult>
...
<ldap:user>
...
<xsl:attribute name="name">managerentry</xsl:attribute>
...
<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultPersonClass"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">managerentry</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">intermediate</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>
</ldap:user>
</ldap:intermediateResult>

<ldap:user>
...
<xsl:attribute name="name">name</xsl:attribute>
...
<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultPersonClass"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">name</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">userID</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>

```

```

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultMailAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">eMailAddress</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultLocaleAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">preferredLocale</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>

</ldap:user>
</ldap:StaffQueries>

```

Example: PersonSearch

Changing the search attribute to MyAttribute, the object class to mypersonclass, and the source of the return attribute to myuid.

```

<ldap:StaffQueries>
...
<ldap:search>
<xsl:attribute name="filter">
(&
...
<xsl:if test="staff:parameter[@id='MyAttribute']!="">
(<xsl:value-of select="$PS_UserID"/>=
<xsl:value-of select=staff:parameter[@id='UserID']"/>)
)
</xsl:if>
...
</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:attribute>
...
<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">userID</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultMailAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">eMailAddress</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultLocaleAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">preferredLocale</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultObject>
</ldap:search>
</ldap:StaffQueries>

```

Example: Users

Changing the source of the return attribute to myuid and the object class to mypersonclass.

```

<ldap:user>
...
<xsl:attribute name="attribute">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultObject>
<xsl:attribute name="objectclass">mypersonclass</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="usage">simple</xsl:attribute>

<ldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name">myuid</xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">userID</xsl:attribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>
</ldap:resultAttribute>

```



```

<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultMailAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">eMailAddress</xsl:attribute>
</sldap:resultAttribute>
<sldap:resultAttribute>
<xsl:attribute name="name"><xsl:value-of select="$DefaultLocaleAttribute"/></xsl:attribute>
<xsl:attribute name="destination">preferredLocale</xsl:attribute>
</sldap:resultAttribute>
</sldap:resultObject>

</sldap:user>

```

Configuring people substitution

This topic describes how to configure people substitution for Business Process Choreographer.

Before you begin

You have configured WebSphere security for Federated Repositories, and if you introduce custom people assignment criteria, you have also performed “Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider” on page 198. You know whether you will use a file registry, property extension registry, or an existing LDAP schema to store the property extensions.

About this task

To use people substitution in a production environment, you must use the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) property extension repository as described in this topic. If however, you only want to use people substitution in a single-server test environment, you can use the file registry that is associated by default with federated repositories, without having to configure VMM.

Procedure

1. Add the two attributes, “isAbsent” as a single-valued string, and “substitutes” as a multi-valued string, to the VMM definition for PersonAccount:
 - a. Locate the wimxmlextension.xml file:
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, it is located in *profile_root/config/cells/cell_name/wim/model*
 - On Windows platforms, it is located in *profile_root\config\cells\cell_name\wim\model*
 - b. Make a backup copy of the wimxmlextension.xml file.
 - c. Edit the original copy of the wimxmlextension.xml file, and make sure that it contains the following definitions, which add the two attributes that are needed for user substitution to the PersonAccount entity type:

```

<wim:propertySchema nsURI="http://www.ibm.com/websphere/wim"
  dataType="STRING" multiValued="false" propertyName="isAbsent">
  <wim:applicableEntityTypeNames>PersonAccount
  </wim:applicableEntityTypeNames>
</wim:propertySchema>

<wim:propertySchema nsURI="http://www.ibm.com/websphere/wim"
  dataType="STRING" multiValued="true" propertyName="substitutes">
  <wim:applicableEntityTypeNames>PersonAccount
  </wim:applicableEntityTypeNames>
</wim:propertySchema>

```

If you are using a file registry, fileRegistry.xml, skip to step 4 on page 207.

2. Set up the property extension repository. For more information about setting up a property extension repository, see Configuring a property extension repository in a federated repository configuration.

- a. Make sure that a database is available to store the property extensions.
- b. Make sure that the JDBC driver class is available on the server class path. Click **Environments** → **WebSphere Variable** to check. If necessary, add the JDBC driver to the class path by clicking **Application servers** → *server_name* → **Process Definition** → **Java Virtual Machine** → **Configuration**. For DB2, add db2jcc.jar,db2jcc_license_cu.jar and db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar to the server's class path, and click **Apply** → **Save**
- c. Configure a DB2 Universal JDBC driver provider and type-4 data source for VMM using the administrative console. Set the webSphereDefaultIsolationLevel custom property for the data source to the value 2. For more information about changing the default isolation level, see Changing the default isolation level for non-CMP applications and describing how to do so using a new custom property webSphereDefaultIsolationLevel.
- d. Restart the server.
- e. Make a backup copy of the wimlaproperties.xml file.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, it is located in *profile_root/config/cells/cell_name/wim/model*
 - On Windows platforms, it is located in *profile_root\config\cells\cell_name\wim\model*
- f. Edit the original copy of the wimlaproperties.xml file, and add the following definitions:

```
<wimprop:property wimPropertyName="isAbsent" dataType="String"
  valueLength="128" multiValued="false">
  <wimprop:applicableEntityName>
    <wimprop:entityName>PersonAccount</wimprop:entityName>
  </wimprop:applicableEntityName>
</wimprop:property>

<wimprop:property wimPropertyName="substitutes" dataType="String"
  valueLength="128" multiValued="true">
  <wimprop:applicableEntityName>
    <wimprop:entityName>PersonAccount</wimprop:entityName>
  </wimprop:applicableEntityName>
</wimprop:property>
```

- g. Make sure that the application server (or in a network deployment environment, the deployment manager) is running. Be aware not to use the -conntype NONE option for the wsadmin utility.
- h. Use the VMM administrative task setupIdMgrPropertyExtensionRepositoryTables to create the substitution properties in the Property Extension Repository database. For more details, see Setting up an entry mapping repository, a property extension repository, or a custom registry database repository using wsadmin commands. For example, using a DB2 database on a Windows platform:

```
$AdminTask setupIdMgrPropertyExtensionRepositoryTables {
  -reportSqlError true
  -schemaLocation install_root\etc\wim\setup
  -laPropXML install_root\etc\wim\setup\wimlaproperties.xml
  -databaseType db2
  -dbURL jdbc:db2:
  -dbDriver com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver
  -dbAdminId userID
  -dbAdminPassword password }
```

- i. If you are using a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) user repository, locate the wimconfig.xml file.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms the path is *profile_root/config/cells/cellName/wim/config/wimconfig.xml*
 - On Windows platforms, the path is *profile_root\config\cells\cellName\wim\config\wimconfig.xml*

Edit the file and add the following entries to exclude the substitution attributes from the LDAP repository:

```
<config:repositories xsi:type="config:LdapRepositoryType"
  adapterClassName="com.ibm.ws.wim.adapter.ldap.LdapAdapter"
  id="ldaprepo1" ...>
...
  <config:attributeConfiguration>
    <config:propertiesNotSupported name="isAbsent"/>
    <config:propertiesNotSupported name="substitutes"/>
  </config:attributeConfiguration>
```

j. Activate the extension property repository:

1) Using the `setIdMgrPropertyExtensionRepository` command. For more details, see [Setting up an entry mapping repository](#), a property extension repository, or a custom registry database repository using `wsadmin` commands. For example, using a DB2 database named `VMMDB`, a data source named `VMMDS`:

```
$AdminTask setIdMgrPropertyExtensionRepository {
  -dataSourceName jdbc/VMMDS
  -databaseType db2
  -dbURL jdbc:db2:VMMDB
  -dbAdminId userID
  -dbAdminPassword password
  -JDBCClass com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver
  -entityRetrievalLimit 10 }
```

2) Verify that the `wimconfig.xml` file contains an entry similar to the following:

```
<config:propertyExtensionRepository
  adapterClassName="com.ibm.ws.wim.lookaside.LookasideAdapter"
  id="LA"
  databaseType="db2"
  dataSourceName="jdbc/VMMDS"
  dbAdminId="userID"
  dbAdminPassword="{xor}PasswordXOR"
  dbURL="jdbc:db2:VMMDB"
  entityRetrievalLimit="10"
  JDBCClass="com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver"/>
```

3. If you use an LDAP schema to hold the substitution information: It may or may not already have definitions for “isAbsent” and “substitutes” (possibly with different names). Whether you have existing definitions, or you will create new ones, make sure of the following:
 - a. The LDAP directory must allow write operations.
 - b. The attribute for absence information (“isAbsent”) must be of type Boolean or a String.
 - c. The attribute that defines who the person can substitute for (“substitutes”) must be of type String, multi-valued, and permit a length up to 128 characters.
 - d. If your existing or chosen attribute names are not “isAbsent” and “substitutes”, you must define your attribute names in the administrative console by clicking **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager** → **Configuration** → **Custom properties**, then set the desired names for the custom properties `Substitution.SubstitutesAttribute` and `Substitution.AbsenceAttribute`.
4. Restart the server.
5. Enable substitution in the Human Task Manager:
 - a. Using the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager**, then either **Runtime** or **Configuration**.
 - b. To enable substitution, select **Enable substitution**.

- c. If non-administrators are allowed to perform substitution for other users, clear the **Restrict substitute management to administrators** option.

Note: This settings does not affect the ability of users to change substitution for themselves.

- d. Click **Apply**.
 - e. If you selected **Configuration** in step 5a on page 207, restart the server to activate the substitution settings.
6. If you have problems with any of these steps, refer to the *Troubleshooting WebSphere Process Server* PDF.

Results

The people assignment service is configured to support user substitution for absent users.

Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer

You can either run a script or use the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Before you begin

You have configured Business Process Choreographer.

About this task

One or more of the following applies:

- You have not yet installed Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
- You want to manage an existing Business Process Choreographer configuration.
- You want to add another instance of Business Process Choreographer Explorer to an already managed Business Process Choreographer configuration.
- You want to configure the optional Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which was previously available as the Business Process Choreographer Observer.

To configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, perform one of the following:

Procedure

1. If you want to use a script, perform “Using the clientconfig.jacl script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 209.
2. If you want to use the administrative console, perform “Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 209.

Results

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is configured and ready to use.

Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer

You can use the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer and the optional Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Procedure

1. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**.
2. To configure a new instance, click **Add**.
3. Enter values for the following fields:
 - If you want the new instance to start automatically at server start, select **Enable autostart**.
 - The **Context root** must be unique on the deployment target server or cluster.
 - **Explorer search result limit**.
 - **Managed Business Process Choreographer container**.
 - **Business Flow Manager REST API URL** , for standalone servers a default value is provided that points to the server's Web container.
 - **Human Task Manager REST API URL** , for standalone servers a default value is provided that points to the server's Web container.
4. Optional: If you want to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function perform the following.
 - a. Ensure that a Business Process Choreographer event collector is installed and configured.
 - b. Select **Enable reporting function**.
 - c. Select which Business Process Choreographer event collector will be visualized. If the list is empty, you must first install and configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector, as described in "Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector" on page 213.
 - d. For **Report at snapshot range** specify how many days of data will be visualized.
5. Click **Apply**. Messages are displayed indicating the progress.
6. Optional: If any problems are reported, check the SystemOut.log file.
7. Start the enterprise application named `BPCExplorer_scope`. Where *scope* identifies the server or cluster where you configured the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Results

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is configured and ready to use.

Using the clientconfig.jacl script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer

This script file configures Business Process Choreographer Explorer and all the necessary resources on a server or cluster. You can also use it to change configuration settings for an existing instance, including changing the `maxListEntries` and configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Purpose

This script file configures Business Process Choreographer Explorer. This script file can either be run interactively, or in batch mode.

Location

The `clientconfig.jacl` script file is located in the Business Process Choreographer config directory:

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`
- On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`

Running the script in a stand-alone server environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a stand-alone server environment:

- Include the `-conntype NONE` option only if the application server is not running.
- If the server is running and WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Running the script in a network deployment environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a network deployment environment:

- Run the script on the deployment manager node.
- Include the `-conntype NONE` option only if the deployment manager is not running.
- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer non-interactively

Change your current directory to `install_root` and perform the following:

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter the command:

```
bin/wsadmin.sh -f ProcessChoreographer/config/clientconfig.jacl parameters
```

On i5/OS, enter the command:

```
bin/wsadmin -f ProcessChoreographer/config/clientconfig.jacl parameters
```

On Windows platforms, enter the command:

```
bin\wsadmin.bat -f ProcessChoreographer/config/clientconfig.jacl parameters
```

Where *parameters* are:

```
( [-user userName] [-password password] | [-conntype NONE] )  
  [-profileName profileName]  
( [-node nodeName] [-server serverName] )  
  [-cluster clusterName]  
  [-contextRootExplorer explorerContextRoot]
```

```

[-explorerHost explorerURL]
[-hostName explorerVirtualHostname]
[-precompileJSPs { yes | no }]
( ( [-remoteNode nodeName][-remoteServer serverName] )
  | [-remoteCluster clusterName] )
[-maxListEntries maximum]
[-reportAtSnapshotRange number]
[-reportCreateTables { true | false }]
-reportDataSource jndiName
[-reportFunction { yes | no }]
[-reportSchemaName schemaName]          -restAPIBFM restAPIURL
-restAPIHTM restAPIURL

```

Note: If you run the script in batch mode, you must include all required parameters. If you run the script interactively, any required parameters that are not provided on the command line are prompted for.

Parameters

You can use the following parameters when invoking the script using wsadmin:

-cluster *clusterName*

Where *clusterName* is the name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer Explorer will be configured. This parameter is optional. Do not specify this option in a standalone server environment, nor if you specify the node and server.

-contextRootExplorer *contextRootExplorer*

Where *contextRootExplorer* is the context root for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The context root must be unique within the WebSphere cell. The default value is `/bpc`.

-explorerHost *explorerURL*

Where *explorerURL* is the URL of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The value of this parameter is used to link the Human Task Manager of the managed Business Process Choreographer configuration to this particular Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance. In batch mode this parameter defaults to an empty string, which means that the link will not be made. You can make or change the link later using the administrative console.

-hostName *VirtualHostname*

Where *VirtualHostname* is the virtual host where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer will run. The default value is `default_host`.

-maxListEntries *maximum*

Where *maximum* is the maximum number of results that the Business Process Choreographer Explorer will return for a query. The default is 10000.

-node *nodeName*

Where *nodeName* is the name of the node where Business Process Choreographer Explorer will be configured. If you do not specify this parameter, the default is the local node.

-precompileJSPs { no | yes }

Determines whether Java Server Pages (JSPs) will be precompiled, or not. The default is no. Note that it is not possible to debug precompiled JSPs.

-remoteCluster *clusterName*

Use this parameter, if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration and you do not specify `remoteNode` and `remoteServer`. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the `-cluster` parameter.

-remoteNode *nodeName*

Use this parameter and `remoteServer` if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the `-node` parameter.

-remoteServer *serverName*

Use this parameter and `remoteNode` if you do not want to connect to the local Business Process Choreographer configuration. If this parameter is not specified, it defaults to the value of the `-server` parameter.

-reportAtSnapshotRange *number*

A snapshot report is built by evaluating all events that are older than the qualifying snapshot date and time. This optional parameter defines the number of days for which events can be included in a snapshot report. Only events that have been emitted within this period are evaluated by the snapshot report. The default is 60 days. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option `-reportFunction yes`.

If this value is too high, a very large number of events might have to be processed, and generating a report can take a long time. Try setting this value to the maximum duration of a process instance in your business environment.

-reportCreateTables { `true` | `false` }

This optional parameter indicates if the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function schema is created when Business Process Choreographer Explorer connects to the database the first time. The default is `true`. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option `-reportFunction yes`.

-reportDataSource *jndiName*

Where *jndiName* is the JNDI name of the data source JNDI that is used to connect to the database. Mandatory parameter when `-reportFunction yes` is specified. The data source is not created automatically.

-reportFunction { `yes` | `no` }

This optional parameter controls whether the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is enabled. In interactive mode, the default is `no`. In batch mode, for compatibility with earlier versions, the default is `yes`.

-reportSchemaName *schemaName*

This optional parameter identifies the database schema that is used as a prefix for all reporting database objects. If you specify no schema name, a unique schema name is generated. This optional parameter only has an effect if the reporting function is enabled using the option `-reportFunction yes`. The default value is `WPRBC00`.

-restAPIBFM *restAPIURL*

Where *restAPIURL* is the URL for the Business Flow Manager REST API, which is needed to support the graphical process widget for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. On a standalone server, the default is computed, for example, `http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm`. In a network deployment environment there is no default value.

-restAPIHTM *restAPIURL*

Where *restAPIURL* is the URL for the Human Task Manager REST API, which is needed to support the graphical process widget for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer. On a standalone server, the default is computed, for example, `http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/htm`. In a network deployment environment there is no default value.

-server *serverName*

Where *serverName* is the name of the server where Business Process Choreographer Explorer will be configured. If you have only one node and exactly one server, this parameter is optional.

Log files

If you have problems creating the configuration using the `clientconfig.jacl` script file, check the following log files:

- `clientconfig.log`
- `wsadmin.traceout`

Both files can be found in the `logs` directory for your profile:

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `profile_root/logs`
- On Windows platforms: In the directory `profile_root\logs`

If you run the script in connected mode, also check the files `SystemOut.log` and `SystemErr.log` that can be found in the subdirectory of the `logs` directory that is named after the application server or deployment manager that the `wsadmin` scripting client connected to.

Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector

Using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is optional, however, before you can use it, you must setup the database and install the applications.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 134, and “Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 208, but you did not configure the reporting function.

About this task

You want to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, with its own database.

Procedure

1. If the database for the Business Process Choreographer does not already exist, perform “Preparing the reporting database” on page 214.
2. Perform “Configuring the Business Process Choreographer event collector application” on page 255.
3. If you did not already enable the reporting function when you configured the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, perform “Enabling the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 296.
4. Perform “Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 263.
5. Perform “Enabling logging for Business Process Choreographer” on page 261.
6. Perform “Verifying the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 271.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is configured and working.

What to do next

You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function to generate reports, as described in “Reporting on business processes and activities” on page 396.

Preparing the reporting database

Perform the actions for your database.

Using SQL scripts to create the reporting database:

You might choose to create the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function manually before you configure Business Process Choreographer, or even before you have installed the product.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning the reporting database” on page 123.

About this task

Your organization might require that databases be created by a separate database administrator. If you use the administrative console or the `bpeconfig.jacl` script to configure Business Process Choreographer, customized SQL scripts are generated that you can give to your DBA to create the BPEDB database. However, if you want to create the database before configuring Business Process Choreographer, or even before product installation, your DBA must use the non-customized SQL scripts. This topic describes how to use the non-customized SQL scripts, which are available on the product media.

Procedure

On the server that hosts the database, create the database according to the description for your database system.

- “Using an SQL script to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 220.
- “Using SQL scripts to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 215.
- “Using an SQL script to prepare a Derby database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 235.
- “Using SQL scripts to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 240.

Results

The database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function exists.

Preparing a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

You can either use scripts or an interactive tool to prepare the reporting database.

Using SQL scripts to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how to use scripts to prepare a DB2 Universal database on Linux, UNIX, and Windows platforms.

About this task

Your reporting database must already exist. You can either use an existing database, or use a new one. To perform this task, you must have administration rights for the destination database.

Procedure

1. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in batch mode or using the administrative console, use the generated SQL script to create the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
 - a. Locate the generated `createSchema_Observer.sql` SQL script.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a network deployment environment using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node of the deployment manager.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a standalone server using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node where you invoked `wsadmin`.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in disconnected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node of the standalone server.
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2/database_name/database_schema/createSchema_Observer.sql`.
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2/database_name/createSchema_Observer.sql`.
 - For Windows platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2\database_name\database_schema\createSchema_Observer.sql`
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2\database_name\createSchema_Observer.sql`

Where:

database_name

is the name of your database.

database_schema

is the name of the schema, if you are using one.

- b. If the database is remote, copy the generated script to the database host. If you are not authorized to perform this, give your database administrator a copy of the script and discuss your requirements with her.
 - c. Optional: You or your database administrator can customize the SQL script. For example, to specify the allocation of disks and table spaces that you planned in “Planning the reporting database” on page 123.
 - d. Run the SQL script on the database host by entering the following command:


```
db2 -tf createSchema_0bserver.sql
```
2. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in interactive mode, or if you have not configured Business Process Choreographer yet, there are no generated SQL scripts; you must customize a copy of the standard SQL script.
 - a. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts for your database are located.
 - On Linux, and UNIX platforms:
 - Location on the product media: `media_root` or `extract_directory/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2`
 - Location after installation: `install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2`
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: `media_root` or `extract_directory\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2`
 - Location after installation: `install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2`
 - b. Copy all `*0bserver.sql` script files to your database server.
 - c. On the database server, change to the directory where you copied the script files.
 - d. Create the table space:
 - 1) Edit the `createTablespace_0bserver.sql` script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.
 - 2) Run the table space creation script file, enter the command:


```
db2 -tf createTablespace_0bserver.sql
```
 - 3) Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the table space using the `dropTablespace_0bserver.sql` script file.
 - e. Create the schema (tables, indexes, and views).
 - 1) Edit the `createSchema_0bserver.sql` script file according to the instructions at the top of the file.
 - 2) In the DB2 command-line processor, enter the command:


```
db2 -tf createSchema_0bserver.sql
```
 - 3) Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If you want to drop the schema, use the `dropSchema_0bserver.sql` script file.
 3. If you want to use the Java implementation instead of the SQL implementation of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer task history UDFs perform “Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions” on page 245.
 4. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the `setupEventCollector` tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool and the `createTablespace_Observer.sql` script to prepare the reporting database .

Before you begin

Your database must already exist.

Procedure

1. If you use a type 2 JDBC connection:
 - a. Prepare the command line environment:
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms, run the `db2profile` for your DB2 instance.
 - On Windows, open a DB2 command window.
 - b. If your database is remote, catalog the database on a local DB2 instance.
2. Create the table space:
 - a. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the SQL scripts for your database are located.
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms, change to the directory `install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2`.
 - On Windows platforms, change to the directory `install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2`.
 - b. Make a copy of the `createTablespace_Observer.sql` script file.
 - c. Edit your copy of the `createTablespace_Observer.sql` script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.
 - d. Connect to the database using a user ID that has SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority.
 - e. Run the table space creation script file, enter the command:

```
db2 -tf createTablespace_Observer.sql
```
 - f. Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the table space using the `dropTablespace_Observer.sql` script file.
3. If you are using a user ID that is not a database administrator, make sure that it has the following permissions:

```
GRANT CREATETAB, CONNECT, CREATE_EXTERNAL_ROUTINE ON DATABASE
    TO USER user_name;
GRANT USE OF TABLESPACE tablespace_name TO USER user_name;
```

where *user_name* is the user ID, and *tablespace_name* is a list of all Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function table space names, as can be found in the script createTablespace_Observer.sql.

4. Change to the Business Process Choreographer directory where the configuration scripts are located.
On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:
`cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`
On Windows platforms, enter:
`cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`
5. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268.
6. Prepare the database:

- a. When you see:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
- 0) Exit Menu

Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

- b. When you see:
Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function

Select the type of your database provider:

- c) Derby
- d) DB2 Universal
- i) DB2 iSeries
- 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
- o) Oracle

0) Exit Menu

Enter d to select DB2 Universal.

- c. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID.
When you see:

Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
- If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:

Even if you want to delay the configuration,
your entered values can be checked within the database.

Do you want to perform these checks?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
- Otherwise enter n.

Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.

d. If you see:

Specify the JDBC driver type to be used:

- 2) Connect using type 2 (using a native database client)
- 4) Connect using type 4 (directly via JDBC)

Specify the JDBC driver type:

- If you are using a native database client, enter 2 .
- Otherwise, enter 4 to select the type 4 JDBC driver.

e. If you see one of the following prompts:

Specify the name of your database: [BPEDB]

Specify the name of database in local catalog: [BPEDB]

Either the database name, or an alias.

Note: The default value, BPEDB, is the same database that is used by Business Process Choreographer. For a high-performance system, you should use a different database. If you use a different database, it must exist before you continue.

f. If you see:

Specify the hostname of the database server: [localhost]

Enter the host name or IP address of your database server.

g. If you see:

Specify the port where the database server is listening: [50000]

Enter the port number for your database server.

h.

Specify the directory of your JDBC driver: [D:\opt\SQLLIB\java]

Enter the directory where the db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cu.jar JAR files for the JDBC driver reside.

i. If you see:

Specify userid to connect to the database 'database_name' [db2admin] :

Specify the password for userid 'user_ID' :

Enter the user ID and password to connect to the database. The following is displayed:

```
Trying to connect to database 'database_name', using user 'user_ID'
Connected to 'database_name'
```

j. If you see:

Specify the database schema to be used. [user_ID] :

Enter the database schema (the collection name) to be used for the database objects. If you enter a space character or leave the field empty, the schema of the user ID is used.

k. When you see:

Choose the implementation of the reporting function user-defined functions.

Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.
Visit the reporting function documentation for details.

- 1) Java
- 2) SQL

0) Exit Menu

- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
- If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.

You see something similar to the following:

```
Checking for required tablespace(es) ['OBSVRTS']
All required tablespaces were found.
Loading the jar file 'install_root\lib\bpcodbutil.jar' into the database.
The jar file 'install_root\lib\bpcodbutil.jar' was successfully installed.
```

The setup of the database completed successfully.

7. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Preparing a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

You can either use scripts or an interactive tool to prepare the reporting database.

Using an SQL script to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how to use the createSchema_Observer.sql script in an i5/OS qshell environment to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database.

Before you begin

Your collection must already exist. You can either use an existing collection, or create a new one according to the database documentation. You must have administrative authority (*ALLOBJ) for the database.

Procedure

1. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in batch mode or using the administrative console, use the generated SQL script to create the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
 - a. Locate the generated `createSchema_Observer.sql` SQL script.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer in a network deployment environment using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node of the deployment manager.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a standalone server using the administrative console or by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in connected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node where you invoked `wsadmin`.
 - If you configured Business Process Choreographer by running the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in disconnected mode, the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file is generated on the node of the standalone server.

The generated script is: `profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2iSeries/collection_name/createSchema_Observer.sql`. Where:

collection_name

is the name of the collection.

- b. If the database is remote, copy the generated script to the database host. If you are not authorized to perform this, give your database administrator a copy of the script and discuss your requirements with her.
 - c. Optional: You or your database administrator can customize the SQL script. For example, to specify the allocation of disks and table spaces that you planned in “Planning the reporting database” on page 123.
 - d. Make sure that you are either in the DB2 command-line processor, or in a `qshell`.
 - e. Run the SQL script on the database host by entering the following command:

```
db2 -tf createSchema_Observer.sql
```
2. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the `bpeconfig.jacl` script in interactive mode, or if you have not configured Business Process Choreographer yet, there are no generated SQL scripts; you must customize a copy of the standard SQL script.
 - a. In a `qshell` environment, locate the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts for your database are located.
 - Location on the product media: `media_root` or `extract_directory/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2iSeries/createSchema.sql`
 - Location after installation: `install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2iSeries/createSchema.sql`
 - b. Copy all `*Observer.sql` script files to your database server.
 - c. On the database server, change to the directory where you copied the script files.
 - d. Create the schema (tables, indexes, and views).
 - 1) Edit the `createSchema_Observer.sql` script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.

- 2) Either in the DB2 command-line processor, or in a qshell, enter the command:
`db2 -tf createSchema_0bserver.sql`
- 3) Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If you want to drop the schema, use the `dropSchema_0bserver.sql` script file.
3. If you want to use the Java implementation of the necessary user-defined functions (UDFs), perform “Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions” on page 245.
4. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the `setupEventCollector` tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database from within an i5/OS qshell environment.

About this task

You can either use an existing collection, or create a new one according to the database documentation.

Procedure

1. Start a qshell environment.
2. Change to the Business Process Choreographer directory where the configuration scripts are located. Enter:
`cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`
3. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “`setupEventCollector` tool” on page 268.
4. Prepare the database:
 - a. When you see:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector

- 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
- 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions

0) Exit Menu

Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

b. When you see:

Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function

Select the type of your database provider:

- c) Derby
- d) DB2 Universal
- i) DB2 iSeries
- 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
- o) Oracle

0) Exit Menu

Enter i to select DB2 for iSeries.

c. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID.

When you see:

Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
- If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:

Even if you want to delay the configuration, your entered values can be checked within the database.

Do you want to perform these checks?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
- Otherwise enter n.

Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.

d. If you see:

Specify the JDBC driver to be used:

- 1) Connect using the IBM Toolbox for Java JDBC driver
- 2) Connect using the native JDBC driver

Your selection: [2]

- If you are configuring a remote database, enter 1 to select the IBM Toolbox for Java JDBC driver.
- If you are configuring the local database, enter 2 to select the native JDBC driver.

e. If you see:

Specify the name of database in local catalog: [*LOCAL]

or

Specify the name of your database: [*SYSBAS]

Enter the service identifier, or accept the default.

- f. If you see:
Specify the hostname of the database server: [localhost]
- Enter the host name or IP address of your database server.
- g. If you see:
Specify the directory of your JDBC driver:
[/QIBM/ProdData/HTTP/Public/jt400/lib]
- Enter the directory where the JDBC driver JAR files reside.
- For the native driver (db2_classes.zip), this is typically /QIBM/ProdData/Java400/ext.
 - For the toolbox driver (jt400.jar), this is typically /QIBM/ProdData/HTTP/Public/jt400/lib
- h. If you see:
Specify userid to connect to the database 'database_name' [db2admin] :
Specify the password for userid 'user_ID' :
- Enter the user ID and password to connect to the database.
- i. If you see:
Specify the database schema to be used. [user_ID] :
- Enter the database schema (the collection name) to be used for the database objects. You must specify a schema that already exists. If you enter a space character or leave the field empty, the schema of the user ID is used.
- j. If you see:
Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.
Visit the reporting function documentation for details.
- 1) Java
 - 2) SQL
 - 0) Exit Menu
- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
 - If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.
- k. When the database has been successfully prepared, the following is displayed:
The setup of the database completed successfully.
5. If you used a separate database (not BPEDB), then use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the `setupEventCollector` tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database from a remote system:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function from a remote Linux, Windows, or UNIX system.

About this task

You can either use an existing collection, or create a new one according to the database documentation. The collection to be used must already exist.

Procedure

1. To prepare the database remotely, you need to download the IBM Toolbox JDBC driver to connect to your iSeries system. After downloading, note the location of the jar file `jt400.jar`.
2. Start a command line environment.
3. Change to the Business Process Choreographer directory where the configuration scripts are located.
 - On Windows platforms, enter:
`cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:
`cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`
4. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “`setupEventCollector` tool” on page 268.
5. Prepare the database:
 - a. When you see:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions

0) Exit Menu

Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

- b. When you see:

Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function

Select the type of your database provider:

- c) Derby
 - d) DB2 Universal
 - i) DB2 iSeries
 - 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
 - o) Oracle
- 0) Exit Menu

Enter i to select DB2 for iSeries.

- c. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID.

When you see:

Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
- If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:

Even if you want to delay the configuration, your entered values can be checked within the database.

Do you want to perform these checks?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
- Otherwise enter n.

Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.

- d. If you see:

Specify the name of your database: [*SYSBAS]

Enter the service identifier, or accept the default.

- e. If you see:

Specify the hostname of the database server: [localhost]

Enter the host name or IP address of your database server.

- f. If you see:

Specify the directory of your JDBC driver:

[/QIBM/ProdData/HTTP/Public/jt400/lib]

Enter the directory where you downloaded the JDBC driver file jt400.jar.

- g. If you see:

Specify userid to connect to the database 'database_name' [db2admin] :

Specify the password for userid 'user_ID' :

Enter the user ID and password to connect to the database.

- h. If you see:

Specify the database schema to be used. [user_ID] :

Enter the database schema (the collection name) to be used for the database objects. You must specify a schema that already exists. If you enter a space character or leave the field empty, the schema of the user ID is used.

i. If you see:

Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.
Visit the reporting function documentation for details.

- 1) Java
- 2) SQL

0) Exit Menu

- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
- If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.

j. When the database has been successfully prepared, the following is displayed:

The setup of the database completed successfully.

6. If you used a separate database (not BPEDB), then use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Preparing a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

You can prepare the reporting database remotely or within the UNIX System Services.

Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function in USS:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script in UNIX System Services (USS) on a z/OS system, to create a DB2 for z/OS database.

Procedure

1. Prepare the DB2 environment:
 - a. Log on to the native z/OS environment.

- b. If multiple DB2 systems are installed, decide which subsystem you want to use.
 - c. Make a note of the IP port to which the DB2 subsystem is listening.
 - d. Determine the location name of the subsystem. To find out the location name, either check on the DB2 Systems panel or select the DB2 administration menu option **Execute SQL statements** for your subsystem, and enter the following SQL query:


```
select current server from sysibm.sysdummy1
```
 - e. Create a storage group and note the name, for example OBSVRSG.
 - f. If you want to use a new database, create a new database, for example, named OBSVRDB. If you want, you can reuse an existing database and storage group, for example, the Business Process Choreographer database, BPEDB.
 - g. Decide which schema qualifier to use.
 - h. Decide which user ID, *user_ID*, will be used to set up the database. This is not the user ID used to access the database at runtime.
 - i. Ensure that the user ID has the following rights to access the database and storage group:
 - Permission to use the storage group.
 - Permission to use the database OBSVRDB.
 - Permission to create table spaces within the database OBSVRDB.
 - Permission to create tables within the database OBSVRDB.
 - j. If you intend to use the Java implementation of the Business Process Choreographer user-defined functions (UDFs), ensure that the user ID also has the following rights:
 - Permission to perform a select on SYSIBM.SYSJAROBJECTS.
 - Permission to execute the following stored procedures for the schema SQLJ:
 - INSTALL_JAR
 - REMOVE_JAR
 - REPLACE_JAR
 - DB2_INSTALL_JAR
 - DB2_REMOVE_JAR
 - DB2_REPLACE_JAR
 - Permission to execute packages belonging to the collection DSNJAR.
 - k. If you intend to use the Java implementation of the Business Process Choreographer user-defined functions (UDFs), prepare the DB2 environment to run Java user defined functions and interpreted Java routines. Perform the following:
 - 1) Enabling the DB2-supplied stored procedures and defining the tables used by the DB2 Universal JDBC Driver
 - 2) Setting up the environment for interpreted Java routines

Note the name of the WLM application environment created during this procedure.
2. Log on to the USS.
 3. Create the table space:
 - a. Change to the directory where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function database scripts for your database system are located. Depending on your DB2 version, enter one of the following commands:


```
cd install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2zOSV8
cd install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2zOSV9
```

- b. Edit the ASCII createTablespace_Observer.sql script. Replace @STOGRP@ with the storage group name and replace @DBNAME@ with the database name (not the subsystem name).
- c. Make sure that you are connected to your database, and run your customized version of the script.
db2 -tf createTablespace_Observer.sql
4. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268.
5. Prepare the database: When you see:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
- 0) Exit Menu
 - a. Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector application.
 - b. Enter 8 to select your DB2 on z/OS version number. If you use DB2 for z/OS V9, use the V8 options.
 - c. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID.
When you see:
Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?
y) yes
n) no
 - If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
 - If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:
Even if you want to delay the configuration,
your entered values can be checked within the database.
Do you want to perform these checks?
y) yes
n) no
 - If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
 - Otherwise enter n.
Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.
- d. If you see:
Specify the database location name:
(as returned by SELECT CURRENT SERVER FROM SYSIBM.SYSDUMMY1):

Enter the location name of your database. This is the value you noted in step 1d on page 228.
- e. If you see:
Specify the name of the database as known by the subsystem [*subsystem*]

Enter the name that your database has in the subsystem on the z/OS host.
This is the value you noted in step 1f on page 228.
- f. If you see:
Specify the hostname of the z/OS DB2 database server: [*localhost*]

Enter the host name of your database server.

g. If you see:

Specify the port where the database subsystem is listening:

Enter the port number that is used by the database subsystem. This is the value you noted in step 1c on page 228.

h. If you see:

Specify userid to connect to the database '*database_alias*' [db2admin] :

Enter the user ID to connect to the database . This is the user ID, *user_ID*, described in step 1h on page 228.

i. If you see:

Specify the password for userid '*user_ID*' :

Enter the password for the user ID.

j. If you see:

Trying to connect to database '*database_alias*', using user '*user_ID*'

Connected to '*database_alias*'

Specify the database schema to be used. [*user_ID*] :

Enter the database schema to be used for the database objects, or press Enter to accept the default, which is the user ID that is used to connect to the database. This is the schema qualifier.

k. If you see:

Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.

Visit the reporting function documentation for details.

- 1) Java
- 2) SQL

0) Exit Menu

- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
- If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.

l. If you see:

Specify the DB2 storage group name to be used. [OBSVRSG] :

Enter the storage group name from step 1e on page 228, or press Enter to accept the default value.

m. If you see:

Specify the WLM environment name where the UDF should run. [] :

Enter the WLM environment that you noted in step 1k on page 228.

n. After checking for the required table spaces and loading a JAR file into the database, success is indicated by the following:

The setup of the database completed successfully.

6. Using the administrative console, create an XA data source that points to the database.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function from a remote system:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script on a Linux, UNIX, or Windows system to prepare the schema for the reporting database.

Before you begin

You must have already installed WebSphere Process Server on a Linux, UNIX, or Windows server.

Procedure

1. On the z/OS server that hosts the database:
 - a. Log on to the native z/OS environment.
 - b. If multiple DB2 systems are installed, decide which subsystem you want to use.
 - c. Make a note of the IP port to which the DB2 subsystem is listening.
 - d. Create a storage group and note the name, for example OBSVRSG.
 - e. If you want to use a new database, create a new database, for example, named OBSVRDB. If you want, you can reuse an existing database and storage group, for example, the Business Process Choreographer database, BPEDB.
 - f. Decide which schema qualifier to use.
 - g. Decide which user ID, *user_ID*, will be used to set up the database. This is not the user ID used to access the database at runtime.
 - h. Ensure that the user ID has the following rights to access the database and storage group:
 - Permission to use the storage group.
 - Permission to use the database OBSVRDB.
 - Permission to create table spaces within the database OBSVRDB.
 - Permission to create tables within the database OBSVRDB.
 - i. If you intend to use the Java implementation of the Business Process Choreographer user-defined functions (UDFs), ensure that the user ID also has the following rights:
 - Permission to perform a select on SYSIBM.SYSJAROBJECTS.

- Permission to execute the following stored procedures for the schema SQLJ:
 - INSTALL_JAR
 - REMOVE_JAR
 - REPLACE_JAR
 - DB2_INSTALL_JAR
 - DB2_REMOVE_JAR
 - DB2_REPLACE_JAR
- Permission to execute packages belonging to the collection DSNJAR.
- j. If you intend to use the Java implementation of the Business Process Choreographer user-defined functions (UDFs), prepare the DB2 environment to run Java user defined functions and interpreted Java routines. Perform the following:
 - 1) Enabling the DB2-supplied stored procedures and defining the tables used by the DB2 Universal JDBC Driver
 - 2) Setting up the environment for interpreted Java routines

Note the name of the WLM application environment created during this procedure.
- 2. On the server that hosts the WebSphere Process Server:
 - a. Install a suitable DB2 client.

Note: If you plan to use a native DB2 client to connect to the remote database (using a type 2 JDBC connection) make sure that you have DB2 Connect Gateway installed. DB2 Connect Gateway is part of the DB2 UDB ESE package, but you can also install it separately.

- b. If you are using a native DB2 client, catalog the remote database and verify that you can establish a connection to it. Enter the following commands in a DB2 command line window:

```
catalog tcpip node zosnode remote host_name server IP_port ostype mvs
catalog database location as database_alias at node zosnode
authentication dcs
catalog dcs database database_alias parms ',,INTERRUPT_ENABLED'
```

where

zosnode

is a local alias for the remote z/OS node.

host_name

is either the TCP/IP address or alias of the remote z/OS system.

IP_port

is the port number where the DB2 subsystem is listening.

database_alias

is the local alias to access the remote database.

location

is the remote DB2 location name. To find out the location name, log on to TSO and enter the following SQL query on the selected subsystem using one of the available query tools.

```
select current server from sysibm.sysdummy1
```

To verify that you can connect to the remote system, enter:

```
db2 connect to database_alias user userid using password
```

c. Change to the directory where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function scripts for your database system are located:

- On Linux and UNIX platforms, depending on your DB2 version, enter one of the following commands:

```
cd install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2z0SV8
cd install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/DB2z0SV9
```

- On Windows platforms, depending on your DB2 version, enter one of the following commands:

```
cd install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2z0SV8
cd install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\DB2z0SV9
```

d. Edit the ASCII createTablespace_Observer.sql script. Replace @STOGRP@ with the storage group name and replace @DBNAME@ with the database name (not the subsystem name).

e. Run your customized version of the script.

```
db2 -tf createTablespace_Observer.sql
```

If you want to drop the table space, use the dropTablespace_Observer.sql script.

f. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts are located.

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
```

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
```

g. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268.

h. Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector application.

i. Enter 8 to select your DB2 on z/OS version number. If you use DB2 for z/OS V9, use the V8 options.

j. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID. When you see:

```
Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?
```

```
y) yes
n) no
```

- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
- If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:

```
Even if you want to delay the configuration,
your entered values can be checked within the database.
```

```
Do you want to perform these checks?
```

```
y) yes
n) no
```

- If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
- Otherwise enter n.

Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.

k. If you see:

```
Specify the JDBC driver type to be used:
```

```
2) Connect using type 2 (using a native database client)
4) Connect using type 4 (directly via JDBC)
```

Specify the JDBC driver type:

- If you are using a native database client, enter 2 .
- Otherwise, enter 4 to select the type 4 JDBC driver.

l. If you see:

Specify the name of database in local catalog: [BPEDB]

Enter the name of your database as it is cataloged on the local DB2 client, this is the value that you used for *database_alias* in step 2b on page 232.

m. If you see:

Specify the location name/connection target: []

Enter the location name of the subsystem to connect to.

Note: To determine the location name, log on with a SQL processor and execute the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT CURRENT SERVER FROM SYSIBM.SYSDUMMY1
```

n. If you see:

Specify the name of the database as known by the subsystem: [OBSVRDB]

Enter the name by which the database is known within the subsystem on the z/OS host.

o. If you see:

Specify the hostname of the database server: [localhost]

Specify the port where the database server is listening: [446]

Enter the host name and port number used by your z/OS database server.

p. If you see:

Specify the directory of your JDBC driver: []

Enter the directory where the db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar JAR files for the DB2 JDBC driver reside.

q. If you see:

Specify userid to connect to the database 'database_name' [db2admin] :

Specify the password for userid 'user_ID' :

Enter the user ID and password to connect to the database. This is the user ID, *user_ID*, described in step 1g on page 231.

r. If you see:

Specify the database schema to be used. [user_ID] :

Enter the name of the database schema to use for the database objects.

s. If you see:

Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.

Visit the reporting function documentation for details.

- 1) Java
- 2) SQL

0) Exit Menu

- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
- If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.

- t. If you see:
Specify the DB2 storage group name to be used. [OBSVRSG] :

Enter the storage group name from step 1d on page 231.
 - u. If you see:
Specify the WLM environment name where the UDF should run. [] :

Enter the WLM environment that you noted in step 1j on page 232. After checking for the required table spaces and loading a JAR file into the database, success is indicated by the following:
The setup of the database completed successfully.
3. Using the administrative console, create an XA data source that points to the database.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Preparing a Derby database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

You can either use scripts or an interactive tool to prepare the reporting database.

Using an SQL script to prepare a Derby database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how to use the createSchema_Observer.sql script to prepare the schema for the reporting database.

About this task

You must create the schema for the reporting database. You can either create it in an existing database, or have the script file create a new database for you.

Procedure

1. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the bpeconfig.jacl script in batch mode or using the administrative console, use the generated SQL script to create the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
 - a. Locate the generated SQL file.

- On Linux and UNIX platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is located in the directory: *profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby/database_name/database_schema*.
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is located in the directory: *profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby/database_name*.
- On Windows platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is located in the directory: *profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Derby\database_name\database_schema*
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is located in the directory: *profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Derby\database_name*
- On the i5/OS platform: The generated script is located in the directory: *profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby/collection_name*.

Where:

database_name

is the name of your database.

database_schema

is the name of the schema, if you are using one.

collection_name

is the name of the collection.

- b. In a derby network server environment, copy the SQL script to the network server.
 - c. Copy the JAR file *bpcodbutil.jar*, from the *lib* subdirectory of the *install_root* directory to the same directory on your database server.
 - d. If you connect to an existing database using the embedded Derby driver, stop the server and any other applications that use the database.
 - e. Run the script to create the schema. For example:
 - To create a database named OBSVRDB, from the directory where the database will be created, enter the command:


```
java -Dij.protocol=jdbc:derby:
      -Dij.database=OBSVRDB;create=true
      org.apache.derby.tools.ij
      createSchema_Observer.sql
```
 - For a database named OBSVRDB, which already exists, from the directory where the database was created, enter the command:


```
java -Dij.protocol=jdbc:derby:
      -Dij.database=OBSVRDB
      org.apache.derby.tools.ij
      createSchema_Observer.sql
```
2. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the *bpeconfig.jacl* script in interactive mode, or if you have not configured Business Process Choreographer yet, there are no generated SQL scripts; you must customize a copy of the standard SQL script.
 - a. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the standard configuration scripts for your database are located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Derby*

- Location after installation:*install_root*/dbscripts/
ProcessChoreographer/Derby
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media:*media_root* or *extract_directory*\
dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Derby
 - Location after installation:*install_root*\dbscripts\
ProcessChoreographer\Derby
 - b. In a derby network server environment, copy the *Observer.sql scripts to the network server.
 - c. Copy the JAR file *bpcodbutil.jar*, from the lib subdirectory of the *install_root* directory to the same directory on your database server.
 - d. In a text editor, read the instructions in the header of the script file *createSchema_Observer.sql*. If you want to create a new database, append `;create=true` to the database name. For example, if your database name is OBSVRDB, replace the parameter `-Dij.database=OBSVRDB` with `-Dij.database=OBSVRDB;create=true`
- Note:** On Windows platforms, avoid using the Notepad editor, because it does not display the file in a readable format.
- e. If you connect to an existing database using the embedded Derby driver, stop the server and any other applications that use the database.
 - f. Create the schema. From the directory where you created the database, run the script file *createSchema_Observer.sql* as described in the header of the script.
 - g. In case of errors, you can run the script file *dropSchema_Observer.sql* to drop the schema.
3. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to prepare a Derby database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, `setupEventcollector`, to prepare a Derby database for the reporting database on any supported platform.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts are located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:


```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
```
 - On Windows platforms, enter:


```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
```
2. If you connect to an existing database using the embedded Derby driver, stop the server and any other applications that use the database. Plan to use the `-conntype none` when starting the tool.
3. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “`setupEventCollector` tool” on page 268.
4. When you see:

- 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
- 2) Install the Event Collector application
- 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
- 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
- 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
- 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions

0) Exit Menu

Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector application. The following menu is displayed:

Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function

Select the type of your database provider:

- c) Derby
- d) DB2 Universal
- i) DB2 iSeries
- 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
- o) Oracle

0) Exit Menu

5. Enter c to select Derby.
6. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID. When you see:

Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?

- y) yes
- n) no

- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
- If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:

Even if you want to delay the configuration, your entered values can be checked within the database.

Do you want to perform these checks?

- y) yes
- n) no

– If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.

– Otherwise enter n.

Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.

7. If you see:

Specify the JDBC driver type to be used:

- 1) Connect using the embedded JDBC driver
- 2) Connect using the network JDBC driver

Your selection: [1]

- To connect using the embedded JDBC driver, enter 1.

Important: While configuring the database using this driver, make sure that no other application (including the WebSphere Process Server) is connected to the database.

- To use the network JDBC driver, enter 2.

8. When you see:

Specify the name of your database [*database_name*]

Enter the fully qualified path to the database.

Note: The default value, `... \BPEDB`, is the same database that is used by the Business Process Choreographer. For better performance, use a separate database.

9. If you see:

Specify the database schema to be used. [APP] :

Enter the database schema name to be used for the database objects. If you enter a space character or leave the field empty, the default schema, APP, is used.

10. If you see:

Specify the hostname of the database server: [localhost]

Specify the port where the database server is listening: [1527]

Enter the host name and port number for your Derby network server.

11. If you see:

Specify the directory of your JDBC driver: [B:\w\p\derby\lib]

- For the embedded JDBC driver, enter the directory where the `derby.jar` file is located.
- For the network JDBC driver, enter the directory where the `derbyclient.jar` is located.

12. If you see:

Specify `userid` to connect to the database `database_name`: []

- If the server requires authentication, enter a user ID that is authorized to connect to your Derby network server.
- Otherwise, entering no value results in the user ID, `dummy`, being used. This is because the Derby JDBC driver always requires a user ID to connect to a network server.

13. If you see:

The application server must be stopped to update a Derby / Cloudscape database.

This must be done outside `wsadmin` using `'stopServer server_name'`.

After the server is stopped, come back to this prompt and enter 'c' to continue.

Please stop the server '`server_name`' now.

Press 'c' to continue, 'a' to abort:

a. Stop the server, outside `wsadmin`, using the command:

```
stopServer server_name
```

b. If you stopped the server, press `c` to continue. Otherwise, press `a` to return to the main menu shown in step 4 on page 237.

14. If you see:

Specify the database schema to be used. [APP] :

Enter the name of schema to be used for the database objects, or press Enter to use the default.

15. Make sure that you see the following message, which confirms that the database was prepared successfully:

The setup of the database completed successfully.

16. If you see:

Restart the server now using 'startServer server_name'.
After the server is up again, come back to this prompt and enter 'c' to continue.
Press 'c' to continue, 'a' to abort:

- a. Start the server, using the command:
`startServer server_name`
- b. Wait until the server has started, then back at this prompt, press c to continue. Otherwise, press a to return to the main menu shown in step 4 on page 237.

Success is indicated by the message:

WASX7074I: Reconnect of SOAP connector to host localhost completed.

17. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Preparing an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

You can either use scripts or an interactive tool to prepare the reporting database.

Using SQL scripts to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how to use scripts to prepare the reporting database.

About this task

Your reporting database must already exist. You can either use an existing database, or create a new one according to the database documentation.

Procedure

1. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the bpeconfig.jacl script in batch mode or using the administrative console, use the generated SQL script to create the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
 - a. Locate the generated SQL file.
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle/database_name/database_schema/createSchema_Observer.sql`
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle/database_name/createSchema_Observer.sql`
 - On Windows platforms:
 - If you specified a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle\database_name\database_schema\createSchema_Observer.sql`
 - If you did **not** specify a schema qualifier, the generated script is:
`profile_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle\database_name\createSchema_Observer.sql`

- On the i5/OS platform: The generated script is: *profile_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle/database_name/database_schema/createSchema_Observer.sql*.
- b. Copy the generated script *createSchema_Observer.sql* to your database server.
 - c. Run the *createSchema_Observer.sql* script file, by entering the following command:


```
sqlplus userID/password
@database_name@createSchema_Observer.sql
```
2. If you configured Business Process Choreographer using the *bpeconfig.jacl* script in interactive mode, or if you have not configured Business Process Choreographer yet, there are no generated SQL scripts; you must customize a copy of the standard SQL script.
 - a. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts for your database are located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle*
 - Location after installation: *install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle*
 - On Windows platforms:
 - Location on the product media: *media_root* or *extract_directory\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle*
 - Location after installation: *install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle*
 - b. Copy all **Observer.sql* script files to your database server.
 - c. Create the table space
 - 1) Edit your copy of the *createTablespace_Observer.sql* script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.
 - 2) Run your copy of the *createTablespace_Observer.sql* script file, by entering the following command:


```
sqlplus userID/password
@database_name@createTablespace_Observer.sql
```
 - 3) Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the table space using the *dropTablespace_Observer.sql* script file.
 - d. Create the schema (tables, indexes, and views).
 - 1) Edit your copy of the *createSchema_Observer.sql* script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.
 - 2) Run your copy of the *createSchema_Observer.sql* script file, by entering the following command:


```
sqlplus userID/password
@database_name@createSchema_Observer.sql
```
 - 3) Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If you want to drop the schema, use the *dropSchema_Observer.sql* script file.
 3. If you want to use the Java-based Business Process Choreographer user-defined functions:
 - a. Copy the JAR file *bpcodbut1.jar*, from the *lib* subdirectory of the *install_root* directory to the directory that contains the SQL script file.
 - b. Install the JAR file that contains UDFs for Business Process Choreographer.

- 1) Log on to your database server as a user with Oracle administration rights, and change to the directory where the JAR file `bpcodbutil.jar` is located:
 - If your database is on the same system as the application server, change to the `lib` subdirectory of the `install_root` directory.
 - If your database is not on the same server as your application server, change to the directory where you copied the JAR file `bpcodbutil.jar`.
- 2) Run the Oracle `loadjava` utility to install the JAR file `bpcodbutil.jar`, by entering the following command:

```
loadjava -user user/password@database
         -schema schema_name
         -resolve bpcodbutil.jar
```

where:

user, *password*, and *database* are valid values for user ID, password, and the database name.

schema_name is the schema name under which the classes are to be stored. This must be the same schema as the one that is used for the event collector database tables.

- 3) In case of problems, you can drop the JAR file using the command:

```
dropjava -user user/password@database
         -schema schema_name bpcodbutil.jar
```

4. Use the administrative console to create an XA data source that points to the database, and test the connection.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the `setupEventCollector` tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the `createTablespace_Observer.sql` script to prepare the reporting database.

About this task

Your database must already exist. You can either use an existing database, or create a new one according to the database documentation.

Note: To create a remote Oracle database from an i5/OS platform, perform “Using SQL scripts to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 240.

Procedure

1. On Linux and UNIX platforms: Add \$ORACLE_HOME/bin to the PATH variable.
 2. Create the table space:
 - a. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the standard configuration scripts for your database are located.
 - On Linux and UNIX platforms, change to the directory *install_root*/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/Oracle.
 - On Windows platforms, change to the directory *install_root*\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\Oracle.
 - b. Edit a copy of the createTablespace_Observer.sql script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.
 - c. Run the table space creation script file according to the instructions at the top of the file.
 - d. Make sure that the script output contains no errors. If errors occur, you can drop the table space using the dropTablespace_Observer.sql script file.
 3. Change to the Business Process Choreographer directory where the configuration scripts are located.

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
```

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
```
 4. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268.
 5. Prepare the database: When you see:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
- 0) Exit Menu

Perform the following:

- a. Select option 1 to prepare a database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. The following menu is displayed:

Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function

Select the type of your database provider:

- c) Derby
- d) DB2 Universal
- i) DB2 iSeries

- 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
 - o) Oracle
 - 0) Exit Menu
- b. Enter o to select Oracle.
- c. The tool allows you to create an SQL file that you can give to your database administrator to run, rather than running it with your current user ID.
When you see:
- Do you want to create an SQL file only (delay database preparation)?
- y) yes
 - n) no
- If you do not want to delay running the SQL, enter n.
 - If you want to delay running the SQL, enter y. You will see:
Even if you want to delay the configuration,
your entered values can be checked within the database.
Do you want to perform these checks?
- y) yes
 - n) no
- If you want the values that you enter to be checked within the database, enter y.
 - Otherwise enter n.
- Depending on what you entered, you might not see all of the following prompts. Skip any steps that you do not see.
- d. If you see:
- Specify the database to be used.
- Note: Database must already exist.
- Specify the name of your database [BPEDB] :
- Enter the SID name of the database.
- e. If you see:
- Specify the hostname where the oracle database resides: [localhost]
- Enter the host name or IP address of the database server.
- f. If you see:
- Specify the port where the oracle listener is listening: [1521]
- Enter the port number for the Oracle listener.
- g. If you see:
- Specify userid to connect to the database '*database_name*' [system] :
- Enter the user ID to connect to the database. The default is system.
- h. If you see:
- Specify the password for userid '*user_ID*' :
- Enter the password for the user ID.
- i. When you see:
- Choose the implementation of the reporting function user-defined functions.
- Note: The Java UDFs are more precise, but they require a jar file installed to the database.
Visit the reporting function documentation for details.

- 1) Java
 - 2) SQL
- 0) Exit Menu
- If you want to use the more precise Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs), which requires that a JAR file is installed in the database, enter 1.
 - If you want to use the less precise SQL-based UDFs, enter 2.

You see something similar to the following:

```
Trying to connect to database 'database_name', using user 'user_ID'
Connected to 'database_name'
Checking for required tablespace(s) ['OBSVRTS', 'OBSVRLOB', 'OBSVRIDX']
All required tablespaces were found.
Loading the jar file 'install_root\lib\bpcodbutil.jar' into the database.
The jar file 'install_root\lib\bpcodbutil.jar' was successfully installed.
```

The setup of the database completed successfully.

6. Using the administrative console, create an XA data source that points to the database.

Results

The database schema for the reporting database has been prepared.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function:

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform

these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

UDFs can be installed in either of the following implementations:

The SQL implementation

Use the SQL implementation for UDFs that are implemented in plain SQL, using the built-in time functions that are provided by the database system.

Installing the SQL implementation is easier than installing the Java implementation because the SQL implementation requires to run provided SQL scripts only. For these scripts, less administration rights are required to install them. In addition, the SQL implementation has a higher performance than the Java implementation. However, because of limitations of the built-in time functions SQL implemented UDFs might not be precise enough for your needs. For example, on DB2, the build-in time function assumes that each month has the length of 30 days, which might falsify your results.

SQL implementation is not available on Derby databases.

The Java implementation

Use the Java implementation for UDFs that are implemented using the Java language.

To install the Java implementation, use the mechanisms provided by the database system. Java implemented UDFs grant precise reports. However, installing the Java implementation requires more steps than installing the SQL implementation, and it requires more administration rights on the database. For example, on DB2 z/OS databases, a work load manager (WLM) environment has to be set up to run the UDFs.

Depending on which way you choose to setup your database, the default implementation varies:

- If you set up your database to use SQL scripts, or to use the create tables on first touch feature, the SQL implementation is installed by default.
- If you set up your database to use the setupEventCollector tool, or to use the Business Process Choreographer sample configuration in the Profile creation wizard (only provided on Derby databases), the Java implementation is installed by default.

The implementation of the UDFs can be changed after the initial setup. This is described in “Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions” on page 245.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Using an SQL script to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how to use the createSchema_Observer.sql script in an i5/OS qshell environment to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database.

Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database from within an i5/OS qshell environment.

Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database from a remote system

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function from a remote Linux, Windows, or UNIX system.

Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function in USS

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script in UNIX System Services (USS) on a z/OS system, to create a DB2 for z/OS database.

Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function from a remote system

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script on a Linux, UNIX, or Windows system to prepare the schema for the reporting database.

Using SQL scripts to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how to use scripts to prepare the reporting database.

Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script to prepare the reporting database.

Using SQL scripts to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how to use scripts to prepare a DB2 Universal database on Linux, UNIX, and Windows platforms.

Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script to prepare the reporting database .

Related reference

setupEventCollector tool

Use setupEventCollector to interactively configure or remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector application, to setup the database, and to administer user-defined functions for the database. This tool uses wsadmin scripting. You must configure an event collector if you want to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Using scripts to select between Java and SQL user-defined functions:

This describes how to use scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the Business Process Choreographer reporting database.

Using scripts to select Java user-defined functions:

This describes how to use scripts to switch to the Java-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the Business Process Choreographer reporting database.

About this task

You want to use the Java implementation of the UDFs instead of the SQL implementation. The Derby database can only use the Java implementation.

Procedure

1. Copy the jar file `bpcodbut1.jar`, to the same directory on your database server.

Option	Description
On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:	<code>install_root/lib</code>
On Windows platforms:	<code>install_root\lib</code>

2. Connect to the database.

Option	Description
DB2	If you are not already connected to the database, connect to it by entering the following command in a DB2 command-line processor: <code>db2 connect to database_name</code>
Oracle	Start the SQLPLUS command processor and connect to the database by entering the following command: <code>sqlplus user@database_name</code>

3. Install the jar file `bpcodbutil.jar`.

Option	Description
DB2	<p>Enter the command:</p> <pre>db2 call sqlj.install_jar('file:pathURL', 'schema.BPCODBUTIL')</pre> <p>where <i>pathURL</i> is a fully qualified URL to the jar file, and <i>schema</i> is the name of the schema for the Business Process Choreographer database. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On Linux and UNIX platforms, if the JAR file is in the directory <code>/tmp</code>, you must enter the command: <pre>db2 call sqlj.install_jar('file:/tmp/bpcodbutil.jar', 'schema.BPCODBUTIL')</pre> On Windows platforms, if the JAR file is in the directory <code>c:\tmp</code>, you must enter the command: <pre>db2 call sqlj.install_jar('file:c:/tmp/bpcodbutil.jar', 'schema.BPCODBUTIL')</pre>
Oracle	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Change to the directory where you copied the JAR file to. Enter the following command: <pre>loadjava -user user_id/password @localhost:port:database_name -resolve bpcodbutil.jar -thin -schema schema</pre> <p>Where <i>user_id</i> is a user ID with permission to install a JAR file, <i>password</i> is the password for the user ID, <i>port</i> is the port number of the SID listener, <i>database_name</i> is the name of the database, and <i>schema</i> is the name of the schema of the reporting tables, where the JAR file will be installed.</p>

4. Edit the `dropFunctions_Observer.sql` script file according to the instruction at the top of the file. The script is located in the following directories:

Option	Description
On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:	<code>install_root/dbscripts/ ProcessChoreographer/database_type</code>
On Windows platforms:	<code>install_root\dbscripts\ ProcessChoreographer\database_type</code>

5. Drop the SQL implementation of the UDFs.

Option	Description
DB2	In a DB2 command-line processor, enter the command: db2 -tf dropFunctions_Observer.sql
Oracle	In the SQLPLUS command processor, enter the command: @ <i>path</i> /dropFunctions_Observer.sql Where <i>path</i> is the fully qualified path.

6. Edit the createFunctionsJava_Observer.sql script file according to the instruction at the top of the file. The script is located in the following directories:

Option	Description
On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:	<i>install_root</i> /dbscripts/ ProcessChoreographer/ <i>database_type</i>
On Windows platforms:	<i>install_root</i> \dbscripts\ ProcessChoreographer\ <i>database_type</i>

7. Run the script to create the Java implementation of the UDFs.

Option	Description
DB2	In a DB2 command-line processor, enter the command: db2 -tf createFunctionsJava_Observer.sql
Oracle	In the SQLPLUS command processor, enter the command: @ <i>path</i> /createFunctionsJava_Observer.sql Where <i>path</i> is the fully qualified path.

Results

The UDF implementation used has been switched to use Java.

Using scripts to select SQL user-defined functions:

This describes how to use scripts to switch to the SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the Business Process Choreographer reporting database.

About this task

You want to use the SQL implementation of the UDFs instead of the Java implementation. The Derby database can only use the Java implementation.

Procedure

1. Edit the dropFunctions_Observer.sql script file according to the instruction at the top of the file. The script is located in the following directories:

Option	Description
On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:	<i>install_root</i> /dbscripts/ ProcessChoreographer/ <i>database_type</i>
On Windows platforms:	<i>install_root</i> \dbscripts\ ProcessChoreographer\ <i>database_type</i>

2. Connect to the database.

Option	Description
DB2	If you are not already connected to the database, connect to it by entering the following command in a DB2 command-line processor: <code>db2 connect to <i>database_name</i></code>
Oracle	Start the SQLPLUS command processor and connect to the database by entering the following command: <code>sqlplus <i>user@database_name</i></code>

3. Run the script to drop the Java implementation of the UDFs.

Option	Description
DB2	In a DB2 command-line processor, enter the command: <code>db2 -tf dropFunctions_Observer.sql</code>
Oracle	In the SQLPLUS command processor, enter the command: <code>@ <i>path</i>/dropFunctions_Observer.sql</code> Where <i>path</i> is the fully qualified path.

4. Edit the createFunctionsSql_Observer.sql script file according to the instruction at the top of the file.

5. Run the script to create the SQL implementation of the UDFs.

Option	Description
DB2	<code>db2 -tf createFunctionsSql_Observer.sql</code>
Oracle	<code>@ <i>path</i>/createFunctionsSql_Observer.sql</code> Where <i>path</i> is the fully qualified path.

6. Optional: Remove the JAR file from the database. Enter the command for your database.

Option	Description
DB2	<code>db2 call sqlj.remove_jar('schema.BPCODBUTIL')</code> Where <i>schema</i> is the name of the schema under which the JAR file was installed.

Option	Description
Oracle	<pre>dropjava -user <i>user_id</i>/<i>password</i> @localhost:<i>port</i>:<i>database_name</i> -resolve bpcodbutil.jar -thin -schema <i>schema</i></pre> <p>Where <i>user_id</i> is a user ID with permission to install a JAR file, <i>password</i> is the password for the user ID, <i>port</i> is the port number of the SID listener, <i>database_name</i> is the name of the database, and <i>schema</i> is the name of the schema under which the JAR file was installed.</p>

Results

The UDF implementation used has been switched to use SQL.

Using the setupEventCollector tool to select between Java and SQL user-defined functions:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the Business Process Choreographer reporting database.

About this task

For a Derby database, setupEventCollector always uses Java-based UDFs. For other database types, it is the default for setupEventCollector to use Java-based UDFs, but you can use the tool to switch to SQL-based UDFs. If you change your mind again, you can use the tool to switch back to using Java-based UDFs.

Procedure

1. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268. You see the following menu:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
 - 0) Exit Menu
2. Select option 6 to administer the user-defined functions for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. You will see the following menu:
 - c) Derby
 - d) DB2 Universal
 - i) DB2 iSeries
 - 8) DB2 V8/V9 on z/OS
 - o) Oracle
3. If you are using either DB2 for Linux, UNIX, or Windows, or DB2 for z/OS, select the option for your database version: d, or 8
 - a. When you see the following menu:

Specify which type should be used to connect to the Database:

- 2) Connect using type 2 (using a native DB2 client)
- 4) Connect using type 4 (directly via JDBC)

Select one of the following options:

- 2 For a type-2 JDBC connection, which uses a native DB2 client. In this case, you are prompted to enter the following:

Database name

Database user ID

Password

Directory of your JDBC driver

- 4 For a type-4 JDBC driver, which connects directly. In this case, you are prompted to enter the following:

Database name

Database server host name

Database server port number

Directory of your JDBC driver

Database user ID

Password

- 4. If you are using DB2 for iSeries, select option i.

- a. Enter the following connection information:

Database name

Database server host name

Only prompted for if you are running the tool remotely.

Directory of your JDBC driver

Database user ID

Password

- 5. If you are using Oracle, select option o.

- a. Enter the following connection information:

Database server host name

Database server port number

Database name

Database user ID

Password

Directory of your JDBC driver

- 6. If a connection can be established to the database, you will see the menu for administering the UDFs for the database:

- 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions

- 1) Activate Java based user-defined functions
- 2) Activate SQL based user-defined functions
- 3) Determine current state
- 4) List, install or remove the jar file containing the java based functions

Note: The “activate” options do not apply for a Derby database.

a. If you want to activate the Java-based UDFs, select option 1.

1) When you see:

Specify the database schema to be used:

Enter the name of the database schema.

2) When you see:

WARNING: Switching the UDF implementation type may break any running reporting function applications. Continue anyway?

y) yes

n) no

Your selection:

If an important report is running, either enter n to not continue the switch or wait until it has completed. Enter y to continue.

3) If you continue, you see something like the following:

Removing the user-defined functions ...

The jar file with jar_id 'DB2INST1.BPCODBUTIL' is updated with the current version.
Loading the jar file 'B:\w\p\lib\bpcodbutil.jar' into the database.
The jar file 'BPCODBUTIL' was successfully installed.

Creating the Java based user-defined functions ...

4) Success is indicated by the following message:

The setup of the database completed successfully.

b. If you want to activate the SQL-based UDFs, select option 2.

1) When you see:

Specify the database schema to be used:

Enter the name of the database schema.

2) When you see:

WARNING: Switching the UDF implementation type may break any running reporting function applications. Continue anyway?

y) yes

n) no

Your selection:

Enter y to continue or n not to continue.

3) If you see:

Removing the user-defined functions ...

Creating the SQL based user-defined functions ...

Do you also want to remove the jar file from the database?

y) yes

n) no

Your selection:

Enter y to remove the JAR file from the database, or n not to remove it.

4) Success is indicated by the following message:

The setup of the database completed successfully.

c. Optional: To determine whether the selected UDF implementation is Java or SQL, and in the case that Java is active, to also verify whether the JAR file is installed, select option 3. If, for example, the Java implementation is active, you should get a message like the following:

The active UDF implementation is Java.
Tested functionality of the UDF, is working

- d. Optional: To install or remove the JAR file that is required for the Java-based UDFs, or to list all JAR files that are installed in the database, select option 4, then when you see the following menu:

List, install or remove jar files containing the java based functions

- 1) Install the jar file containing the reporting function functions into the database
- 2) Remove the jar file containing the reporting function functions from the database
- 3) List installed jar files

0) Exit Menu

- Select option 1 to install the JAR file.
- Select option 2 to remove the JAR file.
- Select option 3 to list which JAR files are installed in the database.
- Select option 0 to exit from the menu.

- e. Select option 0 repeatedly to return to the menu shown in step 1 on page 252.

Results

The reporting database will use the UDFs that you selected.

Configuring the Business Process Choreographer event collector application

The Business Process Choreographer event collector is a prerequisite for using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. You can install and configure the event collector application using an interactive tool or the administrative console.

Before you begin

The Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) must be configured on the deployment target where you want to install the event collector application.

About this task

To configure Business Process Choreographer event collector, perform one of the following:

Using the `setupEventCollector` tool to configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector:

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to install and configure the event collector application on a server or cluster.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the configuration scripts are located.

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
```

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
```

2. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268. For example, to start the tool to work with a server named server1 enter one of the following commands:

On Linux and UNIX platforms:

```
setupEventCollector.sh -server server1
```

On i5/OS platforms:

```
setupEventCollector -server server1
```

On Windows platforms:

```
setupEventCollector.bat -server server1
```

You see the Commands Menu:

Commands Menu

- 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
- 2) Install the Event Collector application
- 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
- 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
- 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
- 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions

0) Exit Menu

3. To install the Business Process Choreographer event collector application:
 - a. Select option 2. The following is displayed:
Create required objects and install the WebSphere Business Process Choreographer Event Collector application ...
 - b. If you are installing on a standalone server, you see:
Working on node '*your_node_name*', server '*your_server_name*'.
 - c. If you are installing the application on a deployment manager, you must select the deployment target from a list of all available targets. For example:
Select the deployment target to install to:
 - 1) Cluster '*cluster1*'
 - 2) Node '*Node04*', Server '*managed1*'
 - 3) Node '*Node04*', Server '*managed2*'

0) Exit Menu
 - d. While the tool searches for an existing event collector installation in a network deployment environment, you will see something like:
Searching for an already installed Event Collector on '*deployment_target*'
 - e. If there is already an instance of the event collector application installed, you see:
Do you want to overwrite the existing application?
 - o) Overwrite
 - a) Abort
 - Enter o to overwrite the existing event collector application. All installation values may be reentered and the event collector application is updated.
 - Enter a to exit without installing the event collector.
4. When you see:
Specify the JNDI name of the database where the WebSphere Business Process Choreographer Event Collector should store the collected events.
Enter '?' to get a list.
Your selection : [*jdbc/BPEDB*]

Enter the JNDI name that is used to connect to the database. You can also enter ? to get a list of all registered data sources. For example:

```
jdbc/BPEDB
jdbc/DefaultEJBTimerDataSource
jdbc/mediation/messageLog
```

5. When you see:

Specify the database schema to be used.
Enter a space character or leave empty to use the default schema of the datasource. [] :

Enter the name of the schema for the database tables where the event collector stores the events. To use the user ID that is specified in the authentication alias of the data source definition as the schema, enter a space character or leave the field empty.

All required objects are created and the enterprise application is installed.
Success is indicated by the message:

```
WebSphere Business Process Choreographer Event Collector
installed successfully!
```

6. If CEI logging is not enabled on the server, you see the following:

```
Checking if CEI event logging is enabled ...
```

```
Warning: The Business process container of server_name has CEI event
logging disabled.
To allow the Event Collector to work correctly, CEI event logging is required.
Do you want to enable the CEI event logging on server_name? (y/n)
```

- If you want the script to enable CEI logging on the named server, enter y.
- If you do not want the script to enable CEI logging on the named server, enter n.

Note: It is important that CEI logging is enabled when you start working with the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

7. When prompted:

```
Do you want to save the changes? (y/n)
```

If there were no error messages, enter y to save the configuration. If there were errors, enter n to discard the changes and keep your original configuration. Check the log file named `setupEventCollector.log`, which is located in the logs directory of the profile.

For example, on Windows, if your profile is named `myServer` and your profiles are stored in `install_root\profiles`, the log file is located in `install_root\profiles\myServer\logs`.

8. Enter 0 to exit the menu.

9. Activate the changes:

- If you specified the `-conntype NONE` option when starting the tool, your changes become active after a server restart.
- If you did not specify the `-conntype NONE` option when starting the tool, and you enabled CEI logging on the server during the installation of the Business Process Choreographer event collector, use the administrative console to stop and restart the `BPEContainer` application.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer event collector application is installed and configured.

Using the administrative console to configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector:

This describes how to use the administrative console to install an instance of the Business Process Choreographer event collector on a given server or cluster.

Before you begin

You have prepared the reporting database.

Procedure

1. In the administrative console, navigate to the Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration page: Click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* or **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Event Collector**.
2. To create a new configuration:
 - a. Enter or select values for the following fields:
 - Database instance name.
 - Schema name.
 - Enable or clear the option to create the database tables the first time that database is used.
 - User name and password to connect to the database.
 - Database server's host name or IP address.
 - Port number for the database server.
 - JDBC provider.
 - Observation target:
 - **Managed business process choreographer container**
 - **Existing event group name**
 - **Event group name**
 - b. Click **Apply** to deploy the application.
 - c. In case of problems, check the SystemOut.log file. Otherwise, save the changes to the master configuration.
 - d. Start the application by clicking **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications**, select the application `BPCECollector_scope`, where *scope* identifies the deployment target, then click **Start**.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer event collector is configured.

Enabling the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function after migration

Existing Business Process Choreographer Observer and Explorer configurations are migrated and can still be used, but the new Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which can replace the Business Process Choreographer Observer is disabled.

Before you begin

You have migrated from a previous release, your Business Process Choreographer Explorer configurations are migrated, and any existing Business Process

Choreographer Observer configurations are migrated.

About this task

Your old Business Process Choreographer Observer is not modified, it remains at the code level that you migrated from. The old URL (the default is *host:port/bpcobserver*) will continue to work, until you manually remove the Business Process Choreographer Observer application, and switch to using the new Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, which you can do whenever it is convenient.

Procedure

1. If Business Process Choreographer Observer and Business Process Choreographer Explorer were configured in the migration source release, then a template JACL script is generated during migration, which you must edit and run to enable the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
 - a. Locate the script file:
 - On Windows platforms it is generated in *profile_root\ProcessChoreographer\migrate_BPCObserver_scope.jacl*.
 - On other platforms it is generated in *profile_root/ProcessChoreographer/migrate_BPCObserver_scope.jacl*.
 - Where:
scope The value of *nodeName_serverName* or *clusterName*.
profile_root
 - On a standalone server *profile_root* is the root directory of the server profile.
 - In a network deployment environment *profile_root* is the deployment manager's profile root directory. Do not run the script before all the profiles where Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances run have been migrated.
 - b. Edit the generated script file according to the instructions in the script file.
 - c. To enable the reporting function on the selected Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance, run the customized script according to the instructions in the script file.

Note: In a network deployment environment, do not run the script before all the profiles where Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances run have been migrated.
 - d. In a network deployment environment, make sure that there is a data source pointing to the reporting database, and that it is visible in the scope of your Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. If your previous Business Process Choreographer Observer and Business Process Choreographer Explorer configurations were on different deployment targets or if you want to enable the reporting function on multiple Business Process Choreographer Explorers that are installed in different clusters, then you might need to create a new data source.
2. Make sure that the server or servers for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer are running, and that the Business Process Choreographer Explorer application is started.
3. Enable existing clients. Either notify all users to use the new URL (default: *host:port/bpc*) instead of the old URL (default: *host:port/bpcobserver*), or configure an automatic redirection on your Web server.

4. Test that clients can access the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and that it is working correctly.
5. To uninstall the old Business Process Choreographer Observer enterprise application, perform the following:
 - a. In the administrative console, select **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications**.
 - b. Locate the Business Process Choreographer Observer instances. Their names start with `BPCObserver_scope`.
 - If Business Process Choreographer Observer was installed on an application server, `scope` has the value of `nodeName_serverName`.
 - If Business Process Choreographer Observer was installed on a cluster, `scope` has the value of `clusterName`.

Note: If the context root is not the default `/bpcobserver`, the application name also has the context root appended to it, `_contextRoot`.
 - c. To uninstall the Business Process Choreographer Observer application, select the application instance that you want to delete, then click **Uninstall** → **OK** → **Save**.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is enabled, existing users can access it, and the old Business Process Choreographer Observer application has been removed.

Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how to use the administrative console to configure an instance of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function to connect to the data source for a particular event collector.

Before you begin

You have configured the Business Process Choreographer event collector and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, but you did not select the option to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Procedure

1. In the administrative console, navigate to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer configuration page: Click **Servers** → **Clusters** → `cluster_name` or **Servers** → **Application servers** → `server_name`, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**.
2. Select the Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance that you want to enable the reporting function for.
3. If the option for **Enable reporting function** is disabled, then it is already configured.
4. If the option for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is enabled, you can configure it by performing the following.
 - a. Ensure that a Business Process Choreographer event collector is installed and configured.
 - b. Select **Enable reporting function**.

- c. Select which Business Process Choreographer event collector will be visualized. If the list is empty, you must first install and configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector, as described in “Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector” on page 213.
 - d. For **Report at snapshot range** specify how many days of data will be visualized.
5. Click **Apply**. Messages are displayed indicating the progress.
 6. Optional: If any problems are reported, check the SystemOut.log file.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is configured and ready to use.

What to do next

You can configure more instances of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, on the same or different deployment targets, however, each instance must connect to a different event collector data source.

Enabling logging for Business Process Choreographer

This describes how to enable Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) events for Business Process Choreographer.

Before you begin

To monitor business process events with the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, your business process must be enabled to emit Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) events. You specify this when modelling your business process. In order to properly monitor a business process, at least the “Process Started” event has to be emitted. For a list of CEI events that you can monitor using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, see Business process events. For information about how to enable a business process to emit CEI events, refer to the WebSphere Integration Developer Information Center.

About this task

If you installed the Business Process Choreographer event collector on the same deployment target as the one where Business Process Choreographer is configured, you can use the setupEventCollector tool to enable CEI logging when you install the application. If you installed the Business Process Choreographer event collector using the administrative console you must enable CEI logging, either by using a script or using the administrative console.

To use a Jython script to enable CEI logging for the Business Process Choreographer, perform “Using a script to enable logging for Business Process Choreographer” on page 262.

To enable CEI logging for Business Process Choreographer, using the administrative console, perform “Enabling Common Base Events, the audit trail, and the task history using the administrative console” on page 302.

Results

Common Event Infrastructure events for your business processes and activities will be emitted, and can be received by a Business Process Choreographer event collector.

Using a script to enable logging for Business Process Choreographer:

This describes how to use the `setStateObserver.py` script to enable or disable Common Event Infrastructure (CEI), audit events for Business Process Choreographer, or the task history logging for the Human Task Manager.

Location

The `setStateObserver.py` script is located in the Business Process Choreographer config directory.

Running the script

To run the `setStateObserver` script:

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh
  -f install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config/setStateObserver.py
```

On i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin
  -f install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config/setStateObserver.py
```

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin.bat
  -f install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config\setStateObserver.py
```

Parameters

The script file can take the following parameters:

-bfm

Optionally specifies that the enabling or disabling is to apply to the Business Process Choreographer's Business Flow Manager, which runs business processes.

-cluster *clusterName*

Where *clusterName* is the name of the cluster. Do not specify this option in a stand-alone server environment, nor if you specify the node and server.

-conntype *NONE*

Only include this option if the application server (for stand-alone) or deployment manager is not running.

-enable { **CEI** | **AuditLog** | **TaskHistory**}

Optionally specifies whether to enable CEI logging, audit logging, or the Human Task Manager task history. To specify more than one, use a semi-colon as a separator, for example, to enable CEI and audit logging, use `-enable CEI;AuditLog`. The value `TaskHistory` is not valid if `-bfm` is specified.

-disable { **CEI** | **AuditLog** | **TaskHistory**}

Optionally specifies whether to disable CEI logging, audit logging, or the Human Task Manager task history. To specify more than one, use a semi-colon

as a separator, for example, to enable CEI and audit logging, use `-enable CEI;AuditLog`. The value `TaskHistory` is not valid if `-bfm` is specified.

-htm

Optionally specifies that the enabling or disabling is to apply to the Business Process Choreographer's Human Task Manager, which runs human tasks.

-node *nodeName*

Where *nodeName* is the name of the node. Do not specify this option if you specify a cluster.

-profileName *profileName*

Where *profileName* is the name of the profile to use.

-server *serverName*

Where *serverName* is the name of the server. Do not specify this option if you specify a cluster.

Example

To enable CEI logging for business process events on `server1`, on Linux or UNIX platforms:

```
wsadmin.sh -f setStateObserver.py -server server1 -enable CEI -bfm
```

Note: On Windows, use `wsadmin.bat`, and on i5/OS use `wsadmin`.

Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

Tuning the configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector applications is important to enable verification and improve performance.

Changing default values

The default values are more suitable for a production system than for a test system. If you are setting up the Business Process Choreographer for development or testing, it makes sense to change the following configuration parameters before you verify that the configuration is working:

- Change `BPCEventTransformerEventCount` to the value zero.
- Change `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime` to the value one.

Making these changes ensures that even when events that are emitted at lower rates than in a production system, the events become available in one minute.

Configuration parameters for the event collector

Tuning the numerical parameters affects how often the event transformer is triggered, and the age at which events are made available to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Configuration parameter	Data type / Units	Default value	Description
ObserverSchemaName	String	not set	This identifies the database schema that is used as a prefix for all database objects. If it is left empty, the default is to use as a prefix, the user ID that is used to connect to the database. This user ID is set as part of the data source definition in the administrative console. If you specify a value for this parameter, the user ID specified at the data source must have sufficient rights to access the database objects for this schema. You might need to change this parameter if did not specify a schema when you created the setup, or if you change the runtime user ID or the database provider.
BPCEventTransformer EventCount	Integer / Events	500	<p>The number of events after which the event collector triggers the transformer to transform the collected events into a format suitable for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.</p> <p>When you are developing, testing, and experimenting, the default value is probably too high, and causes events to remain unobservable for a long time. To make events available faster, you can set this value to zero. Every future event will then trigger the transformer, and will become visible in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. If you change the value to zero, any past events that have not yet been transformed will be transformed as soon as a new event is generated. Using a zero value is not recommended for a production system.</p>

Configuration parameter	Data type / Units	Default value	Description
BPCEventTransformer MaxWaitTime	Integer / Minutes	10	The maximum time that can pass before the transformer is triggered - even though the number of events specified with BPCEventTransformer EventCount is not reached.
BPCEventTransformer ToleranceTime	Integer / Minutes	10	The minimum age in minutes for an event to become visible in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. This enables related events to be reliably correlated. Using the value zero should be avoided, otherwise it is possible that an event is processed before the predecessor event has arrived. When you are developing, testing, and experimenting, the default value is probably too high, and causes new events to remain unobservable for 10 minutes. If you set this to the value 1, all transformed events that are more than one minute old will be visible in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.
ObserverCreateTables	Boolean		This parameter indicates if the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function schema should be created when the EJB connects to the database the first time. Valid values are 'true' and 'false'. You might want to enable or disable this, for example, if you want to reuse an existing setup, but want to use a new datasource.

When the event collector receives a business relevant event from the Common Event Infrastructure (CEI), the event is saved in the database. After some time has passed and more events have been received, the transformer is started. The transformer performs a batch transformation of the stored events and writes them back to the database in a format that can be used for generating reports. Only events that have been processed by the transformer are available for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Every time that a new event is received by the event collector, if one or both of the following conditions are true, then the transformer process is started:

- The number of events received since the transformer was last started is greater than the value for `BPCEventTransformerEventCount`.
- The time since the transformer was last started is greater than the value of `BPCEventTransformerMaxWaitTime`, in minutes.

If these values are made smaller, events will be available sooner for generating reports, but there is some extra cost in transforming small numbers of events. This requires a balance between having better transformation throughput, by processing larger numbers of events, against the possible need to make the events available in the reporting database as fast as possible.

Each time that the transformer is started, it processes all events that are older than `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime` in minutes. It does not process more recent events because events are not necessarily published in the order that they occur. The default setting of `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime` assumes that no event will take more than 10 minutes to be received and written to the event collector table.

Changing configuration parameters for the event collector

To change event collector parameters, perform the following:

1. Start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in “`setupEventCollector tool`” on page 268. You see the following menu:
 - 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
- 0) Exit Menu
2. Select option 4 to display the list of parameters that you can change:
 - 1) `BPCEventTransformerEventCount`
 - 2) `BPCEventTransformerMaxWaitTime`
 - 3) `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime`
 - 4) `ObserverCreateTables`
 - 5) `ObserverSchemaName`
- 0) Exit Menu
3. Select the number of the parameter that you want to change. The parameter’s name, description, type, units, and current value are displayed.
4. To change the specified value, enter a new value and press Enter. Pressing Enter without a new value returns to the parameter list.
5. If you want to change the value of another parameter, repeat from step 3.
6. Enter 0 to exit the list. You are asked whether you want to save the changes.
7. To save all changes, enter `y`, otherwise enter `n` to discard all changes.
8. To activate the changes, restart the `BPCECollector` application.

Configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

The value for the `ReportAtSnapshotRange` parameter can have a big impact on the performance of snapshot reports.

Configuration parameter and clientconfig.jacl parameter	Data type / Units	Default value	Description
ObserverSchemaName -reportSchemaName <i>schemaName</i>	String	not set	This identifies the database schema that is used as a prefix for all database objects. If it is left empty, the default is to use as a prefix, the user ID that is used to connect to the database. This user ID is set as part of the data source definition in the administrative console. If you specify a value for this parameter, the user ID specified at the data source must have sufficient rights to access the database objects for this schema. You might need to change this parameter if did not specify a schema when you created the setup, or if you change the runtime user ID or the database provider. This must match the value for the event collector.
ReportAtSnapshotRange -reportAtSnapshotRange <i>number</i>	Integer / Days	60	A snapshot report is built by evaluating all events that are older than the qualifying snapshot date and time. This defines the period of time in which events can be included in a snapshot report. Only events that have been emitted within this period are evaluated by the snapshot report. If this value is too high, a very large number of events might have to be processed, and generating a report can take a long time. Try setting this value to the maximum duration of a process instance in your business environment.
ObserverCreateTables -reportCreateTables { true false }	Boolean	For DB2 on z/OS: false. For all other database types: true.	This parameter indicates if the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function schema is created when the EJB connects to the database the first time. Valid values are 'true' and 'false'.

Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

To change Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function parameters, you can run the `clientconfig.jacl` script using one of the following parameters: `-reportSchemaName schemaName`, `-reportAtSnapshotRange number`, and `-reportCreateTables { true | false }`. For more information about these parameters, see “Using the `clientconfig.jacl` script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 209.

setupEventCollector tool:

Use `setupEventCollector` to interactively configure or remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector application, to setup the database, and to administer user-defined functions for the database. This tool uses `wsadmin` scripting. You must configure an event collector if you want to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Location

This tool is located in the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory for configuration scripts:

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config`.

On Windows platforms: `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config`.

Restrictions

- In a network deployment environment, you must start the tool on the deployment manager node, using the `-profileName` option to specify the deployment manager profile .
- This tool is only available in English.
- On i5/OS, you must run the tool using `qshell`.

Parameters

```
[-conntype SOAP | RMI | JMS | NONE]
[-user userID -password password]
[-profileName profileName]
( [-node nodeName] [-server serverName] ) | ( -cluster clusterName )
[-remove [-silent]]
```

Where:

-conntype SOAP | RMI | JMS | NONE

The connection mode that `wsadmin` tool uses. In a standalone server environment only include the `-conntype NONE` option if the application server is not running. In a network deployment environment, only include `-conntype NONE` option if the deployment manager is not running.

-user *userID* **-password** *password*

If administrative security is enabled, also provide a valid user ID and password for the tool to use.

-profileName *profileName*

If you are not configuring the default profile, provide the name of the profile that you want to configure.

-node *nodeName*

The name of the node. This parameter is optional. The default value is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server. This parameter is optional.

-cluster *clusterName*

The cluster name *clusterName* . This parameter is optional.

-remove

Specify this option to remove the event collector application. If you do not specify this option, the default is that the application will be configured.

-silent

This option can only be used with the remove option. It causes the tool to not output any prompts. This parameter is optional.

Note: If you do not specify the **-node**, **-server**, nor **-cluster** parameters, you will be prompted for the deployment target during configuration.

Example: Starting the tool

To start the tool to work with a server named `server1` enter one of the following commands.

On Linux and UNIX platforms:

```
setupEventCollector.sh -server server1
```

On i5/OS platforms:

```
setupEventCollector -server server1
```

On Windows platforms:

```
setupEventCollector.bat -server server1
```

You will see the Commands menu:

- 1) Prepare a database for the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 2) Install the Event Collector application
 - 3) Remove the Event Collector application and related objects
 - 4) Change configuration settings of an installed Event Collector
 - 5) Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function
 - 6) Administer reporting function related user-defined functions
- 0) Exit Menu

Using the tool

How to use this tool for particular tasks is described in the following topics.

Related concepts

User-defined functions for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

With Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function you can run reports based on timeslices or time intervals that result in SQL queries. To perform these reports, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function requires some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) to be installed in the reporting database.

Related tasks

“Configuring the Business Process Choreographer event collector application” on page 255

The Business Process Choreographer event collector is a prerequisite for using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function. You can install and configure the event collector application using an interactive tool or the administrative console.

“Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a DB2 Universal database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 217

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script to prepare the reporting database .

“Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database for the event collector and Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 222

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool to prepare a DB2 for iSeries database from within an i5/OS qshell environment.

“Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function in USS” on page 227

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script in UNIX System Services (USS) on a z/OS system, to create a DB2 for z/OS database.

“Creating a DB2 for z/OS database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function from a remote system” on page 231

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script on a Linux, UNIX, or Windows system to prepare the schema for the reporting database.

“Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare a Derby database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 237

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, setupEventcollector, to prepare a Derby database for the reporting database on any supported platform.

“Using the setupEventCollector tool to prepare an Oracle database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 242

This describes how use an interactive menu-driven tool, and the createTablespace_Observer.sql script to prepare the reporting database.

“Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions” on page 245

You can either use the setupEventCollector tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

“Using a script to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration” on page 279

Use this task to remove the Business Flow Manager, Human Task Manager, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and the associated resources from a server or cluster.

Related reference

“Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer

Explorer reporting function” on page 263

Tuning the configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector applications is important to enable verification and improve performance.

Verifying the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

After configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, verify that it works correctly.

Before you begin

Initially, the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function database is empty.

Procedure

1. Generate some business events.
 - a. In a browser, start the Business Process Choreographer Explorer by opening the URL `http://host:port/context_root`. Where *host* is the name of the host where your application server is running, *port* is the port number for your application server (the default is 9080), and *context_root* is typically `bpc`.
 - b. Perform some actions that will generate business events, for example, start a process instance.
2. Click **Reports**. If you see no events, wait a few minutes, restart the event collector application, and then refresh your browser view.

Note: Using the default values for `BPCEventTransformerMaxWaitTime` and `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime`, it could take up to 20 minutes until the transformer is triggered and the events in the event collector table are old enough to be processed and made available. For information about these parameters, including how to change them and suggested values for testing purposes, see “Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function” on page 263.

3. Verify that the events you expect to be available are displayed.
4. In case of problems, see “Troubleshooting Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports” on page 738.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is working.

Configuring a remote client application

Configuring a remote Business Process Choreographer client application that runs on a WebSphere Process Server client installation.

Before you begin

You have performed “Planning for a remote client application” on page 137, and know whether you are creating the “single-cell” scenario or the “cross-cell” scenario.

Procedure

1. For the “single-cell” scenario, where the WebSphere Process Server client installation is in the same cell as the Business Process Choreographer server or cluster that the client connects to, perform the following:

- a. Install and configure the WebSphere Process Server client:

- 1) Install the WebSphere Process Server client using the **Client installation** option.

Note: If you want to use the WebSphere Process Server client in a cluster, then you must install the WebSphere Process Server client on all WebSphere Application Server installations that host cluster members.

- 2) If the profiles do not yet exist, perform the following:

- a) Start the profile management tool and select **Custom profile**.
- b) Federate the profile into the WebSphere Process Server cell. You can also perform this action later, using the addNode command.
- c) Using the administrative console, create an application server using the WebSphere “default” server template on the WebSphere Process Server client node.

- b. Optional: Configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer on the application server in the WebSphere Process Server client using either the administrative console or the clientconfig.jacl script. For the Business Process Choreographer container target, make sure that you select the WebSphere Process Server server or cluster that hosts the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager.

- c. Optional: Install and configure a custom client application.

- 1) Install the custom client application on the application server in the WebSphere Process Server client installation.

- 2) Edit the EJB bindings for the custom client applications:

- a) Using the administrative console, click **Applications** → **Enterprise Application**.
- b) Click on your custom client application.
- c) Under **References**, select **EJB references**. You will see the resource references specified by your client application.
- d) Locate the references to the Business Process Choreographer API EJBs. You will see the default resource reference names and the following JNDI names for the target resources:

ejb/BusinessFlowManagerHome	com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome
ejb/HumanTaskManagerHome	com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome

- e) Change the target resource JNDI names to values where the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager API are located in your cell:

- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on another server in the same cell, the setting has the following structure:

```
cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome
cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome
```

- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster in the same cell, the setting looks like:

```
cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome
cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome
```

- 3) Save and synchronize your changes.
- 4) Restart your client application.

- d. The default configuration of the Remote Artifact Loader (RAL) allows the unsecured transmission of artifacts between the client and the server. To enable security for this connection, refer to Remote artifact loader
2. If you want a “ cross-cell” scenario, where the WebSphere Process Server client is not located in the cell that has the managed server or cluster with Business Process Choreographer configured on it, you can install the WebSphere Process Server client on any WebSphere Application Server installation that hosts standalone profiles or managed profiles for a different network deployment cell. As a minimum, this network deployment cell only requires a WebSphere Application Server deployment manager. To set up your WebSphere Process Server client installation in this kind of environment and configure it to access the cell with the Business Process Choreographer configuration, perform the following:
 - a. Install and configure the WebSphere Process Server client:
 - 1) Install the WebSphere Process Server client using the **Client installation** option.

Note: If you want to use the WebSphere Process Server client in a cluster, then you must install the WebSphere Process Server client on all WebSphere Application Server installations that host cluster members.
 - 2) If the profiles do not yet exist, perform the following:
 - a) Start the profile management tool and select **Custom profile**.
 - b) Federate the profile into the WebSphere Process Server cell. You can also perform this action later, using the addNode command.
 - c) Using the administrative console, create an application server using the WebSphere “default” server template on the WebSphere Process Server client node.
 - b. Optional: Install and configure a custom client application.
 - 1) Make sure the custom client application uses the Business Process Choreographer EJB APIs.
 - 2) Install the custom client application on the application server or cluster in the WebSphere Process Server client installation.
 - c. Define a new indirect namespace binding (or bindings) to connect to the cluster or server where Business Process Choreographer is configured:
 - 1) Using the administrative console on the client cell, click **Environment** → **Naming** → **Name Space Bindings**.
 - 2) For **Scope**, select the cell.
 - 3) Depending on whether the client application uses one or both of the Business Flow Manager EJB API and the Human Task Manager EJB API, perform the following steps once or twice to create a new binding for one or both of the EJB APIs:
 - a) Click **New**.
 - b) For the **Binding Type**, select **Indirect**. In the next screen, specify the following properties:
 - i. A unique binding identifier name. Although you are free to choose a unique name, for consistency with the service component architecture (SCA), you can derive a valid name from the name space by replacing the forward slashes in the name space with underscore characters. For example, the name space `bpc/remotecellName_remotenode_remoteserver/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome` becomes the binding ID name

`bpc_remoteCellName_remoteNode_remoteServer_com_ibm_bpe_api_BusinessFlowManagerHome`

- ii. The name space of the client to be used for the binding. For consistency, consider using the following convention:
 - If the remote Business Process Choreographer configuration is on a server: `bpc_remoteCellName_remoteNode_remoteServer/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome` or `bpc_remoteCellName_remoteNode_remoteServer/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome`
 - If the remote Business Process Choreographer configuration is on a cluster: `bpc_remoteCellName_remoteCluster/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome` or `bpc_remoteCellName_remoteCluster/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome`
 - iii. The provider URL property for the naming server that is used by the server or cluster, where the Business Process Choreographer configuration exists that the client will connect to. For example, `corbaloc:iiop:myremotehostname:2809`. Make sure that the bootstrap port matches the `BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS` of the server (or one of the members of the cluster) where Business Process Choreographer is hosted.
- c) Specify the target resource JNDI name where the Business Flow Manager API or Human Task Manager API is located.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a standalone server, the setting has the following structure:
`com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome`
`com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome`
 - If Business Process Choreographer is configured on in a network deployment environment, the setting has the following structure:
`cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome`
`cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome`
 - If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, the setting looks like:
`cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome`
`cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome`
- 4) Using the administrative console on the client system:
- a) Click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → *client_application_name*.
 - b) In the **References** section, select **EJB references**.
 - c) There will be one **Target Resource JNDI Name** field for each name space that you defined. Enter the JNDI name or names that you specified in step 2c3bii for the Business Flow Manager, Human Task Manager, or both.
 - d) Save and synchronize your changes.
 - e) Restart your client application.

Results

You have configured a remote Business Process Choreographer client application that uses a WebSphere Process Server client installation.

Related concepts

“Comparison of the programming interfaces for interacting with business processes and human tasks” on page 427

Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB), Web service, and Java Message Service (JMS), and Representational State Transfer Services (REST) generic programming interfaces are available for building client applications that interact with business processes and human tasks. Each of these interfaces has different characteristics.

Related tasks

“Configuring Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 208

You can either run a script or use the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Chapter 9, “Developing client applications for business processes and tasks,” on page 427

You can use a modeling tool to build and deploy business processes and tasks. These processes and tasks are interacted with at runtime, for example, a process is started, or tasks are claimed and completed. You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to interact with processes and tasks, or the Business Process Choreographer APIs to develop customized clients for these interactions.

“Accessing the remote interface of the session bean” on page 492

An EJB client application for business processes or human tasks accesses the remote interface of the session bean through the remote home interface of the bean.

Activating Business Process Choreographer

After configuring Business Process Choreographer, you must restart the affected server or cluster.

About this task

To activate Business Process Choreographer:

Procedure

1. If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a server, restart the server.
2. If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, restart the cluster.
3. Make sure that there are no error messages in the `SystemOut.log` file for the application server. On a cluster, check the log for all application servers in the cluster.
4. Verify that the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager applications have started successfully: In the administrative console, select **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** and verify that the applications with names starting with `BPEContainer_scope` and `TaskContainer_scope` have started.

Where, the value of `scope` is `nodeName_serverName`, if you configured Business Process Choreographer on an application server, or the `clusterName` if you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster.

Results

Business Process Choreographer is running.

What to do next

You are ready to verify that Business Process Choreographer is working.

Verifying that Business Process Choreographer works

Run the Business Process Choreographer installation verification application.

Procedure

1. Using either the administrative console or the wsadmin command, install the application in *install_root/installableApps/bpcivt.ear*.

Restriction: In a network deployment environment, you can only install one instance of the Business Process Choreographer installation verification application. For example, if you have two Business Process Choreographer clusters in the same network deployment cell, you can install the *bpcivt.ear* application only on one of the clusters. Later, if you want to install it on the second cluster, you must first uninstall it from the first cluster.

After the enterprise application is installed, it is in the state *stopped*, and any process and task templates that it contains are in the state *started*. No process or task instances can be created until the application is started.

2. Depending on where you configured Business Process Choreographer, make sure that either:
 - The application server is running.
 - At least one member of the cluster is running.
3. Make sure that the database system, and messaging service are running.
4. Select the application *BPCIVTApp* and click **Start** to start the application.
5. Verify that the application works. Using a Web browser, open the following page:

`http://app_server_host:port_no/bpcivt`

Where *app_server_host* is the network name for the host of the application server and *port_no* is the port number used by the virtual host to which you mapped the IVT Web module when installing the file *bpcivt.ear*. The port number depends on your system configuration. You should see a message indicating success.

6. Optional: Stop and remove the *bpcivt* application.
7. If an error occurs, it can be caused by any of the following:
 - If Business Process Choreographer cannot access the database, check that the database system is running, that all database clients are correctly configured, and that the data source is defined correctly. Make sure that the user ID and password for the data source are valid.
 - If Business Process Choreographer cannot read the input queues, check that the messaging service is running, and make sure that the JMS provider and JMS resources are defined correctly.

Results

The basic functionality of your Business Process Choreographer configuration works.

What to do next

If you have configured other optional parts, such as the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function, or a people directory provider, they will need to be tested separately.

Understanding the startup behavior of Business Process Choreographer

This topic explains why Business Process Choreographer is unavailable until all enterprise applications are started.

When the Business Process Choreographer is started or restarted, no messages in the internal queues are processed until all enterprise applications have started. It is not possible to change this behavior. The time that the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager are unavailable during a restart depends on how long it takes until all enterprise applications are started. This behavior is necessary to avoid navigating any processes with associated enterprise applications that are not running.

Starting to process messages in the internal queue before all applications are started would result in `ClassNotFoundException` exceptions.

Federating a stand-alone node that has Business Process Choreographer configured

If your server is not running in development mode, you can federate a server that is in a stand-alone profile to a new deployment manager cell.

Before you begin

The deployment manager is running, and you know its host name and port number. Business Process Choreographer is configured on the server in a stand-alone profile. The Business Process Choreographer database in the stand-alone profile must be remotely accessible from the deployment manager cell. For this reason, your server cannot be based on the sample Business Process Choreographer configuration that uses the embedded Derby database. Also, the database for the messaging engine database must be remotely accessible, that is, it cannot be Derby Embedded and it cannot be FILESTORE.

About this task

You have one or more applications, which contain business processes or human tasks, running on a stand-alone server, and you want to federate this server into a network deployment environment.

Procedure

1. If the node includes a large number of applications, increase the timeout for the administrative connector.
2. From the command line, run the `addNode` command with the `-includeapps` and `-includebuses` options. For details about this command and possible errors that can occur, refer to the WebSphere Application Server Network Deployment information center, `addNode` command. For example, if the deployment manager has a host name of `dmgr_host` and uses port `dmgr_port`, enter the command:

```
addNode dmgr_host dmgr_port -includeapps -includebuses
```

For example, if the deployment manager has a host name of `any.hostname.com` and uses port `9043`, your profile name is `ProcSvr07`, your user ID is `admin`, and your password is `secret`, enter the command:

```
addNode any.hostname.com 9043 -profileName ProcSvr07 -username admin  
-password secret -includeapps -includebuses
```

If any of the prerequisites are not met, an error message is displayed. Otherwise, the server is stopped and the server is federated into a new deployment manager cell.

3. Start the server to activate the changes.
4. If you cannot access the business applications that are running on the server, use the administrative console on the deployment manager to make sure that the virtual host and alias definitions for the application server match the new cell.

Results

Your applications are now running on the same server, but the server is now in a cell that can be administered using the deployment manager.

What to do next

If required, you can promote the server to a cluster.

Chapter 5. Removing the Business Process Choreographer configuration

Use this task to remove the business process container, human task container, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and the associated resources.

Procedure

1. Ensure that all the stand-alone servers, the database, and the application server (or at least one application server per cluster) are running.
2. Uninstall all enterprise applications that contain human tasks or business processes.
3. Perform one of the following actions:
 - To remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, event collector, and the associated resources, perform “Using a script to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration.”
 - If you want to reuse parts of the existing configuration, perform “Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration” on page 282.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer configuration has been removed.

Using a script to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration

Use this task to remove the Business Flow Manager, Human Task Manager, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and the associated resources from a server or cluster.

Before you begin

Before you can remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration, you must delete any business process and human task instances, then uninstall all enterprise applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer config directory:
On Windows platforms, enter the command:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\config
```


On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/config
```
2. Run the script `bpeunconfig.jacl`. In the following cases, also specify the appropriate options:
 - For stand-alone servers, stop the application server and use the `-conntype NONE` option. This step ensures that any databases are not locked and can be removed automatically.
 - In a network deployment environment, run the script, as follows:

- If the deployment manager is not running, run the script on the deployment manager, using the `-conntype NONE` option.
- If the deployment manager is running, stop the application server from which the configuration is to be removed, then run the script, omitting the `-conntype NONE` option.

When the script is running on the application server node from which the Business Process Choreographer configuration is to be removed, the script can automatically delete any local Derby databases.

- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, specify also the user ID and password:
`-user userID -password password`
- If you are not removing the configuring from the default profile, specify also the profile name:
`-profileName profileName`

Option	Description
For a single server on Linux or UNIX	Enter the command: <pre>install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f bpeunconfig.jacl -server Server -node Node [-deleteDB deleteDatabase] [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>
For a single server on Windows	Enter the command: <pre>install_root\bin\wsadmin.bat -f bpeunconfig.jacl -server Server -node Node [-deleteDB deleteDatabase] [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>
For a single server on i5/OS	Enter the command: <pre>install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpeunconfig.jacl -server Server -node Node [-deleteDB deleteDatabase] [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>
For a cluster on Linux or UNIX	Enter the command: <pre>install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f bpeunconfig.jacl -cluster Cluster [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>
For a cluster on Windows	Enter the command: <pre>install_root\bin\wsadmin.bat -f bpeunconfig.jacl -cluster Cluster [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>
For a cluster on i5/OS	Enter the command: <pre>install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpeunconfig.jacl -cluster Cluster [-forcePredefTasks forceUninstallPredefinedTasks]</pre>

Where:

userID The user ID.

password

The password for the user ID.

profileName

The name of the profile that is being configured. If you are configuring the default profile, this option is optional.

Server The name of the application server. If only one server exists, this parameter is optional.

Node The name of the node. This is optional. If the node is omitted, the local node is used.

Cluster The name of the cluster.

deleteDatabase

A Boolean value that specifies whether to delete any Derby embedded databases and FILESTORE directories:

yes

no

To use this option, the server must not be running. If you do not have any non-Derby Embedded databases, and you use this option, after running the script you can skip to step 4.

forceUninstallPredefinedTasks

A Boolean value that specifies whether to force the removal of the predefined Human Tasks enterprise application:

yes

no

If you select **yes**, the predefined Human Tasks application is removed from the WebSphere configuration repository, but the corresponding entries remain in the Business Process Choreographer database.

3. Optional: Delete the databases used by Business Process Choreographer.

For both the Business Process Choreographer database and the messaging database the following apply:

- The `bpeunconfig.jacl` script lists the databases that were used by the configuration that has been removed. The list of databases is also written to the `install_root/profiles/profileName/logs/bpeunconfig.log` log file. You can use this list to identify which databases you might want to delete manually.
- When a Derby database is used for the Business Process Choreographer database, the `bpeunconfig.jacl` script optionally removes the database, unless it is locked by a running application server. If the database is locked, stop the server, and use the `-conntype NONE` option.
- When FILESTORE is used for the Business Process Choreographer messaging engine message store, using the `bpeunconfig.jacl` script's `-deleteDB yes` option will also delete the associated directories.
- To remove the reporting database, start the tool to set up the event collector, as described in "setupEventCollector tool" on page 268, and select the option **Drop the database schema of the Event Collector and reporting function**.

4. Optional: Check the `bpeunconfig.log` log file. It is located in the logs subdirectory of the `profile_root` directory.

5. Optional: If you used WebSphere MQ, delete the queue manager used by Business Process Choreographer.

6. Optional: Manually undo remaining settings that bpeunconfig.jacl does not undo. The following settings are not undone by the bpeunconfig.jacl script because it cannot determine whether the settings are still needed by other components:
 - Installing the BusinessCalendar system application
 - Enabling the WorkAreaService
 - Enabling the ApplicationProfileService
 - Enabling the ObjectPoolService
 - Enabling the StartupBeansService
 - Enabling the CompensationService
 - Enabling the WorkareaPartitionService
 - Setting WebSphere variables

Results

The Business Process Choreographer applications and associated resources (such as scheduler, data sources, listener ports, connection factories, queue destinations, activation specs, work area partition, mail session, and authentication aliases) have been removed.

Using a tool to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector

Remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector application, and the associated resources from a server or cluster.

Procedure

1. To remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector application, run the “setupEventCollector tool” on page 268, either specify the -remove option on the command line, or select the **Remove the Event Collector application and related objects** option on the initial menu.
2. Optional: If you installed the Java user-defined functions, remove them using the menu option **Administer reporting function related user-defined functions**.
3. Optional: Drop the database schema for the event collector.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer event collector application and its related objects have been removed.

Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration

Use this task to remove part or all of the Business Process Choreographer configuration, including the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and the associated resources.

Before you begin

Before you can remove the Business Process Choreographer configuration, you must uninstall all enterprise applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Procedure

1. Uninstall the Business Process Choreographer enterprise applications.

- a. Display the enterprise applications.

In the administrative console, select **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications**.

- b. Identify the scope of the Business Process Choreographer installation.

Look for applications names that start with the following:

- `BPEContainer_scope` is the Business Flow Manager application.
- `TaskContainer_scope` is the Human Task Manager application.
- `BPCExplorer_scope` is the Business Process Choreographer Explorer application.
- `HTM_PredefinedTasks_Vnnn_scope` and `HTM_PredefinedTaskMsg_Vnnn_scope` are for the Business Process Choreographer Business Space.

Where *nnn* is the version number, and the value of *scope* depends on your configuration:

- If Business Process Choreographer was configured on an application server, *scope* has the value `nodeName_serverName` – even if the server was later promoted to a cluster.
- If Business Process Choreographer was configured on a cluster, *scope* has the value `clusterName`.

- c. Optional: If you configured Business Process Choreographer, uninstall the predefined tasks, Business Flow Manager, and Human Task Manager applications.

- 1) Select `HTM_PredefinedTasks_Vnnn_scope` and `HTM_PredefinedTaskMsg_Vnnn_scope`, then click **Uninstall** → **OK** → **Save**.
- 2) Select `BPEContainer_scope`, and `TaskContainer_scope`, then click **Uninstall** → **OK** → **Save**.

- d. Optional: If you configured the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, uninstall all instances that you configured.

- If you used the default context root, `/bpc`, select `BPCExplorer_scope`, then click **Uninstall** → **OK** → **Save**.
- Otherwise, , select `BPCExplorer_scope_context_root`, then click **Uninstall** → **OK** → **Save**.

- e. If you configured any Business Process Choreographer event collectors, perform “Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector” on page 288 for each event collector application instance.

2. Remove all or any of the following resources that you do not want to reuse:

- a. Optional: Find the Business Process Choreographer data source (the default name is `BPEDataSourcedbType`) and make a note of its name and the associated authentication data alias (if any) and Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) name, and then remove it (the default name is `jdbc/BPEDB`).

To find the data source:

- 1) Click **Resources** → **JDBC** → **Data sources**.
- 2) For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured.

- b. Optional: For a database other than a Derby Embedded database, remove the JDBC provider of the data source identified in step 2 on page 283, unless it contains further data sources that you still need. Click **Resources** → **JDBC** → **JDBC Providers**, select the JDBC driver for your database and click **Delete**.

Note: If the Business Process Choreographer configuration uses the built-in default JDBC provider for the Derby Embedded database, this JDBC provider cannot be deleted.

- c. Optional: Remove the connection factories and queues for the Business Flow Manager, and Human Task Manager. Here are the normal JNDI names:

Connection factories for the Business Flow Manager:

jms/BPECF
jms/BPECFC
jms/BFMJMSReplyCF

Queues for the Business Flow Manager:

jms/BPEIntQueue
jms/BPERetQueue
jms/BPEHldQueue
jms/BFMJMSAPIQueue
jms/BFMJMScallbackQueue
jms/BFMJMSReplyQueue

Connection factory for the Human Task Manager:

jms/HTMCF

Queues for the Human Task Manager:

jms/HTMIntQueue
jms/HTMHldQueue

How you delete the connection factories and queues depends on the JMS messaging provider that you use.

- For default messaging, before you remove the connection factories, note their associated authentication data aliases. Then remove the JMS connection factories and JMS queues.
 - 1) Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Connection factories**. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured. Then select the connection factory, and click **Delete**.
 - 2) Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Queues**. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured. Then select the queues, and click **Delete**.
 - For WebSphere MQ, remove the JMS queue connection factories and JMS queues.
 - 1) Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Queue connection factories**. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured. Then select the connection factory, and click **Delete**.
 - 2) Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Queues**. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured. Then select the queues, and click **Delete**.
- d. Optional: If you are using WebSphere default messaging as the JMS provider, remove the activation specifications.

- 1) Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Activation specifications**. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured.
 - 2) Remove the following activation specifications:
 - BPEInternalActivationSpec
 - BFMJMSAS
 - HTMInternalActivationSpec
- e. Optional: If you are using WebSphere MQ as the JMS provider, remove the listener ports for the server.
- 1) Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *serverName*.
 - 2) Under Communications, click **Messaging** → **Message Listener Service** → **Listener Ports**.
 - 3) On the Application servers pane, remove the following listener ports:
 - BPEInternalListenerPort
 - BPEHoldListenerPort
 - HTMInternalListenerPort

If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, repeat this step for each member of the cluster.

- f. Optional: Delete the authentication data aliases.
- 1) Click **Security** → **Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure** then in the **Authentication** section, expand **Java Authentication and Authorization Service**, click **J2C authentication data**.
 - 2) If the data source identified in step 2 on page 283 had an authentication data alias, remove that alias. If you did not migrate your Business Process Choreographer configuration from Version 6.0.x, the name depends on the deployment target in the following manner:
 - When Business Process Choreographer is configured on a server named *serverName*, on a node named *nodeName*, the name is usually `BPCDB_ nodeName .serverName_Auth_Alias`.
 - When Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster named *clusterName*, the name is usually `BPCDB_ clusterName_Auth_Alias`
 - 3) If any of the connection factories identified in step 2c on page 284 have an authentication data alias, remove the alias with great care:
 - If you did **not** migrate your Business Process Choreographer configuration from Version 6.0.x, the name is `BPC_Auth_Alias` and it is shared between all Business Process Choreographer configurations in a network deployment environment.

Attention: Only remove this authentication alias if you are removing the last Business Process Choreographer configuration, otherwise the remaining Business Process Choreographer configurations will stop working.
 - If you migrated your Business Process Choreographer configuration from Version 6.0.x, the name is normally `cellName/BPEAuthDataAliasJMS_scope`, where *cellName* is the name of the cell, and *scope* identifies the deployment target. You can remove this authentication alias without affecting other Business Process Choreographer configurations.
- g. Optional: Remove the scheduler configuration for the data source JNDI name.

- 1) Click **Resources** → **Schedulers**.
 - 2) For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured.
 - 3) On the Schedulers pane, note the JNDI name of the work manager, then select and delete the scheduler named BPEScheduler.
- h. Optional: Remove the work manager.
- 1) Click **Resources** → **Asynchronous beans** → **Work managers**.
 - 2) For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer was configured.
 - 3) On the Work managers pane, select and delete the work manager whose JNDI name you noted in step 2g on page 285.
 - 4) Also delete the work manager with the JNDI name `wm/BPENavigationWorkManager`.
- i. Optional: Remove the work area partition.
- 1) Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *serverName*.
 - 2) Under the **Container Settings** section, expand **Business Process Services**, click **Work area partition service**.
 - 3) On the Application servers pane, select and delete the work area partition `BPECompensation`.
- If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, repeat this step for each member of the cluster.
- j. Optional: Remove the mail session.
- 1) Click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail Providers**.
 - 2) For **Scope**, select the `Cell=cellName`, where *cellName* is the name of the cell.
 - 3) Click **Built-in Mail Provider**.
 - 4) Under the **Additional Properties** section, select **Mail sessions**.
 - 5) Select and delete `HTMailSession_scope`, where *scope* is the scope identified in step 1b on page 283
3. Optional: If you use WebSphere default messaging for Business Process Choreographer, you can delete the bus member, bus, and data source:
- a. Click **Service integration** → **Buses** → `BPC.cellName.Bus`, under the **Topology** section, click **Messaging engines**.
 - b. Select the messaging engine:
 - `nodeName.serverName-BPC.cellName.Bus` if you configured Business Process Choreographer on a server.
 - `clusterName-BPC.cellName.Bus` if you configured Business Process Choreographer in a cluster.

Note: If you configured Business Process Choreographer to use a remote messaging engine, *nodeName.serverName* or *clusterName* will not match the name deployment target where you configured Business Process Choreographer.
 - c. Under **Additional Properties**, select **Message store**.
 - If the message store type is `DATASTORE`, note the JNDI name for the data source. On a server the JNDI name of the data source is usually `jdbc/com.ibm.ws.sib/nodeName.serverName-BPC.cellName.Bus`. On a cluster the JNDI name of the data source is usually `jdbc/com.ibm.ws.sib/clusterName-BPC.cellName.Bus`.

- If the message store type is FILESTORE, note the paths for Log, Permanent store, and Temporary store.
- d. Go to **Service integration** → **Buses** → **BPC.cellName.Bus**, under the **Topology** section, click **Bus members** and remove the bus member identified by one of the following names:
 - *nodeName:serverName* if you configured Business Process Choreographer on a server.
 - *clusterName* if you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster.
 - e. Optional: If you removed the last member of the bus BPC.cellName.Bus, you can also remove the bus.
 - f. If the message store type that you noted in step 3c on page 286 was DATASTORE, then click **Resources** → **JDBC** → **Data Sources**. The scope of the messaging engine might not be the same as the deployment target where you configured Business Process Choreographer. If necessary, trying different scopes, look for the JNDI name that you noted in step 3c on page 286. If the data source is for a Derby database, note the file system path for the database. If you configured Business Process Choreographer on a cluster, repeat this step for each member of the cluster.
4. Delete the BPC_REMOTE_DESTINATION_LOCATION variable. Click **Environment** → **WebSphere Variables**, for **Scope** select the deployment target where Business Process Choreographer was configured, then select and delete the variable BPC_REMOTE_DESTINATION_LOCATION variable.
 5. Click **Save** to save all your deletions in the master configuration.
 6. Restart the application server or cluster.
 7. Optional: Delete the Business Process Choreographer database.
 8. Optional: If you used the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function with a dedicated reporting database, delete the database.
 9. Optional: If you are using WebSphere MQ, delete the queue manager used by Business Process Choreographer.
 10. If you use WebSphere default messaging for Business Process Choreographer, delete the message store for the message engine; because it cannot be reused.
 - a. If the message store type that you noted in step 3c on page 286 was FILESTORE, remove the directories that you noted for Log, Permanent store, and Temporary store.
 - b. If the message store type that you noted in step 3c on page 286 was DATASTORE, remove the database to which the data source pointed. If this was a Derby data source, then delete the file system path that you noted in step 3f. Usually, the Derby database location is the following:
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms:


```
profile_root/databases/com.ibm.ws.sib/  
nodeName.serverName-BPC.cellName.Bus
```
 - On Windows platforms:


```
profile_root\databases\com.ibm.ws.sib\  
nodeName.serverName-BPC.cellName.Bus
```

Results

The Business Process Choreographer configuration has been removed.

Using the administrative console to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector

Use this task to remove the Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration, and the associated resources that are required by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Procedure

1. Display the enterprise applications.
In the administrative console, select **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications**.
2. Uninstall the Business Process Choreographer event collector application.
Select the check box for `BPCCollector_scope`, click **Uninstall** → **OK**. Where *scope* identifies the server or cluster where the event collector was configured.
3. Delete the destination queues:
 - a. Click **Service integration** → **Buses** → **CommonEventInfrastructure_Bus** .
 - b. Under **Destination resources**, click **Destinations**.
 - c. Select the following destination queues:
 - `BPCCEIConsumerQueueDestination_scope`
 - `BPCTransformerQueueDestination_scope`Where *scope* identifies the server or cluster where the event collector was configured.
 - d. Click **Delete**.
4. Delete the event profile group with server scope for BFMEvents:
 - a. Click **Service integration** → **Common Event Infrastructure** → **Event service**.
 - b. Under **Additional Properties** click **Event services** .
 - c. Click **Default Common Event Infrastructure event server**.
 - d. Under **Additional Properties** click **Event groups** .
 - e. Select the check box for BFMEvents.
 - f. Click **Delete**.
5. Delete the JMS queue connection factory:
 - a. Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Queue connection factories**.
 - b. For **Scope**, select the server or cluster where the event collector was configured.
 - c. Select the check box for `BPCCEIConsumerQueueConnectionFactory`.
 - d. Click **Delete**.
6. Delete the JMS queues:
 - a. Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Queues**.
 - b. Select the check boxes for the following queues:
 - `BPCCEIConsumerQueue_scope`
 - `BPCTransformerQueue_scope`
 - c. Click **Delete**.
7. Delete the JMS activation specifications:
 - a. Click **Resources** → **JMS** → **Activation specifications**.
 - b. Select the check boxes for the following activation specifications:
 - `BPCCEIConsumerActivationSpec`
 - `BPCTransformerActivationSpec`
 - c. Click **Delete**.

8. If you migrated your configuration from version 6.0.2, delete the authentication data alias:
 - a. Click **Security** → **Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure** → **Authentication** → **Java Authentication and Authorization Service** → **J2C authentication data**.
 - b. select `BPCEventCollectorJMSAuthenticationAlias_scope`.
 - c. Click **Delete**.
9. Click **Save** to save your changes in the master configuration.
10. Drop the schema and table space used by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function by running the following scripts that on Windows platforms are found in the directory `install_root\dbscripts\ProcessChoreographer\database_type`, and on Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms in the directory `install_root/dbscripts/ProcessChoreographer/database_type`:
 - `dropSchema_Observer.sql`
 - `dropTablespace_Observer.sql` (not available for Derby, which has no table spaces)

Results

The Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration has been removed.

Part 3. Administering

Chapter 6. Administering Business Process Choreographer

You can administer Business Process Choreographer using the administrative console or using scripts.

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Types of tools available for deleting objects

Depending on which types of objects you want to delete, you will be able to use one or more of the following tools:

- The cleanup service.
- The administrative console.
- Administrative scripts.
- The modelling tool.
- Failed Event Manager
- Business Process Choreographer Explorer
- Business Process Choreographer APIs

Objects that can be deleted and tools to use

The following Business Process Choreographer database objects can be deleted when they are no longer needed.

API-accessible objects

You can write your own cleanup tool that uses the Business Process Choreographer APIs to delete process instances, task instances, and ad-hoc task templates. Templates that are part of an enterprise application cannot be deleted using the APIs. For general information about using the APIs, refer to Chapter 9, “Developing client applications for business processes and tasks,” on page 427.

Process and task templates

Templates can be deleted in the following ways:

- By uninstalling the applications:
 - “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using the administrative console” on page 626.
 - “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command” on page 627.
- Running a script to delete invalid templates:
 - “Deleting process templates that are no longer valid” on page 324.
 - “Deleting human task templates that are no longer valid” on page 327.

Process and task instances

Instances can be deleted in the following ways:

- Using the administrative console to configure the cleanup service to schedule jobs that periodically delete eligible instances. This is described in “Configuring the cleanup service and cleanup jobs” on page 305.
- Using the deleteCompletedProcessInstances.py script, which is described in “Deleting completed process instances” on page 329.
- By setting the appropriate properties in the business model, using WebSphere Integration Developer:

For business processes:

The property Automatically delete the process after completion can have the value Yes, No, or On successful completion. If this property has the value No or On successful completion, it makes sense to configure a cleanup job to delete the process instances.

For human tasks:

The property Auto deletion mode can have the value On completion, or On successful completion (which is the default). Deletion will only take place, and you can only change the value for Auto deletion mode, if the property Duration until task is deleted either has the value Immediate or a defined interval. If the property Duration until task is deleted has the value Never, automatic deletion is disabled, the Auto deletion mode property cannot be changed, and it makes sense to configure a cleanup job to delete the human tasks. Otherwise, if Duration until task is deleted does not have the value Never, and Auto deletion mode has the value On successful completion, then it makes sense to define a cleanup job to delete the human tasks that do not complete successfully.

- By uninstalling the template and using the **-force** option to also delete all instances. This option is described in “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command” on page 627.
- To delete a small number of instances, it can be convenient to use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer so that you can check details about them before deleting them.

Note: You can use more than one of the above techniques for deleting instances. In which case, an instance will be deleted by the first attempt to delete it.

Audit log entries

You can delete audit log entries by running the deleteAuditLog.py script, which is described in “Deleting audit log entries, using administrative scripts” on page 322.

Reporting events

You can delete reporting events by running the observerDeleteProcessInstanceData.py script, which is described in “Deleting data from the reporting database” on page 331.

People queries

You can delete unused people queries by running the cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py script, which is describe in “Removing unused people query results, using administrative scripts” on page 340.

Hold queue

Messages that cannot be processed are placed on the hold queue, this includes messages for instances that have been deleted. You can empty the hold queue by replaying the messages in the queue, which will cause any messages for deleted instances to be discarded.

- “Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console” on page 298 describes how to replay messages using the Business Process Choreographer pages, and using the failed event manager page.
- “Querying and replaying failed messages, using administrative scripts” on page 335

Related tasks

Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using the administrative console

You can use the administrative console to uninstall applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command

Using the `bpcTemplates.jacl` script provides an alternative to the administrative console for uninstalling applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Deleting process templates that are no longer valid

Use the administrative scripts to delete, from the Business Process Choreographer database, business process templates that are no longer valid.

Deleting human task templates that are no longer valid

Use the administrative scripts to delete, from the Business Process Choreographer database, human task templates that are no longer valid.

Configuring the cleanup service and cleanup jobs

Use the administrative console to configure and schedule cleanup jobs that periodically delete instances of business processes and human tasks that are in particular states.

Deleting completed process instances

Use an administrative script to selectively delete from the Business Process Choreographer database any top-level process instances that have reached an end state of finished, terminated, or failed.

Deleting audit log entries, using administrative scripts

Use the administrative scripts to delete some or all audit log entries for the Business Flow Manager.

Deleting data from the reporting database

Use an administrative script to selectively delete from the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, all of the data for process instances that match specified conditions. Deleting unnecessary data can improve the performance generating reports.

Removing unused people query results, using administrative scripts

Use the administrative scripts to remove unused people query results from the database.

Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console

This describes how to check for and replay any messages for business processes or human tasks that could not be processed.

Using the administrative console to administer Business Process Choreographer

Describes the administrative actions that can be performed using the administrative console.

Enabling the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

This describes how to use the administrative console to enable the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function to connect to the data source for a particular event collector.

Before you begin

You have configured the Business Process Choreographer event collector and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer, but you did not select the option to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

About this task

This task uses the administrative console, but you can also use the `clientconfig.jacl` script file to enable the reporting function.

Procedure

1. In the administrative console, navigate to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer configuration page: Click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* or **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process Choreographer Explorer**.
2. A list of configured Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances is displayed. Select which one you want to enable the reporting function on. If the option for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is already selected, then it is already configured.
3. If the option for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is not selected, you can configure it by performing the following.
 - a. Ensure that a Business Process Choreographer event collector is installed and configured.
 - b. Select **Enable reporting function**.
 - c. Select which Business Process Choreographer event collector will be visualized. If the list is empty, you must first install and configure a Business Process Choreographer event collector, as described in “Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector” on page 213.
 - d. For **Report at snapshot range** specify how many days of data will be visualized.
4. Click **Apply**. Messages are displayed indicating the progress.
5. Optional: If any problems are reported, check the `SystemOut.log` file.

Results

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is configured and ready to use.

Related tasks

“Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector” on page 213

Using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is optional, however, before you can use it, you must setup the database and install the applications.

Related reference

“Using the clientconfig.jacl script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer” on page 209

This script file configures Business Process Choreographer Explorer and all the necessary resources on a server or cluster. You can also use it to change configuration settings for an existing instance, including changing the `maxListEntries` and configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Administering the compensation service for a server

Use the administrative console to start the compensation service automatically when the application server starts, and to specify the location and maximum size of the recovery log.

About this task

The compensation service must be started on an application server, when business processes are run on that server. In a cluster, you must perform this server-level setup consistently for each cluster member. The compensation service is used to manage updates that might be made in a number of transactions before the process completes. When you set up a new application server, the compensation service is enabled by default.

You can use the administrative console to view and change properties of the compensation service for application servers.

Procedure

1. Display the administrative console.
2. In the navigation pane, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*.
3. On the Configuration tab, under Container Settings, click **Container Services** → **Compensation service**. This action displays a panel with the compensation service properties. Make sure that the **Enable service at server startup** check box is selected. If you run your business processes on a cluster, enable the compensation service for each server in the cluster.
4. Optional: If necessary, change the compensation service properties.
5. Click **OK**.
6. To save your configuration, click **Save** in the Messages box of the administrative console window.

Querying and replaying failed messages, using the administrative console

This describes how to check for and replay any messages for business processes or human tasks that could not be processed.

About this task

When a problem occurs while processing a message, it is moved to the retention queue or hold queue. This task describes how to determine whether any failed messages exist, and to send those messages to the internal queue again.

Procedure

1. For the Business Process Manager, the most flexible way to check and reply and messages on the hold queue, is to use the administrative console page for the failed event manager.
 - a. Click **Integration Applications** → **Failed Event Manager** → **Search failed events**, for **Event type**, select **BFM hold** then click **OK**.
 - b. If the search results contains any messages, you can select any of them then either click **Resubmit** to replay the messages, or **Delete** to delete them from the hold queue without replaying them.
2. To check how many messages are in the hold and retention queues, and replay them using the Business Process Choreographer administrative console pages:
 - a. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
 - b. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer**. Choose one of the following options:
 - For business processes, click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - For human tasks, click **Human Task Manager**.

The number of messages in the hold queue and retention queue are displayed on the **Runtime** tab under **General Properties**.

- c. If either the hold queue or the retention queue contains messages, you can move the messages to the internal work queue.

Click one of the following options:

 - For business processes: **Replay Hold Queue** or **Replay Retention Queue**
 - For human tasks: **Replay Hold Queue**

Note: When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, the replay buttons are only visible to users who have administrator or operator authority.

Results

Business Process Choreographer tries to service all replayed messages again.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Recovery from infrastructure failures

A long-running process spans multiple transactions. If a transaction fails because of an infrastructure failure, Business Flow Manager provides a facility for automatically recovering from these failures.

Related information



Managing failed events

Refreshing the failed message counts

Use the administrative console to refresh the count of failed messages for business processes or human tasks.

About this task

The displayed number of messages in the hold queue and in the retention queue, and the number of message exceptions, remain static until refreshed. This task describes how to update and display the number of messages on those queues and the number of message exceptions.

Procedure

1. Select the appropriate application server or cluster.
Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
2. Refresh the message counts.
 - a. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer**. Choose one of the following options:
 - For business processes, click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - For human tasks, click **Human Task Manager**.
 - b. On the **Runtime** tab, click **Refresh Message Count**.

Results

The following updated values are displayed under **General Properties**:

- For business processes: The number of messages in the hold queue and in the retention queue
- For human tasks: The number of messages in the hold queue
- If any exceptions occurred while accessing the queues, the message text is displayed in the Message exceptions field.

What to do next

On this page, you can also replay the messages in these queues.

Related concepts

Recovery from infrastructure failures

A long-running process spans multiple transactions. If a transaction fails because of an infrastructure failure, Business Flow Manager provides a facility for automatically recovering from these failures.

Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative console to refresh people queries.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer caches the results of people queries, which have been evaluated against a people directory, such as a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, in the runtime database. If the people directory changes, you can force the people assignments to be evaluated again.

Procedure

To refresh the people queries:

1. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
2. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Human Task Manager**.
3. On the **Runtime** tab, click **Refresh People Queries**. All people queries are refreshed.

Note: When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, the refresh button is only visible to users who have administrator or operator authority. Refreshing the people query results in this way can cause a high load on the application and database. Consider using the alternative methods listed below.

Results

Related concepts

People assignment criteria and people query results

A people assignment criteria is associated with a task authorization role. The people query that is derived from the people assignment criteria is stored as part of the deployed task template, or task instance. During the execution of a task, the authorization roles require the resolution of the associated people queries so that people can be assigned to the task.

Related tasks

“Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts” on page 338

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative scripts to refresh people queries.

“Refreshing people query results, using the refresh daemon” on page 304

Use this method if you want to set up a regular and automatic refresh of all expired people query results.

Enabling Common Base Events, the audit trail, and the task history using the administrative console

Use this task to enable Business Process Choreographer events to be emitted to the Common Event Infrastructure as Common Base Events, or stored in the audit trail, or both. You can also use this task to exploit task history data using either Business Space or the Task Instance History Representational State Transfer (REST) interface.

About this task

You can change the state observers settings for the Business Flow Manager or the Human Task Manager, permanently on the Configuration tab, or temporarily on the Runtime tab. Any choices you make on these Configuration or Runtime tabs affect all applications executing in the appropriate container. For changes to affect both the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager, you must change the settings separately for them both.

Changing the configured logging infrastructure, using the administrative console

Use this task to change the state observer logging for the task history, audit log, or common event infrastructure logging for the configuration.

About this task

Choices made on the Configuration tab are activated the next time the server is started. The chosen settings remain in effect whenever the server is started.

Make changes to the configuration, as follows:

Procedure

1. Display the Business Flow Manager or Human Task Manager pane.
 - a. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Cluster** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
 - b. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer**. Choose one of the following options:
 - For business processes, click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - For human tasks, click **Human Task Manager**.

2. On the **Configuration** tab, in the General Properties section, select the logging to be enabled. The state observers are independent of each other:

Enable Common Event Infrastructure logging

Select this check box to enable event emission that is based on the Common Event Infrastructure.

Enable audit logging

Select this check box to store the audit log events in the audit trail tables of the Business Process Choreographer database.

Enable task history

This option is only available for the Human Task Manager. Select this check box to display task history data in Business Space, or to retrieve task history data using the Task Instance History Representational State Transfer (REST) interface.

3. Accept the change.
 - a. Click **OK**.
 - b. In the Messages box, click **Save**.

Results

The state observers are set, as you required. The changes take place after server restart.

What to do next

Restart the server, to effect the changes. If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, restart the cluster.

Configuring the logging infrastructure for the session, using the administrative console

Use this task to change the state observer logging for the task history, audit log, or common event infrastructure logging for the session.

About this task

Choices made on the Runtime tab are effective immediately. The chosen settings remain in effect until the next time the server is started.

Make changes to the session infrastructure, as follows:

Procedure

1. Display the Business Flow Manager or Human Task Manager pane.
 - a. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Cluster** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
 - b. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer**. Choose one of the following options:
 - For business processes, click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - For human tasks, click **Human Task Manager**.
2. On the **Runtime** tab, in the General Properties section, select the logging to be enabled. The state observers are independent of each other:

Enable Common Event Infrastructure logging

Select this check box to enable event emission that is based on the Common Event Infrastructure.

Enable audit logging

Select this check box to store the audit log events in the audit trail tables of the Business Process Choreographer database.

Enable task history

This option is only available for the Human Task Manager. Select this check box to display task history data in Business Space, or to retrieve task history data using the Task Instance History Representational State Transfer (REST) interface.

3. Click **OK** to accept the change.

Results

The state observers are set, as you required.

Refreshing people query results, using the refresh daemon

Use this method if you want to set up a regular and automatic refresh of all expired people query results.

About this task

People queries are resolved by the specified people directory provider. The result is stored in the Business Process Choreographer database. To optimize the authorization performance, the retrieved query results are cached. The cache content is checked for currency when the people query refresh daemon is invoked.

In order to keep people query results up to date, a daemon is provided that refreshes expired people query results on a regular schedule. The daemon refreshes all cached people query results that have expired.

Procedure

1. Open the custom properties page for the Human Task Manager:
 - a. Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
 - b. On the **Configuration** tab, under Business Integration, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Human Task Manager**.
 - c. Choose one of the following options:
 - To change the settings permanently, click the **Configuration** tab. The changes are valid after the application server is restarted.
 - To change the settings temporarily, click the **Runtime** tab. The changes are valid immediately, but will be reset next time the application server restarts.
2. In the field **People query refresh schedule** enter the schedule using the syntax as supported by the WebSphere CRON calendar. This value determines when the daemon will refresh any expired people query results. The default value is "`0 0 1 * * ?`", which causes a refresh every day at 1 am.
3. In the field **Timeout for people query result** enter a new value in seconds. This value determines how long a people query result is considered to be valid. After this time period, the people query result is considered to be no longer valid, and the people query will be refreshed the next time that the daemon runs. The default is one hour.
4. Click **OK**.

5. Save the changes. To make your changes that you performed on the Configuration tab effective, restart the application server.

The new expiration time value applies only to new people queries, it does not apply to existing people queries.

Related concepts

People assignment criteria and people query results

A people assignment criteria is associated with a task authorization role. The people query that is derived from the people assignment criteria is stored as part of the deployed task template, or task instance. During the execution of a task, the authorization roles require the resolution of the associated people queries so that people can be assigned to the task.

Configuring the cleanup service and cleanup jobs

Use the administrative console to configure and schedule cleanup jobs that periodically delete instances of business processes and human tasks that are in particular states.

Before you begin

Identify times of the day and days of the week, when it would be best to schedule the cleanup service, for example, when there is the lowest load on the database. For each business process and human task that you want the cleanup service to delete, decide which states make an instance a candidate for deletion, and decide how long an instance must be in one of those states before the next scheduled cleanup deletes them.

About this task

You want completed instances to be deleted automatically after keeping them for a while. There is a separate cleanup service for the Business Flow Manager and for the Human Task Manager. For each of them, you must first enable the service and define the service parameters, such as the schedule, maximum duration of the cleanup, and the database transaction size. Then you can define cleanup jobs for sets of templates and define the end states and the duration that an instance must be in to qualify for deletion. The Human Task Manager cleanup service only deletes stand-alone human tasks, but when the Business Flow Manager cleanup service deletes a business processes, it also deletes all child processes and inline human tasks that are contained in the process. When security is enabled, the cleanup user ID specified for the Business Process Choreographer configuration must be in the business administrator role.

Procedure

1. Configure the cleanup service for the **Business Flow Manager**.
 - a. To configure the cleanup service in a cluster, in the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - b. To configure the cleanup service on a stand-alone server, in the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Flow Manager**.
 - c. If the cleanup service is not enabled, select **Enable cleanup service**. For a cluster configuration, the cleanup service will be scheduled to run on one of the cluster members of the cluster it is configured on.

- d. For **Frequency**, specify the time and frequency when the Business Flow Manager cleanup service will run. Enter a WebSphere crontab format string, which defines the start of a low load time slot. For example, to run the cleanup service every night at eleven o'clock, use the default value of `0 0 23 * * ? .`
 - e. For **Maximum duration**, enter the maximum time that the cleanup is allowed to run. The default is 120 minutes. Make sure that the maximum duration is shorter than the time interval specified by the frequency.
 - f. For **Transaction slice**, enter the number of business process instances that will be deleted in each database transaction. The default value is 10. Because the value affects the performance of the cleanup service, it is worth trying different values. Depending on the size of the human tasks being deleted, you might be able to increase the slice size to increase the performance. However, if you get transaction timeouts, you should reduce the value.
 - g. Save your changes.
2. Add a new cleanup job for the **Business Flow Manager**.
 - a. In the administrative console, on the **Business Flow Manager** page, click **Cleanup Service Jobs**.
 - b. To create a new cleanup job, click **Add**.
 - c. If this is not the only cleanup job, for **Order Number**, you can select a sequence number that determines the order that the jobs will be run, starting with number zero.
 - d. For **Cleanup Job**, enter a name for the job.
 - e. For **Templates**, either enter the name of one or more business process templates (one per line) whose instances (including any inline human tasks) will be deleted, or enter an asterisk (*) to specify all business process templates.
 - f. For **Restrict cleanup to instances in the following states**, select one or more of the following states:
 - **FINISHED**
 - **TERMINATED**
 - **FAILED**
 - g. For **Duration until deletion**, specify how long an instance must be in one of the specified states before it becomes eligible for deletion by the cleanup job. Enter integers in the following fields: **Minutes**, **Hours**, **Days**, **Months**, and **Years**. The default is two hours.
 - h. Click **Apply** or **OK**.
 - i. Save your changes.
 - j. If necessary, repeat this step to define more cleanup jobs for business process instances.
 3. Configure the cleanup service for the **Human Task Manager**.
 - a. To configure the cleanup service in a cluster, in the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager**.
 - b. To configure the cleanup service on a stand-alone server, in the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager**.
 - c. If the cleanup service is not enabled, select **Enable cleanup service**. For a cluster configuration, the cleanup service will be scheduled to run on one of the cluster members of the cluster it is configured on.

- d. For **Frequency**, specify the time and frequency when the Human Task Manager cleanup service will run. Enter a WebSphere crontab format string, which defines a low load time slot.

Tip: If the cleanup service for the Business Flow Manager is also enabled, specify a schedule that does not overlap with the time window defined by the values specified in steps 1d on page 306 and 1e on page 306. For example, if the Business Flow Manager cleanup service starts every night at one o'clock, and can run for up to two hours, you can specify that the cleanup service for the Human Task Manager runs every night at three o'clock by entering the value `0 0 3 * * ? .`

- e. For **Maximum duration**, enter the maximum time that the cleanup is allowed to run. The default is 120 minutes. Make sure that the maximum duration is shorter than the time interval specified by the frequency.
 - f. For **Transaction slice**, enter the number of human task instances that will be deleted in each database transaction. The default value is 10. Because the value affects the performance of the cleanup service, it is worth trying different values. Depending on the size of the human tasks being deleted, you might be able to increase the slice size to increase the performance. However, if you get transaction timeouts, you should reduce the value.
 - g. Save your changes.
4. Add a new cleanup job for the **Human Task Manager**.
 - a. In the administrative console, on the **Human Task Manager** page, click **Cleanup jobs**.
 - b. To create a new cleanup job, click **Add**.
 - c. If this is not the only cleanup job, for **Order Number**, you can select a sequence number that determines the order that the jobs will be run, starting with number zero.
 - d. For **Cleanup Job**, enter a name for the job.
 - e. For **Templates**, either enter the name of one or more stand-alone human task templates (one per line) whose instances will be deleted, or enter an asterisk (*) to specify all standalone human task templates. To specify a namespace for a task template, append it in brackets, for example, `myTaskTemplate (http://bpc/samples/task/)`.

Note: The Human Task Manager cleanup service can also delete inline invocation tasks that are started using the Human Task Manager API.

- f. For **Restrict cleanup to instances in the following states**, select one or more of the following states:
 - **FINISHED**
 - **TERMINATED**
 - **FAILED**
 - **INACTIVE**
 - **EXPIRED**
- g. For **Duration until deletion**, specify how long an instance must be in one of the specified states before it becomes eligible for deletion by the cleanup job. Enter integers in the following fields: **Minutes**, **Hours**, **Days**, **Months**, and **Years**. The default is two hours.
- h. Click **Apply** or **OK**.
- i. Save your changes.

- j. If necessary, repeat this step to define more cleanup jobs for standalone human task instances.
5. To activate any changes, restart the server.

Results

You have activated the cleanup services and defined cleanup jobs to delete completed instances. When the cleanup job starts and finishes, the messages CWWBF0116I and CWWBF0117I are written to the SystemOut.log file.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Related information

 UserCalendar Interface

Using scripts to administer Business Process Choreographer

Describes the administrative actions that can be performed using scripts.

About this task

When using administrative scripts that trigger long-running work on the server, a script can fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. If the wsadmin scripting client terminates because of a connection timeout, check the SystemOut.log file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If it happens often, consider increasing the value of the `com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout` property in the `soap.client.props` file. Some scripts have parameters that you can specify, which influence how much work is performed.

There is no cross-cell support for the Business Process Choreographer administrative scripts. This means that you can connect the scripting client only to a server or the deployment manager of the cell to which the node of the profile where the script runs belongs.

Related reference

Using a script to enable logging for Business Process Choreographer

This describes how to use the `setStateObserver.py` script to enable or disable Common Event Infrastructure (CEI), audit events for Business Process Choreographer, or the task history logging for the Human Task Manager.

Administering query tables

Use the `wsadmin` script, `manageQueryTable.py` script to administer query tables in Business Process Choreographer, which were developed using the Query Table Builder. Unlike predefined query tables, which are available out-of-the-box, you must deploy composite and supplemental query tables on WebSphere Process Server before you can use them with the query table API.

About this task

When query tables are deployed, the query table definition is stored in the Business Process Choreographer database. Additional database artifacts are not created in the current version of WebSphere Process Server. Any changes to

composite and supplemental query tables, including deployment, update, and undeployment, are visible to the query table API without restarting the server.

Query tables are deployed on a stand-alone server that is running or in a cluster with at least one member running. The undeployment of supplemental and composite query tables is performed also on running servers. For supplemental query tables, the related physical database objects, typically a database view or database table, must be created if they do not exist prior to the usage of the query table.

For supplemental query tables, the user, or administrator, is responsible for providing the related database table or view.

For composite query tables, the information is composed of the existing database tables or views that relate to the predefined or supplemental query tables. Data is not duplicated in the current version of WebSphere Process Server.

Supplemental query tables which are referenced by deployed composite query tables must not be updated or undeployed.

Using `manageQueryTable.py` you can update composite and supplemental query tables and get their XML definitions. You can also get a list of query tables that are available on your system. For supplemental query tables, the related physical database objects, typically a database view or a database table, must be created if they do not exist prior to the usage of the query table.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

manageQueryTable.py script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Purpose

The `manageQueryTable.py` script is run in batch mode. Use this script to deploy, undeploy, or update query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You can also get a list of deployed query tables and get the XML definition of a query table.

Location

The `manageQueryTable.py` script is located in the Business Process Choreographer admin directory:

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin`
- On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin`

Running the script in a stand-alone server environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a stand-alone server environment:

- This script must be run in connected mode, that is, the application server or at least one cluster member and the deployment manager must be running.
- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options. To deploy, undeploy, or update query tables, the user specified must have administrator or deployer authority. To list the XML definition of a query table or to get a list of query tables, the user specified must have operator, administrator, or deployer authority.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Running the script in a network deployment environment

The configuration script is run using the `wsadmin` command. In a network deployment environment:

- Run the script on the deployment manager node.
- This script must be run in connected mode, that is, the application server or at least one cluster member and the deployment manager must be running.
- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, include the `-user` and `-password` options. To deploy, undeploy, or update query tables, the user specified must have administrator or deployer authority. To list the XML definition of a query table or to get a list of query tables, the user specified must have operator, administrator, or deployer authority.
- If you are not configuring the default profile, add the `-profileName` option.

Parameters

You can use the following parameters when you invoke the script using the `wsadmin` command:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]
        ( ( -deploy (qtdFile | jarFile) ) |
          ( -undeploy queryTableName ) |
          ( -update definition (qtdFile | jarFile) ) |
          ( -query names -kind (composite|predefined|supplemental)) |
          ( -query definition -name queryTableName ) )
        [ -profileName profileName ]
```

-node *nodeName*

The name of the node where Business Process Choreographer is configured.
The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured.

-deploy *qtdFile* | *jarFile*

The file name, including the fully qualified path, of either the query table definition XML file to be deployed or a JAR file that contains the definitions. Use this option to deploy a query table. On Windows, you must use either `"/` or `"\\` as the path separator. For example, to specify the file `c:\temp\myQueryTable.qtd` you must specify it as `c:/temp/myQueryTable.qtd` or `c:\\temp\\myQueryTable.qtd`.

-undeploy *queryTableName*

The name of the query table. Use this option to undeploy a query table.

-update definition *qtdFile* | *jarFile*

The file name, including the fully qualified path, of either the query table definition XML file to be updated or a JAR file that contains the definitions. Use this option to update an existing query table. On Windows, you must use either "/" or "\\\\" as the path separator. For example, to specify the file `c:\temp\myQueryTable.qtd` you must specify it as `c:/temp/myQueryTable.qtd` or `c:\\\\temp\\\\myQueryTable.qtd`.

If a JAR file is provided, it can contain multiple QTD files and property files for each QTD file, which contain display names and descriptions. Use the Query Table Builder to export query table definitions as a JAR file.

-query names -kind {composite | predefined | supplemental}

The type of query table: composite, predefined, or supplemental. Use this option to list the names of deployed query tables of a particular type.

-query definition -name *queryTableName*

The name of the query table, in upper case. Use this option to list the XML definition of a deployed supplemental or composite query table.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

Related concepts

Query table development

Supplemental and composite query tables in Business Process Choreographer are developed during application development using the Query Table Builder. Predefined query tables cannot be developed or deployed. They are available when Business Process Choreographer is installed and provide a simple view on the artifacts in the Business Process Choreographer database schema.

Query tables in Business Process Choreographer

Query tables support task and process list queries on data that is contained in the Business Process Choreographer database schema. This includes human task data and business process data that is managed by Business Process Choreographer, and external business data. Query tables provide an abstraction on the data of Business Process Choreographer that can be used by client applications. In this way, client applications become independent of the actual implementation of the query table. Query table definitions are deployed on Business Process Choreographer containers, and are accessible using the query table API.

Related tasks

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Administering query tables

Use the `wsadmin` script, `manageQueryTable.py` script to administer query tables in Business Process Choreographer, which were developed using the Query Table Builder. Unlike predefined query tables, which are available out-of-the-box, you must deploy composite and supplemental query tables on WebSphere Process Server before you can use them with the query table API.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related

Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server on which the query tables are to be deployed must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member and the deployment manager must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have administrator or deployer authority.

About this task

Complete the following steps to deploy composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the `manageQueryTable.py` script is located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin`
 - On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin`
2. Enter the following command to deploy the query table:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py  
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]  
        -deploy qtdFile
```

To deploy a JAR file:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py  
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]  
        -deploy jarFile
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

The name of the WebSphere node where Business Process Choreographer is configured. If you have only one node and one server, this parameter is optional. This is optional when specifying the server name. The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if the cluster name is not specified.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-deploy *qtdFile* | *jarFile*

The file name, including the fully qualified path, of either the query table definition XML file to be deployed or a JAR file that contains the definitions.

For example:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py -server server1 -deploy sample.qtd
```

Related tasks

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server on which the query tables are to be undeployed must be running. That is, the `-comntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member and the deployment manager must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have administrator or deployer authority.
- Ensure that no applications are installed and running that reference a query table that is to be undeployed. If a supplemental query table is undeployed, it must not be referenced, as attached query table, by any composite query table.

About this task

Complete the following steps to undeploy composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the `manageQueryTable.py` script is located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin`
 - On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin`
2. Enter the following command to undeploy the query table:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py  
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]  
        -undeploy queryTableName
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

The name of the WebSphere node where Business Process Choreographer is configured. If you have only one node and one server, this parameter is optional. This is optional when specifying the server name. The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if the cluster name is not specified.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-undeploy *queryTableName*

The name of the query table, in upper case, to be undeployed.

For example:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py -server server1 -undeploy COMPANY.SAMPLE
```

Related tasks

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server on which the query tables are deployed must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have administrator or deployer authority.

About this task

Complete the following steps to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the `manageQueryTable.py` script is located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin`
 - On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin`
2. Enter the following command to update the query table. If property files are already deployed, they will be overwritten.

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]
        -update definition qtdFile
        [ -profileName profileName ]
```

To update using a JAR file:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]
        -update definition jarFile
        [ -profileName profileName ]
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

The name of the WebSphere node where Business Process Choreographer is configured. If you have only one node and one server, this parameter is optional. This is optional when you specify the server name. The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if the cluster name is not specified.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-update definition *qtdFile* | *jarFile*

The file name, including the fully qualified path, of either the query table definition XML file to be updated or a JAR file that contains the definitions.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

For example:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py -server server1
        -update definition sample_v2.qtd
```

Related tasks

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server on which the query tables are deployed must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator, administrator, or deployer authority.

About this task

Complete the following steps to get a list of query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the `manageQueryTable.py` script is located.

- On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory *install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin*
 - On Windows platforms: In the directory *install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin*
2. Enter the following command to get a list of query tables, which is written to the command prompt window.

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]
        -query names
        -kind (composite|predefined|supplemental)
        [ -profileName profileName ]
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

The name of the WebSphere node where Business Process Choreographer is configured. If you have only one node and one server, this parameter is optional. This is optional when you specify the server name. The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if the cluster name is not specified.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-kind (composite | predefined | supplemental)

The type of query table to be listed, whether composite, predefined, or supplemental. If there are no query tables of the selected kind, none is returned.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

For example:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py -server server1
        -query names -kind composite
```

Related tasks

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Retrieving the XML definitions of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. You cannot use the script to retrieve the XML definitions of predefined query tables. The XML format of query table definitions is not a published interface. It is not supported to manually change the definition of a query table definition. To do this, load the query table definition into the Query Table Builder and apply modifications there.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server on which the query tables are deployed must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator, administrator, or deployer authority.

About this task

Complete the following steps to retrieve the XML definition of composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the `manageQueryTable.py` script is located.
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms: In the directory `install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin`
 - On Windows platforms: In the directory `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin`
2. Enter the following command to list the XML definition of a query table, which is written to the command prompt window.

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py
        [ ([-node nodeName] -server serverName) | (-cluster clusterName) ]
        -query definition
        -name queryTableName
        [ -profileName profileName ]
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

The name of the WebSphere node where Business Process Choreographer is configured. If you have only one node and one server, this parameter is optional. This is optional when you specify the server name. The default is the local node.

-server *serverName*

The name of the server where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if the cluster name is not specified.

-cluster *clusterName*

The name of the cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. This is required if Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-name *queryTableName*

The name of the query table, in upper case, whose XML definition is to be listed.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

For example:

```
wsadmin -f manageQueryTable.py -server server1
-query definition -name COMPANY.SAMPLE
```

Related tasks

Updating composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to update composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer. Updates to query tables can be made while applications are running, and they are available after the update, without restarting the server or cluster.

Retrieving a list of query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to get a list of query tables that are available in Business Process Choreographer. You can list predefined, supplemental, and composite query tables.

Deploying composite and supplemental query tables

Before supplemental and composite query tables can be used in Business Process Choreographer, use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to deploy them. Before query tables can be used with the query table API they must be deployed on the related Business Process Choreographer container. Query tables do not need to be started, and the server or cluster does not need to be restarted for them to be available after deployment.

Undeploying composite and supplemental query tables

Use the `manageQueryTable.py` script to remove composite and supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer.

Related reference

`manageQueryTable.py` script

The `manageQueryTable.py` script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Deleting audit log entries, using administrative scripts

Use the administrative scripts to delete some or all audit log entries for the Business Flow Manager.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server, on which audit log entries are to be deleted, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator authority.

About this task

You can use the `deleteAuditLog.py` script to delete audit log entries for the Business Flow Manager from the database.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Delete the entries in the audit log table.

On Windows platforms, enter one or more of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-node node_name  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter one or more of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-node node_name  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

On i5/OS platforms, enter one or more of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-node node_name  
-server server_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteAuditLog.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-profileName profileName]  
[options]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Flow Manager is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-node *node_name*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

The available options are:

-all

Deletes all the audit log entries in the database. The deletion is done in multiple transactions. Each transaction deletes the number of entries specified in the slice parameter, or the default number.

-time *timestamp*

Deletes all the audit log entries that are older than the time you specify for *timestamp*. The time used is coordinated universal time (UTC). Its format must be: YYYY-MM-DD['T'HH:MM:SS]. If you specify only the year, month, and day, the hour, minutes, and seconds are set to 00:00:00.

The *-time* and *-processtime* options are mutually exclusive.

-processtime *timestamp*

Deletes all the audit log entries that belong to a process that finished before the time you specify for *timestamp*. Use the same time format as for the *-time* parameter.

The *-time* and *-processtime* options are mutually exclusive.

-slice *size*

Used with the *-all* parameter, *size* specifies the number of entries included in each transaction. The optimum value depends on the available log size for your database system. Higher values require fewer transactions but you might exceed the database log space. Lower values might cause the script to take longer to complete the deletion. The default size for the slice parameter is 250.

- Optional: If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. Check the SystemOut.log file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout property in the soap.client.props file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Deleting process templates that are no longer valid

Use the administrative scripts to delete, from the Business Process Choreographer database, business process templates that are no longer valid.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the application server on which templates are to be deleted must be running. That is, the *-conntype none* option of *wsadmin* cannot be used, because a server connection is required. No special authority is required to run this command, even if WebSphere administrative security is enabled. If the

Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.

About this task

Use the `deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py` script to remove, from the database, those templates, and all objects that belong to them, that are not contained in any corresponding valid application in the WebSphere configuration repository. This situation can occur if an application installation was canceled or not stored in the configuration repository by the user. These templates usually have no impact. They are not shown in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

There are rare situations in which these templates cannot be filtered. They must then be removed from the database with the following scripts.

You cannot use the scripts to remove templates of valid applications from the database. This condition is checked and a `ConfigurationError` exception is thrown if the corresponding application is valid.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Delete, from the database, process templates that are no longer valid.

To delete, on Windows systems, a business process template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
                        -server server_name
                        -templateName templateName
                        -validFrom validFromString
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
                        -server server_name
                        -node node_name
                        -templateName templateName
                        -validFrom validFromString
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
                        -cluster cluster_name
                        -templateName templateName
                        -validFrom validFromString
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

To delete, on Linux and UNIX systems, a business process template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
                            -server server_name
                            -templateName templateName
                            -validFrom validFromString
                            [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
```

```
-server server_name
-node node_name
-templateName templateName
-validFrom validFromString
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
-cluster cluster_name
-templateName templateName
-validFrom validFromString
[-profileName profileName]
```

To delete, on i5/OS systems, a business process template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
-server server_name
-templateName templateName
-validFrom validFromString
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
-server server_name
-node node_name
-templateName templateName
-validFrom validFromString
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidProcessTemplate.py
-cluster cluster_name
-templateName templateName
-validFrom validFromString
[-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster. You can specify the cluster name or the server name and node name.

-node *node_name*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-templateName *templateName*

The name of the process template to be deleted.

-validFrom *validFromString*

The date from which the template is valid (in UTC). In the administrative console this date is displayed in local time, so make sure that you take your time zone into account. The string must have the following format: 'yyyy-MM-ddThh:mm:ss' (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, 2005-01-31T13:40:50

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

- Optional: If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action.

Check the SystemOut.log file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout property in the soap.client.props file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Deleting human task templates that are no longer valid

Use the administrative scripts to delete, from the Business Process Choreographer database, human task templates that are no longer valid.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the application server on which templates are to be deleted must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required. No special authority is required to run this command, even if WebSphere administrative security is enabled. If the Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.

About this task

Use the `deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py` script to remove, from the database, those templates, and all objects that belong to them, that are not contained in any corresponding valid application in the WebSphere configuration repository. This situation can occur if an application installation was canceled or not stored in the configuration repository by the user. These templates usually have no impact. They are not shown in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

There are rare situations in which these templates cannot be filtered. They must then be removed from the database with the following scripts.

You cannot use the scripts to remove templates of valid applications from the database. This condition is checked and a `ConfigurationError` exception is thrown if the corresponding application is valid.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Delete, from the database, human task templates that are no longer valid.

To delete, on Windows systems, a human task template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString
```

```
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-node node_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

To delete, on UNIX and Linux systems, a human task template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-node node_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

To delete, on i5/OS systems, a human task template that is no longer valid, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-server server_name  
-node node_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteInvalidTaskTemplate.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
-templateName templateName  
-validFrom validFromString  
-nameSpace nameSpace  
[-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster. You can specify the cluster name or the server name and node name.

-node *node_name*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-templateName *templateName*

The name of the task template to be deleted.

-validFrom *validFromString*

The date from which the template is valid (in UTC). In the administrative console this date is displayed in local time, so make sure that you take your time zone into account. The string must have the following format: 'yyyy-MM-ddThh:mm:ss' (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, 2005-01-31T13:40:50

-nameSpace *nameSpace*

The target namespace of the task template.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

- Optional: If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. Check the SystemOut.log file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout property in the soap.client.props file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Deleting completed process instances

Use an administrative script to selectively delete from the Business Process Choreographer database any top-level process instances that have reached an end state of finished, terminated, or failed.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server, on which process instances are to be deleted, must be running. That is, the -comntype none option of wsadmin cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.

No special authority is required to run this command, even if WebSphere administrative security is enabled.

About this task

A top-level process instance is considered completed if it is in one of the following end states: finished, terminated, or failed. You specify criteria to selectively delete top-level process instances and all their associated data (such as activity instances, child process instances, and inline task instances) from the database.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Delete process instances from the database.

On Windows systems, enter the following command:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f deleteCompletedProcessInstances.py  
  [[(-node nodeName) -server server_name] | (-cluster cluster_name)]  
  (-all | -finished | -terminated | -failed )  
  [-templateName templateName [-validFrom timestamp]]  
  [-startedBy userID ]  
  [-completedBefore timestamp]  
  [-profileName profileName]
```

On Linux and UNIX systems, enter the following command:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f deleteCompletedProcessInstances.py  
  [[(-node nodeName) -server server_name] | (-cluster cluster_name)]  
  (-all | -finished | -terminated | -failed )  
  [-templateName templateName [-validFrom timestamp]]  
  [-startedBy userID ]  
  [-completedBefore timestamp]  
  [-profileName profileName]
```

On i5/OS systems, enter the following command:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f deleteCompletedProcessInstances.py  
  [[(-node nodeName) -server server_name] | (-cluster cluster_name)]  
  (-all | -finished | -terminated | -failed )  
  [-templateName templateName [-validFrom timestamp]]  
  [-startedBy userID ]  
  [-completedBefore timestamp]  
  [-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-node *nodeName*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified. You can specify the server name and node name or the cluster name.

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster. You can specify the cluster name or the server name and node name.

-all | -finished | -terminated | -failed

Specifies which process instances are to be deleted according to their state. The `-all` option means all end states; finished, terminated, and failed.

-templateName *templateName*

Optionally, specifies the name of the process template to be deleted. If this option is specified, you can also use the `validFrom` parameter.

-validFrom *timestamp*

The date from which the template is valid (in UTC) as displayed in the administrative console. This option can only be used with the `templateName` option. The *timestamp* string has the following format: 'yyyy-MM-ddThh:mm:ss' (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, 2006-11-20T12:00:00.

-startedBy *userID*

Optionally, only deletes completed process instances that were started by the given User ID.

-completedBefore *timestamp*

Optionally, deletes completed process instances that completed before the given time. The *timestamp* string has the following format: 'yyyy-MM-dd[Thh:mm:ss]' (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, 2006-07-20T12:00:00. If you specify only the year, month, and day, the hour, minutes, and seconds are set to 00:00:00.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

For example, to delete all of the process instances running on node *myNode* in server *myServer* that are in the state finished, and were started by the user Antje, run the following command:

```
wsadmin -f deleteCompletedProcessInstances.py
        -node myNode -server myServer
        -finished
        -startedBy Antje
```

3. Optional: If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. Check the `SystemOut.log` file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the `com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout` property in the `soap.client.props` file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Results

The completed process instances have been deleted from the database.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Deleting data from the reporting database

Use an administrative script to selectively delete from the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, all of the data for process instances that match specified conditions. Deleting unnecessary data can improve the performance generating reports.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator authority.

About this task

You can delete reporting information for process instances from the reporting database in three ways:

- To delete reporting data for process instances that have reached the end state deleted before a specified time, you must provide the following parameters:
`-deletedBefore timestamp`.
- To delete reporting data for process instances of a specific template version regardless of its current state, you must provide the following parameters:
`-templateName templateName -validFrom timestamp`.
- To delete reporting data for process instances of a specific template version that reached a specified state before a specified time; you must provide the following parameters: `-force -templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp -state state -reachedBefore timestamp`, where `-templateName template_name` and `-validFrom timestamp` are optional.

To use any one of these ways, perform the following:

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administration scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Enter the command to delete reporting data for specific process instances from the database.

On Windows platforms, enter the following command:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin
-f observerDeleteProcessInstanceData.py
( [-node node_name] -server server_name) | (-cluster cluster_name )
[ -profileName profile_name ]
[ -dataSource dataSource_JNDI_name ]
[ -dbSchemaName dbSchemaName]
(
  -deletedBefore timestamp
  | ( -templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp )
  | ( -force [-templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp]
    -state state -reachedBefore timestamp )
)
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter the following command:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh
-f observerDeleteProcessInstanceData.py
( [-node node_name] -server server_name) | (-cluster cluster_name )
[ -profileName profile_name ]
```



```

[ -dataSource dataSource_JNDI_name ]
[ -dbSchemaName dbSchemaName ]
(
  -deletedBefore timestamp
  | ( -templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp )
  | ( -force [-templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp]
      -state state -reachedBefore timestamp )
)

```

On i5/OS platforms, enter the following command:

```

install_root/bin/wsadmin
-f observerDeleteProcessInstanceData.py
( [-node node_name] -server server_name) | (-cluster cluster_name )
[ -profileName profile_name ]
[ -dataSource dataSource_JNDI_name ]
[ -dbSchemaName dbSchemaName ]
(
  -deletedBefore timestamp
  | ( -templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp )
  | ( -force [-templateName template_name -validFrom timestamp]
      -state state -reachedBefore timestamp )
)

```

Where:

-node *node_name*

This name identifies the node. This parameter is optional. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. The default is the default server. If you specify this parameter, you must not specify the cluster parameter.

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. If you specify this parameter, you must not specify the server parameter.

-profileName *profile_name*

The name of a user-defined WebSphere profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

-dataSource *datasource_JNDI_name*

Because a server or cluster can have multiple reporting databases, this parameter identifies which database the command will act on. The default is jdbc/BPEDB.

-dbSchemaName *dbSchemaName*

Use this parameter if the reporting database is set up with a specific schema name.

-deletedBefore *timestamp*

Deletes all reporting data for process instances that reached the state deleted before the specified time.

timestamp

The date and time are expressed in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), in the following format: 'yyyy-MM-dd[Th:mm:ss]' (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, 2008-07-20T12:00:00. If you specify only the year, month, and day, the hour, minutes, and seconds are set to 00:00:00.

-templateName *template_name*

Deletes all reporting data for instances that belong to the specified template version.

-validFrom *timestamp*

This is required if you specify the `templateName` option.

timestamp

The date and time are expressed in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), in the following format: `'yyyy-MM-ddThh:mm:ss'` (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, `2008-07-20T12:00:00`.

-force

Forces the deletion of all reporting data for process instances either for all templates or for a specified template version that reached a specified state before a specified time. If you use this option, you must also specify the options `-state`, and `-reachedBefore`. The options `-templateName` and `-validFrom` are optional.

-state *state*

Specifies one of the following states: `running`, `terminated`, `suspended`, `failed`, `finished`, `compensated`.

-reachedBefore *timestamp*

Specifies a time when the specified state must have been reached.

timestamp

The date and time are expressed in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), in the following format: `'yyyy-MM-dd[Thh:mm:ss]'` (year, month, day, T, hours, minutes, seconds). For example, `2008-07-20T12:00:00`. If you specify only the year, month, and day, the hour, minutes, and seconds are set to `00:00:00`.

For example, to delete all reporting data for instances of the process template `my_template`, which is valid from midday on January 2, 2007, that are running on node `my_node` in server `my_server` that were started before midday on July 20, 2007, run the following command:

```
wsadmin -f observerDeleteProcessInstanceData.py
        -node my_node -server my_server
        -force -templateName my_template -validFrom 2007-01-02T12:00:00
        -state running -reachedBefore 2007-07-20T12:00:00
```

Results

If successful, the tool reports the number of instances for which reporting data was deleted and the number of table entries that were deleted from the database. Otherwise, error information is reported and no changes are made to the database.

What to do next

If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. Check the `SystemOut.log` file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the `com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout` property in the `soap.client.props` file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Querying and replaying failed messages, using administrative scripts

Use the administrative scripts to determine whether there are any failed messages for business processes or human tasks, and, if there are, to retry processing them.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server, on which the messages are to be queried or replayed, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator authority.

About this task

When a problem occurs while processing an internal message, this message ends up on the retention queue or hold queue. To determine whether any failed messages exist, and to send those messages to the internal queue again:

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Query the number of failed messages on both the retention and hold queues.

On Windows systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

On Linux and UNIX systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py
    -node nodeName
    -server server_name
    [ -bfm | -htm ]
    [-profileName profileName]
```

On i5/OS systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py
    -cluster cluster_name
    [ -bfm | -htm ]
    [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py
    -node nodeName
    -server server_name
    [ -bfm | -htm ]
    [-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-node *nodeName*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified.

-bfm | -htm

These keywords are optional and mutually exclusive. The default, if neither option is specified is to display all failed messages for both business processes and human tasks. If you only want to display the number of messages in the Business Flow Manager hold and retention queues, specify the -bfm option. If you only want to display the number of messages in the Human Task Manager hold queue, specify the -htm option.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

If you want to check for a server on the local node, enter:

```
wsadmin -f queryNumberOfFailedMessages.py -server server_name
```

3. Replay all failed messages on the hold queue, retention queue, or both queues.

On Windows systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py
    -cluster cluster_name
    -queue replayQueue
    [ -bfm | -htm ]
    [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py
    -node nodeName
    -server server_name
    -queue replayQueue
    [ -bfm | -htm ]
    [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py
    -server server_name
```

```
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

On Linux and UNIX systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-server server_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

On i5/OS systems, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f replayFailedMessages.py  
-server server_name  
-queue replayQueue  
[ -bfm | -htm ]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-queue *replayQueue*

Optionally specifies the queue to replay. *replayQueue* can have one of the following values:

holdQueue (this is the default value)

retentionQueue (only valid when the -bfm option is specified)

both (not valid when the -htm option is specified)

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-node *nodeName*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified.

-bfm | -htm

These keywords are optional and mutually exclusive. The default, if neither option is specified is to replay failed messages for both business processes and human tasks. If you only want to replay the messages for business processes, specify the `-bfm` option. If you only want to replay messages for human tasks, specify the `-htm` option.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative scripts to refresh people queries.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server, on which the messages are to be queried or replayed, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.
- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator authority.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer caches the results of people queries, which have been evaluated against a people directory, such as a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, in the runtime database. If the people directory changes, you can force the people assignments to be evaluated again.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Force the people assignment to be evaluated again.

On Windows platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |
```

```
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

On i5/OS platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-node nodeName  
-server server_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f refreshStaffQuery.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-processTemplate templateName |  
(-taskTemplate templateName [-nameSpace nameSpace]) |  
-userlist username{,username}...]  
[-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-node *nodeName*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified.

-processTemplate *templateName*

The name of the process template. People assignments that belong to this process template are refreshed.

-taskTemplate *templateName*

The name of the task template. People assignments that belong to this task template are refreshed.

-nameSpace *nameSpace*

The namespace of the task template.

-userlist *userName*

A comma-separated list of user names. People assignments that contain the specified names are refreshed. The user list can be surrounded by quotes. If the quotes are omitted the user list must not contain blanks between the user names.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

Note: If you do not specify any *templateName* nor *userlist*, all people queries that are stored in the database are refreshed. You might want to avoid this for performance reasons.

- Optional: If the script triggers long-running work on the server, the script might fail if the connection timeout is not long enough to complete the action. Check the SystemOut.log file on the server to see whether you need to restart the script. If the timeout happens often, consider increasing the value of the com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout property in the soap.client.props file, or adjusting the script parameters to reduce the amount of work done on the server.

Related concepts

People assignment criteria and people query results

A people assignment criteria is associated with a task authorization role. The people query that is derived from the people assignment criteria is stored as part of the deployed task template, or task instance. During the execution of a task, the authorization roles require the resolution of the associated people queries so that people can be assigned to the task.

Removing unused people query results, using administrative scripts

Use the administrative scripts to remove unused people query results from the database.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The application server, through which unused people queries are to be deleted, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.
- If Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster, then at least one cluster member must be running.

- When WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you must have operator authority.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer maintains lists of user names in the runtime database for people queries that have been evaluated. Although the process instances and human tasks that used the people queries have finished, the lists of user names are maintained in the database until the corresponding business process application is uninstalled.

If the size of the database is affecting performance, you can remove the unused lists of people that are cached in the database tables.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory where the administrative scripts are located.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Remove the unused lists of people.

On Windows platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -server server_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -node nodeName
                        -server server_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -cluster cluster_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

On Linux and UNIX platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -server server_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -node nodeName
                        -server server_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin.sh -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -cluster cluster_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

On i5/OS platforms, enter one of the following commands. The differences between the commands are emphasized:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
                        -server server_name
                        [-profileName profileName]
```

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py
```

-node *nodeName*
-server *server_name*
[-profileName *profileName*]

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f cleanupUnusedStaffQueryInstances.py  
-cluster cluster_name  
[-profileName profileName]
```

Where:

-cluster *cluster_name*

The name of the cluster. Required if the Business Process Choreographer is configured for a WebSphere cluster.

-node *nodeName*

Optional when specifying the server name. This name identifies the node. The default is the local node.

-server *server_name*

The name of the server. Required if the cluster name is not specified.

-profileName *profileName*

The name of a user-defined profile. Specify this option if you are not working with the default profile.

Results

The number of entries deleted from the database is displayed.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Chapter 7. Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

About this task

You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to perform the following tasks:

- If you are a business administrator, you can manage the life cycle of business processes, and you can repair business processes. For example, you can restart or force the completion of single activities, or compensate the business process as a whole. If compensations failed, you can retry, skip or stop the process instances. In addition, you can add and update custom properties for business processes and activities.
- If you are a human task administrator, you can manage the life cycle of human tasks, and manage work assignments. For example, you can assign responsibility to users, or manage absence handling and substitution for users. You can also change the priority and business category for human tasks, and add or update custom properties.
- With the reporting function of Business Process Choreographer Explorer you can monitor the history of process instances, activity instances, or inline human tasks. If your Business Process Choreographer Explorer configuration includes the reporting function you can define your own reports, or use a drill-down approach to get more detailed information on specific process instances, activity instances, or inline human tasks. In addition, you can export the reported results for further external processing.
- If you are a business user, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with your assigned tasks. For example, you can initiate business processes, services, and human tasks, and you can work on, edit, save, complete, or release human tasks. In addition, you can flag your absence and define substitutes.

Furthermore, Business Process Choreographer Explorer offers a search function that you can use to discover business processes and their related activities and human tasks that need attention. For example, you can check the status of these instances, navigate between related instances and templates, and retrieve a graphical view of the process states which includes the associated activities and human tasks.

Related tasks

Administering task templates and task instances

Use the administrative console or the administrative commands to administer task templates. Use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with task instances.

Managing work assignments

After a task has started, you might need to manage work assignments for the task, for example, to better distribute the work load over the members of a work group.

Creating and starting a task instance

You can create and start a task instance from any of the task templates that you are authorized to use.

Working on your tasks

To work on a task, you must claim the task and then perform the actions that are needed to complete it.

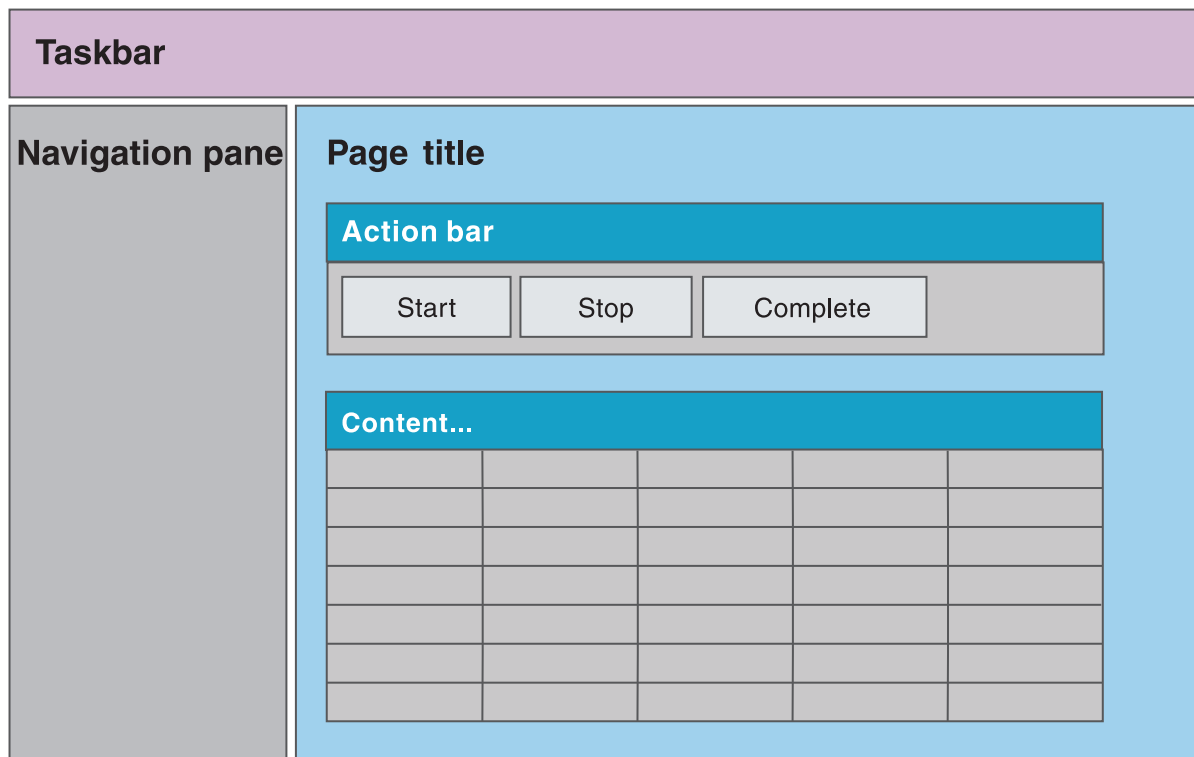
Reporting on business processes and activities

During the processing of business processes and activities, events can be generated when the process, activity, or task changes state. These events are stored and made available for creating reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to analyze process performance issues, or to evaluate the reliability of a service that is called from an activity.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is a stand-alone Web application that provides a set of administration functions for managing business processes and human tasks and for reporting on process and activity events. The interface consists of a taskbar, a navigation pane, and the workspace.

The following figure shows the layout of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface.



The user interface has the following main areas.

Taskbar

For all users, the taskbar offers options for logging out of Business Process Choreographer Explorer and for accessing online help. In addition, the options **My Substitutes** and **Define Substitutes** are available for specifying absence settings. These options are available when substitution is enabled for the Human Task Manager in Business Process Choreographer and the Virtual Member Manager service is configured for WebSphere Application Server security.

My Substitutes

Select this option to specify substitutes for a user's tasks.

Define Substitutes

Select this option to define absence settings for users.

If you have system administrator rights, the taskbar also includes the following options:

Customize

Select this option to add views to and remove views from the navigation pane for this instance of Business Process Choreographer Explorer. You can also define the view that your users see when they log in.

Define Views

Select this option to define customized views for your user group.

Navigation pane


If the Views tab is selected, the navigation pane contains links to views that you use to administer objects, for example, process instances that you started, or


human tasks that you are authorized to administer. The default user interface contains links to predefined views for business processes and tasks.

The system administrator can customize the content of the navigation pane by adding and removing predefined views from the navigation pane and defining custom views to add to the navigation pane. All users can define personalized views from the navigation pane.

If the Reports tab is selected, the navigation pane contains links that you use to select the kind of report that you want to create, for example, you can view the data for an activity instance in a chart. Use the predefined lists and charts to get state and event information for runtime entities, for example, to get process and activity snapshot charts. The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

Page title

If the Views tab is selected, the workspace contains pages that you use to view and administer business process and human task related objects. You access these pages by clicking the links in the navigation pane, by clicking an action in the action bar, or by clicking links within the workspace pages. For information about a page click the **Help** icon  on the respective page.

If the Reports tab is selected, the workspace contains pages that you use to view predefined lists and charts, specify report definitions, and to view reports. You access these pages by clicking the links in the navigation pane, by clicking an action in the action bar, or by clicking links within the workspace pages. For information about a page click the **Help** icon  on the respective page.

Related reference

Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector

Using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is optional, however, before you can use it, you must setup the database and install the applications.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer Views tab


Use the Views tab of Business Process Choreographer Explorer to access views that you use to administer business process and human task objects, such as process instances and work assignments. The default user interface contains links to predefined views for business processes and tasks. You can also define your own personalized views, which are added to the navigation pane. In addition, if you are a system administrator, you can define customized views that are available to all users.


Available actions






The following actions are available in the navigation pane:

- Collapse and expand a group.
Click the arrow beside an item in the navigation pane to expand or collapse the item.
- Navigate to a view.
Click the view name to navigate to that view.

- Define a new search.

Click the **New Search** icon (), to search for objects, or to define a personalized view.


Additional actions are available from the pop-up menu depending on the view type. The **Show pop-up menu** icon () indicates that a pop-up menu is available.

- To delete the view, click the **Delete** icon ().
- To modify the view, click the **Edit** icon ().
- To create a copy of the view and modify the copy, click the **Copy** icon ().
- To move the view up or down in the list, click the **Up** icon () or the **Down** icon ().

View types



The navigation pane can contain the following types of views. Depending on the view, additional actions are available from the pop-up menu.

Predefined views in the default navigation pane


These groups of views are available in the navigation pane, and do not initially have a pop-up menu. When the navigation pane is changed using **Customize**, these predefined then have the **Predefined view** icon () in front of them, which makes it possible to move them up or down.

Customized views and predefined views that were added to the navigation pane by the system administrator

Business users can click the view name and navigate to the view. For system administrators, pop-up menus are available.

- The predefined views are indicated by the **Predefined view** icon:  . A system administrator can use the pop-up menu to change the position of these views in the navigation pane.
- The customized views are indicated by the **Custom view** icon:  . A system administrator can delete, edit, copy, and move these views.

Personalized views

These views are indicated by the **Custom view** icon:  . These views are only visible to the user who created the views. The user can delete, edit, copy, and move the views.

Predefined views in the navigation pane

The default navigation pane contains the following groups of views. The views that are shown in the navigation pane in your Business Process Choreographer Explorer might differ depending on whether your system administrator has added views to, or removed views from the navigation pane. All views show items, independent of additional filters, to which you are authorized. For example, you see only the terminated processes you are allowed to see. If no view is defined for a group of views, the group is not displayed.

Process Templates

The process templates group contains the following view:

Process Templates

This view shows a list of process templates. From this view you can display information about the process template and its structure, display a list of process instances that are associated with a template, and start process instances.

Process Instances

The process instances group contains the following views:

Started By Me

This view shows the process instances that you started. From this view, you can monitor the progress of the process instance, and list the activities, processes, or tasks that are related to it.

Administered By Me

This view shows the process instances that you are authorized to administer. From this view, you can act on the process instance, for example, to suspend and resume a process, or monitor the progress of the activities in a process instance.

Critical Processes

This view shows process instances in the running state that contain activities in the stopped state. From this view, you can act on the process instances, or list the activities and then act on them.

Terminated Processes

This view shows process instances that are in the terminated state. From this view, you can act on these process instances.

Failed Compensations

This view shows the compensation actions that have failed for microflows.

Activity Instances

The activity instances group contains the following view:

Failed Activities

This view shows the activities that are in the failed state. Activities that are in the stopped state are not contained.

Task Templates

The task templates group contains the following view:

My Task Templates

This view shows a list of task templates. From this view you can create and start a task instance, and display a list of task instances that are associated with a template.

Task Instances

The task instances group contains the following views:

My To-dos

This view shows a list of the task instances that you are authorized to work with. From this view, you can work on a task instance, release a task instance that you claimed, or transfer a task instance to another user. You can also change the priority of a task and change its business category.

All Tasks

This view shows all of the tasks for which you are the owner, potential owner, or editor. From this view, you can work on a task

instance, release a task instance that you claimed, or transfer a task instance to another user. You can also change the priority of a task and change its business category.

Initiated By Me

This view shows the task instances that you initiated. From this view, you can work on a task instance, release a task instance that you claimed, or transfer a task instance to another user. You can also change the priority of a task and change its business category.

Administered By Me

This view shows the task instances that you are authorized to administer. From this view, you can act on the task instance, for example, to suspend and resume a process, to create work items for the task instance, or to display a list of the current work items for the task instance. You can also change the priority of a task and change its business category.

My Escalations

This view shows all of the escalations for the logged on user.


Business Process Choreographer Explorer Reports tab





Use the Reports tab of Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage reports for specific processes and activities that were processed by Business Process Choreographer. You can select the kind of report that you want to create, such as process or activity reports. You can also store your own report definitions and add these to the navigation pane. Use the predefined lists and charts for a drill-down approach to get state and event information for runtime entities. For example, lists, process and activity snapshot charts, and process and activity instances by period charts are available. The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.





Available actions

The following actions are available in the navigation pane:

- Collapse and expand a group.
Click the arrow beside an item in the navigation pane to expand or collapse the item.
- Navigate to a predefined list or chart.
Click the kind of instance that you want to report.
- Navigate to the process or activity report wizard.

Click the **New Report** icon () to specify the type of report, the report content, and the filter criteria for a report.

- Run a saved process or activity report.
Click the report name to run the report.
- Open the pop-up menu of a saved process or activity report definition.
Click the **Show pop-up menu** icon () to work on a saved report definition.
 - To delete the report definition, click the **Delete** icon ().
 - To edit the report definition, click the **Edit** icon ().
 - To copy the report definition, click the **Copy** icon ().

- To export the report result, click the **Export** icon ().
- To run a report asynchronously, click the **Asynchronous Report** icon ().
 - After the asynchronous report completes successfully, the **Asynchronous Report Completed** icon () is displayed in the navigation pane. Click the name of the report to view your results.
 - If the asynchronous report does not complete successfully, the **Asynchronous Report Failed** icon () is displayed.

Predefined lists and charts in the navigation pane

The navigation pane contains the following groups of predefined lists and charts.

Lists This group contains the following lists:

Processes

Use this list to view processes that emitted a process event during the specified time frame. The processes are listed according to the process state.

Activities

Use this list to view the state that the selected activities reached during the specified time frame. The activities are listed according to the activity state.

Users

Use this list to view the activities that the selected users performed during the specified time frame, and the state the activities reached. The activities are displayed according to their state. The corresponding user for each activity is shown.

Charts This group contains the following charts:

Process snapshot

Use this chart to check how many process instances are in the different states at the specified time. You can view the data in a bar chart, or in a pie chart.

Processes by period

Use this chart to check the distribution of the number of process instances that reached the specified state during a specified period. Each instance is shown in the time slice in which it reached the specified state. You can view the data in a line, bar, or pie chart

Activity snapshot

Use this chart to check how many activity instances are in the different states at the specified time. You can view the data in a bar chart, or in a pie chart.

Activities by period

Use this chart to check the distribution of the number of activity instances that reached the specified state during a specified period. Each instance is shown in the time slice in which it reached the specified state. You can view the data in a line, bar, or pie chart.

Process and activity reports

The navigation pane links to the following report wizards. The report wizard is indicated by the **New report** icon ().

Process reports

Use process reports to query process instance events. These events describe the state changes of process instances. Use the report wizard to define the data for your reports. You can save and retrieve your report definitions.

Activity reports

With an activity report, you query activity instance events. These events describe state changes of activity instances. Use the report wizard to specify individual reports. You can store and retrieve your report definitions.

Related reference

Configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector

Using the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function is optional, however, before you can use it, you must setup the database and install the applications.

Starting Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is a Web application that can be installed as part of the configuration of the business process container. Before you can start using Business Process Choreographer Explorer from a Web browser, you must have installed the business process container, human task container, and the Business Process Choreographer Explorer application, and the application must be running. The event collector application must be installed and running in order to use the reporting function.

About this task

To start Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps.

Procedure

1. Direct your Web browser to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer URL.

The URL takes the following form. The value of the URL depends on how the virtual host and context root were configured for your installation. In addition, you can extend the URL to go directly to the details of a process, task, or escalation.

`http://app_server_host:port_no/context_root?oid_type=oid`

For example:

`http://hostname:9080/bpc?piid=PI:90030109.7232ed16.d33c67f6.beb30076`

Where:

app_server_host

The network name for the host of the application server that provides the business process application with which you want to work.

port_no

The port number used by Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The port number depends on your system configuration. The default port number is 9080.

context_root

The root directory for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer application on the application server. The default is bpc.

oid_type

Optional. The type of object that you want display. This parameter can take one of the following values:

aiid Activity instance ID

piid Process instance ID

ptid Process template ID

tkiid Task instance ID

tktid Task template ID

esiid Escalation instance ID

oid Optional. The value of the object ID.

2. If security is enabled, you must enter a user ID and password, then click **Login**.

Results

If you specified an object ID, the details page for the object is displayed. If you did not specify an object ID, the initial Business Process Choreographer Explorer page is displayed. By default, the initial page is the My To-dos view.

Customizing Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business Process Choreographer Explorer provides a user interface for administrators to manage business processes and human tasks, and for business users to work with their assigned tasks. Because this is a generic interface, you might want to customize the interface for a specific Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance to address the business needs of user groups that are assigned to this instance. Furthermore, during configuration (or later) users can choose to add the reporting function to create reports on processes and activities and to retrieve statistical information on events.

About this task

You can customize the user interface in various ways.

Customizing the Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface for different user groups

The navigation pane in the default Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface contains a set of links to predefined views. The My To-dos view is the default view of the Views tab that is shown after you log in. If you have one of the system administrator roles of Business Process Choreographer, using **Customize** in the taskbar, you can customize the links that are shown in the navigation pane and the view that your users see when they log in. Additionally, using **Define Views**, you can define views that your users see in the navigation pane with the information, filter and sort criteria, and actions that you want in the views.

Before you begin

To customize the interface, you must be a system administrator of Business Process Choreographer.

About this task

For example, the default user interface for Business Process Choreographer Explorer does not include views for working with business state machines. You can add predefined views to work with process templates and process instances for business state machines.

Or, you might want to offer users that deal with customer orders a different interface to the one that you offer the users dealing with customer service inquiries. You can customize an instance of Business Process Choreographer Explorer so that it meets the workflow patterns of those users who are assigned to the instance.

To customize the default user interface of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps.

Procedure

1. Customize the set of views in the navigation pane and the default login view.
 - a. Click **Customize** in the taskbar.
 - b. In the Customize Navigation Tree and Login View page, select the views to include in and deselect the views to remove from the navigation pane.
 - c. Select the view that your users see when they log into Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

The list contains the views that you selected in the previous step and any customized views that you created from the Search And Define Customized Views page (see step 2).

- d. To save your changes, click **Save**.

After saving your changes, the predefined views appear with icons in front of them in the navigation pane, which allows you to move them up and down in the list.

To return the views for this instance to the default views, click **Restore defaults**. This action resets the navigation pane to the list of predefined views. Customized views in the navigation pane are not affected by this action.

2. Customize the views.

You can specify the information that is shown in the views for this Business Process Choreographer Explorer instance.

- a. Click **Define Views** in the taskbar.
 - b. In the Search And Define Customized Views page, select the type of view that you want to customize, for example, process templates.
 - c. In the Search For ... And Define Customized Views page, where ... is the type of view, for example Process Templates, specify the search criteria.

Use the Process Criteria tab, the Task Criteria tab, and the Property Filters tab to limit the search results, for example, to a specific process template. When defining instance views, you can also use the User Roles tab to limit the search results to users, groups, or roles.

- d. Use the View Properties tab to select the list columns and list properties, such as ordering properties and the results threshold, to include in the view. In addition, in View Settings, you can specify the actions to add to the action bar in the view. To select the actions to be included in the view or search that you are about to run:

- In Available Actions, select an action or actions, and click **Add**.
- To remove an action, select the action in Actions for View, and click **Remove**.
- The sequence of the actions in the action bar can be specified by moving the actions up and down in Actions for View.

If this is a task, process, or activity instance view, click **View Settings** to specify the items that are included in the view for system administrators and system monitors.

- For system administrators and system monitors, you can limit the search result to their own instances:
 - To show all items that match the search criteria in the view, select **All Instances**. All of the items are shown regardless of whether the system administrator has work items for these items.
 - To show only the items that the logged-on user has work items for, select **Personal Instances**.
- e. Enter a display name for the view in the **View Name** field, and click **Save**. Use the Summary tab to check the settings that are currently set for the view.

The new view appears in your navigation pane. Users see the new view when they next log on to Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The views can be moved up or down in the navigation pane.

Defining views for process templates for business state machines

Although a predefined view is provided for the process templates for business state machines, you might want to define your own views for this type of template.

Before you begin

To create customized views, you must have one of the system administrator roles.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Click **Define Views** in the taskbar.
2. In the Search and Define Customized Views page, select **Search For Process Templates And Define Customized Views**.
3. Click **Property Filters** → **Custom Property Filters**.
 - a. Add a custom property with the following settings:
 - In the **Property Name** field, type `generatedBy`.
 - In the **Property Value** field, type `BusinessStateMachine`.
 - b. Click **Add**.
 - c. Add other custom properties as needed.

4. Click **View Properties** → **List Columns**.
 - a. In the List Columns for Custom Properties, add a custom property with the following settings:
 - In the **Property Name** field, type generatedBy.
 - In the **Display Name** field, type a display name for the column, and click **Add**.
 - b. Add other columns to or remove columns from the list of selected columns.
5. Type a display name for the query in the **View Name** field, and click **Save**.

Results

By default, a link to the new view is added to the Process Templates group in the navigation pane. Your users see this view the next time they log in to Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Defining views for process instances for business state machines

Although a predefined view is provided for the process instances for business state machines, you might want to define your own views for this type of process instance.

Before you begin

To create customized views, you must have one of the system administrator roles.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Click **Define Views** in the taskbar.
2. In the Search and Define Customized Views page, select **Search For Process Instances And Define Customized Views**.
3. Click **Custom Property Filters** → **Custom Property Filter**.
 - a. Add a custom property with the following settings:
 - In the **Property Name** field, type generatedBy.
 - In the **Property Value** field, type BusinessStateMachine.
 - b. Click **Add**.
 - c. Add other custom properties as needed.
4. Click **View Properties** → **List Columns**.
 - a. In the List Columns for Query Properties, add the following query properties.
 - To add business state information to the view, type name in the **Property Name** field, DisplayState in the **Variable Name** field, and tns in the **Namespace** field, where tns is the target namespace of the business state machine suffixed by *-process*. Also specify a display name for the column in the **Display Name** field, and click **Add**.
 - To add correlation information to the view, provide the appropriate information in the **Property Name** field, the **Variable Name** field, and the **Namespace** field. These values are derived from the definition of the business state machine. Also provide a display name for the column in the **Display Name** field.

Property Name

The name of the correlation property that you defined for the business state machine.

Variable Name

If the correlation set is initiated by incoming parameters, the variable name has the following format:

operation_name_Input_operation_parameter_name

where *operation_name* is the name of the operation for the transition out of the initial state.

If the correlation set is initiated by outgoing parameters, the variable name has the following format:

operation_name_Output_operation_parameter_name

Namespace

The namespace of the query property, where *tns* is the target namespace of the business state machine suffixed by *-process*.

- b. Add other custom properties or query properties, or add columns to or remove columns from the list of selected columns.
5. Type a name for the query in the **View Name** field, and click **Save**.

Results

By default, a link to the new view is added to the Process Instances group in the navigation pane. Your users see this view the next time they log in to Business Process Choreographer Explorer.


Personalizing the Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface

The navigation pane in the default Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface contains a set of links to predefined views and views that are defined by your system administrator. Independent of your roles, you can add your own views to your navigation pane. For example, you can add a new view to monitor the progress of a specific task or process. You can specify the information shown, the filter and sort criteria, and also the actions provided in the view.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to personalize your user interface.

Procedure

1. In the section of the Views tab navigation pane, for example, Process Templates, where you want to define the new view, click the **New search** icon ().
2. In the Search For ... and Define Personalized Views page for the view, for example, Search For Process Templates And Define Personalized Views, specify the search criteria.

Use the Process Criteria tab, the Task Criteria tab, and the Property Filters tab to limit the search results, for example, to a specific process template. When defining instance views, you can also use the User Roles tab to limit the search results to users, groups, or roles.

3. Use the View Properties tab to select the list columns and list properties, such as ordering properties and the results threshold, to include in the view.

In addition, in View Settings, you can specify the actions to add to the action bar in the view. To select the actions to be included in the view or search that you are about to run:

- In Available Actions, select an action or actions, and click **Add**.
- To remove an action, select the action in Actions for View, and click **Remove**.
- The sequence of the actions in the action bar can be specified by moving the actions up and down in Actions for View.

If this is a task, process, or activity instance view, click **View Settings** to specify the items that are included in the view for system administrators and system monitors. If you are a system administrator and or a system monitor, you can limit the search result to your own instances.

- To show all items that match the search criteria in the view, select **All Instances**. All of the items are shown regardless of whether the system administrator has work items for these items.
 - To show only the items that the logged-on user has work items for, select **Personal Instances**.
4. Enter a display name for the view in the **View Name** field, and click **Save**.
Use the Summary tab to check the settings that are currently set for the view.

Results

The new view appears in your navigation pane.

Changing the appearance of the default Web application

Business Process Choreographer Explorer provides a ready-to-use Web user interface based on JavaServer Pages (JSP) files and JavaServer Faces (JSF) components. A cascading style sheet (CSS) controls how the Web interface is rendered. You can modify the style sheet to adapt the user interface to fit a certain look and feel without writing any new code.

Before you begin

Style sheet modification requires profound knowledge about cascading style sheets.

About this task

You can change the CSS, for example, so that the default interface conforms to guidelines for corporate identity.

Procedure

Modify the style sheet. The default style sheet, `style.css`, contains styles for the elements in the header, the navigation pane, and the content pane.

Related concepts

Business Process Choreographer Explorer user interface

Business Process Choreographer Explorer is a stand-alone Web application that provides a set of administration functions for managing business processes and human tasks and for reporting on process and activity events. The interface consists of a taskbar, a navigation pane, and the workspace.

Styles used in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface

The `style.css` file contains styles that you can change to adapt the look and feel of the default user interface.

The `style.css` file contains styles for the following elements of the default user interface:

- “Banner”
- “Footer”
- “Menu bar” on page 359
- “Login page” on page 359
- “Navigator” on page 359
- “Content panels” on page 359
- “Command bar” on page 360
- “Lists” on page 360
- “Details panel” on page 360
- “Message data” on page 360
- “Tabbed panes” on page 360
- “Search pages” on page 361
- “Error details” on page 361

This file is in the following directory:

`<profile_root>\installedApps\<node_name>\<explorer_instance>\bpcexplorer.war\theme`

Banner

Style name	Description
<code>.banner</code>	The division for the banner.
<code>.banner_left</code>	A division in the banner. It is used to embed the title image of the application.
<code>.banner_right</code>	A division in the banner. You can use it, for example, to display further logos.

Footer

Style name	Description
<code>.footer</code>	The division for the footer.
<code>.footer_left</code>	A division in the footer, for example, you can use it to display the company logo for the application.
<code>.footer_right</code>	A division in the footer, for example, you can use it to display further logos.

Menu bar

Style name	Description
.menubar	The JSF subview.
.menuContainer	The container panel including the menu items, for example, labels, and links.
.menuItem	An item on the menu bar.

Login page

Style name	Description
.loginPanel	The panel containing the login form.
.loginTitle	The title on the form.
.loginText	The instructional text.
.loginForm	The form that contains the input controls.
.loginValues	The table that determines the layout of the controls.
.loginField	The labels used for the login fields, for example, Name or Password.
.loginValue	The text input field.

Navigator

Style name	Description
.pageBodyNavigator	The area that contains the navigator.
.navigator	JSF subview for navigator which contains the links to the lists.
.navigatorTitle	The title for each navigator box.
.taskNavigatorTitle	A class of titles for navigation boxes. They are used to distinguish between links to lists of business process objects and human task objects.
.navigatorFrame	The division for each navigator box, for example, to draw a border.
.navigatorLink	A link in the navigator box.
.expanded	Used when the navigator boxes are expanded.
.collapsed	Used when the navigator boxes are collapsed.

Content panels

Style name	Description
.pageBodyContent	The area that contains the content.
.panelContainer	The division panel that contains the list, details or messages.
.panelTitle	The title for the displayed content, for example, My To-dos.
.panelHelp	The division container that contains the help text and the icon.
.panelGroup	The division container that contains the command bar and list, details or message.

Command bar

Style name	Description
.commandbar	The division container around the command-bar area.
.button	The style that is used for buttons in the command bar.

Lists

Style name	Description
.list	The table that contains the rows.
.listHeader	The style used in the header row of the list.
.ascending	Style for the list header class when the list is sorted by this column in ascending order.
.descending	Style for the list header class when the list is sorted by this column in descending order.
.unsorted	Style for the list header class when the list is not sorted by this column.

Details panel

Style name	Description
.details	The division container around a details panel.
.detailsProperty	The label for a property name.
.detailsValue	The text for a property value.

Message data

Style name	Description
.messageData	The division container around a message.
.messageDataButton	Button style for Add and Remove buttons in the message form.
.messageDataOutput	For rendering read-only text.
.messageDataValidInput	For message values that are valid.
.messageDataInvalidInput	For message values that are not valid.

Tabbed panes

Style name	Description
.tabbedPane	The division container around all of the tabbed panes.
.tabHeader	The tab header of a tabbed pane.
.selectedTab	The active tab header.
.tab	The inactive tab headers.
.tabPane	The division container that encloses a tabbed pane.
.tabbedPaneNested	The division container around nested tabbed panes used on the search pages.

Style name	Description
.tabHeaderSimple	The tab header of a nested tabbed pane.
tabHeaderProcess	The tab header of a nested tabbed pane for process filters.
.tabHeaderTask	The tab header of a nested tabbed pane for task filters.
.tabPaneSimple	The division container that encloses a nested tabbed pane.

Search pages

Style name	Description
.searchPane	The tabbed pane for a search panel. See also tabbed panes.
.searchPanelFilter	The table container for a search form.
.searchLabel	The label for a search form control.
.summary	The container that encloses the search summary pane.
.summaryTitle	The common style for all titles on the search summary pane.
.summaryTitleProcess	A style for the title of process related sections on the search summary pane.
.summaryTitleTask	A style for the title of task related sections on the search summary pane.

Error details

Style name	Description
.errorPage	The tabbed pane for an error page.
.errorLink	Styles uses to render the button links on a page.
.errorDetails	Tabbed pane with error details.
.errorDetailsStack	Tabbed pane with an exception stack.
.errorDetailsMessage	Text style for error message.

Chapter 8. Administering business processes and human tasks

Business processes and human tasks are deployed and installed as part of an enterprise application. You can use the administrative console or the administrative commands to administer process templates and task templates. Use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with process instances and task instances and to report on business processes and human tasks.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Administering process templates and process instances

Use the administrative console or the administrative commands to administer process templates. Use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with process instances.

About this task

Process templates define business processes within an enterprise application. When an enterprise application that contains process templates is installed, deployed, and started, the process templates are put into the started state. You can use the administrative console or the administrative commands to stop and start process templates. The process templates that are started are shown in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

A process instance can be a long-running process or a microflow. Use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to display information about process templates and process instances, or act on process instances. These actions can be, for example, starting process instances; for long-running processes other process life cycle actions, such as suspending, resuming, or terminating process instances; or repairing activities.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Business process administration—frequently asked questions

Answers to a set of frequently asked questions about administering business processes.

- “What happens if a process template is in the started state, but the application it belongs to is in the stopped state?” on page 364
- “How do I stop new process instances being created?” on page 364
- “What happens to running instances when a newer process template becomes valid?” on page 364

- “What happens to a running instance if the template it was created from is stopped?”
- “How can I tell if any process instances are still running?”
- “Why can’t I stop a business process application if it has any process instances?”

What happens if a process template is in the started state, but the application it belongs to is in the stopped state?

If a currently valid process template is in the started state, but the application is in the stopped state, no new process instances are created from the template. Existing process instances cannot be navigated while the application is in the stopped state.

How do I stop new process instances being created?

Using the administrative console, select a process template, and click **Stop**. This action puts the process template into the stopped state, and no more instances are created from the template. After the template stops, any attempts to create a process instance from the template result in an `EngineProcessModelStoppedException` error.

What happens to running instances when a newer process template becomes valid?

If a process template is no longer valid, this fact has no effect on running instances that were instantiated from the template. Existing process instances continue to run to completion. Old and new instances run in parallel until all of the old instances have finished, or until they have been terminated.

What happens to a running instance if the template it was created from is stopped?

Changing the state of a process template to ‘stopped’ only stops new instances being created. Existing process instances continue running until completion in an orderly way.

How can I tell if any process instances are still running?

Log on to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer as a process administrator, and go to the Process Instances Administered By Me page. This page displays any running process instances. If necessary, you can terminate and delete these process instances.

Why can’t I stop a business process application if it has any process instances?

For a process instance to run, its corresponding application must also be running. If the application is stopped, the navigation of the process instance cannot continue. For this reason, you can only stop a business process application if it has no process instances.

Stopping and starting process templates with the administrative console

You can use the administrative console to start and stop each installed process template individually.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, verify that your user ID has operator authorization.
- The application server, on which the process templates are to be stopped or started, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.

About this task

The following steps describe how to use the administrative console to stop and start process templates.

Procedure

1. Select the module that you want to manage.
In the navigation pane of the administrative console, click **Applications** → **SCA modules** → *module_name* .
2. In the Configuration page for the SCA module under **Additional Properties**, click **Business processes**, and then a process template.
3. Stop the process template.
Existing instances of the process templates continue to run until they end normally. However, you cannot create process instances from a stopped template.
4. Start the process template that is in the stopped state.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Stopping and starting process templates with administrative scripts

Administrative scripts provide an alternative to the administrative console for stopping and starting process templates. Use the administrative scripts to stop all process templates within an enterprise application.

Before you begin

Before you begin this procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you need to pass the following additional parameters to the script invocations:
`-user <userID> -password <password>`
- The application server, on which the process templates are to be stopped or started, must be running. That is, the `-conntype none` option of `wsadmin` cannot be used, because a server connection is required.

About this task

The following steps describe how to use the administrative scripts to stop and start process templates.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory that contains the administration scripts.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Stop the process template.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -stop application_name
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -stop application_name
```

Where *application_name* is the name of the application to which the template belongs.

Existing instances of the process templates continue to run until they end normally. When the application stops, you cannot create process instances from the stopped templates.

3. Start the process template.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -start application_name
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -start application_name
```

The process template starts. You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to start process instances from the process template.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Managing the process life cycle

After a process starts, it goes through various states until it ends. As a process administrator, you can take various actions on a process throughout its life cycle.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Starting a new process instance

You can start a new process instance from any of the process templates that you are authorized to use.

About this task

All of the installed and started process templates with the newest valid from date are shown in the list of process templates in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. To start a new process instance, complete the following steps.

Procedure

1. Display the process templates that you are authorized to use.
Click **Process Templates** under Process Templates in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the process template and click **Start Instance**.
This action displays the Process Input Message page.
If the process has more than one operation, this action displays a page that contains all of the available operations. Select the operation that is to start the process instance.
3. Provide the input data to start the process instance.
If the process is a long-running process, you can type in a process instance name. If you do not specify a name, a system-generated name is assigned to the new process instance.
Complete the input for the process input message.
4. To start the process, click **Submit**.

Results

The process instance is started. If the business process contains an activity that requires human interaction, a task is generated that can be claimed by any of the potential owners. If you are one of these potential owners, this task appears in the list on the My To-dos page.

If the process instance is a microflow, a process output message is displayed automatically in the Web browser. For long-running processes that are not automatically deleted after the process completes, a process output message is available on the process instance view. To see the output message, select the instance in a process list in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and open the process instance view. Not all processes have output messages, for example, if the process implements a one-way operation, an output message is not available.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Monitoring the progress of a process instance

You can monitor the progress of a process instance to determine whether you need to take action so that the process can run to completion.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to monitor the progress of a process instance.

Procedure

1. Display a list of process instances.
For example, click **Administered By Me** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the process instance and click **View Process State**.
The Process State page is displayed. This page shows the activities, the links including the transition and join conditions for the links, the fault handlers, the compensation handlers, and the event handlers that are defined for the process. Activities are color coded in the diagram, depending on their state. All states

have an associated icon. For example, completed activities are indicated by a check mark. For more information, see the online help for the page.

3. To act on an activity, click the activity, and select **Show Activity Details**.

Click an activity in the process state view to open a context menu. In this menu, you can display the activity details, skip the activity (mark an activity for skipping), or select it as the source for a jump to a different activity in the process. You can also repair switch activities that failed due to a problem with the evaluation of a case condition.

The available actions are displayed. Select the action of your choice.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Viewing and modifying the variables of an activity

View and modify the activity variables of a process instance using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Before you begin

To see all of the variables of an activity, you need at least scope reader or process reader authority. To modify a variable you need scope administrator or process administrator authority.

About this task

You can access all variables that are visible to an activity and modify the variable values.

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Process Instance page. Do one of the following:
 - Click **View Process State**. Then click the relevant activity in the process state diagram, and click **Show Activity Variables**. You see the variables that are visible for the selected activity. Use the list to select a different activity in this process instance and display the visible variables.
 - Click **Activity Variables**. Use the list to select an activity in this process instance and to display the visible variables.
 - Click **Skip Activities**. Select an activity, and then click **Set Variables**. You see the variables that are visible for the selected activity. Use the list to select a different activity in this process instance and to display the visible variables.
2. Select a variable name to see the actual value.
3. Modify the value, and click **Save** to update the value settings of the variable.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Suspending and resuming process instances

You can suspend a long-running, top-level process instance. You might want to do this, for example, so that you can configure access to a back-end system that is

used later in the process, or to fix a problem that is causing the process instance to fail. When the prerequisites for the process are met, you can resume the process instance.

Before you begin

To suspend and resume process instances, you must have process administrator authorization.

To suspend a process instance, the process instance must be in either the running or failing state. To resume a process, the process instance must be in the suspended state.

About this task

To suspend or resume a process instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Display a list of process instances.

For example, click **Administered By Me** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.

2. Suspend the process.

Select the check box next to the process instance and click **Suspend**.

3. Choose one of the options to suspend the process instance.

- To suspend the process until it is manually resumed, select **Suspend**.
- To suspend the process until a certain time, select **Suspend process until**, and specify the date and time.
- To suspend the process for a period of time, select **Suspend process for**, and specify the duration.

4. To confirm your selection, click **Submit**.

This action suspends the specified top-level process instance. The process instance is put into the suspended state. Subprocesses with the autonomy attribute set to `child` are also suspended if they are in the running, failing, terminating, or compensating state. However, you can still complete any active activities and tasks that belong to the process instance.

What to do next

To resume a process instance that is in the suspended state, select the process instance and click **Resume**. The process instance and its subprocess are put into the states they had before they were suspended, for example, running. The process instance and its subprocesses resume.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Terminating process instances

You might want to terminate a process instance, for example, if the work or documents it represents are no longer needed, if no one is available to complete the process instance, if you have encountered problems with the process template and it needs to be redesigned, and so on.

Before you begin

To terminate a process instance, you must have process administrator authorization.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to terminate a process instance. If compensation is defined for the business process model, you can choose to terminate the process instance with compensation.

Procedure

1. Display the process instances that you can administer.
Click **Administered By Me** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the process instance that you want to stop.
 - To terminate the process instance with compensation, click **Compensate**.
This action terminates the process instance and starts compensation processing.
 - To terminate the process instance without compensation, click **Terminate**.
This action stops the process instance immediately without waiting for any outstanding activities or tasks.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Deleting process instances

Process templates can be modeled so that process instances are not automatically deleted when they complete. You can explicitly delete these process instances after they complete.

Before you begin

To delete a process instance, you must have process administrator authorization. The process instance must be in the finished, failed, terminated, or compensated state.

About this task

Completed processes instances are automatically deleted from the Business Process Choreographer database if the corresponding property is set for the process template in the process model.

You might want to keep process instances in your database, for example, to query data from process instances that are not written to the audit log, or if you want to defer the deletion of processes to off-peak times. However, old process instance data that is no longer needed can impact disk space and performance. Therefore, you should regularly delete process instance data that you no longer need or want to maintain. Make sure that you run this maintenance task at off-peak times.

You can delete completed process instances using either Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to delete individual process instances, or the `deleteCompletedProcessInstances` administrative script to delete several process instances at once.

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to delete a process instance.

Procedure

1. Display the process instances that you administer.
Click **Administered By Me** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the process instance that you want to delete and click **Delete**.

Results

This action deletes the selected process instance from the database.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Repairing processes and activities

If the process runs into problems, you can analyze the process and then repair the activities.

About this task

Business Process Choreographer Explorer provides various views for the process administrator to monitor the processes that are currently running.

The failure behavior of your process is controlled by the **Continue On Error** setting of the process template. If **Continue On Error** is set to no, any unexpected failure causes the affected activity to go to the stopped state.

If **Continue On Error** is set to yes (or if it is not set because your process was created with a WebSphere Integration Developer version earlier than 6.1.2) and an unexpected failure occurs, the default fault handler is invoked and ultimately causes the process to end in a failed state. The latter happens because with an unexpected failure there is no appropriate fault handler in the directly surrounding scope. When there is no explicit fault handler defined for the current fault and the default fault handler is invoked, it terminates the current scope and propagates the fault to the surrounding scope. Ultimately, this will cause the process to end in the failed state.

For invoke, Java snippet, human task, and custom activities you can model a dedicated **Continue On Error** setting and override the process setting. However, if you leave the default value the same as for the process, you can repair failure situations for these activity types. The setting at the activity level controls only the behavior of faults that are generated by the implementation of the activity. Faults that occur during the evaluation of the join condition, or during the evaluation of the transition condition of outgoing links are still controlled by the setting at the process level. Therefore, for example, an invoke activity can go to the stopped state

(if, for example, the evaluation of its join condition failed) even if the **Continue On Error** setting at the activity level is set to yes.

If your activity stops, the process remains in the running state. You then have several options in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to repair the process and continue navigation.

- To view process instances with activities in the failed state, define your own process instance search. Or, click **Failed Activities** under **Activity Instances** in the navigation pane, and then click the relevant process instance of the failed activity.
- To view process instances with activities in the stopped state, click **Critical Processes** under Process Instances in the navigation pane.
- To monitor the progress of a specific process instance, click **View Process State** in any view that displays a list of process instances.

What to do next

You can now take action to repair the pending activities.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Analyzing the cause of a failed process

Check information about an exception which caused a process to fail. If the process is in the failed state, you cannot repair the instance itself but you might be able to fix the cause of the problem to prevent the failure of future instances.

Before you begin

The process must be in the failed state.

About this task

Any exception that occurs during process navigation which is not one of the faults defined for the process can lead to a failed process.

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Process Instance page of the process.
For example, define a new process instance search to look for processes in the failed state, and click **Details** for the details.
2. Select the **Error Details** tab to see more information about the failure of your process.
3. Repair the cause of the failure to avoid further failures of instances of this process template.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Modifying the variables of a stopped activity

Check the variables of an activity, and repair the process variables if they caused the activity to stop.

Before you begin

The process must be in the running state. To see the variables of an activity that are visible to it, you need at least scope reader or process reader authority. To modify a variable you need scope administrator or process administrator authority.

About this task

During the lifetime of a process, problems can occur due to incorrect or missing values in the variables that control the process behavior. You can access all variables that are visible to an activity and repair the process by modifying the variable values. After this, you can continue process navigation.

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Process Instance page.
For example, on the Critical Processes page, click the name of a process instance. On the Process Instance page, click the **Activities** tab, and click the name of the stopped activity.
2. Click the **Variables** button to get a list of all of the variables that are visible to the activity.
3. Select a single variable name to see the actual value.
4. Modify the value, and click **Save** to update the value settings of a single variable.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Restarting activities

You can restart an activity using new input data, for example, if you repaired the variables of an activity.

Before you begin

Generally, you can restart an activity if it is in the stopped state and the stopReason is STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED or STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED. Depending on the type of activity, you can restart the activity if it is in a state other than the stopped state. For more information on restarting activities in other states, see the related information on state transitions diagrams for activities.

About this task

To restart an activity, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Activity page for the activity and click **Restart**.
For example, on the Process Instances Administered By Me page, click the name of a process instance. On the Process Instance page, click the **Activities** tab, and click the name of the activity you want to restart.
2. Depending on the **Stop Reason** and the activity kind, you can specify the input data that is needed to start the activity again.
You can, optionally, specify that the process **Continue on Error** setting is overridden for this activity. Deselect **Continue on Error** if you want the activity to stop again if an error occurs when the activity restarts.
3. If an expiration time is set for the activity, specify the expiration behavior for the restarted activity.
4. Click **Restart**.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Forcing the completion of activities

If you are aware that an activity is not going to complete in a timely manner, for example, because the invoked service is no longer available, you can force the completion of the activity so that the process flow can continue. You might also want to force the completion of an activity if you cannot repair the cause of the failure. For example, if the evaluation of a wait expression in a wait activity repeatedly causes the activity to stop, you might want to force the activity to complete.

Before you begin

Generally, you can force an activity to complete if it is in the stopped state and the stopReason is `STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED`, `STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED`, or `STOP_REASON_EXIT_CONDITION_FALSE`. Depending on the activity kind a force complete is also available in other states. For more information on forcing the completion of activities in other states, see the related information on state transitions diagrams for activities.

About this task

To force the completion of an activity, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Activity page for the activity, and click **Force Complete**.
2. Specify the data that is needed to complete the activity.
You can only provide data for activities that have output variables, that is, invoke, human task, pick, and receive activities.

3. Click **Force Complete** again.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Repairing stopped activities

Due to the dynamic quality of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can manually intervene in the process navigation. You can repair activities that stopped because problems occurred, for example, during an expression evaluation.

Before you begin

An activity stopped because a transition condition could not be evaluated. The activity must be in the stopped state and the **stopReason** must be `STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED`. This can be seen on the **Error Details** tab for the activity.

Alternatively, you can also use this procedure if a switch activity stopped with the **stopReason** `STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED`.

About this task

Usually the administrator tries to force a retry of the activity or to force the completion of the activity. For activity failures that cannot be repaired with these actions, you can override the navigation of the activity using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. Furthermore, you can jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity, which is described in the topic on jumping activities. Also, you might want to use a skip activity option to mark a failing activity to be skipped in subsequent process instances.

To repair a stopped activity, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. If an activity stopped because the **stopReason** is `STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED`, do the following:
 - a. In the Views tab, navigate to the Activity page for the activity, and click **Force Navigation**.
 - b. In the dialog, select the names of the links that are to be followed during navigation. The displayed names of the links are the names that were set in WebSphere Integration Developer during the modeling of the process. You can select an arbitrary number of links.
 - c. Click **Submit** to force the activity navigation.
2. If a switch activity stopped because the **stopReason** is `STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED`, do the following:
 - a. In the Views tab, navigate to the Activity page for the activity, and click **Force Case Navigation**.
 - b. In the dialog, select the branch that is to be followed during the navigation. The branches are enumerated according to their position in the model. You can only select one branch.
 - c. Click **Submit** to force the case navigation.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Related tasks

Skipping activities

You can skip an activity so that it is not included in the processing of the process instance.

Jumping activities

You can jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity of the process instance. You can select to complete the source activity before you jump to a target activity.

Transferring the ownership of process instances

You can transfer the ownership of a process instance by having a person with process administrator authorization take ownership of the process instance. You might want to do this, for example, in situations where the process starter is no longer with the company.

Before you begin

To transfer the ownership of a process instance, a process instance administrator or the system administrator for business processes claims ownership of the process instance. The process instance for which process ownership is claimed can be in any state.

About this task

To claim the ownership of a process instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Display a list of process instances.
For example, click **Administered By Me** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Claim ownership of the process.
Select the check box next to the process instance or instances, and click **Claim Ownership**.

Results

You now have ownership of the process instance, are the process starter, and have process administrator rights for the process instance.

Related tasks

Transferring work items for which you are the starter, originator, or administrator of the task

You might need to change a work assignment after work begins on the task. For example, you might want to transfer a work item to another user if the task owner is on vacation and the task must be completed before this person returns. The way in which you can transfer a work item depends on the role that you have and the state of the task.

Transferring tasks that you own

If you are the owner of a task, you might need to transfer the task to another user, for example, if someone else needs to provide information to complete the task.

Jumping activities

You can jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity of the process instance. You can select to complete the source activity before you jump to a target activity.

About this task

To jump from one activity to another, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Process State page of the process instance.
2. Click the relevant activity in the process state diagram.

Note that jump actions are only available if the **Detail level** slider of the process state diagram is at the most detailed level.

3. To go to another activity, click **Jump to Another Activity**.

This option only available for activities in the running state (for example, ready, claimed, running, stopped, or waiting).

The process state diagram is displayed again, and only activities that qualify as target activities are selectable. For information on target activities, refer to the related information on activity jump targets.

4. Select a target activity to choose an action to perform.

The actions that are available depend on the source activity.

5. Choose an action to perform.

- To complete the source activity before you jump to the target activity, click **Complete Source Activity and Jump**.

To perform this action, you must be a process administrator or a scope administrator of the scope or a parent scope to which the source and target activities belong.

The **Complete Source Activity and Jump** option is only available for target activities if the source activity is a human task activity in the claimed state. This option completes the source activity before you jump to a target activity.

- To force the completion of the source activity before you jump to the target activity, click **Force Complete Source Activity and Jump**. Then click **Force Complete and Jump** to complete the activity with the data that you provide.

To perform the **Force Complete Source Activity and Jump** action, you must be a process administrator or a scope administrator of the scope or a parent scope to which the source and target activities belong.

The **Force Complete Source Activity and Jump** option is available for target activities if the source activity is a human task activity in the ready, claimed,

or stopped state. It is also available for an invoke activity in the running or the stopped state, a receive or a wait activity in the waiting or the stopped state, and all other basic activities in the stopped state. This option forces the completion of the source activity before you jump to a target activity.

- To skip the activity and jump to another activity, click **Skip Source Activity and Jump**.
- Click **Cancel Jump** to cancel the jump action.

Related concepts

Activity jump targets

When you jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity of the process instance using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can select the target activity from a list of possible target activities. This topic describes the restrictions that apply when you select an activity that serves as a target activity when you perform a jump action.

Related tasks

Repairing stopped activities

Due to the dynamic quality of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can manually intervene in the process navigation. You can repair activities that stopped because problems occurred, for example, during an expression evaluation.

Activity jump targets:

When you jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity of the process instance using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can select the target activity from a list of possible target activities. This topic describes the restrictions that apply when you select an activity that serves as a target activity when you perform a jump action.

During the navigation of a process instance, you can only jump from an activity to activities that are directly nested either in the same sequence or cyclic flow. Additionally, you can jump within a flow if the source and target activity are connected by a series of flow links and there are no other links connected to any of the activities in between.

- You can perform activity jumps within sequence activities. This means that the source activity and target activity of the jump must be in the same sequence and both are not nested in other structured activities.
- You can perform activity jumps within flow activities. In this case, the source activity and target activity of the jump can be directly nested in a flow activity and there must be only one path in the control flow from source to target.
- Additionally, you can jump outside of a scope if there is only one activity contained in the scope. For example, it is possible to jump from an invoke activity with an attached handler.
- You can also perform activity jumps within cyclic flows, whereby the source activity and target activity of the jump are also directly nested in the cyclic flow and are not nested in other structured activities.

Related tasks

Jumping activities

You can jump from one activity of a process instance to another activity of the process instance. You can select to complete the source activity before you jump to a target activity.

Skipping activities

You can skip an activity so that it is not included in the processing of the process instance.

About this task

To mark an activity to be skipped, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Process State page of the process instance.
2. Click the relevant activity in the process state diagram.
Note that skip and jump actions are only available if the **Detail level** slider of the process state diagram is at the most detailed level.
3. Perform one of these skip actions.

- Click **Skip Activity** to mark this activity to be skipped. The activity is then indicated by the skip requested icon . Activities that are skipped are indicated by the skipped icon .

To perform this action, you must be a process administrator or a scope administrator of the scope or a parent scope to which the source and target activities belong.

The **Skip Activity** action is available for any activity state. An activity that is in an end state is marked to be skipped but the state of the activity remains unchanged until it is reached again by the navigation. Therefore, if an activity is already in an end state, the activity is skipped as soon as it is activated again.

- To unmark the activity to be skipped, click **Cancel Skip**. This cancels a previously selected skip activity request.
- Alternatively, to skip the activity and jump to another activity, click **Jump to Another Activity**.

The diagram is displayed again, and only activities that qualify as target activities are selectable. Note that the options available depend on the source activity.

To skip the activity and jump to another activity, click **Skip Source Activity and Jump**.

Related tasks

Repairing stopped activities

Due to the dynamic quality of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can manually intervene in the process navigation. You can repair activities that stopped because problems occurred, for example, during an expression evaluation.

Administering compensation for microflows

When a microflow runs, it can encounter problems. For these situations, compensation might have been defined for the process in the process model. Compensation allows you to undo previous completed steps, for example, to reset

data and states so that you can recover from these problems. Undo actions are only necessary for activities that perform actions which do not participate in the transaction of the microflow.

Before you begin

For microflows to be compensated, the compensation service must be started in the administrative console.

About this task

If a compensation action for a microflow fails, the process administrator must intervene to resolve the problem.

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to administer failed compensation actions.

Procedure

1. Display a list of the compensation actions that failed.

Click **Failed Compensations** under Process Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.

The Failed Compensations page is displayed. This page contains information about why the named compensation action failed. This information can help you to decide what actions to take to correct the failed compensation.

2. Select the check box next to the activity and then click one of the available actions.

The following administrative actions are available:

Skip Skips the current compensating action and continues with compensating the microflow. This action might result in a non-compensated activity.

Retry If you have taken action to correct the failed compensation action, click **Retry** to try the compensation action again.

Stop Stops the compensation processing.

Related concepts

Business processes overview

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked to achieve a business goal.

Administering task templates and task instances

Use the administrative console or the administrative commands to administer task templates. Use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with task instances.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

Stopping and starting task templates with the administrative console

Use the administrative console to start and stop each installed task template individually.

Before you begin

If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, verify that user ID has operator authorization.

About this task

Task templates define Service Component Architecture (SCA) services that are represented as stand-alone tasks within an enterprise application. When an enterprise application that contains task templates is installed, deployed, and started, the task templates are put into the start state.

Procedure

1. Select the module that you want to manage.
In the navigation pane of the administrative console, click **Applications** → **SCA modules** → *module_name* .
2. In the Configuration page for the SCA module under **Additional Properties**, click **Human tasks**, and then select the task templates.
3. To stop the task templates, click **Stop**.
4. To start the task templates, click **Start**.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Stopping and starting task templates with the administrative scripts

Administrative scripts provide an alternative to the administrative console for stopping and starting task templates. Use the administrative scripts to stop all task templates within an enterprise application.

Before you begin

If WebSphere administrative security is enabled, you need to pass the following additional parameters to the script invocations:

```
-user <userID> -password <password>
```

About this task

Task templates define Service Component Architecture (SCA) services that are represented as stand-alone tasks within an enterprise application. When an enterprise application that contains task templates is installed, deployed, and started, the task templates are put into the start state.

Procedure

1. Change to the Business Process Choreographer subdirectory that contains the administration scripts.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

2. Stop the task template.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -stop application_name
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -stop application_name
```

Where *application_name* is the name of the application to which the template belongs. Existing instances of the task template continue to run until they end normally.

3. Start the task template.

On Windows systems, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -start application_name
```

On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        -start application_name
```

The task template starts. You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to work with task instances associated with the task template.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Creating and starting a task instance

You can create and start a task instance from any of the task templates that you are authorized to use.

About this task

All of the installed and started task templates with the newest valid from date are shown in the list of task templates in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. To create and start a task instance from a task template, complete the following steps.

Procedure

1. Display the task templates that you are authorized to use.

Click **My Task Templates** under Task Templates in the Views tab navigation pane.

2. Select the check box next to the task template and click **Start Instance**.
This action displays the Task Input Message page.
3. Provide the input data to start the task instance.
4. To start the task instance, click **Submit**.

Results

The task instance is ready to be worked on.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

Working on your tasks

To work on a task, you must claim the task and then perform the actions that are needed to complete it.

About this task

You can claim a task that is in the ready state if you are a potential owner or the administrator of that task. If you claim a task, you become the owner of that task and are responsible for completing it.

Tasks for which you have the role of reader or editor also appear on your list of tasks.

To claim and complete a task with Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps.

Procedure

1. Display the tasks that have been assigned to you.
In the Views tab, click **Task Instances** → **My To-dos**.
This action displays the My To-dos page, which lists the tasks that have been assigned to you.
2. Claim the task on which you want to work.
Select the check box next to the task and click **Work on**.
This action displays the Task Message page.
3. Provide the information to complete the task.
If you need to interrupt your work, for example, because you need more information from a co-worker to complete the task, click **Save** to save the changes you made.
4. Click **Complete** to complete the task with the information that you provide.

Results

The task that you completed is in the finished state. If you leave the task without completing it, the task remains in the claimed state.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

Suspending and resuming task instances

You can suspend task instances using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. You might want to do this, for example, to fix a problem that is causing the task instance to fail. When the prerequisites for the task are met, you can resume running the task instance.

Before you begin

To suspend and resume a task instances, you must have task administrator authorization.

To suspend a task instance, the task instance must be in either the running or failing state. To resume a task, the task instance must be in the suspended state.

Suspending tasks is only supported for human tasks that use the WebSphere Application Server simple calendar.

About this task

To suspend a task instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Display the task instances that you can administer.
Click **Administered By Me** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. On the Task Instance page, click **Suspend**.
3. Choose one of the options to suspend the task instance.
 - To suspend the task until it is manually resumed, select **Suspend**.
 - To suspend the task until a certain time, select **Suspend task until**, and specify the date and time.
 - To suspend the task for a period of time, select **Suspend task for**, and specify the duration.
4. To confirm your selection, click **Submit**. The task instance is put into the suspended state.

What to do next

To resume a task instance that is in the suspended state, click **Resume**.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Restarting task instances

You can restart task instances using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. You might want to do this, for example, for a human task that is already running but not progressing as expected, or for a task that has reached an unexpected or undesired end state, such as failed or expired. Additionally, you can change the input message values of tasks before you restart them. You can restart a task that you want to reuse in order to initiate the same work again. This could be a human task that has finished, for example an invocation task or a collaboration task. Typically, you would restart this task with a changed input message.

Before you begin

The task instance can be a collaboration, invocation, or to-do task. The task instance can be in any state except inactive. Additionally:

- An invocation task cannot be in the running state.
- A to-do task cannot be in an end state, that is, it cannot be finished, failed, terminated, or expired. If the to-do task is forwarded, then the follow-on task cannot be in an end state.
- An inline to-do task cannot be in the ready state.

The task instance can be escalated, suspended, or waiting for subtasks. The caller must be the starter, originator, or an administrator of the task instance.

Restarting the task instance causes the people resolution to be newly performed and all timers to be reset. Any subtasks or follow-on tasks are deleted. Any escalations are cancelled and reset into the inactive state. For invocation tasks, the logged-on user becomes the starter of the restarted task instance.

About this task

To restart a task instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the Views tab, navigate to the Task page for the task, and click **Restart**.
For example, on the Task Instances Administered By Me page, select the check box for the task instance, and click **Restart**.
2. Click **Restart** to start the task again with the information you provide.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Managing priorities of human tasks

You can use the priorities of human tasks to filter for tasks, and to sort your list of tasks.

About this task

To change the priority of a task instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Display a list of task instances.
For example, click **My To-dos** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the task instance, and click **Change Priority**.
3. Enter a value, and click **Submit**.
The priority of the task instance is set to the new value.

What to do next

To sort the list of tasks by priority, click the arrows in the table header.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Managing work assignments

After a task has started, you might need to manage work assignments for the task, for example, to better distribute the work load over the members of a work group.

About this task

A *work item* is the assignment of a business entity, such as a task or a process instance, to a person or a group of people for a particular reason. The assignment reason allows a person to play various roles in the business process scenario, for example, potential owner, editor, or administrator.

A task instance can have several work items associated with it because different people can have different roles. For example, John, Sarah, and Mike are all potential owners of a task instance and Anne is the administrator; work items are generated for all four people. John, Sarah, and Mike see only their own work items as tasks on their list of tasks. Because Anne is the administrator, she gets her own work item for the task and she can manage the work items generated for John, Sarah, and Mike.

Sometimes, you might need to change a task assignment after a task has been started, for example, to transfer a work item from the original owner to someone else, or specify absence settings for the time you are away. You might also need to create additional work items or delete work items that are not needed anymore.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

Transferring tasks that you own

If you are the owner of a task, you might need to transfer the task to another user, for example, if someone else needs to provide information to complete the task.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to transfer a task that you own.

Procedure

1. Display the tasks that you own.
Click **My To-dos** in the Task Instances group of the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the task that you want to transfer and click **Transfer**.
3. Transfer the task.
In the **New Owner** field, specify the user ID of the new task owner, and click **Transfer**. You can transfer the task only to another potential owner of the task or the task administrator.

Results

The transferred task appears on the list of tasks belonging to the new task owner.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Specifying absence settings

If you intend to be away from the office for a certain time, specify a substitute for your tasks.

Specifying absence settings for users

If users are prevented from working on their tasks, for example, if they are on sick leave, specify a substitute for the user's tasks.

Transferring the ownership of process instances

You can transfer the ownership of a process instance by having a person with process administrator authorization take ownership of the process instance. You might want to do this, for example, in situations where the process starter is no longer with the company.

Transferring work items for which you are the starter, originator, or administrator of the task

You might need to change a work assignment after work begins on the task. For example, you might want to transfer a work item to another user if the task owner is on vacation and the task must be completed before this person returns. The way in which you can transfer a work item depends on the role that you have and the state of the task.

Before you begin

To transfer a work item you must have one of the following roles, and according to the assignment reason, the task must be in one of the following states.

Role	Assignment reason	Task state	Work items can be transferred to the following user roles:
Owner	Owner	Claimed	Potential owner, administrator.
Starter	Starter	Expired, terminated, finished, failed, or running	Potential starter, administrator.
Originator	Originator	Any task state	Potential instance creator, administrator.
Originator	Potential starter	Inactive	Any user role.
Administrator	Starter	Expired, terminated, finished, failed, or running	Starter.
Administrator	Potential starter	Inactive	Potential starter.
Administrator	Reader or administrator	In any but in the inactive state	Reader, administrator.
Administrator	Potential owner or editor	Ready, or claimed	Potential owner, or editor.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to transfer a work item.

Procedure

1. Display the task instances that you can administer.
Click **Administered By Me** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Display the work items for a task instance.
In the Task Instances Administered By Me page, select the check box next to the task instance and click **Work Items**.
3. Transfer the work item.
 - a. In the **New Owner** field, specify the user ID of the new work-item owner.
 - b. Select one or more work items and click **Transfer**.

Results

The transferred work item with the new work-item owner appears in the list of work items.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Specifying absence settings for users

If users are prevented from working on their tasks, for example, if they are on sick leave, specify a substitute for the user's tasks.

Transferring the ownership of process instances

You can transfer the ownership of a process instance by having a person with process administrator authorization take ownership of the process instance. You might want to do this, for example, in situations where the process starter is no longer with the company.

Specifying absence settings

If you intend to be away from the office for a certain time, specify a substitute for your tasks.

Before you begin

To perform this task, the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider is required for substitution. You must also have substitution enabled for the Human Task Manager in Business Process Choreographer. The **My Substitutes** option is then visible in the taskbar.

About this task

Depending on the applied substitution policy, one or more than one substitute can receive your work assignments while you are absent. The substitution policy can differ for each task template. Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the taskbar, click **My Substitutes**.

2. On the My Substitutes page, specify the absence settings, and click **Save**.
 - a. To enable your absence settings, select the **I am absent** check box.
 - b. In the **My substitutes** field, enter the user ID of your substitute, and click **Add**.
 - c. Optional: Add further substitutes as needed. Depending on the applied substitution policy, one or more than one substitute can receive your work assignments while you are absent. The substitution policy can differ for each task templates.
 - d. Optional: To remove a substitute from the list, select the user ID of the substitute and click **Remove**. To select more than one substitute, hold down the Ctrl key.
3. Ask your TaskSystemAdministrator to refresh the people query results.

Results

While the **I am absent** check box is selected, your substitutes will receive your work assignments.

What to do next

Work assignments that were assigned to you before the **I am absent** check box got selected must be transferred separately.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Transferring tasks that you own

If you are the owner of a task, you might need to transfer the task to another user, for example, if someone else needs to provide information to complete the task.

Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider

You configure the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks. The default configuration of the VMM people directory provider is ready to use, and only needs to be configured if you introduce custom people assignment criteria.

Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative console to refresh people queries.

Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative scripts to refresh people queries.

Specifying absence settings for users

If users are prevented from working on their tasks, for example, if they are on sick leave, specify a substitute for the user's tasks.

Before you begin

You must have TaskSystemAdministrator rights to perform this task. Also, the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider is required for substitution. You must have substitution enabled for the Human Task Manager in Business Process Choreographer. The **Define Substitutes** option is then visible in the taskbar.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. In the taskbar, click **Define Substitutes**.
2. On the Define Substitutes page, specify the absence settings, and click **Save**.
 - a. Enter the user ID of the user for whom you want to specify the absence settings.
 - b. To enable the absence settings, select the **User is absent** check box.
 - c. In the **The user's substitute** field, enter the user ID of the substitute that you want to appoint, and click **Add**.
 - d. Optional: Add further substitutes as needed. Depending on the applied substitution policy, one or more than one substitute can receive the work assignments while the user is absent. The substitution policy can differ for each task templates.
 - e. Optional: To remove a substitute from the list, select the user ID of the substitute and click **Remove**. To select more than one substitute, hold down the Ctrl key.
3. Refresh the people query results.

Results

While the **User is absent** check box is selected, the substitutes will receive the user's work assignments.

What to do next

Work assignments that were assigned to the absent user before the **User is absent** check box got selected must be transferred separately.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Related tasks

Transferring work items for which you are the starter, originator, or administrator of the task

You might need to change a work assignment after work begins on the task. For example, you might want to transfer a work item to another user if the task owner is on vacation and the task must be completed before this person returns. The way in which you can transfer a work item depends on the role that you have and the state of the task.

Transferring tasks that you own

If you are the owner of a task, you might need to transfer the task to another user, for example, if someone else needs to provide information to complete the task.

Configuring the Virtual Member Manager people directory provider

You configure the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) people directory provider so that Business Process Choreographer can perform people assignment, which determines who can start processes or claim activities or tasks. The default configuration of the VMM people directory provider is ready to use, and only needs to be configured if you introduce custom people assignment criteria.

Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative console to refresh people queries.

Refreshing people query results, using administrative scripts

The results of a people query are static. Use the administrative scripts to refresh people queries.

Creating work items

You might want to create work items for new potential owners, for example, when none of the current potential owners can accept any additional work. You might also want to create work items if the query against the people directory does not return any potential owners. This might happen, for example, in a long-running process if the organization has changed since the process started.

Before you begin

To create a work item for a task instance, you must have the appropriate role for the task. If you are the task administrator, you can create work items for the task instance if it is in one of the following states: ready, claimed, running, finished, or failed. If the task instance is derived from a task template, you can also create work items if the task is in the terminated or expired state.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to create a work item.

Procedure

1. Display the task instances that you administer.
Click **Administered By Me** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Select the check box next to the task instance for which you want to create a work item and click **Create Work Items**. The Create Work Items page is displayed.

3. Create the work items.
 - a. In the **New Owner** field, specify the user ID of the new work-item owner.
 - b. Select one or more roles from the **Reason** list.

These roles determine the actions that the assigned person can perform on the new work item.
 - c. Click **Create**.

Results

A work item is created for each role that you specify for the new work-item owner. The new task appears on the list of tasks assigned to this person.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Deleting work items

You might want to delete work items, for example, if you created work items in error or if work items are generated for someone who no longer works for the company.

Before you begin

To delete a work item for a task instance, you must have the appropriate role for the task. If you are the task administrator, you can delete the work item if the task instance is in one of the following states: ready, claimed, running, finished, or failed. If the task instance was derived from a task template, you can also delete the work item if the task instance is in the terminated or expired state.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps to delete a work item.

Procedure

1. Display the task instances that you administer.

Click **Administered By Me** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. Display the work items for a task instance.

In the Task Instances Administered By Me page, select a task instance and click **Work Items**.
3. Delete the work items.

Select one or more work items and click **Delete**.

Results

The work items are deleted.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Viewing task escalations

An escalation notifies the escalation receiver that a user might have problems completing their assigned task on time.

About this task

When a task becomes overdue, it might result in an escalation. An escalation can result in the following actions:

- A new work item is created, for example, for a manager to take action to support the resolution of the problem.
- If you specified e-mail settings when you configured the human task container, an e-mail is sent to a designated person to inform them about the escalated task.
- An event notification handler is called.

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

To view escalations, click **My Escalations** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.

- To view information about an escalation, click the escalation ID.
- To view information about an escalated task, click the task name.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Sending e-mails for escalations

When a task becomes overdue, it might result in an escalation. You can set up your system to send e-mails to designated people to inform them about the escalation.

Before you begin

The following rules apply to escalation e-mails:

- Your people directory provider must support the specification of e-mail addresses, such as Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) or virtual member manager.
- The **Everybody**, **Nobody**, **Group** and **Users by user ID** people assignment criteria are not supported. For example, use **User records by user ID** instead.

Procedure

1. In WebSphere Integration Developer, perform the following actions for the task in the human task editor.
 - a. Under the task settings in the **Details** tab of the properties area, edit the value of the **People directory (JNDI name)** field.

Set the value of this field to one of the following:

 - bpe/staff/samplevmmconfiguration
 - bpe/staff/samplevmmconfiguration
 - The people directory configuration name (JNDI name) of your choice.

- b. Under the escalation settings in the **Details** tab of the properties area, set the value of the **Notification type** field to E-mail.
 - c. Specify text for the body of the e-mail that is sent for the escalation.
To insert a variable to include task specific information into the text, click **Add Variable** and select an appropriate variable from the list. In the editor, the variable will appear between "%" characters, but will be replaced when it is evaluated during execution in the runtime environment when the email is sent.
If you do not specify any text, the default message text is used.
2. In WebSphere Process Server, perform the following actions.
 - a. Ensure that the simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) host is set. If authentication is enabled, set the User ID and password for the SMTP host.
In the administrative console, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail Sessions** → *HTMMailSession_nodeName_serverName* to check this setting, or **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail Sessions** → *HTMMailSession_clusterName* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster. The SMTP host is defined on the cell level.
 - b. Ensure that the sender e-mail address (**Sender e-mail address**) that you specify when you configure the human task manager is a valid e-mail address.
In the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* to check this setting, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster. On the **Configuration** tab, in the Business Integration section, click **Business Process Choreographer** → **Human Task Manager**.

What to do next

If a problem occurs with escalation e-mails, check the SystemOut.log file for error messages.

Related concepts

Human tasks overview

A human task is a component that allows people and services to interact.

Creating and editing custom properties in Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Create new custom properties to specify additional properties for process instances, activity instances, or task instances.

About this task

To create custom properties for an instance, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Display a list of process instances, activity instances, or task instances, and click the name of an instance to open the details page.
For example, to open a list of task instances, click **My To-dos** under Task Instances in the Views tab navigation pane.
2. On the Custom Properties tab, click **Add**.

3. Enter a name for the custom property in the **Property Name** field, and a value in the **Property Value** field.
4. Optional: To add additional custom properties, go to step 2 on page 395.
5. Optional: To remove a new custom property, click the **Delete** icon next to the custom property.
6. Optional: To change the property name or value for a custom property, click the custom property and enter the new value.
7. Click **Save**. After you save a custom property, you cannot change the property name, and you cannot delete the custom property.

Reporting on business processes and activities

During the processing of business processes and activities, events can be generated when the process, activity, or task changes state. These events are stored and made available for creating reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to analyze process performance issues, or to evaluate the reliability of a service that is called from an activity.

About this task

You can work with predefined reports or create user-defined reports for processes and activities in the Reports tab of Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later. Also, the event collector application must be installed and configured.

Related concepts

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Getting started with Business Process Choreographer Explorer

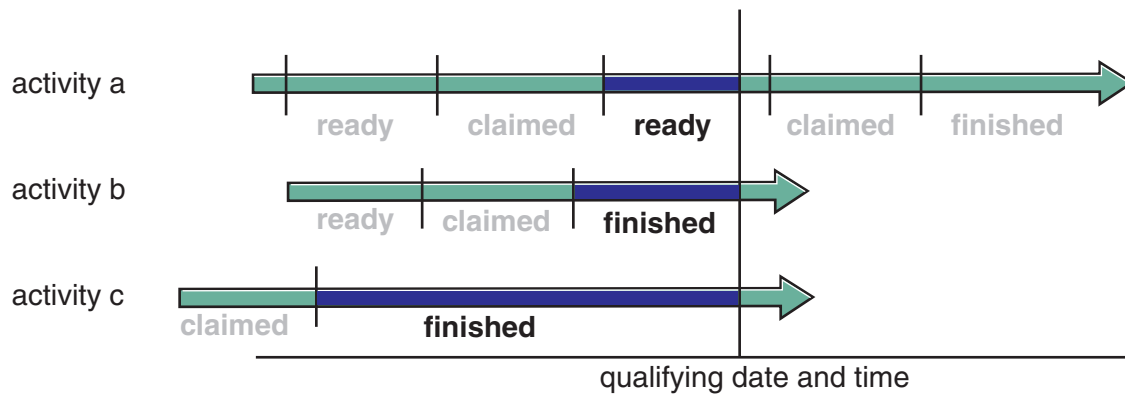
Depending on your user role, you can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to manage business processes and human tasks, or to work with your assigned tasks. While business processes and tasks are running, WebSphere Process Server can emit events that contain information about state changes of process instances and their related activities. Using reporting, you can retrieve statistical information based on these events and create reports on processes and activities.

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

For example, you want to know the number of process instances that are running at midnight. For each process or activity instance, Business Process Choreographer Explorer finds the last event before the specified date and time, and evaluates the resulting state. The following state diagram shows how events qualify for a

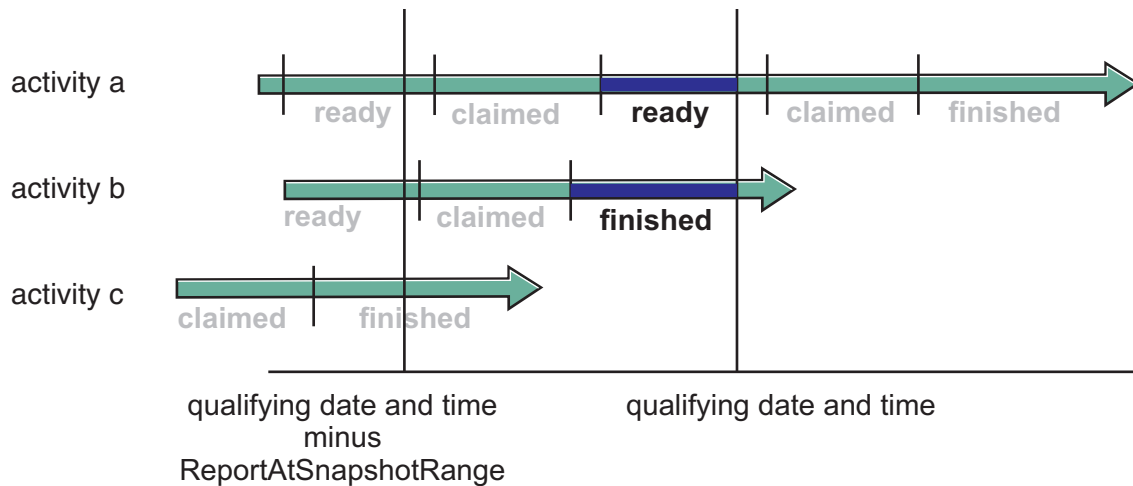
snapshot report.



The snapshot includes one activity in the ready state (activity a) and two activities in the finished state (activities b and c).

Configuration parameter ReportAtSnapshotRange

If the reporting database contains process instance data that covers a long period of time, getting a snapshot can be time consuming. To avoid querying events that are not relevant anymore, use the ReportAtSnapshotRange configuration parameter. Only the events that are newer than the specified date and time minus the value of the ReportAtSnapshotRange configuration parameter are considered in the report. The following state diagram shows how events qualify for a snapshot report when the ReportAtSnapshotRange parameter is set.



The snapshot includes one activity in the ready state (activity a) and one activity in the finished state (activity b). The report does not return the status of activity c.

Reporting cycles

You can define reporting cycles for snapshot reports. Use this option to create a report that contains repeating snapshots for multiple dates. For example, you want to report the number of started processes for each day of March. You do not need to report each day separately. Instead, you can define a start date of 1 March, the number of snapshots after the start date as 31, and the time between snapshots as 1 day. The resulting report contains an additional column that includes the time

slice number. The value of each time slice indicates the day of the month.

Related tasks

Creating a predefined snapshot chart

Use predefined snapshot charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of process instance or activity instance states for a specified date and time.

Creating user-defined snapshot reports

You can define user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer that take a snapshot of the state information at a specified date and time. You can also create reports that contain state snapshots for regular points within a reporting period, for example, the first of each month at midnight.

Reporting on business processes and activities

During the processing of business processes and activities, events can be generated when the process, activity, or task changes state. These events are stored and made available for creating reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to analyze process performance issues, or to evaluate the reliability of a service that is called from an activity.

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

Creating user-defined reports

User-defined process and activity reports are more flexible than the predefined lists and charts. In addition, you can store and reuse your report definitions using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and you can export the report results.

Related reference

Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

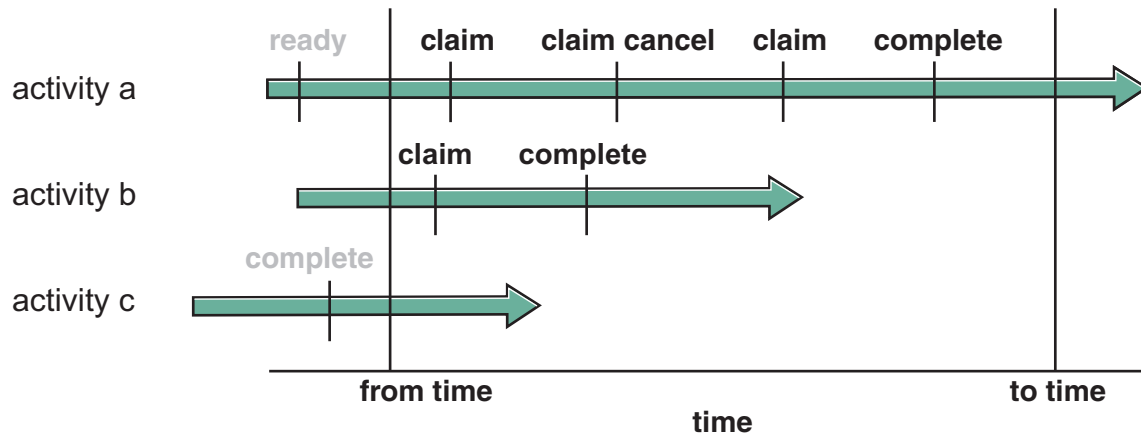
Tuning the configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector applications is important to enable verification and improve performance.

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

With a period view, you specify the start and end date for the reporting period. The report covers the interval between these two dates. For example, you want to know how many staff activities have been claimed during the day.

The following state diagram shows how events qualify to a period report. A report that covers the period shown in the following example includes six activity events; four events for activity a and 2 events for activity b. Activity c completed before the start of the reporting period and therefore it does not contribute events to the report.



This means that if you query the number of completed events in this period, the result is 2.

Reporting cycles

You can define reporting cycles for period reports. Use this option to create a report that covers multiple periods. For example, you want to report the number of started processes for each month in the last 12 months. You do not need to report each month separately. Instead, you can define a start date of 1 January, the number of time slices after the start date as 12, and the length of a time slice as 1 month. The resulting report contains an additional column that includes the time slice number. The value of each time slice indicates the month.

Related tasks

Creating a predefined period chart

Use the predefined period charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of the number of process instances or activity instances that reached a specified state during a time period. Each instance is shown in the time slice in which it reached the specified state.

Creating user-defined period reports

You can create user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer for process or activity events that occur over a period of time. You can also create reports that cover multiple periods according to a reporting cycle.

Reporting on business processes and activities

During the processing of business processes and activities, events can be generated when the process, activity, or task changes state. These events are stored and made available for creating reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to analyze process performance issues, or to evaluate the reliability of a service that is called from an activity.

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

Creating user-defined reports

User-defined process and activity reports are more flexible than the predefined lists and charts. In addition, you can store and reuse your report definitions using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and you can export the report results.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Timestamps

In the database, timestamps are stored in coordinated universal time (UTC). Timestamps that are entered and displayed are always in the local time of the location where the user interface runs. This means that if you specify a snapshot report with a reporting cycle and the reporting cycle spans a clock adjustment for daylight saving time, the dates and times vary by one hour after the clock change.

For example, if you specify a snapshot report with a reporting cycle that takes the first snapshot at 8:00 a.m. during winter time and the following snapshots are taken every 24 hours, then the snapshots are taken at 9:00 a.m. during daylight saving time.

Durations of months and years

If you specify a report with a reporting cycle, and, for example, you give the time slice length in units of months or years, the lengths of each individual time slice varies depending on the calendar. This allows you to specify a report where each time slice represents a month of a year.

Related tasks

Reporting on business processes and activities

During the processing of business processes and activities, events can be generated when the process, activity, or task changes state. These events are stored and made available for creating reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, for example, to analyze process performance issues, or to evaluate the reliability of a service that is called from an activity.

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

Creating user-defined reports

User-defined process and activity reports are more flexible than the predefined lists and charts. In addition, you can store and reuse your report definitions using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and you can export the report results.

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

About this task

The following types of predefined lists and charts are available:

- Lists
- Processes and activity snapshot charts
- Process and activity instances by period charts

Related concepts

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the predefined charts

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Example: Using the predefined lists

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined lists in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Creating a report using the predefined lists

Use the predefined lists in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to report on the number of process or activity events that occurred within a specified time

period, sorted by states. You can also use the lists to drill down to the events for a particular instance. In addition, you can export the report results for each state.

Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Select a list type in the Reports tab navigation pane.
Predefined lists are available for process instances, activity instances, and activities associated with users.
2. Enter the start and end date for the time period in which you are interested, and click **Continue**.
Depending on the list type, a list of process templates, activity templates, or a list of users and the number of their associated instances is displayed.
3. Select the check boxes of the instances that you are interested in, and click **Instances Snapshot**.
The events for the selected instances are displayed in a tabbed pane. Each of the pages shows the instances in a particular state.
4. Optional: To see all of the events for, and for more information about a specific instance, click the instance name.
5. Optional: To export the reported data in CSV format, click **Export**. Select whether you want to open or to save the generated export data, and click **OK**.
The reported data for the currently displayed state is exported.

Related concepts

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the predefined lists

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined lists in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Example: Using the predefined lists

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined lists in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

About this task

Your factory produces different items Item1, Item2, and Item3. Your manufacturing and shipment process is modeled and run as a SOA process with WebSphere Process Server. Each customer order is represented by a dedicated process instance of the appropriate process template. After an item has been shipped to the customer, your shipment process reaches the end state finished. If a customer cancels an order, the corresponding process instance is terminated and reaches the terminated state.

To see how many customers have cancelled their order of Item1, Item2, or Item3 within the last month, you are interested in the number of process instances that reached the terminated state. In addition, you want to know how far the order had been processed when the cancellation occurred.

Use the predefined lists to create a view that shows you how many processes have been cancelled, and to see the state the process was in when the cancellation occurred. To do this, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Under **Lists** in the Reports tab navigation pane, select **Processes**.
2. On the Search Criteria page, enter the start and end date for the time period in which you are interested, and click **Continue**. The Process Templates page lists all of the process templates that generated a process within the observation period. For each process template, you can see the number of process instances that were started and ended.
3. On the Process Template page, select all templates of the list, and click **Instance snapshot**. The Process Instance page lists all of the process instances grouped by the state that they reached within the observation period.
4. On the Process Instance page, select the **Terminated** tab to see the total number of cancellations during the observation period.
5. Sort the list by template name, and evaluate the number of cancellations per process template.
6. For further details, click the name of a terminated process instance to view the Process Instance Detail page. Check the work time and the elapsed time of the instance.

Related tasks

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

Creating a report using the predefined lists

Use the predefined lists in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to report on the number of process or activity events that occurred within a specified time period, sorted by states. You can also use the lists to drill down to the events for a particular instance. In addition, you can export the report results for each state.

Creating a predefined snapshot chart

Use predefined snapshot charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of process instance or activity instance states for a specified date and time.

Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Select the type of snapshot under **Charts** in the Reports tab navigation pane. Predefined snapshot charts are available for process instances and activity instances.
2. Enter the search criteria and click **Continue**.
A list of object templates is displayed that meet the search criteria.
3. Select the check boxes of the templates that you are interested in, and click **Continue with selected**.
You can change the chart type to show the results as a bar chart or a pie chart.

Related concepts

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the predefined charts

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Creating a predefined period chart

Use the predefined period charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of the number of process instances or activity instances that reached a specified state during a time period. Each instance is shown in the time slice in which it reached the specified state.

Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

For an example of a predefined period chart, use the predefined charts to see the distribution of finished process instances over the last 12 months. To do this, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Select the type of period chart under **Charts** in the Reports tab navigation pane. Predefined period charts are available for process instances and activity instances.
2. Enter the search criteria and click **Continue**.
Enter the start date for the time period, and specify the number of time slices, the length of each time slice, and the state you are reporting on. For example,

to report on the finished instances for each month over the last 12 months, specify 12 as the number of time slices, and 1 month as the length of each time slice.

A list of object templates are displayed that meet the search criteria.

3. Select the check boxes of the templates that you are interested in, and click **Continue with selected**.

You can change the chart type to show the results as a bar chart, line chart, or a pie chart.

Related concepts

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the predefined charts

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Example: Using the predefined charts

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the predefined charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

About this task

Your factory produces different items Item1 and Item2. Your manufacturing and shipment process is modeled and run as a SOA process with WebSphere Process Server. Each customer order is represented by a dedicated process instance of the appropriate process template.

Recently you have expanded your production line by Item3. You have a new Item3 ordering template and you want to know the progress that your production line has made during the last month. As an indicator you want to see the number of production orders within the last 30 days.

To visualize the number of production orders that were processed within the last 30 days, specify a chart view that shows all process instances that are related to the OrderItem3 process template for the period of interest. To do this, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Under **Charts** in the Reports tab navigation pane, select **Process by period** to see the statistical distribution of process instances within the last thirty days.
2. Specify the search criteria:
 - a. Enter the start date of your observation period.
 - b. Set the number of time slices to 30.
 - c. Set the length of a time slice to one day.
 - d. In the **Focus on state** list, select **Running**, and click **Continue**.

The Select Process Templates page opens, which contains a list of all process templates that are related to a process instances that occurred within the observation period.

3. Select the OrderItem3 template to see all process instances that are related to this process template, and click **Continue with selected**.
4. The Process Instances Snapshot page displays all process instances that are in the different states at the specified time.
5. Use the line chart or bar chart to visualize the progress that your process made within the last month.

What to do next

Your report shows all process instances that reached the state running within the observation period.

Related tasks

Using the predefined lists and charts

Predefined lists and charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer provide a drill-down approach to get you state and event information for runtime entities. With each step in the drill-down process, you define further the kind of information you are interested in. For example, you can specify dates and other filter criteria to view the data for an activity instance in a bar chart.

Creating a predefined snapshot chart

Use predefined snapshot charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of process instance or activity instance states for a specified date and time.

Creating a predefined period chart

Use the predefined period charts in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to see the distribution of the number of process instances or activity instances that reached a specified state during a time period. Each instance is shown in the time slice in which it reached the specified state.

Creating user-defined reports

User-defined process and activity reports are more flexible than the predefined lists and charts. In addition, you can store and reuse your report definitions using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and you can export the report results.

About this task

For process reports, you can get information about the attributes of process instances, and the activities that belong to the process instances. For activity reports, you can get information about the attributes of the activities, and the process instances that the activities are associated with. You can define one-off reports, or save your report definitions so that you can run it when required. Include parameters to change the values of your report definition every time you run the report.

Related concepts

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the user-defined reports

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the user-defined reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Related reference

Attributes for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Use attributes to define the content of your report in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and to filter the results. The attributes that are available depend on the report type.

Business process events for Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business process events are sent if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A subset of these events is available for Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Performance-relevant attributes

The time that is necessary to run a report definition using Business Process Choreographer Explorer can vary. To improve the performance of the report generation, you can optimize your report definition. Some general rules can help you to evaluate the influence that the report attributes have on the performance.

Creating user-defined snapshot reports

You can define user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer that take a snapshot of the state information at a specified date and time. You can also create reports that contain state snapshots for regular points within a reporting period, for example, the first of each month at midnight.


Before you begin





The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The report wizard guides you through the definition of the report.

Procedure

1. In the Reports tab navigation pane, click the **New Report** icon () either for process reports or for activity reports.
2. On the Select Report Type page, click **Snapshot Report**, and click **Next**.
3. On the Select Snapshot Type page, specify when you want the snapshot to be taken and click **Next**.


- To see the current status, click **Take a snapshot now**. The snapshot date and time is evaluated every time you run the report.
The Specify Content page is displayed. Continue with step 5.
 - To see the status of processes or activities on a particular date and time, for example, 10 June at 8:00 a.m., click **Take a snapshot at a specific date and time**.
The Specify Snapshot Settings page is displayed. Continue with step 4.
 - To see the status at regular points within a reporting period, click **Take repeated snapshots according to a reporting cycle**.
The Specify Snapshot Settings page is displayed. Continue with step 4.
4. Specify the snapshot settings, and click **Next**.
If the snapshot is to be taken at a specific date and time, specify the date and time settings. You can specify a date and time that is in the future. To change the settings each time you run the report, select the **Use these settings as a parameter** check box.
For reports with a reporting cycle:
- a. Select whether you want to set the start date, or the end date of the reporting cycle, and click **Next**.
 - b. To set the start date of the reporting cycle, specify when the first snapshot is to be taken. To set the end date of the reporting cycle, specify when the last snapshot is to be taken.
 - c. To define the duration of the reporting cycle, set the number of snapshots and the time between each snapshot.
 - d. To change the settings for the reporting cycle each time you run the report, select the **Use these settings as a parameter** check box.
5. On the Specify Report Content page, specify the information that you want the report to contain, and click **Next**.
For reports with a reporting cycle, the list of attributes already contains the snapshot number attribute. You cannot delete this attribute.
- a. Click **Add** to see a list of attributes that you can include in the report; these attributes become the column headings of your report. The position of the attributes determines the order of the columns in the report. For each attribute you can also specify how the results are sorted within the column. If you specify a sort order for more than one attribute, the results are sorted in the order of the attributes. Consider to rearrange the order of the attributes to change the sort order of the results in the report.
 - To modify an attribute, click the **Edit** icon ().
 - To delete an attribute, click the **Delete** icon ().
 - To change the position of an attribute in the report, click the **Up** icon () or the **Down** icon ().
 - b. To limit the number of entries in the result, for example, for performance reasons, enter a value in the **Threshold** field to specify the maximum number of results.
The default threshold value is 20. If you do not want to limit the result, set the value to -1.
To change the threshold value each time you run the report, select the **Use the threshold as a parameter** check box.

6. Optional: On the Specify Filter Content page, set the filter criteria for the attributes.

Use filter criteria to restrict the values that the attributes can take thus making your report more specific. The report includes only those processes and activities that fulfill all of the specified filter criteria. If you specified an attribute on the Specify Report Content page that is an aggregate, the list of filter criteria already contains filter criteria for this attribute. You cannot delete this filter.

- a. Click **Add** to see a list of attributes for which you can specify filter criteria.

- For more complex value types, such as timestamps, click the **Input**

Helper icon () to complete the field.

- To change the value for a filter criterion each time you run the report, select the **Parameter** check box.

- b. Click **Next**.

The Summary page is displayed. This page shows the report definition.

7. On the Summary page, do one of the following:

- If your report definition does not contain parameters, click **Run**.

The resulting report is displayed.

- If your report definition contains parameters, click **Next**.

You can change the values of the parameter, then click **Run**. The resulting report is displayed.

If the report results are not as you expected, you can click **Edit** to change the settings for the report.

8. Optional: Export the report result.

To export the reported data in CSV format, click **Export**. Select whether you want to open the generated export data, or to save the data on your hard disk, and click **OK**.

The **Export** button is only displayed if the report list contains items.

9. Optional: Save the report definition.

If this is a report that you want to run more than once, for example, a monthly report that shows the completed process instances on the 10th of every month, click **Save** and enter a report name. The report appears in the navigation pane.

Related concepts

Snapshot reports

Use snapshot reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine the states of activities or processes at a specific date and time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the user-defined reports

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the user-defined reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Related reference

Attributes for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Use attributes to define the content of your report in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and to filter the results. The attributes that are available depend on the report type.

Business process events for Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business process events are sent if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A subset of these events is available for Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Performance-relevant attributes

The time that is necessary to run a report definition using Business Process Choreographer Explorer can vary. To improve the performance of the report generation, you can optimize your report definition. Some general rules can help you to evaluate the influence that the report attributes have on the performance.

Creating user-defined period reports

You can create user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer for process or activity events that occur over a period of time. You can also create reports that cover multiple periods according to a reporting cycle.


Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The report wizard guides you through the definition of the report.

Procedure

1. In the Reports tab navigation pane, click the **New Report** icon () either for process reports or for activity reports.
2. On the Select Report Type page, click **Period Report**, and click **Next**.
3. On the Select Period Type page, specify the type of period, and click **Next**.

For example, for processes, you can select one of the following period types:

- To see the events from a specified date to the present, click **Report on all processes up to now**.
- To see the events for a specified period, click **Report on processes in a specified period**.

- To see the events for regular intervals in a reporting period, click **Report on processes according to a reporting cycle**.

The Specify Date and Time page is displayed.

4. Specify the date and time settings, and click **Next**.





For reports on all processes up to now, specify the start date. The end date is generated every time you run the report. For reports on processes in a specified period, specify the start and the end date. You can specify dates that are in the future. To change the settings each time you run the report, select the **Use these settings as a parameter** check box.

For reports with a reporting cycle:

- a. Select whether you want to set the start date, or the end date of the reporting cycle, and click **Next**.
 - b. To set the start date of the reporting cycle, specify the start date of the first time slice. To set the end date of the reporting cycle, specify the end date of the last time slice.
 - c. To define the duration of the reporting cycle, set the total number of time slices, and the length of each time slice.
 - d. To change the settings for the reporting cycle each time you run the report, select the **Use these settings as a parameter** check box.
5. On the Specify Report Content page, specify the information that you want the report to contain, and click **Next**.

For reports with a reporting cycle, the list of attributes already contains the time slice number attribute. You cannot delete this attribute.

- a. Click **Add** to see a list of attributes that you can include in the report; these attributes become the column headings of your report. The position of the attributes determines the order of the columns in the report. For each attribute you can also specify how the results are sorted within the column. If you specify a sort order for more than one attribute, the results are sorted in the order of the attributes. Consider to rearrange the order of the attributes to change the sort order of the results in the report.

- To modify an attribute, click the **Edit** icon ().
- To delete an attribute, click the **Delete** icon (.
- To change the position of an attribute in the report, click the **Up** icon () or the **Down** icon (.

- b. To limit the number of entries in the result, for example, for performance reasons, enter a value in the **Threshold** field to specify the maximum number of results.


The default threshold value is 20. If you do not want to limit the result, set the value to -1.

To change the threshold value each time you run the report, select the **Use the threshold as a parameter** check box.

6. Optional: On the Specify Filter Content page, set the filter criteria for the attributes.

Use filter criteria to restrict the values that the attributes can take thus making your report more specific. If you specified an attribute on the Specify Report Content page that is an aggregate, the list of filter criteria already contains filter criteria for this attribute. You cannot delete this filter.

- a. Click **Add** to see a list of attributes for which you can specify filter criteria.

- For more complex value types, such as timestamps, click the **Input Helper** icon () to complete the field.
- To change the value for a filter criterion each time you run the report, select the **Parameter** check box.

b. Click **Next**.

The Summary page is displayed. This page shows the report definition.

7. On the Summary page, do one of the following:

- If your report definition does not contain parameters, click **Run**.
The resulting report is displayed.
- If your report definition contains parameters, click **Next**.
You can change the values of the parameter, then click **Run**. The resulting report is displayed.

If the report results are not as you expected, you can click **Edit** to change the settings for the report.

8. Optional: Export the report result.

To export the reported data in CSV format, click **Export**. Select whether you want to open the generated export data, or to save the data on your hard disk, and click **OK**.

The **Export** button is only displayed if the report list contains items.

9. Optional: Save the report definition.

If this is a report that you want to run regularly, for example, for monthly reporting, click **Save** and enter a report name. The report appears in the navigation pane.

Related concepts

Period reports

Use period reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to determine how often specific activity or process events occur over a period of time.

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related tasks

Example: Using the user-defined reports

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the user-defined reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Related reference

Attributes for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Use attributes to define the content of your report in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and to filter the results. The attributes that are available depend on the report type.

Business process events for Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business process events are sent if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A subset of these events is available for Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Performance-relevant attributes

The time that is necessary to run a report definition using Business Process Choreographer Explorer can vary. To improve the performance of the report generation, you can optimize your report definition. Some general rules can help you to evaluate the influence that the report attributes have on the performance.

Example: Using the user-defined reports

This scenario gives you an example of how you could use the user-defined reports using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

About this task

Your factory produces different items Item1, Item2, and Item3. Your manufacturing and shipment process is modeled and run as a SOA process with WebSphere Process Server. Each customer order is represented by a dedicated process instance of the appropriate process template. After an item has been shipped to the customer, your shipment process reaches the end state, finished. If a customer cancels an order, the corresponding process instance is terminated and reaches the terminated state.

One of the customers who cancelled their order complains about the long response time they experienced. You want to know why this order took so long to process.

Create a user-defined report for process instances that are in the terminated state and that have a work time of more than two days. In addition, your report should reveal what went wrong with the terminated process instances. To do this, complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Retrieve the process instance data that belong to the customer's order.

The customer name, address, and the order number are part of the business data and therefore are contained in the process message. However, Business Process Choreographer Explorer cannot use the content of a business object because it is not part of a Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) event. However,

you know that you are looking for a process instance that is in the terminated state and that has a work time of more than two days.

- a. Under **Process Reports** in the Reports tab navigation pane, select **Create a new report**.
 - b. Because you are focused on the state of a process instance, select the report type **Snapshot Report**.
 - c. On the Select Snapshot Type page, select **Take a snapshot at a specific date and time**. Specify the date and time immediately after the order cancellation as the qualifying snapshot date.
 - d. On the Report Content page, add **Process instance ID**, **Process work time**, **Process started** and **Process completed** to your report content.
 - e. On the Filter Content page, specify **Process work time greater 2 days** and **Process state equal Terminated** as filter content, and run the report.
 - f. On the Report Result page, check the process instance ID, start date, and completion date to find the process instance that corresponds to your customer's order. If the report result does not meet your expectations, for example, if the list of process instances is too long, click **Edit** to modify your search criteria.
 - g. Copy the process instance ID to the clipboard because you will need the ID in step 2.
2. Get the information that reveals what went wrong with a specific process instance.
 - a. In the **Process Reports** section in the navigation pane, select **Create a new report**.
 - b. Select the report type **Snapshot Report**.

Do not use Period Report type. You are interested in attributes that are related to a snapshot report. To see the difference, define and run a period report with exactly the same attributes.
 - c. On the Select Snapshot Type page, select **Take a snapshot at a specific date and time**. Specify the date and time immediately after the order cancellation as the qualifying snapshot date.
 - d. On the Report Content page, add **Process instance ID**, **Activity name**, **Activity started** and **Activity completed** to your report content.
 - e. On the Filter Content page, specify **Process instance ID equal *your_customer's_process_instance_ID*** as filter content, and run the report. The report reveals in which activity most time has been spent.
 - f. Optional: If you need further information to evaluate what exactly was the root cause for the delay, edit and rerun your report.
 - g. Save your report definition.
 3. Finally you want to avoid such a situation in the future. You want to have a report at the end of each working day that lists all of the active order processes that are in danger of exceeding the time limit because of resource constraints or failures.
 - a. Edit your saved report definition. On the Select Snapshot Type page, change the snapshot type to **Take a snapshot now**, delete the filter content **Process instance ID equal *your_customer's_process_instance_ID*** and add the expression **Process work time greater 1 day**.
 - b. Run your modified report and check that there are no process instances that meet the new filter criteria.
 - c. Save the report so that you can run it at the end of every working day.

Related tasks

Creating user-defined reports

User-defined process and activity reports are more flexible than the predefined lists and charts. In addition, you can store and reuse your report definitions using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and you can export the report results.

Creating user-defined snapshot reports

You can define user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer that take a snapshot of the state information at a specified date and time. You can also create reports that contain state snapshots for regular points within a reporting period, for example, the first of each month at midnight.

Creating user-defined period reports

You can create user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer for process or activity events that occur over a period of time. You can also create reports that cover multiple periods according to a reporting cycle.

Attributes for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Use attributes to define the content of your report in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and to filter the results. The attributes that are available depend on the report type.

Each attribute defined as report content is the name of a column in the report. In addition, use attributes to filter the results of your query. You can also define filter criteria for attributes that you have not included in your report.

Attribute	Description	Snapshot reports	Period reports
Activity completed	The time when the activity instance reached one of the following end states: failed, finished, skipped, terminated, or expired.	X	X
Activity event	The event code of the activity event.	X	X
Activity event count	The number of activity events emitted by the activity instance.	X	X
Activity instance ID	The activity instance ID.	X	X
Activity kind	The kind of the activity instance.	X	X
Activity last user name	The name of the last user who initiated an action with this activity.	X	X
Activity name	The name of the activity instance.	X	X
Activity started	The time when the activity instance was started.	X	X
Activity state	The state the activity instance is in after the event.	X	X
Activity template ID	The activity template ID.	X	X
Average duration of activities	The average duration of all of the activity instances in seconds.	X	X
Average duration of processes	The average duration of all of the process instances in seconds.	X	X
Event time	The time when the event occurred.	X	X
Exception text	If an exception triggered the activity event, the exception message can be part of the event data and is then stored in this field.	X	X

Attribute	Description	Snapshot reports	Period reports
Number of activities in state	The number of activity instances that are in the specified state.	X	
Number of activity events	The number of activity events that occurred during the specified period.		X
Number of process events	The number of process events that occurred during the specified period.		X
Number of processes in state	The number of process instances that are in the specified state.	X	
Process activity count	The number of activities of a process instance that emitted at least one event.	X	X
Process activity event count	The number of activity events that belong to a process instance.	X	X
Process completed	The time when the process instance reached one of the following end states: compensated, compensation failed, failed, finished, or terminated.	X	X
Process deletion time	The time when the process was deleted from the Business Process Choreographer database.	X	X
Process event	The event code of the process instance event.	X	X
Process event count	The number of process events emitted by the process instance.	X	X
Process instance ID	The process instance ID.	X	X
Process last user name	The name of the last user who initiated an action with this process.	X	X
Process started	The time when the process instance was started.	X	X
Process state	The state that the process instance is in after the event.	X	X
Process template ID	The process template ID.	X	X
Process template name	The process template that is associated with the process instance.	X	X
Process work time	The duration of the process instance. This value is the sum of the work times of all of the completed basic activities that are contained in the process. Basic activities are activities that have no structure and do not contain other activities.	X	X
Snapshot number	In a snapshot report with a reporting cycle, this attribute identifies a specific snapshot in the reporting cycle.	X	
Time slice number	In a period report with a reporting cycle, this attribute identifies a specific time slice in the reporting cycle.		X
User name	The user ID of a user who is associated to the event.	X	X
Valid from	The time when the process template became valid.	X	X

Business process events for Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business process events are sent if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A subset of these events is available for Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

The following types of events can be caused by business process:

- “Process events”
- “Activity events”

Depending on the settings in WebSphere Integration Developer, 6.0.2 events and 6.1 events can occur.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer does not require business data in events.

Process events

The following table describes all process events that you can report on using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Code	Description
21000	Process started
21001	Process suspended
21002	Process resumed
21004	Process completed
21005	Process terminated
21019	Process restarted
42001	Process failed
42003	Process compensating
42004	Process compensated
42046	Process compensation failed
42009	Process terminating
42010	Process failing

Activity events

The following table describes all activity events that you can report on using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Code	Description
21006	Activity ready
21007	Activity started
21011	Activity completed
21021	Claim canceled
21022	Activity claimed
21027	Activity terminated
21080	Activity failed
21081	Activity expired

Code	Description
42005	Activity skipped
42015	Activity stopped
42031	Activity force retried
42032	Activity force completed
42036	Activity has message received
42065	Activity skipped on request

Related reference

Business process events

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A process can cause process events, activity events, activity scope events, link events, and variable events to be emitted.

Performance-relevant attributes

The time that is necessary to run a report definition using Business Process Choreographer Explorer can vary. To improve the performance of the report generation, you can optimize your report definition. Some general rules can help you to evaluate the influence that the report attributes have on the performance.

Specify filters

Use appropriate filters to restrict the amount of retrieved data. Consider limiting the report results by date, or other activity or process instances properties. For snapshot reports, set the ReportAtSnapshotRange configuration parameter to an appropriate value.

Period reports versus snapshot reports

Snapshot reports tend to decrease the performance more than period reports.

Reports with a reporting cycle

Reports that are defined with a reporting cycle tend to decrease the performance, in particular if many periods or snapshots are defined for the query.

Aggregates

Aggregates such as the total number of events, or the average durations of instances can necessitate the processing of large amounts of data, and therefore decrease the performance.

Number of results shown

If you are interested only in some of the results of a report, specify a threshold to limit the number of entries in the result. This reduces the amount of data transferred between the database and the user interface.

However, if you define a sort order, before the data can be sorted, all of the resulting data must be collected in the database. In this case, reducing the number of results shown does not improve the performance. Instead, you should set up appropriate filter expressions.

Event and instance information

In the reporting database, information related to events is stored in the event database table, whereas information related to activity and process instances is stored in the instance database table. If you create a report that contains both instance-related and event-specific information, the tables are

joined to get the required information. If you create a report that contains only one type of information, the tables are not joined. Therefore reports that contain only one type of information usually have a better performance than a report that queries both instance-related and event-specific information.

Related reference

Changing configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

Tuning the configuration parameters for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function and event collector applications is important to enable verification and improve performance.

Using saved user-defined report definitions

If you saved your report definitions in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can run your reports when required, edit your report definitions, or use a copy of your report definition to create similar reports. In addition, you can run your reports asynchronously, and export the report results.

Running saved user-defined report definitions

You can run your saved report definitions, when required, using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. If your report contains parameters, you can set the values that you are interested in each time you run the report.

Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. To run a saved report definition, click the name of the report in the Reports tab navigation pane.
 - If your report definition does not contain parameters, the resulting report is displayed.
 - If your report definition contains parameters, the Run Report page is displayed. You can change the values of the parameter, then click **Run**. The resulting report is displayed.
2. Optional: Export the report result.

To export the reported data in CSV format, click **Export**. Select whether you want to open the generated export data, or to save the data on your hard disk, and click **OK**.

Running saved user-defined report definitions asynchronously

You can run the saved report asynchronously in Business Process Choreographer Explorer to continue working while the query is running.





Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. To run a saved report definition asynchronously, click the **Show pop-up menu** icon () in the Reports tab navigation pane, and click the Asynchronous Search icon () .
2. If your report definition contains parameters, the Run Report page is displayed. You can change the values of the parameter, then click Run.
 - After the asynchronous search completes successfully, the Asynchronous Search Completed icon () is displayed in the navigation pane. Click the name of the report to view your search results.
 - If the asynchronous search does not complete successfully, the Asynchronous Search Failed icon () is displayed.

Exporting report results using the pop-up menu

For saved user-defined reports in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can export the report results for further external processing without running the report.



Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

This option is only available for saved user-defined report definitions that do not contain parameters. Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. To export the report results of a saved report definition, click the **Show pop-up menu** icon () in the Reports tab navigation pane, and click the Export icon () .
2. Select whether you want to open or to save the generated export data, and click **OK**. The reported data is exported.

Exporting report results using the export client

For saved user-defined reports, you can use the export client command line tool to run reports and export the report results for further external processing.

Before you begin

This option is only available for saved user-defined report definitions that do not contain parameters.

The export client tool `wps_install_root/ProcessChoreographer/util/bpcobserverexporter.jar` has to be installed on your local workstation.

Procedure

To run a report and export the report result, use the command line to start the export client.

On Windows platforms, enter: `java -jar bpcobserverexporter.jar options`

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter: `java -jar bpcobserverexporter.jar options`

You can specify options directly on the command line in the format `-option value`, `-option value ...`, or specify the name of a properties file. In the properties file the options have the format `option=value`. Options that are specified on the command line take precedence over those that are specified in a properties file.

Following options are valid:

Table 18. Valid options for the export client

Option	Description
help	Shows usage information.
verbose	Shows additional information when the result is exported that you can use for debugging.
unicode	Exports the result in UTF-8 encoding. The default is the local operating system encoding.
o	Overwrites any existing file. The default is an error if the file already exists.
properties	This defines a fully qualified file name that contains additional options.
url	Complete URL where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer is running. The default is <code>http://localhost:9080</code>
out	This defines a fully qualified filename to store the export result. The default is <code>report name.csv</code> .
userid	When security is enabled, a valid user ID is required.
password	When security is enabled, a valid password is required.
reportname	The name of a saved report definition is required. Export with the export client only works for saved user-defined report definitions that do not contain parameters.

Editing and copying saved user-defined report definitions

You can change the settings of your saved report definitions in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, or use a copy of your report definition to create similar reports.


Before you begin



The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later.

About this task

Complete the following steps in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Click the **Show pop-up menu** icon () in the Reports tab navigation pane, and do one of the following:

- To edit the report definition, click the **Edit** icon ().
- To copy the report definition, click the **Copy** icon (.

The Summary page opens. This page shows the time settings, the report content, and the filter settings of the report.

Click the links below each summary section to change the corresponding settings. You cannot change the report type.

2. Optional: To edit the time settings, click **Modify the date and reporting cycle settings of your report**.

According to the type of report you defined, either the Select Snapshot Type page, or the Select Period Type page opens.

3. Optional: To modify the report content, click **Modify the result content**.

The Specify Report Content page opens.

For reports with a reporting cycle, the list of attributes contains either the snapshot number attribute, or the time slice number attribute, depending on the type of report you defined. You cannot delete this attribute.

4. Optional: To modify the filter settings, click **Modify the filter settings**.

The Specify Filter Content page opens.

5. On the Summary page, do one of the following:

- If your report definition does not contain parameters, click **Run**.
The resulting report is displayed.
- If your report definition contains parameters, click **Next**.
You can change the values of the parameter, then click **Run**. The resulting report is displayed.

If the report results are not as you expected, you can click **Edit** to change the settings for the report.

6. On the Report Result page, click **Save**. If you are going to create a copy of a report definition, enter a name for the new report, and click **Save** again.

The new report appears in the navigation pane.

Related concepts

Time processing

In your report, consider the way that Business Process Choreographer Explorer processes timestamps and durations.

Related reference

Attributes for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Use attributes to define the content of your report in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and to filter the results. The attributes that are available depend on the report type.

Business process events for Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Business process events are sent if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A subset of these events is available for Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Performance-relevant attributes

The time that is necessary to run a report definition using Business Process Choreographer Explorer can vary. To improve the performance of the report generation, you can optimize your report definition. Some general rules can help you to evaluate the influence that the report attributes have on the performance.

Deleting saved user-defined report definitions

To keep the navigation pane clear and manageable, delete outdated and redundant report definitions in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.



Before you begin

The Reports tab is visible only if reporting is configured. The reporting function can be configured when you configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer, however it can also be configured later. You cannot restore deleted report definitions.

About this task

Complete the following step in Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

To delete a report definition, click the **Show pop-up menu** icon () in the Reports tab navigation pane, and click the **Delete** icon ()

Results

The report name disappears from the navigation pane.

Part 4. Developing and deploying modules

Chapter 9. Developing client applications for business processes and tasks

You can use a modeling tool to build and deploy business processes and tasks. These processes and tasks are interacted with at runtime, for example, a process is started, or tasks are claimed and completed. You can use Business Process Choreographer Explorer to interact with processes and tasks, or the Business Process Choreographer APIs to develop customized clients for these interactions.

About this task

These clients can be Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) clients, Web service clients, or Web clients that exploit the Business Process Choreographer Explorer JavaServer Faces (JSF) components. Business Process Choreographer provides Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) APIs and interfaces for Web services for you to develop these clients. The EJB API can be accessed by any Java application, including another EJB application. The interfaces for Web services can be accessed from either Java environments or Microsoft .Net environments.

Related concepts

Invocation scenarios for business processes

A business process is a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component implementation. It can expose services to other partners and consume services provided by other partners. A business process can be a service provider that is made available by the Business Process Choreographer APIs, an SCA service provider for other SCA service components, or an SCA client that invokes other SCA service components, including other business processes.

Comparison of the programming interfaces for interacting with business processes and human tasks

Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB), Web service, and Java Message Service (JMS), and Representational State Transfer Services (REST) generic programming interfaces are available for building client applications that interact with business processes and human tasks. Each of these interfaces has different characteristics.

The programming interface that you choose depends on several factors, including the functionality that your client application must provide, whether you have an existing end-user client infrastructure, whether you want to handle human workflows. To help you decide which interface to use, the following table compares the characteristics of the EJB, Web service, JMS, and REST programming interfaces.

	EJB interface	Web service interface	JMS message interface	REST interface
Functionality	This interface is available for both business processes and human tasks. Use this interface to build clients that work generically with processes and tasks.	This interface is available for both business processes and human tasks. Use this interface to build clients for a known set of processes and tasks.	This interface is available for business processes only. Use this interface to build messaging clients for a known set of processes.	This interface is available for both business processes and human tasks. Use this interface to build Web 2.0-style clients for a known set of processes and tasks.

	EJB interface	Web service interface	JMS message interface	REST interface
Data handling	<p>Supports remote artifact loading of schemas for accessing business object metadata.</p> <p>If the EJB client application is running in the same cell as the WebSphere Process Server that it connects to, the schemas that are needed for the business objects of the processes and tasks do not have to be available on the client, they can be loaded from the server using the remote artifact loader (RAL).</p> <p>RAL can also be used cross-cell if the client application runs in a full WebSphere Process Server installation. However, RAL cannot be used in a cross-cell setup where the client application runs in a WebSphere Process Server client installation.</p>	<p>Schema artifacts for input data, output data, and variables, must be available in an appropriate format on the client.</p>	<p>Schema artifacts for input data, output data, and variables, must be available in an appropriate format on the client.</p>	<p>Schema artifacts for input data, output data, and variables, must be available in an appropriate format on the client.</p>
Client environment	<p>A WebSphere Process Server installation or a WebSphere Process Server client installation.</p>	<p>Any runtime environment that supports Web service calls, including Microsoft .NET environments.</p>	<p>Any runtime environment that supports JMS clients, including SCA modules that use SCA JMS imports.</p>	<p>Any runtime environment that supports REST clients.</p>
Security	<p>Java 2, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) security.</p>	<p>Web services security.</p>	<p>Java 2, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) security for the WebSphere Process Server installation. You can also secure the queues where the JMS client application puts the API messages, for example, using WebSphere MQ security mechanisms.</p>	<p>Client application that call the REST methods must use an appropriate HTTP authentication mechanism.</p>

An operation can be exposed by multiple protocols. Observe the following general considerations if you use the same operation in different protocols.

- In Web service and REST interfaces, all object identifiers, such as PIID, AIID, and TKIID are represented by a string type. Only the EJB API interface expects a type-safe object ID.
- Operation overloading is only used for EJB methods and not for WSDL operations. In some cases, multiple WSDL operations exist, in other cases, only one WSDL operation exists that allows all of the parameter variations either by omission (`minOccurs="0"`), or null values (`nullable="true"`).
- In some EJB methods, XML namespaces and local names are passed as separate parameters. Most WSDL operations use the QName XML schema type to pass these parameters.
- Asynchronous interactions with long-running WSDL request-response operations, such as the `callWithReplyContext` operation in the EJB interface or the `callAsync` operation in the WSDL interface, are represented by the `call` operation in the JMS interface.

- The EJB interface returns a set of API objects, which expose getter and setter methods for the contained fields. Web service and REST interfaces return complex-typed (XML or JSON) documents to the client.
- Some Human Task Manager services operating on human tasks are also available as Business Flow Manager services operating on activities that call a human task.
-

Chapter 10. Queries on business process and task data

Instance data for long-running business processes and human tasks are stored persistently in the database and are accessible by queries. Also, template data for business process templates and human task templates can be accessed using a query interface.

The EJB query interfaces, query API, and query table API, are available with Business Process Choreographer.

Depending on the clients that access process or task related data, one or more of the interfaces can be the right choice. REST and Web services APIs are available in Business Process Choreographer for querying task and process list data. However, for high volume process list and task list queries, use the Business Process Choreographer EJB query table API or REST query table API for performance reasons.

Comparison of the programming interfaces for retrieving process and task data

Business Process Choreographer provides a query table API and a query API for retrieving process and task data. Each of these interfaces has different characteristics.

The query interface that you choose depends on several factors, including the functionality that your client application must provide, whether you have an existing end-user client infrastructure, and performance considerations. To help you decide which interface to use, the following table compares the characteristics of the query table and the query programming interfaces.

Characteristic	query table API	query API
Availability	The query table API is available for the Business Flow Manager EJB interface and the REST programming interface.	The query API is available for EJB, Web service, JMS, and REST programming interfaces.
Methods for content retrieval	The API provides the following methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• queryEntities• queryEntityCount• queryRows• queryRowCount	The API provides the following methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• query• queryAll
Methods for meta data retrieval	The API provides the following methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• getQueryTableMetaData• findQueryTableMetaData• queryProcessTemplates• queryTaskTemplates	
Query table name	Specifies the query table on which the query table API is runs. Only one query table can be queried at any one time. For example, queryEntities("CUST.TASKS", ...).	The SELECT clause specifies the columns and predefined database views on which the query runs. This specification is similar to an SQL select clause. For example, query("TASK.TKIID, TASK.STATE, WORK_ITEM.REASON", ...).

Characteristic	query table API	query API
SELECT clause and selected attributes	Use the filter options of the query table API to specify the attributes that the query is to return. Because the query is run against one query table, the attributes are uniquely identifiable by their names.	Use the SELECT clause to specify attributes. The syntax of the attribute name is: <i>view_name.attribute_name</i> . For example, to search for task states, specify TASK.STATE in your query.
WHERE clause and filters	Use the queryCondition property on the query table API to further filter the result of queries. Query tables provide pre-filtered content if primary query table filters, authorization filters, or query table filters have been specified on the query table definition.	Use the WHERE clause to filter queries.
WHERE clause and selection criteria	The WHERE clause of the query API is not needed in this form on the query table API. Use the queryCondition property on the query table API for additional filtering. Selection criteria in the query table definition select a particular property of the attached query table. This is achieved in addition to the filtering by the WHERE clause on the query API.	Selection criteria are not available for the query API. However, selection criteria are similar to the part of the WHERE clause that defines, for example, the name or locale of QUERY_PROPERTY, or TASK_CPROP, or TASK_DESC. For example, a WHERE clause of QUERY_PROPERTY.NAME='xyz' is the same as specifying NAME='xyz' as a selection criterion on the query table definition for the QUERY_PROPERTY attached query table.
Work items and authorization	Use the WORK_ITEM query table to access work items. You can customize the use of work items on the query table definition when the query table is developed and on the query table API, using the AuthorizationOptions object or the AdminAuthorizationOptions object. For example, to exclude everybody work items when querying the TASK query table, specify a queryCondition property WI.EVERYBODY=0 or specify setUseEverybody(Boolean.FALSE) on the AuthorizationOptions property.	Use the WORK_ITEM view to access work items. All four types of work items are considered for the query result: everybody, individual, groups, and inherited work items. To filter the work items for a specific type of work item, customize the WHERE clause. For example, to exclude the everybody work items, specify WORK_ITEM.EVERYBODY=0, in the WHERE clause.
Parameters	You can use parameters in filters and selection criteria for composite query tables.	Parameters are not available for the query API unless stored queries are used.
Stored queries and query tables	The difference between a stored query and a query table is that stored queries are defined for one particular query, while a query table is defined for a particular set of queries. For example, the query table definition does not allow the specification of an order-by clause because this information is typically available only when the query is run.	You can use stored queries to run query that contains a predefined set of options.
Materialized views	Materialized views are not available for the query table API.	Materialized views use database technologies to provide performance improvements for queries.
Custom tables	Supplemental query tables offer the same functionality as custom tables.	Custom tables are used to include data in queries that is external to the Business Process Choreographer database schema.
queryAll and authorization options	The queryAll functionality is provided by the AdminAuthorizationOptions object, which can be passed to the query table API instead of the AuthorizationOptions object. The caller must be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role.	The queryAll method which can be used by users that have the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role to return all of the objects in the query result without being restricted by work items for a particular user or group.
Internationalization	For attributes of query tables and for the query table, localized display names and descriptions are available when query tables are used.	Names of the columns of the selected views, as they appear in the database, are returned.

Query tables in Business Process Choreographer

Query tables support task and process list queries on data that is contained in the Business Process Choreographer database schema. This includes human task data and business process data that is managed by Business Process Choreographer, and external business data. Query tables provide an abstraction on the data of Business Process Choreographer that can be used by client applications. In this way, client applications become independent of the actual implementation of the query table. Query table definitions are deployed on Business Process Choreographer containers, and are accessible using the query table API.

There are three types of query tables: predefined query tables, supplemental query tables, and composite query tables.

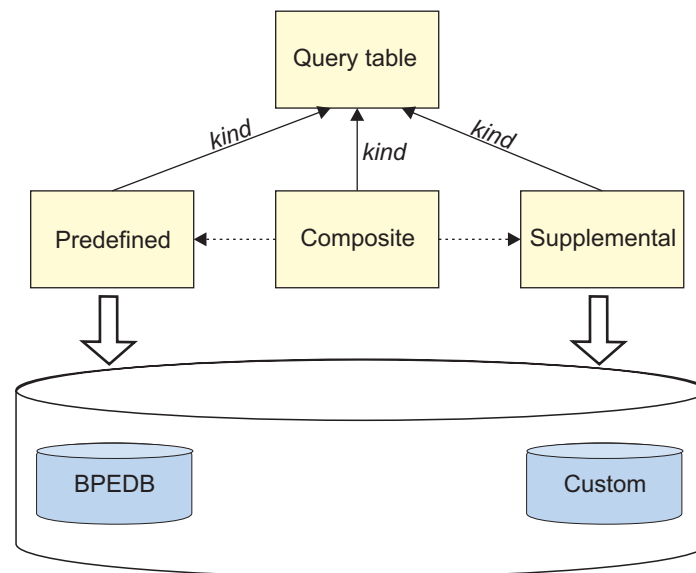


Figure 4. Query tables in Business Process Choreographer

Query tables are represented using similar models in the query table runtime, and can be queried using the query table API. While predefined and supplemental query tables point directly to tables or views in the database, composite query tables compose parts of this data and make it available in a single query table.

Query tables enhance the predefined database views and the existing query interfaces of Business Process Choreographer. Query tables:

- Are optimized for running process and task list queries, using performance optimized access patterns.
- Simplify and consolidate access to the information needed.
- Allow for the fine-grained configuration of authorization and filter options.

Query tables can be customized, for example, configuration options can determine that a query table contains only those tasks or process instances that are relevant in a particular scenario. Where performance is important, such as with high volume process list and task list queries, use query tables.

The Query Table Builder is provided as an Eclipse plug-in to:

- Develop composite and supplemental query tables
- Import and export query table definitions in XML format

The Query Table Builder can be downloaded on the WebSphere Business Process Management SupportPacs site. Look for PA71 WebSphere Process Server - Query Table Builder. To access the link, see the related references section of this topic.

Related reference

manageQueryTable.py script

The manageQueryTable.py script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Predefined query tables

Predefined query tables provide access to the data in the Business Process Choreographer database. They are the query table representation of the corresponding predefined Business Process Choreographer database views, such as the TASK view or the PROCESS_INSTANCE view.

Predefined query tables use the same underlying physical data and therefore have the same structure as predefined database views. However, predefined query tables enhance the functionality and performance of predefined database views because they are optimized for running process and task list queries.

The predefined query tables can be queried directly using the query table API. When you access the tables using the query table API, you are offered more options for configuration than when you use the query API. You can develop a composite query table that contains all of the information to be retrieved when the query is run, not just the information from a single table.

Authorization is enabled for all work items, that is, everybody, individual, group, and inherited work items. On predefined query tables with instance data, unless specified, the query table API defaults to everybody, individual, and group work items.

Properties

Predefined query tables have the following properties:

Table 19. Properties of predefined query tables

Property	Description
Name	The query table name is the name of one of the predefined database views, in uppercase, for example TASK.
Attributes	<p>Attributes of predefined query tables define the pieces of information that are available for queries. These attributes are the names of columns, in uppercase, that are specified by the predefined database views.</p> <p>The attributes are defined with a name and a type. The type is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Boolean: A boolean value • Decimal: A floating point number • ID: An object ID, such as TKIID of the TASK query table TASK • Number: An integer, short, or long • String: A string • Timestamp: A timestamp

Table 19. Properties of predefined query tables (continued)

Property	Description
Authorization	<p>Predefined query tables use either instance-based or role-based authorization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Predefined query tables with instance data require instance-based authorization. This means that only objects with a work item for the user who performs the query are returned. However, using the AdminAuthorizationOptions object, this verification can be reduced to a verification of the existence of a work item of any user. The user must have the BPSystemAdministrator J2EE role for those queries. • Predefined query tables with template data require role-based authorization, which means that only users in the BPSystemAdministrator J2EE role can access the contents of those query tables.

Predefined query tables with instance data

The following table shows the predefined query tables that contain instance data. These query tables:

- Can be used as the primary query of a composite query table.
- Use instance-based authorization if queried directly. This is accomplished with a join (SQL-) with the view that stores authorization information, that is, the predefined WORK_ITEM view or query table.
- Contain instance data, for example data of task instances or process instances.

Table 20. Predefined query tables containing instance data

Instance data	Query table name
Information about activities of a process instance.	ACTIVITY
	ACTIVITY_ATTRIBUTE
	ACTIVITY_SERVICE
Information about escalations belonging to human tasks.	ESCALATION
	ESCALATION_CPROP
	ESCALATION_DESC
Information about process instances.	PROCESS_ATTRIBUTE
	PROCESS_INSTANCE
	QUERY_PROPERTY
Information about human tasks.	TASK
	TASK_CPROP
	TASK_DESC

The WORK_ITEM query table also contains instance data, but this is not available as the primary query table or an attached query table. Work item information is available implicitly when querying query tables that use instance-based authorization. That is, attributes of the WORK_ITEM query table can be used when querying a query table with instance-based authorization, even though the attributes are not explicitly specified by the query table.

Predefined query tables with template data

Predefined query tables with template data require role-based authorization. They can be queried only by administrators using the `AdminAuthorizationOptions` object.

The following table shows the predefined query tables that contain template data. These query tables:

- Can be used as the primary query table of a composite query table.
- Use role-based authorization if queried directly. This means that the caller must be in the `BPESystemAdministrator J2EE` role, and `AdminAuthorizationOptions` must be used.
- Contain template data, for example, the template data of task templates or process templates.

Table 21. Predefined query tables containing template data

Template data	Query table name
Information about application components.	APPLICATION_COMP
Information about escalation templates.	ESC_TEMPL
	ESC_TEMPL_CPROP
	ESC_TEMPL_DESC
Information about process templates.	PROCESS_TEMPLATE
	PROCESS_TEMPL_ATTR
Information about task templates.	TASK_TEMPL
	TASK_TEMPL_CPROP
	TASK_TEMPL_DESC

Supplemental query tables

Supplemental query tables in Business Process Choreographer expose to the query table API business data that is not managed by Business Process Choreographer. With supplemental query tables, this external data can be used with data from the predefined query tables when retrieving business process instance information or human task information.

Supplemental query tables relate to database tables or database views in the Business Process Choreographer database. They are query tables that contain supplemental business data that is maintained by customer applications. Supplemental query tables provide information in a composite query table in addition to information that is contained in a predefined query table.

Supplemental query tables have the following properties:

Table 22. Properties of supplemental query tables

Property	Description
Name	<p>The query table name must be unique in a Business Process Choreographer installation. When the query is run, this name is used to identify the query table that is queried.</p> <p>A query table is uniquely identified using its name, which is defined as <i>prefix.name</i>. The maximum length of <i>prefix.name</i> is 28 characters. The prefix must be different to the reserved prefix 'IBM', for example, 'COMPANY.BUS_DATA'.</p>

Table 22. Properties of supplemental query tables (continued)

Property	Description
Database name	The name of the related table or view in the database. Only uppercase letters may be used.
Database schema	The schema of the related table or view in the database. Only uppercase letters can be used. The database schema must be different to the database schema of the Business Process Choreographer database. Nevertheless, the table or view must be accessible with the same JDBC data source that is used to access the Business Process Choreographer database.
Attributes	<p>Attributes of supplemental query tables define the pieces of information that are available for queries. These attributes must match the related name of the columns in the related database table or view.</p> <p>The attributes are defined with a name and a type. The name is defined in uppercase. The type is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Boolean: A boolean value • Decimal: A floating point number • ID: An object ID of 16 bytes in length, such as TKIID of the TASK query table • Number: An integer, short, or long • String: A string • Timestamp: A timestamp
Join	Joins must be defined on supplemental query tables if they are attached in composite query tables. A join defines which attributes are used to correlate information in the supplemental query table with the information in the primary query table. When a join is defined, the source attribute and the target attribute must be of the same type.
Authorization	No authorization is specified for supplemental query tables, therefore, all authenticated users can see the contents.

Composite query tables

Composite query tables in Business Process Choreographer comprise predefined query tables and supplemental query tables. They combine data from existing tables or views. Use a composite query table to retrieve the information for a process instance list or task list, such as My To Dos.

Composite query tables allow for a fine-grained configuration of filters and authorization options for optimized data access when the query is run. They do not have a specific representation of data in the database; they access the database contents of the related predefined and supplemental query tables. Composite query tables are realized with SQL, which is optimized for task and process list queries.

Composite query tables are designed by client developers. They are suggested for use in production scenarios in favor of the standard Business Process Choreographer query APIs, because they provide an abstraction over the actual implementation of the query and thus enable query optimizations. Furthermore, composite query tables allow changes at runtime without redeployment of the client that accesses the query table.

The following figure provides an overview of the content of composite query tables:

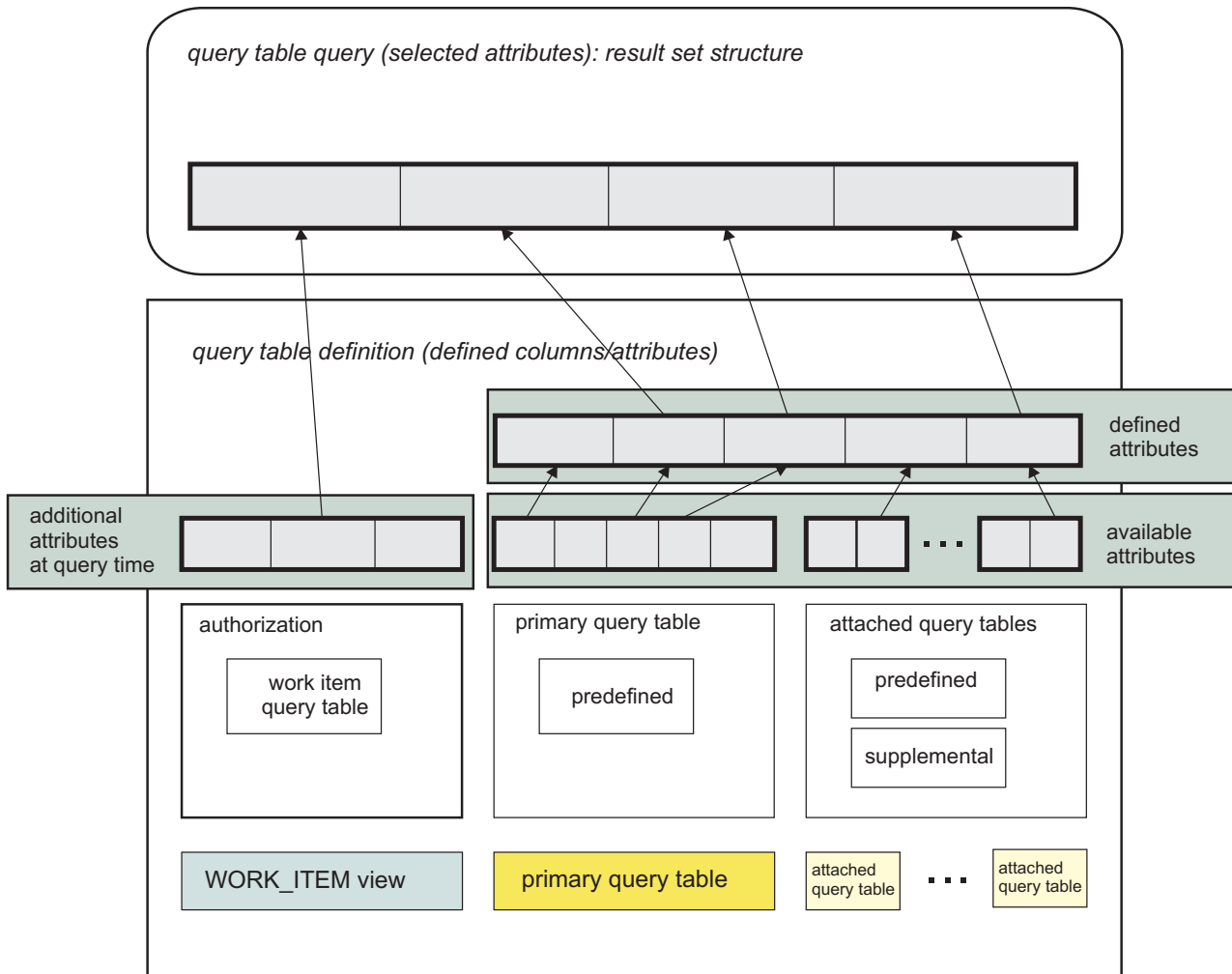


Figure 5. Composite query table content

All composite query tables are defined with one primary query table and zero or more attached query tables.

Primary query tables:

- Constitute the main information that is contained in a composite query table.
- Must be one of the predefined query tables.
- Uniquely identify each object in the composite query table by the primary key. For example, for the TASK predefined query table, this is the task ID TKIID.
- Authorize the contents of a query table using work items which are contained in the WORK_ITEM query table, if instance-based authorization is used.
- Determine the list of objects that are returned as rows of a table when querying the composite query table.

Attached query tables:

- Can be predefined query tables and supplemental query tables, which are already deployed on the system.

- Are available to provide information in addition to the information that is provided by the primary query table. For example, if TASK is the primary query table, the description of the task provided in the TASK_DESC query table can be added to the contents of the composite query table.

Typically, the primary query table is chosen based on the purpose of the composite query table.

- If the composite query table describes a task list, the TASK query table is the primary query table.
- If the composite query table describes a process list, the PROCESS_INSTANCE query table is the primary query table.
- Lists of activities are retrieved using the ACTIVITY primary query table.
- Lists of human task escalations are retrieved using the ESCALATION primary query table.

The relationship between primary and attached query tables

A maximum of one row of the attached query table must correspond to a row in the primary query table, which is referred to as a one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship. If the one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship is violated, a runtime exception occurs when the query is run.

Primary query tables and attached query tables are correlated using a join attribute that is defined on the attached query table. This join attribute cannot be changed for predefined query tables, because it describes the relationship between the data in the various query tables of Business Process Choreographer. This join attribute is usually sufficient to maintain the one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship. For example, the CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID attribute is used on the TASK query table to attach the related process instance information that is identified by the PIID attribute on the PROCESS_INSTANCE query table. However, when a one-to-many relationship exists, an additional criterion must be specified. This is called the selection criterion.

Selection criteria are specified during query table development using the Query Table Builder. They are used in the query table definition to choose one piece of information in a one-to-many relationship. For example, this could be "LOCALE='en_US' ". A task can have several descriptions that are identified using different locales for a single task.

Example 1:

The following figure provides a sample visualization of the selection criteria that is specified on attached query tables:

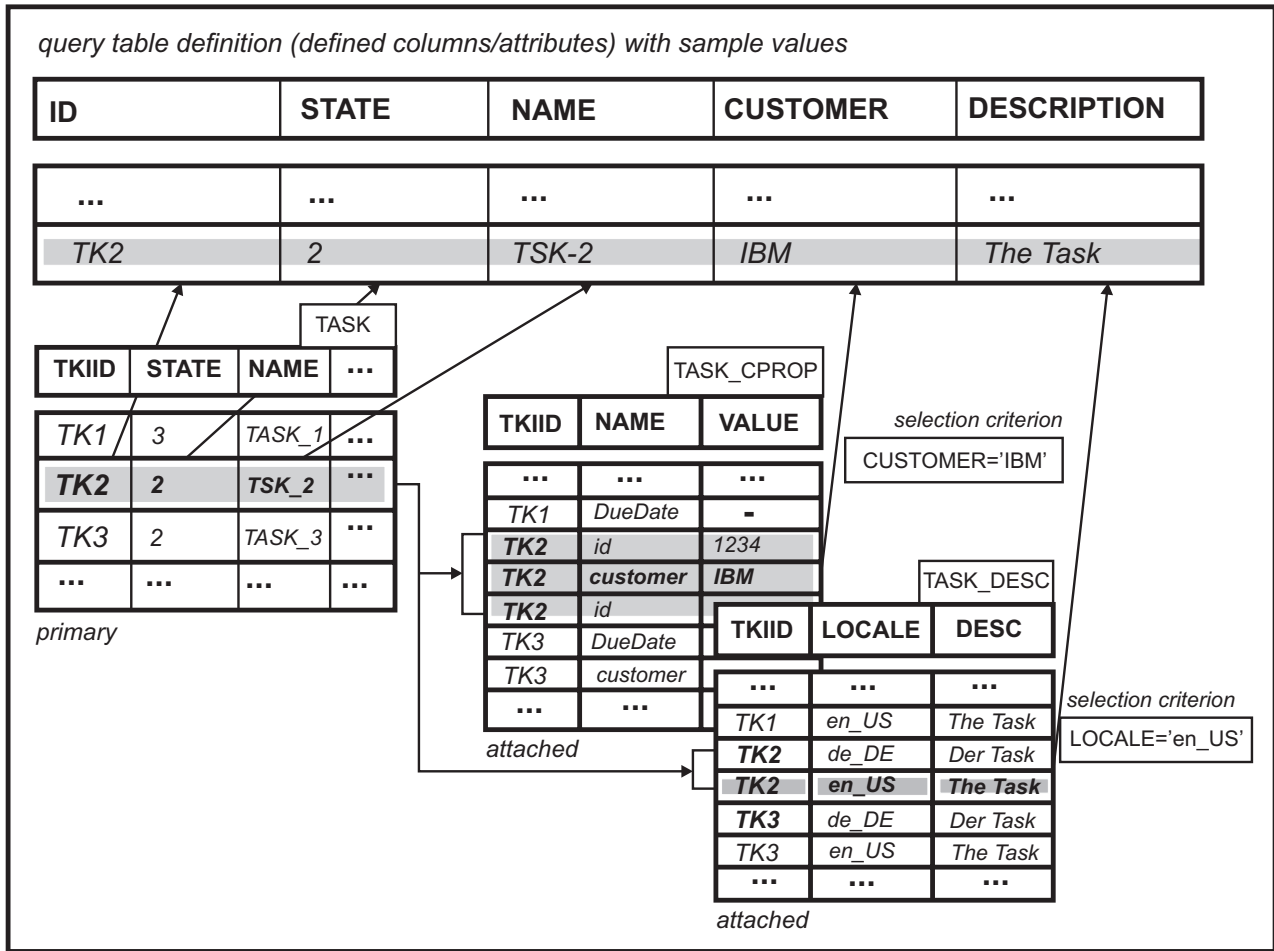


Figure 6. Composite query table with selection criteria

The composite query table contains the ID, STATE, NAME, CUSTOMER, and DESCRIPTION attributes.

- ID, STATE, and NAME are provided by the TASK primary query table.
- CUSTOMER is a custom property on TASK. Custom properties are stored in the TASK_CPROP query table. For a particular task, a custom property is uniquely identified using its name. This is reflected in the selection criterion "CUSTOMER='IBM'".
- DESCRIPTION is the description of the task, which is stored in TASK_DESC query table. For each task instance, the task description for a particular task is uniquely identified by its locale. This is reflected in the selection criterion "LOCALE='en_US'".

Example 2:

If TASK is the primary query table and TASK_DESC is attached to it, a particular locale must be chosen, which is the LOCALE attribute of the TASK_DESC query table. The focus of this example is on the relationship between the primary and the attached query tables, using TASK as the primary query table and TASK_DESC as the attached query table. The table shows sample contents of a composite query table with a valid selection criterion for the TASK_DESC attached query table.

Table 23. Valid contents of a composite query table

TASK primary query table information	TASK_DESC attached query table information	
NAME	LOCALE	DESCRIPTION
task_one	en_US	This is a description.
task_two	en_US	This is a description.
...

The following table shows hypothetical invalid contents (in **bold type**) if the selection criterion is set incorrectly, which means that the one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship is violated.

Table 24. Invalid contents of a composite query table

Information from TASK (primary query table)	Information from TASK_DESC (attached query table)	
NAME	LOCALE	DESCRIPTION
task_one	en_US	This is a description.
task_one	de_DE	Das ist eine Beschreibung.
...

Properties

Composite query tables have the following properties:

Table 25. Properties of composite query tables

Property	Description
Name	<p>The query table name must be unique within a Business Process Choreographer installation. When the query is run, this query table name is used to identify the query table that is queried.</p> <p>A query table is uniquely identified using its name, which is defined as <i>prefix.name</i> for composite query tables. The maximum length of the <i>prefix.name</i> is 28 characters. The prefix must be different from the reserved prefix 'IBM', for example, 'COMPANY.TODO_TASK_LIST'.</p>

Table 25. Properties of composite query tables (continued)

Property	Description
Attributes	<p>Attributes of composite query tables define the pieces of information that are available for queries.</p> <p>The attributes are defined with a name, in uppercase. The type is inherited from the referenced attribute, which is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Boolean: A boolean value • Decimal: A floating point number • ID: An object ID, such as TKIID of query table TASK • Number: An integer, short, or long • String: A string • Timestamp: A timestamp <p>Attributes of composite query tables are defined using a reference to attributes of the primary query table or the attached query tables. The attributes of the composite query tables inherit the types and constants of referenced attributes.</p> <p>In addition to the attributes that are part of the query table definition, work item information can be queried at runtime. This is possible if the primary query table contains instance data, such as TASK or PROCESS_INSTANCE, and if instance-based authorization is used on the composite query table. For example, the query can be defined to return only human tasks of which the user is a potential owner.</p>
Authorization	<p>Each composite query table defines if instance-based, role-based, or no authorization is used when queries are run on it.</p> <p>If instance-based authorization is defined, only objects with a work item for the user who performs the query are returned. However, using AdminAuthorizationOptions this verification can be reduced to a verification of the existence of a work item of any user. The user must be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role for those queries, and AdminAuthorizationOptions must be passed to the query table API.</p> <p>If role-based authorization is defined, the user must be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role for those queries, and AdminAuthorizationOptions must be passed to the query table API.</p> <p>If no authorization is defined, the query is run without checks against the existence of work items of the related objects in the query table. All authenticated users can see the contents of the query table.</p> <p>Instance-based authorization can be defined if the primary query table contains instance data; role-based authorization can be defined if the primary query table contains template data. No authorization can be defined on composite query tables regardless of which primary query table is used.</p>

Filters

Filters are used to limit the number of objects, or rows, that are contained in a composite query table.

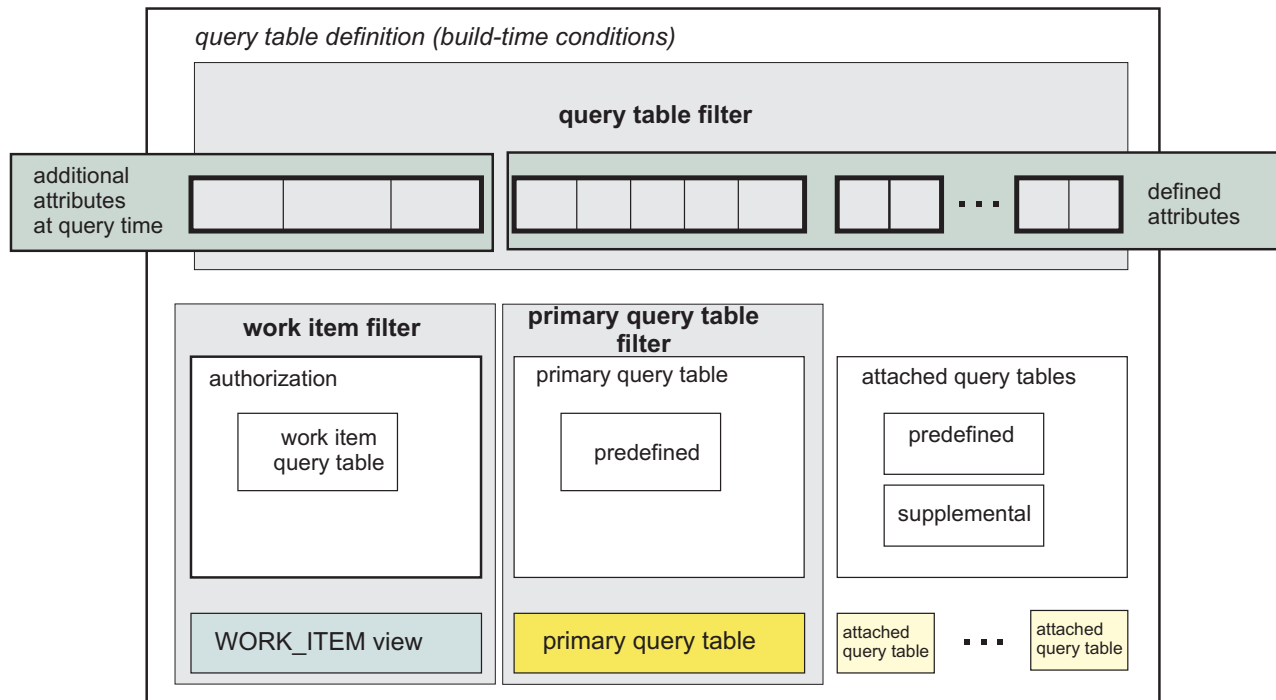


Figure 7. Filters in composite query tables

Filters in composite query tables can be defined during development on the:

- Primary query table, as the primary query table filter.
- Implicitly available WORK_ITEM query table which is responsible for authorization if the primary query table contains instance data. This filter is called the authorization filter, and is available only if the composite query table is configured to use instance-based authorization.
- Composite query table, as the query table filter.

Filters are defined during query table development. For example, a composite query table with the TASK primary query table can filter on tasks that are in the ready state ("STATE=STATE_READY" as the primary query table filter).

Authorization

Authorization for accessing the contents of a composite query table with a primary query table is similar to the authorization that is used to access the primary query table. The difference is that composite query tables can be configured to be more restrictive.

- If instance-based authorization is configured for use, the data contained in the composite query table is verified for existing work items in the WORK_ITEM query table. This verification is made against the primary query table. Everybody, individual, group, and inherited work items are used for the verification, depending on the configuration of the composite query table. If inherited work items are specified, objects that have a process instance as parent, such as a participating human task, with a related everybody, individual, or group work item as configured, are contained in the composite query table. Typically, inherited work items are useful only for administrators.

- Composite query tables with a primary query table that contains template data must not be set to use instance-based authorization. If role-based authorization is used, queries can be run only by users that are in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role, and the AdminAuthorizationOptions object must be used.

Query table development

Supplemental and composite query tables in Business Process Choreographer are developed during application development using the Query Table Builder. Predefined query tables cannot be developed or deployed. They are available when Business Process Choreographer is installed and provide a simple view on the artifacts in the Business Process Choreographer database schema.

The Query Table Builder is available as an Eclipse plug-in and can be downloaded on the WebSphere Business Process Management SupportPacs site. Look for PA71 WebSphere Process Server - Query Table Builder. To access the link, see the related references section of this topic.

Query tables impact on the way applications are developed and deployed. The following steps describe the roles involved when you design and develop a Business Process Choreographer application that uses query tables.

Table 26. Query table development steps

Step	Who	Description
1. Analysis	Business analyst, client developer	Analyze which query tables are needed in the client application. Questions to be answered are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How many task or process lists are provided to the user? Are there task or process lists that can share the same query table? • What kind of authorization is used? Instance-based authorization, role-based authorization, or none? • Are there other query tables already defined in the system that can be reused? • Must the query tables provide the content in multiple languages? If so, the selection criteria on attached query tables should be <code>LOCALE=\$LOCALE</code>.
2. Query table development	Client developer, business analyst	Develop the query tables that are used in the client application. Try to specify the definition of the query tables such that the best performance is achieved with query table queries.
3. Query table deployment	Administrator	Query tables must be deployed to the runtime before they can be used. This step is done using the <code>manageQueryTable.py wsadmin</code> command.
4. Query table queries	Client developer	To run queries against query tables is the last step of query table development. The client developer must know the name of the query table and its attributes.

The following is sample code, which uses the query table API to query a query table. Examples 1 and 2 are provided to query the predefined query table TASK for simplicity reasons. Examples 3 and 4 are provided to query a composite query table, which is assumed to be deployed on the system. In application development, composite query tables should be used rather than directly querying the predefined query tables.

Example 1

```
// get the naming context and lookup the Business
// Flow Manager EJB home; note that the Business Flow
// Manager EJB home should be cached for performance
// reasons; also, it is assumed that there's an EJB
// reference to the local business flow manager EJB
Context ctx = new InitialContext();
LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome home =
    (LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome)
    ctx.lookup("java:comp/env/ejb/BFM");

// create the business flow manager client-side stub
LocalBusinessFlowManager bfm = home.create();

// *****
// ***** example 1 *****
// *****

// execute a query against the TASK predefined query
// table; this relates to a simple My ToDo's task list
EntityResultSet ers = null;
ers = bfm.queryEntities("TASK", null, null, null);

// print the result to STDOUT
EntityInfo entityInfo = ers.getEntityInfo();
List attList = entityInfo.getAttributeInfo();
int attSize = attList.size();

Iterator iter = ers.getEntities().iterator();
while (iter.hasNext()) {
    System.out.print("Entity: ");
    Entity entity = (Entity) iter.next();
    for (int i = attSize - 1; i >= 0; i--) {
        AttributeInfo ai = (AttributeInfo) attList.get(i);
        System.out.print(
            entity.getAttributeValue(ai.getName()));
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

Example 2

```
// *****
// ***** example 2 *****
// *****

// same example as example 1, but using the row-based
// query approach
RowResultSet rrs = null;
rrs = bfm.queryRows("TASK", null, null, null);

attList = rrs.getAttributeInfo();
attSize = attList.size();

// print the result to STDOUT
while (rrs.next()) {
    System.out.print("Row: ");
    for (int i = attSize - 1; i >= 0; i--) {
        AttributeInfo ai = (AttributeInfo) attList.get(i);
```

```

    System.out.print(
        rrs.getAttributeValue(ai.getName()));
    }
    System.out.println();
}

```

Example 3

```

// *****
// ***** example 3 *****
// *****

// execute a query against a composite query table
// that has been deployed on the system before;
// the name is assumed to be COMPANY.TASK_LIST
ers = bfm.queryEntities(
    "COMPANY.TASK_LIST", null, null, null);
^
// print the result to STDOUT ...

```

Example 4

```

// *****
// ***** example 4 *****
// *****

// query against the same query table as in example 3,
// but with customized options
FilterOptions fo = new FilterOptions();

// return only objects which are in state ready
fo.setQueryCondition("STATE=STATE_READY");

// sort by the id of the object
fo.setSortAttributes("ID");

// limit the number of entities to 50
fo.setThreshold(50);

// only get a sub-set of the defined attributes
// on the query table
fo.setSelectedAttributes("ID, STATE, DESCRIPTION");

AuthorizationOptions ao = new AuthorizationOptions();

// do not return objects that everybody is allowed
// to see
ao.setEverybodyUsed(Boolean.FALSE);

ers = bfm.queryEntities(
    "COMPANY.TASK_LIST", fo, ao, null);

// print the result to STDOUT ...

```

Related reference

manageQueryTable.py script

The manageQueryTable.py script deploys, undeploys, and updates query tables in Business Process Choreographer. It is also used to list query tables and to list the XML definition of a query table.

Filters and selection criteria of query tables

Filters and selection criteria are defined during query table development using the Query Table Builder, which uses a syntax similar to SQL WHERE clauses. Use these clearly defined filters and selection criteria to specify conditions that are based on attributes of query tables.

For information on installing the Query Table Builder, see the WebSphere Business Process Management SupportPacs site. Look for PA71 WebSphere Process Server - Query Table Builder. To access the link, see the related references section of this topic.

Attributes

Attributes in an expression refer to attributes of query tables. Depending on the location of the expression, different attributes are available. For the client developer, query filters passed to the query table API are the only location where expressions can be used. For developers of composite query tables, various other locations exist where expressions can be used. The following table describes the attributes that are available at the different locations.

Table 27. Attributes for query table expressions

Where	Expression	Available attributes
Query table API	Query filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All attributes defined on the query table. If instance-based authorization is used, all attributes defined on the WORK_ITEM query tables, prefixed with 'WI.' . <p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> STATE=STATE_READY, if the query table contains a STATE attribute and if a STATE_READY constant is defined for this attribute STATE=STATE_READY AND WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER, if the query table contains a STATE attribute and the query table uses instance-based authorization
Composite query table	Query table filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All attributes defined for the primary query table. <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> STATE=STATE_READY, if the query table contains a STATE attribute and a STATE_READY constant is defined for this attribute
	Primary query table filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All attributes defined on the WORK_ITEM predefined query table, prefixed with 'WI.' . <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER
	Authorization filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All attributes defined on the related attached query table. <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LOCALE='en_US', if the attached query table contains a LOCALE attribute, such as the TASK_DESC query table
	Selection criterion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All attributes defined on the related attached query table. <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LOCALE='en_US', if the attached query table contains a LOCALE attribute, such as the TASK_DESC query table

The following figure shows the various locations of filters and selection criteria in expressions, and includes examples:

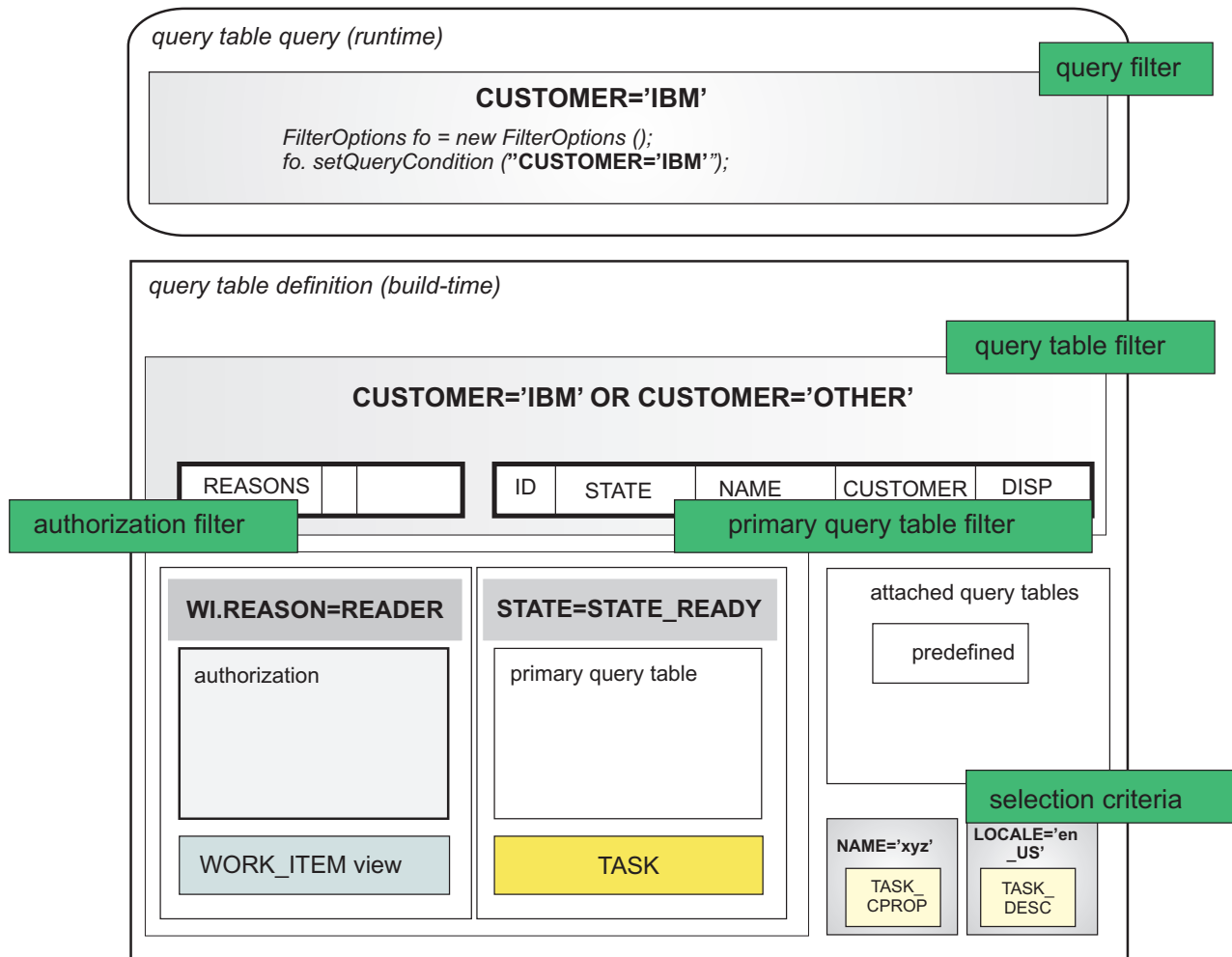


Figure 8. Filters and selection criteria in expressions

Expressions

Expressions have the following syntax:

```
expression ::= attribute binary_op value |
             attribute unary_op |
             attribute list_op list |
             (expression) |
             expression AND expression |
             expression> OR expression
```

The following rules apply:

- AND takes precedence over OR. Subexpressions are connected using AND and OR.
- Brackets can be used to group expressions and must be balanced.

Examples:

- STATE = STATE_READY
- NAME IS NOT NULL
- STATE IN (2, 5, STATE_FINISHED)
- ((PRIORITY=1) OR (WI.REASON=2)) AND (STATE=2)

An expression is executed in a certain scope which determines the attributes that are valid for the expression. Selection criteria, or query filters, are run in the scope of the query table on which the query is run.

The following example is for a query that is run on the predefined TASK query table:

```
'(STATE=STATE_READY AND WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER)
OR (WI.REASON=REASON_OWNER)'
```

Binary operators

The following binary operators are available:

```
binary_op ::= = | < | > | <> | <= | >= | LIKE | NOT LIKE
```

The following rules apply:

- The left-side operand of a binary operator must reference an attribute of a query table.
- The right-side operand of a binary operator must be a literal value, constant value, or parameter.
- The LIKE and NOT LIKE operators are only valid for attributes of attribute type STRING.
- The left-side operand and the right-side operand must be of compatible attribute types.
- User parameters must be compatible to the attribute type of the left-side attribute.

Examples:

- STATE > 2
- NAME LIKE 'start%'
- STATE <> PARAM(theState)

Unary operators

The following unary operators are available:

```
unary_op ::= IS NULL | IS NOT NULL
```

The following rules apply:

- The left-side operand of a unary operator must reference an attribute of a query table. Valid attributes depend on the location of the filter or selection criterion.
- All attributes can be checked for null values, for example: CUSTOMER IS NOT NULL.

Example:

```
DESCRIPTION IS NOT NULL
```

List operators

The following list operators are available:

```
list_op ::= IN | NOT IN
```

The following rules apply:

- The right-side of a list operator must not be replaced by a user parameter.

- User parameters can be used within the list on the right-side operand.

Example:

```
STATE IN (STATE_READY, STATE_RUNNING, PARAM(st), 1)
```

Lists are represented as follows:

```
list ::= value [, list]
```

The following rules apply:

- The right-side of a list operator must not be replaced by a user parameter.
- User parameters can be used within the list on the right-side operand.

Examples:

- (2, 5, 8)
- (STATE_READY, STATE_CLAIMED)

Values

In expressions, a value is one of the following:

- **Constant:** A constant value, which is defined for the attribute of a predefined query table. For example, STATE_READY is defined for the STATE attribute of the TASK query table.
- **Literal:** Any hardcoded value.
- **Parameter:** A parameter is replaced when the query is run with a specific value.

Constants are available for some attributes of predefined query tables. For information on constants that are available on attributes of predefined query tables, refer to the information on predefined views. Only constants that define integer values are exposed with query tables. Also, instead of constants, related literal values, or parameters can be used.

Examples:

- STATE_READY on the STATE attribute of the TASK query table can be used in a filter to check whether the task is in the ready state.
- REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER on the REASON attribute of the WORK_ITEM query table can be used in a filter to check whether the user who runs the query against a query table is a potential owner.
- Query filter STATE=STATE_READY is the same as STATE=2, if the query is run on the TASK query table.

Literals can also be used in expressions. A special syntax must be used for timestamps and for IDs.

Examples:

- STATE=1
- NAME='theName'
- CREATED > TS ('2008-11-26 T12:00:00')
- TKTID=ID('_TKT:801a011e.9d57c52.ab886df6.1fcc0000')

Parameters in expressions allow for a dynamicity of composite query tables. There are user parameters and system parameters:

- User parameters are specified using PARAM (*name*). This parameter must be provided when the query is run. It is passed as an instance of the com.ibm.bpe.api.Parameter class into the query table API.
- System parameters are parameters that are provided by the query table runtime, without being specified when the query is run. The system parameters \$USER and \$LOCALE are available.
 - \$USER, which is a string, contains the value of the user who runs the query.
 - \$LOCALE, which is a string, contains the value of the locale that is used when the query is run. An example for the value of \$LOCALE is 'en_US'.

You can specify a parameter in the selection criteria of an attached query table which selects on a specific locale. For example, if the primary query table is TASK in a composite query table and an attached query table is TASK_DESC. The following are examples of parameters:

- STATE=PARAM(theState)
- LOCALE=\$LOCALE
- OWNER=\$USER

Authorization for query tables

Instance-based authorization, role-based authorization, or no authorization can be used when queries are run on query tables.

The authorization type used when a query is run on a query table is defined on the query table.

- Instance-based authorization indicates that objects in the query table are authorized using a work item. This is done by verifying if a suitable work item exists.
- Role-based authorization is based on J2EE roles. It indicates that the caller must be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role to see the contents of the query table. It is available for predefined query tables with template data and for composite query tables with a primary query table that contains template data. Objects in those query tables do not have related work items.
- When no authorization is specified, all authenticated users can see all contents of the query table, after filters are applied.

The type of authorization on predefined query tables and the type of authorization that can be configured on composite and supplemental query tables is outlined in the following table.

Table 28. Types of authorization for query tables

Query table	Instance-based authorization	Role-based authorization	No authorization
Predefined	Required for predefined query tables with instance data.	Required for predefined query tables with template data.	N/A

Table 28. Types of authorization for query tables (continued)

Query table	Instance-based authorization	Role-based authorization	No authorization
Composite	<p>Can be turned off which means that no authorization is used and the security constraints are overridden. That is, every authenticated user can use the query table to retrieve data, independently of whether they are authorized for the respective objects.</p> <p>Composite query tables with a primary query table that contains template data must not be set to use instance-based authorization.</p>	<p>Can be turned off, for example for composite query tables with a primary query table that contains template data. This means that no authorization is used and the security constraints are overridden. That is, every authenticated user can use the query table to retrieve data, independently of whether they are authorized for the respective objects.</p> <p>Composite query tables with a primary query table that contains instance data must not be set to use role-based authorization.</p>	All authenticated users can see all contents of the query table, after filters are applied.
Supplemental	Supplemental query tables must not be set to use instance-based authorization because they are not managed by Business Process Choreographer, and therefore it has no authorization information for the contents of these tables.	Supplemental query tables must not be set to use role-based authorization.	All authenticated users can see all contents of the query table, after filters are applied.

The following figure provides an overview of the available options for the authorization types, depending on the type of query table. Also, it outlines the different behaviors and the query table API and its authorization options.

Composite query table	primary query table with instance data	all	primary query table with template data
Predefined query tables	instance data	n/a	template data
Supplemental query tables	n/a	business data	n/a
Authorization	Instance-based authorization	None	Role-based authorization
Query with AuthorizationOptions	(A) Query result contains objects with work items related to the caller.	(C) Query result contains all objects that are in this query table.	n/a
Query with AdminAuthorizationOptions*	(B) Query result contains all objects that are in this query table.	(C) Query result contains all objects that are in this query table.	(D) Query result contains all objects that are in this query table.

Figure 9. Instance-based authorization for query tables

*) If the onBehalfUser is set, (A) applies

Instance-based authorization for objects in the query result using work items depend on the authorization parameter that is passed to the query table API and on the setting of the instance-based authorization flag of the query table.

- (A) Queries on predefined or composite query tables using the AuthorizationOptions object return entities that correlate with a related work item for this particular user. This is also the case if the AdminAuthorizationOptions object is used and onBehalfUser is set. Standard clients which present task or process lists to users usually use this combination of query tables and query table API parameters.

- (B) The full content of a query table consists of the entities that have a related work item, as configured with the instance-based authorization of the query table. Instance-based authorization considers four types of work items: everybody, individual, group, and inherited. The caller must be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role. This combination of query tables and query table API parameters is intended for use in administrative scenarios where the full list of available tasks or processes must be shown or searched.
- (C) Queries on query tables that do not use instance-based or row-based authorization return the same result if AdminAuthorizationOptions or AuthorizationOptions is passed into the query table API. This is available for supplemental and composite query tables. There is no check on work items or J2EE roles, therefore all authenticated users see the full content. Clients that do not want to restrict object visibility by applying the instance-based or role-based authorization constraints that are provided by Business Process Choreographer can turn off authorization checks when query table definitions are developed. When using claim and complete, however, users must have related work items.
- (D) Template data in predefined query tables or composite query tables with role-based authorization configured can be accessed only with role-based authorization. This requires the caller to be in the BPESystemAdministrator J2EE role. The query table API can be used to access template information instead of the query API.

Work items and instance-based authorization

Instance-based authorization provided by Business Process Choreographer is based on work items. Each work item describes who has which rights on what object. This information is accessible using the WORK_ITEM query table, if instance-based authorization is used.

The table describes the different types of work items that are considered if instance-based authorization is used when a query is run against a query table:

Table 29. Work item types

Work item type	Description
everybody	Everybody work items allow all users to access a specific object, such as a task or a process instance. In this case, the EVERYBODY attribute of the related work item is set to TRUE.
individual	Individual work items are work items that are created for particular users. The OWNER_ID attribute of the related work item is set to a specific user. Multiple work items which differ in the OWNER_ID attribute can exist for an object, such as a task.
group	Group work items are work items that are created for users of a particular group. The GROUP_NAME attribute of the related work item is set to a specific group.
inherited	Readers and administrators of process instances are also allowed to inherit the access to the human tasks which belong to these process instances, including escalations. Checks for an inherited work item in task queries are performed with complex SQL joins at runtime, which impacts on performance.

Work items are created by Business Process Choreographer in different situations. For example, at task creation, work items are created for the different roles, such as reader and potential owner, if related people assignment criteria were specified.

The following table describes the types of work items that are created, depending on the people assignment criteria that are defined, if instance-based authorization is used when a query is run on a query table. Inherited work items do not appear in the table because they reflect a relationship that is not explicitly modeled during process application development.

Table 30. Work items and people assignment criteria

Work item type	Related people assignment criteria
everybody	Everybody
individual	All people assignment criteria except verbs <i>Nobody</i> , <i>Everybody</i> , and <i>Group</i>
group	Group

Authorization filter on composite query tables

On composite query tables, an authorization filter can be specified if instance-based authorization is used. This filter restricts the work items which are used for authorization, based on certain attributes of work items. For example, the authorization filter "WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER" on a composite query table with the TASK primary query table restricts the tasks that are returned when a person runs a query. The result contains only tasks that represent a to-do for that person, that is, the result is restricted to those tasks the person is authorized to claim. This filter can also be specified as the query table filter or as the query filter. Nevertheless, for query performance reasons, it is beneficial to specify those filters as the authorization filter.

Attribute types for query tables

Attribute types are needed in Business Process Choreographer when query tables are defined, when literal values are used in queries, and when values of a query result are accessed. Rules and mappings are available for each of the attribute types.

A subset of the types that are available in the Java programming language and databases is used to define the type of an attribute of a query table. Attribute types are an abstraction of the concrete Java type or database type. For supplemental query tables, you must use a valid database type to attribute type mapping.

The following table describes the attribute types:

Table 31. Attribute types

Attribute type	Description
ID	The ID which is used to identify a human task (TKIID), a process instance (PIID), or other objects. For example, IDs are used to claim or complete a particular human task, which is identified with the specified TKIID.
STRING	Task descriptions or query properties can be represented as a string.
NUMBER	Numbers are used for attributes, such as the priority on a task.

Table 31. Attribute types (continued)

Attribute type	Description
TIMESTAMP	Timestamps describe a point in time, such as the time when a human task is created, or a process instance is finished.
DECIMAL	Decimals can be used as the type for query properties, for example when defining a query property with a variable of XSD type double.
BOOLEAN	Booleans can have one of two values, true or false. For example, human tasks provide an attribute, autoClaim, which identifies whether the task is claimed automatically if only a single user exists as the potential owner for this task.

Database type to attribute type mapping

Use attribute types to define query tables in Business Process Choreographer, when you run queries on the query tables, and to access values of a query result.

The following table describes the database types and their mapping to attribute types:

Table 32. Database type to attribute type mapping

Database type	Attribute type
A binary type with 16 bytes. This is the type used for IDs such as TKIID on TASK of the Business Process Choreographer tables.	ID
A character based type. The length depends on the column in the database table that is referenced by the attribute of the query table.	STRING
An integer database type, such as integer, short, or long.	NUMBER
A timestamp database type.	TIMESTAMP
A decimal type, such as float or double.	DECIMAL
A type that is convertible to a Boolean value, such as a number. 1 is interpreted as <i>true</i> , and all other numbers as <i>false</i> .	BOOLEAN

Example:

Consider a table in a DB2 environment, CUSTOM.ADDITIONAL_INFO, which is to be represented in Business Process Choreographer as a supplemental query table. The following SQL statement creates the database table:

```
CREATE TABLE CUSTOM.ADDITIONAL_INFO
(
  PIID      CHAR(16) FOR BIT DATA,
  INFO     VARCHAR(220),
  COUNT    INTEGER
);
```

The following mapping of database column types to query table attribute types is used for a supplemental query table for the CUSTOM.ADDITIONAL_INFO table.

Table 33. Database types to attribute types mapping example

Database column and type	Query table attribute and type
PIID CHAR(16) FOR BIT DATA	PIID (ID)
INFO VARCHAR(220)	INFO (STRING)
COUNT INTEGER	COUNT (NUMBER)

Supplemental query tables typically refer to existing database tables and views, such that table or view creation is not necessary.

Attribute type to literal representation mapping

Attribute types are used when query tables are defined in Business Process Choreographer, when queries are run on the query tables, and when values of a query result are accessed. Use this topic for information on attribute type to literal representation mapping.

Literal values can be used in expressions to define filter and selection criteria, such as in filters of composite query tables, and in filters that are passed to the query table API.

The following table describes the attribute types and their mapping to literal values. Placeholders are marked *italic*. Note that the attribute types ID and TIMESTAMP, which can be passed to the query table API, use a special syntax, which is also used by the query API.

Table 34. Attribute type to literal values mapping

Attribute type	Syntax and usage as literal value in expressions
ID	ID ('string representation of an ID') When developing client applications, IDs are represented either as a string or as an instance of the com.ibm.bpe.api.OID interface. The string representation can be obtained from an instance of the com.ibm.bpe.api.OID interface using the toString method. The string must be enclosed in single quotation marks.
STRING	'the string' The string must be enclosed in quotes.
NUMBER	number The number as text, and no quotation marks. Constants are defined for some number attributes on predefined query tables, and can be used.
TIMESTAMP	TS ('YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss') The timestamp must be specified as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • YYYY is the 4-digit year • MM is the 2-digit month of the year • DD is the 2-digit day of the month • hh is the 2-digit hour of the day (24-hour) • mm is the 2-digit minutes of the hour • ss is the 2-digit seconds of the minute The timestamp is interpreted as defined in the user's time zone.

Table 34. Attribute type to literal values mapping (continued)

Attribute type	Syntax and usage as literal value in expressions
DECIMAL	<code>number.fraction</code>
	The decimal number as text and no quotation marks; the .fraction part is optional.
BOOLEAN	<code>true, false</code>
	The Boolean value as text.

Examples:

- `filterOptions.setQueryCondition("STATE=2");`
- `filterOptions.setQueryCondition("STATE=STATE_READY");`
- a selection criterion on an attached query table TASK_DESC: `"LOCALE='en_US'"`
- `filterOptions.setQueryCondition("PTID=ID('_PT:8001011e.1dee8e51.247d6df6.29a60000')");`

Attribute type to parameter mapping

Use attribute types when you define query tables in Business Process Choreographer, when you run queries on the query tables, and to access values of a query result.

The following table describes the attribute types and their mapping to parameter values that can be used in expressions to define filter and selection criteria, such as in filters of composite query tables, and in filters passed to the query table API.

Table 35. Attribute type to user parameter values mapping

Attribute type	Usage as parameter value in expressions
ID	<p><code>PARAM(name)</code></p> <p>When developing client applications, IDs are represented either as a string or as an instance of the <code>com.ibm.bpe.api.OID</code> interface.</p> <p>As a parameter, both representations are valid. An array of bytes reflecting a valid OID can also be used (byte).</p>
STRING	<p><code>PARAM(name)</code></p> <p>The string representation of the object that is passed to the query table API at runtime by the <code>toString</code> method.</p>
NUMBER	<p><code>PARAM(name)</code></p> <p>A <code>java.lang.Long</code>, <code>java.lang.Integer</code>, <code>java.lang.Short</code>, or a <code>java.lang.String</code> representation of the number is passed to the query table API. Names of constants, as defined on some attributes of predefined query tables, can be also passed.</p>
TIMESTAMP	<p><code>PARAM(name)</code></p> <p>The following representations are valid:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A <code>java.lang.String</code> representation of the timestamp • Instances of <code>com.ibm.bpe.api.UTCDate</code> • Instances of <code>java.util.Calendar</code>

Table 35. Attribute type to user parameter values mapping (continued)

Attribute type	Usage as parameter value in expressions
DECIMAL	PARAM(<i>name</i>) A java.lang.Long, java.lang.Integer, java.lang.Short, java.lang.Double, java.lang.Float, or a java.lang.String representation of the decimal is passed to the query table API.
BOOLEAN	PARAM(<i>name</i>) Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A java.lang.String representation of the boolean • A java.lang.Short, java.lang.Integer, java.lang.Long with appropriate values; 0 (for false), or 1 (for true) • A java.lang.Boolean object

Example:

```

...
// this example shows a query against a composite query table
// COMP.TASKS with a parameter "customer"
java.util.List params = new java.util.ArrayList();

list.add(new com.ibm.bpe.api.Parameter("customer", "IBM"));
bfm.queryEntities("COMP.TASKS", null, null, params);
...

```

Attribute type to Java object type mapping

Attribute types are used when query tables are defined in Business Process Choreographer, when queries are run on the query tables, and when values of a query result are accessed. Use this topic for information on attribute type to Java object type mapping.

The following table describes the attribute types and their mapping to Java object types in query result sets.

Table 36. Attribute type to Java object type mapping

Attribute type	Related Java object type
ID	com.ibm.bpe.api.OID
STRING	java.lang.String
NUMBER	java.lang.Long
TIMESTAMP	java.util.Calendar
DECIMAL	java.lang.Double
BOOLEAN	java.lang.Boolean

Example:

```

...
// the following example shows a query against a composite query table
// COMP.TA; attribute "STATE" is of attribute type NUMBER
...
// run the query
EntityResultSet rs = bfm.queryEntities("COMP.TA",null,null,params);

// get the entities and iterate over it
List entities = rs.getEntities();

```



```

for (int i = 0 ; i < entities.size(); i++) {
    // work on a particular entity
    Entity en = (Entity) entities.get(i);

    // note that the following code could be written
    // more generalized using the attribute info objects
    // contained in ei.getAttributeInfo()

    // get attribute STATE
    Long state = (Long) en.getAttributeValue("STATE");
    ...
}
...

```

Attribute type compatibility

Use attribute types when you define query tables in Business Process Choreographer, when you run queries on the query tables, and to access values of a query result.

The following table shows the attribute types and their compatible attribute types, which can be used to define filters and selection criteria in query tables. Compatible attribute types are marked with X.

Table 37. Attribute type compatibility

Attribute type	ID	STRING	NUMBER	TIMESTAMP	DECIMAL	BOOLEAN
ID	X					
STRING		X				
NUMBER			X		X	
TIMESTAMP				X		
DECIMAL			X		X	
BOOLEAN						X

In query table expressions that specify filter and condition criteria, types of attributes or values that are compared must be compatible. For example, `WI.OWNER_ID=1` is an invalid filter because the left-side operand is of type `STRING`, and the right-side operand is of type `NUMBER`.

Query table queries

Queries are run on query tables in Business Process Choreographer using the query table API, which is available on the Business Flow Manager EJB and the REST API.

A query is run on one query table only. Entity-based API methods and row-based API methods are used to retrieve content from query tables. Input parameters are passed into the methods of the query table API.

Query table API methods

Queries are run on query tables in Business Process Choreographer using the query table API. Entity-based API methods and row-based API methods are available to retrieve content from query tables.

The following entity-based methods and row-based methods are provided to run queries on query tables in Business Process Choreographer using the query table API:

Table 38. Methods for queries run on query tables

Purpose	Methods
Query contents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • queryEntities • queryRows <p>Both methods return contents of the query table. The queryEntities method returns content based on entities and queryRows returns content based on rows.</p>
Query the number of objects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • queryEntityCount • queryRowCount <p>Both methods return the number of objects in the query table, while the actual number can depend on whether the entity-based or the row-based approach is taken.</p>

Entity-based queries, using the queryEntities method and the queryEntityCount method, assume that a query table contains uniquely identifiable entities, as defined by the primary key on the primary query table.

Row-based queries, using the queryRows method and the queryRowCount method, return a result set like JDBC, which is row-based, and provides first and next methods for navigating in it. The result set that is returned when you run a query on a query table using the query table API can be compared to QueryResultSet that is returned by the query API. In general, the number of rows is greater than the number of entities that are contained in a query table. The same entity, for example, a human task which is identified by its task ID, such as TKIID, might occur multiple times in the row result set.

A specific instance that is contained in any predefined query table exists only once in a Business Process Choreographer environment. Examples of instances are human tasks and business processes. Those instances are uniquely identified using an ID or a set of IDs. This is the TKIID for instances of human tasks and the PIID for process instances.

Composite query tables are composed of a primary query table and zero or more attached query tables. Objects that are contained in composite query tables are uniquely identified by the unique ID of the objects that are contained in the primary query table. The primary query table of a composite query table determines its entity type. For example, a composite query table with the TASK primary query table contains entities of the TASK type. The one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship between the primary and attached query tables ensures that the attached query tables do not result in duplicate entities.

Entity-based queries exploit the uniquely identifiable entities of a query table, as defined by the primary key on the primary query table. A client application programmer for user interfaces is typically interested in unique instances without duplicates, for example, to display a human task once only on the user interface. Unique instances are returned if the entity-based query table API is used.

Row-based queries can return duplicate rows of the primary query table if instance-based authorization is used.

- Information from the WORK_ITEM query table is retrieved with the query. For example, if the WI.REASON attribute is retrieved in addition to the attributes that

are defined on the query table, multiple rows qualify for the result. This is because there can be multiple reasons why a user can access an entity, such as, a task or a process instance.

- Instance-based authorization is used, and distinct is not specified. Even though work item information is not retrieved, multiple rows may be returned if instance-based authorization is used.

If the entity-based query table API is used:

- Entity-based queries are always run with the SQL distinct operator.
- Entity-based queries return a result which allows array values for work-item-related information.

Query table API parameters

You use query table API methods to retrieve content when you run queries against a query table in Business Process Choreographer.

The following input parameters are passed to the methods of the query table API:

Table 39. Parameters of the query table API

Parameter	Optional	Type and description
Query table name	No	java.lang.String The unique name of the query table.
Filter options	Yes	com.ibm.bpe.api.FilterOptions Options which can be used to define the query. For example, a query threshold is set on this parameter to limit the number of results returned.
Authorization options	Yes	com.ibm.bpe.api.AuthorizationOptions or com.ibm.bpe.api.AdminAuthorizationOptions Authorization can be further constrained if instance-based authorization is used. For query tables which require role-based authorization, an instance of AdminAuthorizationOptions must be passed.
Parameters	Yes	A java.util.List of com.ibm.bpe.api.Parameter This parameter is used to pass user parameters, which are specified in a filter or selection criterion on a composite query table.

A query is run on one specific query table only. The relationship between multiple query tables is defined with composite query tables. In terms of the query API (as distinct from the query table API), this corresponds to database views.

Filters and selection criteria are specified in expressions during query table development using the Query Table Builder. For more information, refer to the information center topic on composite query tables and the topic on filter and search criteria of query tables. For information on the Query Table Builder, see the WebSphere Business Process Management SupportPacs site. Look for PA71 WebSphere Process Server - Query Table Builder. To access the link, see the related references section of this topic.

Query table name:

When you run a query on a query table in Business Process Choreographer, the query table name is passed as an input parameter to the methods of the query table API.

The query table name is the name of the query table on which the query is run.

- For predefined query tables, this is the name of the predefined query table.
- For composite and supplemental query tables, this is the name of the respective query table that is specified while modeling the query table. The name of a composite or supplemental query table follows the *prefix.name* naming convention, and *prefix* may not be 'IBM'.

Both the query table name and prefix must be in uppercase. The maximum length of the query table name is 28 characters.

Filter options:

When you run a query on a query table in Business Process Choreographer, filter options can be passed as input parameters to the methods of the query table API.

An instance of the **com.ibm.bpe.api.FilterOptions** class can be passed to the query table API. The filter options allow a configuration of the query using:

- A threshold and offset (skipCount)
- Sort attributes (similar to the ORDER BY clause in an SQL query)
- An additional query filter
- The set of attributes returned, including work item information
- Other

The result set that can be obtained from a query table is specified by the definition of the query table. However, you might want to specify additional options when the query is run. The following table describes the options that can be specified as filter options using the **com.ibm.bpe.api.FilterOptions** object.

Table 40. Query table API parameters: Filter options

Option	Type	Description
Selected attributes	java.lang.String	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A comma separated list of attributes of the query table that must be returned in the result set. • If instance-based authorization is used, work item information can be retrieved by specifying attributes of the WORK_ITEM query table, prefixed with 'WI.'. An example is WI.REASON. • If null is specified, all attributes of the query table are returned, without work item information.
Query filter	java.lang.String	The query filter, which filters in addition to the filters and selection criteria that are defined on the query table.

Table 40. Query table API parameters: Filter options (continued)

Option	Type	Description
Sort attributes	java.lang.String	A comma separated list of attributes of the query table, optionally followed by ASC or DESC, for ascending or descending, respectively. This list is similar to the SQL ORDER BY clause: <i>sortAttributes ::= attribute [ASC DESC] [, sortAttributes]</i> . If ASC or DESC is not specified, ASC is assumed. Sorting occurs in the sequence of the sort attributes. This example sorts tasks in query table TASK in descending order by state, and within the groups of the same STATE by NAME, in ascending order: "STATE DESC, NAME ASC".
Threshold	java.lang.Integer	Defines the maximum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of rows returned if queryRows is used. • Number of entities returned if queryEntities is used. The actual number of available entities in the respective query table may exceed the threshold number of entities for the query even if the entity result set does not contain as many entities as the threshold number. This is due to technical reasons if work item information is selected. • Count returned if queryRowCount or queryEntityCount is used. The default is null which means that no threshold is set.
Skip count	java.lang.Integer	Defines the number of rows (row-based queries) or the number of entities (entity-based queries) that are skipped. As with the threshold parameter, skipCount may not be accurate for entity-based queries. Skip count is used to allow paging over a large result set. The default is null which means that no skipCount is set.
Time zone	java.util.TimeZone	The time zone that is used when converting timestamps. An example is CREATED on the predefined query table TASK. If not specified (null), the time zone on the server is used.
Locale	java.util.Locale	The locale which is used to calculate the value of the \$LOCALE system parameter. An example usage of \$LOCALE in a selection criterion is: 'LOCALE=\$LOCALE'.
Distinct rows	java.lang.Boolean	Used for row-based queries only. If set to true, row-based queries return distinct rows. This does not imply that unique rows are returned due to the possible multiplicity of work item information.

Table 40. Query table API parameters: Filter options (continued)

Option	Type	Description
Query condition	setQueryCondition	This performs additional filtering on the result set. Attributes that are defined on the query table, can be referenced if the authorization is set to be required. Columns that are defined on the WORK_ITEM query table can be referenced also using the prefix 'WI.', for example, WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER.

Authorization options for the query table API:

When you run a query on a query table in Business Process Choreographer, authorization options can be passed as input parameters to the methods of the query table API.

Use an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AuthorizationOptions` class or the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AdminAuthorizationOptions` class to specify additional authorization options when the query is run.

If instance-based authorization is used, instances of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AuthorizationOptions` class allow the specification of the type of work items used to identify eligible instances that are returned by the query.

An instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AuthorizationOptions` class can be passed to the query table API if the query is run on a predefined query table that contains instance data. It can also be passed if the query is run on a composite query table with a primary query table that contains instance data and instance-based authorization is configured to be used. If the query is run on a predefined query table with template data or a composite query table with role-based authorization configured, an `EngineNotAuthorizedException` exception is thrown. In all other cases, the authorization options passed to the query table API are ignored.

Composite query tables can restrict the types of work items that are considered when identifying objects (or entities) that are contained in it. For example, if the authorization options that are passed to the query table API are configured to use everybody work items, this is only taken into account if everybody work items are defined for use on the definition of the composite query table. As a simple rule, a work item type that is not specified to be considered on the query table definition cannot be overwritten to be considered by the query table API, but a work item type that is specified to be considered on the query table definition can be overwritten not to be used. Also, the authorization type of a composite or predefined query table cannot be overwritten by the query table API.

Depending on the type of query table that is queried, different authorization option defaults apply if the authorization object is not specified or if the related attributes (everybody, individual, group, or inherited) are set to null, which is the default.

The following table shows the authorization option defaults for instance-based authorization for the query table type and work item type used.

Table 41. Query table API parameters: Authorization option defaults for instance-based authorization

Query table type	Everybody work item	Individual work item	Group work item	Inherited work item
Predefined with instance data	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	FALSE
Predefined with template data	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Composite with a primary query table with instance data	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE
Composite with a primary query table with template data	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Supplemental	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

N/A means that instance-based authorization is not used and, therefore, any setting on the authorization object with respect to work items is ignored.

If TRUE is specified, the resulting query will only consider the specific work item type if the query table is defined to use this type of work item. This is true for all predefined query tables with instance data, but might not be true for a composite query table. For the group work item, the latter must also be enabled on the human task container. An example of the inherited work item set to TRUE is that the administrator of a process instance may see participating human task instances that are created for that process instance.

Specify an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AdminAuthorizationOptions` class instead of an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.AuthorizationOptions` class if:

- A query is run on a query table with role-based authorization. Predefined query tables with template data require role-based authorization, and composite query tables with a primary query table with template data can be configured to require role-based authorization.
- A query is run on a query table with instance data or on a composite query table with a primary query table that contains instance data. It should return the content of that query table, regardless of restrictions due to authorization for a particular user. This behavior is equivalent to using the `queryAll` method on the query API (as distinct from the query table API).
- A query should be executed on behalf of another user.

The following table describes how the various behaviors above are accomplished:

Table 42. Query table API parameters: AdminAuthorizationOptions

Situation	Description
onBehalfUser set to null	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the query is run on a query table with role-based authorization, all contents of that query table are returned. If the query is run on a query table which uses instance-based authorization, the particular objects contained in the query table are not checked for work items for a particular user. All objects that are contained in the query table are returned.
onBehalfUser set to a particular user	The query is run with the authority of the specified user, and the objects in the query table are checked against the work items for this user, if instance-based authorization is used.

If you specify `com.ibm.bpe.api.AdminAuthorizationOptions`, the caller must be in the `BPESystemAdministrator J2EE` role.

Parameters:

When you run a query on a query table in Business Process Choreographer, you can pass user parameters as input parameters to the methods of the query table API. In query table definitions, you can specify parameters in filters on the primary query table, on the authorization, and on the query table. Parameters can also be specified in selection criteria on attached query tables.

The system parameters, `$USER` and `$LOCALE`, are replaced at runtime in filters and selection criteria, and are not required to be passed into the query table API. The input value for the calculation of the `$LOCALE` system parameter is provided by setting the locale in the filter options.

User parameters must be passed into the query table API when the query is run. This is accomplished by passing a list of instances of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.Parameter` class.

The following properties must be specified on a parameter object:

Table 43. User parameters for the query table API

Property	Description
Name	The name of the parameter as used in the query table definition. The name is case sensitive.
Value	The value of the parameter. The type of the parameter must be compatible with the type of the left-hand operand of all filters and selection criteria where this parameter is used. Constants that are defined on some attributes of predefined query tables can be passed as a string, for example <code>STATE_READY</code> .

The following is an example of parameters:

```
// get the naming context and look up the Business
// Flow Manager EJB home; note that the Business Flow
// Manager EJB home should be cached for performance
```



```

// reasons; also, it is assumed that there is an EJB
// reference to the local Business Flow Manager EJB
Context ctx = new InitialContext();
LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome home =
(LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome)
ctx.lookup("java:comp/env/ejb/BFM");

// create the Business Flow Manager client-side stub
LocalBusinessFlowManager bfm = home.create();

// execute a query against a composite query
// table CUST.CPM with the primary query table filter
// set to 'STATE=PARAM(theState)'
EntityResultSet ers = null;
List parameterList = new ArrayList();
parameterList.add(new Parameter
("theState", new Integer(2)));

ers = bfm.queryEntities
("CUST.CPM", null, null, parameterList);

// work on the result set
// ...

```

Results of query table queries

You use query table API methods when you run queries on a query table in Business Process Choreographer. The result of a `queryEntityCount` method or `queryRowCount` method query is a number. The `queryEntities` and the `queryRows` methods return result sets.

EntityResultSet

An instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.EntityResultSet` class is returned by the method `queryEntities`. An entity result set has the following properties:

Table 44. Entity result set properties of a query table API entity

Property	Description
<code>queryTableName</code>	Name of the query table on which the query was run.
<code>entityTypeName</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the query was run on a composite query table, this is the name of the primary query table. If the query was run on a predefined query table or on a supplemental query table, this is the name of the query table, that is, the same value as the <i>queryTableName</i> property.
<code>entityInfo</code>	This property contains the meta information of the entities that are contained in the entity result set. A <code>java.util.List</code> list of the <code>com.ibm.bpe.api.AttributeInfo</code> objects can be retrieved on this object. This list contains the attribute names and attribute types of the information contained in the entities of this result set. Meta information about the attributes which constitute the key for these entities is also contained.
<code>entities</code>	A <code>java.util.List</code> list of entity objects.
<code>locale</code>	The locale that is calculated for the <code>\$LOCALE</code> system parameter.

Instances of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.Entity` class contain the information that is retrieved from the query table query. An entity represents a uniquely identifiable object such as a task, a process instance, an activity, or an escalation. The following properties are available for entities:

Table 45. Entity properties of a query table API entity

Property	Description
<code>entityInfo</code>	The <code>entityInfo</code> object which is also contained in the entity result set.
<code>attributeValue</code> (<i>attributeName</i>)	The value of the specified attribute that is retrieved for this entity. The type is contained in the related <code>AttributeInfo</code> object of this attribute.
<code>attributeValuesOfArray</code> (<i>attributeName</i>)	An array of values. Use this property if the attribute info property <i>array</i> is set to true which is currently the case only if the attribute refers to work item information.

The number of entities in the entity result set is retrieved using the `size()` method on the list of entities.

Example: Entity-based query table API:

```

...
// the following example shows a query against
// predefined query table TASK, using the entity-based API

...
// run the query
EntityResultSet rs = bfm.queryEntities("TASK", null, null, null);

// get the entities meta information
EntityInfo ei = rs.getEntityInfo();
List atts = ei.getAttributeInfo();

// get the entities and iterate over it
Iterator entitiesIter = rs.getEntities().iterator();
while (entitiesIter.hasNext()) {

    // work on a particular entity
    Entity en = (Entity) entitiesIter.next();

    for (int i = 0; i < atts.size(); i++) {
        AttributeInfo ai = (AttributeInfo) atts.get(i);
        Serializable value = en.getAttributeValue(ai.getName()); ;

        // process...
    }
}
...

```

RowResultSet

An instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.api.RowResultSet` class is returned by the `queryRows` method. This type of result set is similar to a JDBC result set. A row result set has the following properties:

Table 46. Row result set properties of a query table API row

Property	Description
primaryQueryTableName	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the query was run on a composite query table, this is the name of the primary query table. If the query was run on a predefined query table or on a supplemental query table, this is the name of the query table, that is, the same value as property <i>queryTableName</i>.
attributeInfo	This property contains a list of the <code>com.ibm.bpe.api.AttributeInfo</code> objects that describe the meta information for this result set. <code>AttributeInfo</code> objects contain the attribute names and attribute types of the information. Meta data about keys is not contained because row result sets do not have a key.
attributeValue	The value of the specified attribute that was retrieved for this row. The type is contained in the related <code>AttributeInfo</code> object of this attribute.
next, first, last, previous	The row result set is navigated using these methods. Compare its usage to iterators, enumerations, or JDBC result sets.

The number of rows in the row result set is retrieved using the `size()` method on the list of rows.

Example: Row-based query table API:

```

...
// the following example shows a query against
// predefined query table TASK, using the entity-based API
...
// run the query
ResultSet rs = bpm.queryRows("TASK", null, null, null);

// get the entities meta information
List atts = rs.getAttributeInfo();

// get the entities and iterate over it
while (rs.next()) {

    // work on a particular row
    for (int i = 0; i < atts.size(); i++) {
        AttributeInfo ai = (AttributeInfo) atts.get(i);
        Serializable value = rs.getAttributeValue(ai.getName());

        // process...
    }
}
...

```

Query table queries for meta data retrieval

Queries are run on query tables in Business Process Choreographer using the query table API. Methods are available to retrieve meta data from query tables.

The following methods are provided to retrieve meta data when you run queries on query tables in Business Process Choreographer using the query table API:

Table 47. Methods for meta data retrieval on query tables

Purpose	Method
Return the meta data of a specific query table	getQueryTableMetaData
Return a list of query table meta data with specific properties	findQueryTableMetaData
Return contents of a query table, based on entities, and a subset of the meta data for the selected attributes	queryEntities
Return contents of a query table, based on rows, and a subset of the meta data for the selected attributes	queryRows

Meta data of query tables consists of data that relates to structure and data that relates to internationalization.

The following table shows the meta data that is related to the structure of a query table.

Table 48. Meta data related to query table structure

Meta data	Description	Returned by getQuery- TableMetaData	Returned by findQuery- TableMetaData	Returned by queryEntities	Returned by queryRows
Query table name	The name of the query table	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Primary query table name	For supplemental and predefined query tables, name of the query table; for composite query tables the name of the primary query table	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Kind	The type of query table: predefined, composite, or supplemental	Yes	Yes	No	No
Authorization	The authorization that is defined on the query table: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use of work items • Instance-based, role-based, or no authorization 	Yes	Yes	No	No
Defined attributes	Meta data of the attributes that are defined on the query table	Yes	Yes	No. Meta data of the selected attributes is returned.	No. Meta data of the selected attributes is returned.
Key attributes	Key attributes of the query table	Yes	Yes	Yes	No. Not applicable to row-based queries.

The following table shows the meta data that is related to the internationalization of a query table.

Table 49. Meta data related to query table internationalization

Meta data	Description	Returned by getQuery- TableMetaData	Returned by findQuery- TableMetaData	Returned by queryEntities	Returned by queryRows
locales[]	Locales for which display names and descriptions of the query table and attributes are defined.	Yes	Yes	No	No
Locale	Value of the \$LOCALE system parameter which results from the locale that is passed to the API.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Display name and description of the query table	Display names and descriptions for the query table, which are provided for all defined locales.	Yes	Yes	No	No
Display names and descriptions of the attributes	Display names and descriptions for the attributes, which are provided for all defined locales.	Yes	Yes	No	No

All EJB query table API methods which return query table meta data accept a locale parameter, such as `FilterOptions.setLocale` and `MetaDataOptions.setLocale`. This parameter should be set to the Java locale that the client uses to present information to the user. This locale parameter is used to calculate the value of the \$LOCALE system parameter, which can be used in filters and selection criteria. The locale that is returned contains the actual Java locale that is used for \$LOCALE.

If the display names and descriptions of a specific query table are retrieved, pass `getLocale` to the related methods to get the display names and descriptions in the same locale as the descriptions of the tasks. For example, these descriptions are attached using a selection criterion of `'LOCALE=$LOCALE'`.

Example:

```
// the following example shows how meta data for a particular
// composite query table can be retrieved

...
// run the query
MetaDataOptions mdo = new MetaDataOptions("TASK", null, false, new Locale("en_US"));
List list = bfm.findQueryTableMetaData(mdo);

// to get the meta data of a specific query table
// use bfm.getQueryTableMetaData(...)

// iterate through the list of query tables that have TASK as primary query table
// => at least one query table is returned: the predefined query table TASK

Iterator iter = list.iterator();
while (iter.hasNext()) {
    QueryTableMetaData md = (QueryTableMetaData) iter.next();
    Locale effectiveLocale = md.getLocale();
    String queryTableDisplayName = md.getDisplayName(effectiveLocale);
    System.out.println("found query table: " + queryTableDisplayName);
    List attributesList = md.getAttributeMetaData();
    Iterator attrIter = attributesList.iterator();
    while (attrIter.hasNext()) {
```

```

AttributeMetaData amd = (AttributeMetaData) attrIter.next();
String attributeDisplayName = amd.getDisplayName(effectiveLocale);
System.out.println("\tattribute:" + attributeDisplayName);
}
}

```

Internationalization for query table meta data

Internationalization is supported for query table meta data.

Display names and descriptions can be provided for composite query tables in different locales. For example, a composite query table can define a display name for the query table in the en_US locale, the de locale, and in the default locale. This is done when the query table is developed using the Query Table Builder. To deploy query tables with localized display names and descriptions, the `-deploy jarFile` option must be used when the query table is deployed on the Business Process Choreographer container.

In terms of locale handling, the behavior of the query table API methods, `queryEntities` and `queryRows`, and the meta data methods of the query table API, `getQueryTableMetaData` and `findQueryTableMetaData`, is similar to that provided by Java resource bundles.

To make the display names and descriptions of the query table meta data consistent with the contents of the query table, the value of the `$LOCALE` system parameter depends on the locales for which display names and descriptions are specified on the query table.

Example:

Consider the following scenario of a client which displays task lists or process lists and creates a request to query a query table.

- The client did not specify the locale it uses to present information to the user. It is likely that the application is not enabled for different languages.
 - A default locale is specified on the query table for display names and descriptions. This is the case for all composite and supplemental query tables that are built with the current version of the Query Table Builder. Therefore, the value of `$LOCALE` is set to `default`.
 - The query table does not specify display names or descriptions on the query table for the default locale. This is the case for all predefined query tables and for all query tables that are deployed using the `-deploy qtdFile` option. The value of `$LOCALE` is based on the Java resource bundle method.
- The client specified the locale to use to present information to the user. For example, this is the case when the REST API for query tables is used.
 - Display names and descriptions are specified on the query table. The Java resource bundle method is used to calculate the value of `$LOCALE`, based on the locale that is passed in by the client.
 - Display names and descriptions are not specified on the query table. The value of `$LOCALE` is set to the value that is passed in by the client.

Query tables and query performance

Query tables introduce a clean programming model for developing client applications that retrieve lists of human tasks and business processes in Business Process Choreographer. Query tables have a positive effect on query performance.

Options for query tables are described, as well as the query table API parameters that impact on query performance. Information is also provided on other factors that impact on performance.

Query response times on query tables depend mainly on the authorization options, filters, and selection criteria that are used. The following are some general performance tips to consider.

- Authorization options have considerable performance impact. Enable authorization using as few options as is possible, such as individual and group work items. Avoid using inherited work items. The authorization options can be further restricted when the query is run. Also, if not needed, specify that authorization using work items is not required.
- If authorization using work items is required, specify an authorization filter. For example, to allow only objects in the query table with a potential owner work item, use `WI.REASON=REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER`.
- Filtering on the primary query table is efficient, for example, to allow only tasks in the ready state in the query table where `TASK` is the primary query table.
- Filters on the query table, as well as query filters, which are filters that are passed when the query is run, are less efficient as primary filters in terms of performance.
- Avoid, where possible, using parameters in filters and selection criteria.
- Avoid using `LIKE` operators in filters and selection criteria.

Composite query table definition

The following table provides information about the query performance impact of options that are defined on composite query tables. It also provides information other topics related to composite query table definitions. The impact given in column Performance Impact is an average performance impact, actual impact observations may vary.

Table 50. Query performance impact of composite query table options

Object or topic	Performance impact	Description
Query table filter	Negative	Filters on query tables are the filters with the highest negative impact on query performance. These filters typically cannot use any defined indexes in the database.
Primary query table filter	Positive	A filter on the primary query table provides high performance filtering at a very early stage of the query result set calculation. It is suggested to restrict the contents of the query table using a primary query table filter.
Authorization filter	Positive	A filter on authorization can improve the performance of the query, such as how the primary query table filter improves it. If possible, an authorization filter should be applied. For example, if reader work items should not be considered, specify <code>WI.REASON=REASON_READER</code> .
Selection criteria	None	Some primary query table to attached query table relationships require the definition of a selection criterion in order to meet the one-to-one or one-to-zero relationship. A selection criterion typically has low performance impact because it is evaluated for a small numbers of rows only.
Parameters	None	Currently, using parameters in query tables has no negative performance impact. Nevertheless, parameters should be used only if needed.

Table 50. Query performance impact of composite query table options (continued)

Object or topic	Performance impact	Description
Instance-based authorization	Negative	If instance-based authorization is used, each object in the query table must be checked against the existence of a work item. Work items are represented as entries in the WORK_ITEM query table. This verification affects performance.
Instance-based authorization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • everybody • individuals • groups • inherited 	Negative	Each type of work item that is specified for use in the query table has a performance impact. Applications with high volume queries should only use individual and group work items, or only one of those. Inherited work items are usually not required, in particular when defining task lists that return human tasks representing to-dos. They should be used only when it is clear that they are needed, for example, to return lists of tasks that belong to a business process where a person might have read access based on the authorization for the enclosing business process.
Role-based authorization or no authorization	None	If role-based authorization or no authorization is used, checks against work items are not made.
Number of defined attributes	Currently none	Currently, the number of attributes contained in a query table has no impact on performance. Nevertheless, only those attributes that are needed should be part of a query table.

Query table API

The following table provides information about the query performance impact of options that are specified on the query table API. The impact given in the Performance impact column is an average performance impact; actual impact observations may vary.

Table 51. Query performance impact of query table API options

Option	Performance impact	Description
Selected attributes	Negative (less is better)	The number of attributes that are selected when a query is run on a query table impacts on the number that need to be processed both by the database and by the Business Process Choreographer query table runtime. Also, for composite query tables, information from attached query tables need be retrieved only if those are either specified by the selected attributes or referenced by the query table filter or by the query filter.
Query filter	Negative	If specified, the query filter currently has the same performance impact as the query table filter. However, it is a good practice if filters are specified on query tables rather than passed into the query table API.
Sort attributes	Negative	The sorting of query result sets is an expensive operation, and database optimizations are restricted if sorting is used. If not needed, sorting should be avoided. Most applications require sorting, however.

Table 51. Query performance impact of query table API options (continued)

Option	Performance impact	Description
Threshold	Positive	The specification of a threshold can greatly improve the performance of queries. It is a best practice to always specify a threshold.
Skip count	Negative	Skipping a particular number of objects in the query result set is expensive and should be done only if required, for example when paging over a query result.
Time zone	None	The time zone setting has no performance impact.
Locale	None	The locale setting has no performance impact.
Distinct rows	Negative	Using distinct in queries has some performance impact but might be necessary in order to retrieve non-duplicate rows. This option impacts only on row based queries and is ignored otherwise.
Count queries	Positive	If only the total number of entities or the number of rows for a particular query is needed, that is, the contents are not needed for all entries of the query table, the method <code>queryEntityCount</code> or <code>queryRowCount</code> should be used. The Business Process Choreographer runtime can apply optimizations that are valid only for count queries.

Other considerations

Other factors to consider with regard to performance are:

Table 52. Query table performance: Other considerations

Item	Description
Number of query tables on the system	The number of query tables which are deployed on a Business Process Choreographer container does not influence the performance of query table queries. Also, currently, it does not influence the navigation of business process instances, nor does it have impact on claim or complete operations on human tasks. Due to maintainability, keep the number of query tables at a reasonable level. Typically, one query table represents one task list or process list which is displayed on the user interface.

Table 52. Query table performance: Other considerations (continued)

Item	Description
Database tuning	<p>Although optimized SQL is used to access the contents of a query table, database tuning best practices need still to be implemented on a Business Process Choreographer database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Database memory should be set to a maximum, taking into account other processes that are running on the database server, as well as hardware constraints. • Statistics on the database must be up-to-date, and should be updated on a regular basis. Typically, those procedures are already implemented in large topologies. For example, collect database statistics for the optimizer once per week in order to reflect changes of the data in the database. • Database systems provide tools to reorganize (or defragment) the data containers. The physical layout of the data in a database can also influence query performance and access paths of queries. • Optimal indexes are the key for good query performance. Business Process Choreographer comes with predefined indexes which are optimized for both process navigation and query performance of typical scenarios. In customized environments, additional indexes may be necessary in order to support high volume task or process list queries. Use tools provided by the database in order to support the queries which are run on a query table.

Business Process Choreographer EJB query API

Use the query method or the queryAll method of the service API to retrieve stored information about business processes and tasks.

The query method can be called by all users, and it returns the properties of the objects for which work items exist. The queryAll method can be called only by users who have one of the following J2EE roles: BPESystemAdministrator, TaskSystemAdministrator, BPESystemMonitor, or TaskSystemMonitor. This method returns the properties of all the objects that are stored in the database.

All API queries are mapped to SQL queries. The form of the resulting SQL query depends on the following aspects:

- Whether the query was invoked by someone with one of the J2EE roles.
- The objects that are queried. Predefined database views are provided for you to query the object properties.
- The insertion of a from clause, join conditions, and user-specific conditions for access control.

You can include both custom properties and variable properties in queries. If you include several custom properties or variable properties in your query, this results in self-joins on the corresponding database table. Depending on your database system, these query() calls might have performance implications.

You can also store queries in the Business Process Choreographer database using the createStoredQuery method. You provide the query criteria when you define the

stored query. The criteria are applied dynamically when the stored query runs, that is, the data is assembled at runtime. If the stored query contains parameters, these are also resolved when the query runs.

For more information on the Business Process Choreographer APIs, see the Javadoc in the `com.ibm.bpe.api` package for process-related methods and in the `com.ibm.task.api` package for task-related methods.

Syntax of the API query method

The syntax of the Business Process Choreographer API queries is similar to SQL queries. A query can include a select clause, a where clause, an order-by clause, a skip-tuples parameter, a threshold parameter and a time-zone parameter.

The syntax of the query depends on the object type. The following table shows the syntax for each of the different object types.

Table 53.

Object	Syntax
Process template	<code>ProcessTemplateData[] queryProcessTemplates (java.lang.String whereClause, java.lang.String orderByClause, java.lang.Integer threshold, java.util.TimeZone timezone);</code>
Task template	<code>TaskTemplate[] queryTaskTemplates (java.lang.String whereClause, java.lang.String orderByClause, java.lang.Integer threshold, java.util.TimeZone timezone);</code>
Business-process and task-related data	<code>QueryResultSet query (java.lang.String selectClause, java.lang.String whereClause, java.lang.String orderByClause, java.lang.Integer skipTuples, java.lang.Integer threshold, java.util.TimeZone timezone);</code>

Select clause

The select clause in the query function identifies the object properties that are to be returned by a query.

The select clause describes the query result. It specifies a list of names that identify the object properties (columns of the result) to return. Its syntax is similar to the syntax of an SQL SELECT clause; use commas to separate parts of the clause. Each part of the clause must specify a column from one of the predefined views. The columns must be fully specified by view name and column name. The columns returned in the `QueryResultSet` object appear in the same order as the columns specified in the select clause.

The select clause does not support SQL aggregation functions, such as `AVG()`, `SUM()`, `MIN()`, or `MAX()`.

To select the properties of multiple name-value pairs, such as custom properties and properties of variables that can be queried, add a one-digit counter to the view name. This counter can take the values 1 through 9.

Examples of select clauses

- `"WORK_ITEM.OBJECT_TYPE, WORK_ITEM.REASON"`

Gets the object types of the associated objects and the assignment reasons for the work items.

- "DISTINCT WORK_ITEM.OBJECT_ID"
Gets all of the IDs of objects, without duplicates, for which the caller has a work item.
- "ACTIVITY.TEMPLATE_NAME, WORK_ITEM.REASON"
Gets the names of the activities the caller has work items for and their assignment reasons.
- "ACTIVITY.STATE, PROCESS_INSTANCE.STARTER"
Gets the states of the activities and the starters of their associated process instances.
- "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID, TASK.NAME"
Gets all of the IDs and names of tasks, without duplicates, for which the caller has a work item.
- "TASK_CPROP1.STRING_VALUE, TASK_CPROP2.STRING_VALUE"
Gets the values of the custom properties that are specified further in the where clause.
- "QUERY_PROPERTY1.STRING_VALUE, QUERY_PROPERTY2.INT_VALUE"
Gets the values of the properties of variables that can be queried. These parts are specified further in the where clause.
- "COUNT(DISTINCT TASK.TKIID)"
Counts the number of work items for unique tasks that satisfy the where clause.

Where clause

The where clause in the query function describes the filter criteria to apply to the query domain.

The syntax of a where clause is similar to the syntax of an SQL WHERE clause. You do not need to explicitly add an SQL from clause or join predicates to the API where clause, these constructs are added automatically when the query runs. If you do not want to apply filter criteria, you must specify null for the where clause.

The where-clause syntax supports:

- Keywords: AND, OR, NOT
- Comparison operators: =, <=, <, <>, >, >=, LIKE
The LIKE operation supports the wildcard characters that are defined for the queried database.
- Set operation: IN

The following rules also apply:

- Specify object ID constants as ID('string-rep-of-oid').
- Specify binary constants as BIN('UTF-8 string').
- Use symbolic constants instead of integer enumerations. For example, instead of specifying an activity state expression ACTIVITY.STATE=2, specify ACTIVITY.STATE=ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_READY.
- If the value of the property in the comparison statement contains single quotation marks ('), double the quotation marks, for example, "TASK_CPROP.STRING_VALUE='d''automatisation'".

- Refer to properties of multiple name-value pairs, such as custom properties, by adding a one-digit suffix to the view name. For example:
"TASK_CPROP1.NAME='prop1' AND "TASK_CPROP2.NAME='prop2' "
- Specify time-stamp constants as TS('yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss'). To refer to the current date, specify CURRENT_DATE as the timestamp.
You must specify at least a date or a time value in the timestamp:
 - If you specify a date only, the time value is set to zero.
 - If you specify a time only, the date is set to the current date.
 - If you specify a date, the year must consist of four digits; the month and day values are optional. Missing month and day values are set to 01. For example, TS('2003') is the same as TS('2003-01-01T00:00:00').
 - If you specify a time, these values are expressed in the 24-hour system. For example, if the current date is 1 January 2003, TS('T16:04') or TS('16:04') is the same as TS('2003-01-01T16:04:00').

Examples of where clauses

- Comparing an object ID with an existing ID
"WORK_ITEM.WIID = ID('_WI:800c00ed.df8d7e7c.feffff80.38')"

This type of where clause is usually created dynamically with an existing object ID from a previous call. If this object ID is stored in a *wiid1* variable, the clause can be constructed as:

```
"WORK_ITEM.WIID = ID('" + wiid1.toString() + "'")"
```

- Using time stamps
"ACTIVITY.STARTED >= TS('2002-06-1T16.00.00')"
- Using symbolic constants
"WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_OWNER"
- Using Boolean values true and false
"ACTIVITY.BUSINESS_RELEVANCE = TRUE"
- Using custom properties
"TASK_CPROP1.NAME = 'prop1' AND " TASK_CPROP1.STRING_VALUE = 'v1' AND
TASK_CPROP2.NAME = 'prop2' AND " TASK_CPROP2.STRING_VALUE = 'v2' "

Order-by clause

The order-by clause in the query function specifies the sort criteria for the query result set.

You can specify a list of columns from the views by which the result is sorted. These columns must be fully qualified by the name of the view and the column.

The order-by clause syntax is similar to the syntax of an SQL order-by clause; use commas to separate each part of the clause. You can also specify ASC to sort the columns in ascending order, and DESC to sort the columns in descending order. If you do not want to sort the query result set, you must specify null for the order-by clause.

Sort criteria are applied on the server, that is, the locale of the server is used for sorting. If you specify more than one column, the query result set is ordered by the values of the first column, then by the values of the second column, and so on. You cannot specify the columns in the order-by clause by position as you can with an SQL query.

Examples of order-by clauses

- "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME"
Sorts the query result alphabetically by the process-template name.
- "PROCESS_INSTANCE.CREATED, PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME DESC"
Sorts the query result by the creation date and, for a specific date, sorts the results alphabetically by the process-instance name in reverse order.
- "ACTIVITY.OWNER, ACTIVITY.TEMPLATE_NAME, ACTIVITY.STATE"
Sorts the query result by the activity owner, then the activity-template name, and then the state of the activity.

Skip-tuples parameter

The skip-tuples parameter specifies the number of query-result-set tuples from the beginning of the query result set that are to be ignored and not to be returned to the caller in the query result set.

Use this parameter with the threshold parameter to implement paging in a client application, for example, to retrieve the first 20 items, then the next 20 items, and so on.

If this parameter is set to null and the threshold parameter is not set, all of the qualifying tuples are returned.

Example of a skip-tuples parameter

- new Integer(5)
Specifies that the first five qualifying tuples are not to be returned.

Threshold parameter

The threshold parameter in the query function restricts the number of objects returned from the server to the client in the query result set.

Because query result sets in production scenarios can contain thousands or even millions of items, specify a value for the threshold parameter. If you set the threshold parameter accordingly, the database query is faster and less data needs to transfer from the server to the client. The threshold parameter can be useful, for example, in a graphical user interface where only a small number of items should be displayed at one time.

If this parameter is set to null and the skip-tuples parameter is not set, all of the qualifying objects are returned.

Example of a threshold parameter

- new Integer(50)
Specifies that 50 qualifying tuples are to be returned.

Timezone parameter

The time-zone parameter in the query function defines the time zone for time-stamp constants in the query.

Time zones can differ between the client that starts the query and the server that processes the query. Use the time-zone parameter to specify the time zone of the time-stamp constants used in the where clause, for example, to specify local times. The dates returned in the query result set have the same time zone that is specified in the query.

If the parameter is set to null, the timestamp constants are assumed to be Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) times.

Examples of time-zone parameters

- `process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",
"ACTIVITY.STARTED > TS('2005-01-01T17:40')",
(String)null,
(Integer)null,
java.util.TimeZone.getDefault());`

Returns object IDs for activities that started later than 17:40 local time on 1 January 2005.

- `process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",
"ACTIVITY.STARTED > TS('2005-01-01T17:40')",
(String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);`

Return object IDs for activities that started later than 17:40 UTC on 1 January 2005. This specification is, for example, 6 hours earlier in Eastern Standard Time.

Parameters in stored queries

A stored query is a query that is stored in the database and identified by a name. The qualifying tuples are assembled dynamically when the query is run. To make stored queries reusable, you can use parameters in the query definition that are resolved at runtime.

For example, you have defined custom properties to store customer names. You can define queries to return the tasks that are associated with a particular customer, ACME Co. To query this information, the where clause in your query might look similar to the following example:

```
String whereClause =  
"TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY  
AND WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER  
AND TASK_CPROP.NAME = 'company' AND TASK_CPROP.STRING_VALUE = 'ACME Co.'";
```

To make this query reusable so that you can also search for the customer, BCME Ltd, you can use parameters for the values of the custom property. If you add parameters to the task query, it might look similar to the following example:

```
String whereClause =  
"TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY  
AND WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER  
AND TASK_CPROP.NAME = 'company' AND TASK_CPROP.STRING_VALUE = '@param1'";
```

The @param1 parameter is resolved at runtime from the list of parameters that is passed to the query method. The following rules apply to the use of parameters in queries:

- Parameters can only be used in the where clause.
- Parameters are strings.
- Parameters are replaced at runtime using string replacement. If you need special characters you must specify these in the where clause or passed-in at runtime as part of the parameter.
- Parameter names consist of the string @param concatenated with an integer number. The lowest number is 1, which points to the first item in the list of parameters that is passed to the query API at runtime.
- A parameter can be used multiple times within a where clause; all occurrences of the parameter are replaced by the same value.

Query results

A query result set contains the results of a Business Process Choreographer API query.

The elements of the result set are properties of the objects that satisfy the where clause given by the caller, and that the caller is authorized to see. You can read elements in a relative fashion using the API next method or in an absolute fashion using the first and last methods. Because the implicit cursor of a query result set is initially positioned before the first element, you must call either the first or next methods before reading an element. You can use the size method to determine the number of elements in the set.

An element of the query result set comprises the selected attributes of work items and their associated referenced objects, such as activity instances and process instances. The first attribute (column) of a QueryResultSet element specifies the value of the first attribute specified in the select clause of the query request. The second attribute (column) of a QueryResultSet element specifies the value of the second attribute specified in the select clause of the query request, and so on.

You can retrieve the values of the attributes by calling a method that is compatible with the attribute type and by specifying the appropriate column index. The numbering of the column indexes starts with 1.

Attribute type	Method
String	getString
OID	getOID
Timestamp	getTimestamp getString getTimestampAsLong
Integer	getInteger getShort getLong getString getBoolean
Boolean	getBoolean getShort getInteger getLong getString
byte[]	getBinary

Example:

The following query is run:

```
QueryResultSet resultSet = process.query("ACTIVITY.STARTED,  
                                         ACTIVITY.TEMPLATE_NAME AS NAME,  
                                         WORK_ITEM.WIID, WORK_ITEM.REASON",  
                                         (String)null, (String)null,  
                                         (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

The returned query result set has four columns:

- Column 1 is a time stamp
- Column 2 is a string
- Column 3 is an object ID

- Column 4 is an integer

You can use the following methods to retrieve the attribute values:

```
while (resultSet.next())
{
    java.util.Calendar activityStarted = resultSet.getTimestamp(1);
    String templateName = resultSet.getString(2);
    WIID wiid = (WIID) resultSet.getOID(3);
    Integer reason = resultSet.getInteger(4);
}
```

You can use the display names of the result set, for example, as headings for a printed table. These names are the column names of the view or the name defined by the AS clause in the query. You can use the following method to retrieve the display names in the example:

```
resultSet.getColumnDisplayName(1) returns "STARTED"
resultSet.getColumnDisplayName(2) returns "NAME"
resultSet.getColumnDisplayName(3) returns "WIID"
resultSet.getColumnDisplayName(4) returns "REASON"
```

User-specific access conditions

User-specific access conditions are added when the SQL SELECT statement is generated from the API query. These conditions guarantee that only those objects are returned to the caller that satisfy the condition specified by the caller and to which the caller is authorized.

The access condition that is added depends on whether the user is a system administrator.

Queries invoked by users who are not system administrators

The generated SQL WHERE clause combines the API where clause with an access control condition that is specific to the user. The query retrieves only those objects that the user is authorized to access, that is, only those objects for which the user has a work item. A work item represents the assignment of a user or user group to an authorization role of a business object, such as a task or process. If, for example, the user, John Smith, is a member of the potential owners role of a given task, a work item object exists that represents this relationship.

For example, if a user, who is not a system administrator, queries tasks, the following access condition is added to the WHERE clause if group work items are not enabled:

```
FROM TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI
WHERE WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'user'
      OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true )
```

So, if John Smith wants to get a list of tasks for which he is the potential owner, the API where clause might look as follows:

```
"WORK_ITEM.REASON == WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER"
```

This API where clause results in the following access condition in the SQL statement:

```

FROM TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI
WHERE WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'JohnSmith'
      OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true)
AND WI.REASON = 1

```

This also means that if John Smith wants to see the activities and tasks for which he is a process reader or a process administrator and for which he does not have a work item, then a property from the PROCESS_INSTANCE view must be added to the select, where, or order-by clause of the query, for example, PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID.

If group work items are enabled, an additional access condition is added to the WHERE clause that allows a user to access objects that the group has access to.

Queries invoked by system administrators

System administrators can invoke the query method to retrieve objects that have associated work items. In this case, a join with the WORK_ITEM view is added to the generated SQL query, but no access control condition for the WORK_ITEM.OWNER_ID.

In this case, the SQL query for tasks contains the following:

```

FROM TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI
WHERE WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID

```

queryAll queries

This type of query can be invoked only by system administrators or system monitors. Neither conditions for access control nor a join to the WORK_ITEM view are added. This type of query returns all of the data for all of the objects.

Examples of the query and queryAll methods

These examples show the syntax of various typical API queries and the associated SQL statements that are generated when the query is processed.

Example: Querying tasks in the ready state

This example shows how to use the query method to retrieve tasks that the logged-on user can work with.

John Smith wants to get a list of the tasks that have been assigned to him. For a user to be able to work on a task, the task must be in the ready state. The logged-on user must also have a potential owner work item for the task. The following code snippet shows the query method call for this query:

```

query( "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
      "TASK.KIND IN ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING )
      AND " +
      "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY AND " +
      "WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON_REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
      (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )

```

The following actions are taken when the SQL SELECT statement is generated:

- A condition for access control is added to the where clause. This example assumes that group work items are not enabled.
- Constants, such as TASK.STATE.STATE_READY, are replaced by their numeric values.

- A FROM clause and join conditions are added.

The following code snippet shows the SQL statement that is generated from the API query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT TASK.TKIID
FROM   TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI,
WHERE  WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND    TA.KIND IN ( 101, 105 )
AND    TA.STATE = 2
AND    WI.REASON = 1
AND    ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'JohnSmith' OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true )
```

To restrict the API query to tasks for a specific process, for example, sampleProcess, the query looks as follows:

```
query( "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
      "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME = 'sampleProcess' AND "+
      "TASK.KIND IN ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING )
      AND " +
      "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY AND " +
      "WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
      (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )
```

Example: Querying tasks in the claimed state

This example shows how to use the query method to retrieve tasks that the logged-on user has claimed.

The user, John Smith, wants to search for tasks that he has claimed and are still in the claimed state. The condition that specifies "claimed by John Smith" is TASK.OWNER = 'JohnSmith'. The following code snippet shows the query method call for the query:

```
query( "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
      "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_CLAIMED AND " +
      "TASK.OWNER = 'JohnSmith'",
      (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )
```

The following code snippet shows the SQL statement that is generated from the API query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT TASK.TKIID
FROM   TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI,
WHERE  WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND    TA.STATE = 8
AND    TA.OWNER = 'JohnSmith'
AND    ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'JohnSmith' OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true )
```

When a task is claimed, work items are created for the owner of the task. So, an alternative way of forming the query for John Smith's claimed tasks is to add the following condition to the query instead of using TASK.OWNER = 'JohnSmith':

```
WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_OWNER
```

The query then looks like the following code snippet:

```
query( "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
      "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_CLAIMED AND " +
      "WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_OWNER",
      (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )
```

The following actions are taken when the SQL SELECT statement is generated:

- A condition for access control is added to the where clause. This example assumes that group work items are not enabled.

- Constants, such as TASK.STATE.STATE_READY, are replaced by their numeric values.
- A FROM clause and join conditions are added.

The following code snippet shows the SQL statement that is generated from the API query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT TASK.TKIID
FROM   TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI,
WHERE  WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND    TA.STATE = 8
AND    WI.REASON = 4
AND    ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'JohnSmith' OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true )
```

John is about to go on vacation so his team lead, Anne Grant, wants to check on his current work load. Anne has system administrator rights. The query she invokes is the same as the one John invoked. However, the SQL statement that is generated is different because Anne is an administrator. The following code snippet shows the generated SQL statement:

```
SELECT DISTINCT TASK.TKIID
FROM   TASK TA, WORK_ITEM WI,
WHERE  TA.TKIID = WI.OBJECT_ID =
AND    TA.STATE = 8
AND    TA.OWNER = 'JohnSmith')
```

Because Anne is an administrator, an access control condition is not added to the WHERE clause.

Example: Querying escalations

This example shows how to use the query method to retrieve escalations for the logged-on user.

When a task is escalated, and escalation receiver work item is created. The user, Mary Jones wants to see a list of tasks that have been escalated to her. The following code snippet shows the query method call for the query:

```
query( "DISTINCT ESCALATION.ESIID, ESCALATION.TKIID",
      "WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_ESCALATION_RECEIVER",
      (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )
```

The following actions are taken when the SQL SELECT statement is generated:

- A condition for access control is added to the where clause. This example assumes that group work items are not enabled.
- Constants, such as TASK.STATE.STATE_READY, are replaced by their numeric values.
- A FROM clause and join conditions are added.

The following code snippet shows the SQL statement that is generated from the API query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ESCALATION.ESIID, ESCALATION.TKIID
FROM   ESCALATION ESC, WORK_ITEM WI
WHERE  ESC.ESIID = WI.OBJECT_ID
AND    WI.REASON = 10
AND    ( WI.OWNER_ID = 'MaryJones' OR WI.OWNER_ID = null AND WI.EVERYBODY = true )
```

Example: Using the queryAll method

This example shows how to use the queryAll method to retrieve all of the activities that belong to a process template.

The queryAll method is available only to users with system administrator or system monitor rights. The following code snippet shows the queryAll method call for the query to retrieve all of the activities that belong to the process template, sampleProcess:

```
queryAll( "DISTINCT ACTIVITY.AIID",
         "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME = 'sampleProcess'",
         (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null )
```

The following code snippet shows the SQL query that is generated from the API query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ACTIVITY.AIID
FROM   ACTIVITY AI, PROCESS_TEMPLATE PT
WHERE  AI.PTID = PT.PTID
AND    PT.NAME = 'sampleProcess'
```

Because the call is invoked by an administrator, an access control condition is not added to the generated SQL statement. A join with the WORK_ITEM view is also not added. This means that the query retrieves all of the activities for the process template, including those activities without work items.

Example: Including query properties in a query

This example shows how to use the query method to retrieve tasks that belong to a business process. The process has query properties defined for it that you want to include in the search.

For example, you want to search for all of the human tasks in the ready state that belong to a business process. The process has a query property, **customerID**, with the value CID_12345, and a namespace. The following code snippet shows the query method call for the query:

```
query ( " DISTINCT TASK.TKIID, TASK_TEMPL.NAME, TASK.STATE,
        PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
        " QUERY_PROPERTY.NAME = 'customerID' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY.STRING_VALUE = 'CID_12345' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY.NAMESPACE =
        'http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/mqwf/bpel/' AND " +
        " TASK.KIND IN
        ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING ) AND " +
        " TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY ",
        (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null );
```

If you now want to add a second query property to the query, for example, **Priority**, with a given namespace, the query method call for the query looks as follows:

```
query ( " DISTINCT TASK.TKIID, TASK_TEMPL.NAME, TASK.STATE,
        PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
        " QUERY_PROPERTY1.NAME = 'customerID' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY1.STRING_VALUE = 'CID_12345' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY1.NAMESPACE =
        'http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/mqwf/bpel/' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY2.NAME = 'Priority' AND " +
        " QUERY_PROPERTY2.NAMESPACE =
        'http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/mqwf/bpel/' AND " +
        " TASK.KIND IN
        ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING ) AND " +
        " TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY ",
        (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null );
```

If you add more than one query property to the query, you must number each of the properties that you add as shown in the code snippet. However, querying custom properties affects performance; performance decreases with the number of custom properties in the query.

Example: Including custom properties in a query

This example shows how to use the query method to retrieve tasks that have custom properties.

For example, you want to search for all of the human tasks in the ready state that have a custom property, **customerID**, with the value CID_12345. The following code snippet shows the query method call for the query:

```
query ( " DISTINCT TASK.TKIID ",
        " TASK_CPROP.NAME = 'customerID' AND " +
        " TASK_CPROP.STRING_VALUE = 'CID_12345' AND " +
        " TASK.KIND IN
        ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING ) AND " +
        " TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY ",
        (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null );
```

If you now want to retrieve the tasks and their custom properties, the query method call for the query looks as follows:

```
query ( " DISTINCT TASK.TKIID, TASK_CPROP.NAME, TASK_CPROP.STRING_VALUE",
        " TASK.KIND IN
        ( TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN, TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING ) AND " +
        " TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY ",
        (String)null, (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null );
```

The SQL statement that is generated from this API query is shown in the following code snippet:

```
SELECT DISTINCT TA.TKIID , TACP.NAME , TACP.STRING_VALUE
FROM TASK TA LEFT JOIN TASK_CPROP TACP ON (TA.TKIID = TACP.TKIID),
WORK_ITEM WI
WHERE WI.OBJECT_ID = TA.TKIID
AND TA.KIND IN ( 101, 105 )
AND TA.STATE = 2
AND (WI.OWNER_ID = 'JohnSmith' OR WI.OWNER_ID IS NULL AND WI.EVERYBODY = 1 )
```

This SQL statement contains an outer join between the TASK view and the TASK_CPROP view. This means that tasks that satisfy the WHERE clause are retrieved even if they do not have any custom properties.

Chapter 11. Developing EJB client applications for business processes and human tasks

The EJB APIs provide a set of generic methods for developing EJB client applications for working with the business processes and human tasks that are installed on a WebSphere Process Server.

About this task

With these Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) APIs, you can create client applications to do the following:

- Manage the life cycle of processes and tasks from starting them through to deleting them when they complete
- Repair activities and processes
- Manage and distribute the workload over members of a work group

The EJB APIs are provided as two stateless session enterprise beans:

- `BusinessFlowManagerService` interface provides the methods for business process applications
- `HumanTaskManagerService` interface provides the methods for task-based applications

For more information on the EJB APIs, see the Javadoc in the `com.ibm.bpe.api` package and the `com.ibm.task.api` package.

The following steps provide an overview of the actions you need to take to develop an EJB client application.

Procedure

1. Decide on the functionality that the application is to provide.
2. Decide which of the session beans that you are going to use.
Depending on the scenarios that you want to implement with your application, you can use one, or both, of the session beans.
3. Determine the authorization authorities needed by users of the application.
The users of your application must be assigned the appropriate authorization roles to call the methods that you include in your application, and to view the objects and the attributes of these objects that these methods return. When an instance of the appropriate session bean is created, WebSphere Application Server associates a context with the instance. The context contains information about the caller's principal ID, group membership list, and roles. This information is used to check the caller's authorization for each call.
The Javadoc contains authorization information for each of the methods.
4. Decide how to render the application.
The EJB APIs can be called locally or remotely.
5. Develop the application.
 - a. Access the EJB API.
 - b. Use the EJB API to interact with processes or tasks.
 - Query the data.

- Work with the data.

Accessing the EJB APIs

The Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) APIs are provided as two stateless session enterprise beans. Business process applications and task applications access the appropriate session enterprise bean through the home interface of the bean.

About this task

The BusinessFlowManagerService interface provides the methods for business process applications, and the HumanTaskManagerService interface provides the methods for task-based applications. The application can be any Java application, including another Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) application.

Accessing the remote interface of the session bean

An EJB client application for business processes or human tasks accesses the remote interface of the session bean through the remote home interface of the bean.

About this task

The session bean can be either the BusinessFlowManager session bean for process applications or the HumanTaskManager session bean for task applications.

Procedure

1. Add a reference to the remote interface of the session bean to the application deployment descriptor. Add the reference to one of the following files:
 - The application-client.xml file, for a Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) client application
 - The web.xml file, for a Web application
 - The ejb-jar.xml file, for an Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) application

The reference to the remote home interface for process applications is shown in the following example:

```
<ejb-ref>
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/BusinessFlowManagerHome</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <home>com.ibm.bpe.api.BusinessFlowManagerHome</home>
  <remote>com.ibm.bpe.api.BusinessFlowManager</remote>
</ejb-ref>
```

The reference to the remote home interface for task applications is shown in the following example:

```
<ejb-ref>
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/HumanTaskManagerHome</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <home>com.ibm.task.api.HumanTaskManagerHome</home>
  <remote>com.ibm.task.api.HumanTaskManager</remote>
</ejb-ref>
```

If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to add the EJB reference to the deployment descriptor, the binding for the EJB reference is automatically created when the application is deployed. For more information on adding EJB references, refer to the WebSphere Integration Developer documentation.

2. Package the generated stubs with your application.
 - a. For process applications, package the `<install_root>/ProcessChoreographer/client/bpe137650.jar` file with the enterprise archive (EAR) file of your application.

- b. For task applications, package the `<install_root>/ProcessChoreographer/client/task137650.jar` file with the EAR file of your application.
- c. Set the class path parameter in the manifest file of the application module to include the JAR file.

The application module can be a J2EE application, a Web application, or an EJB application.

3. Decide on how you are going to provide definitions of business objects.

To work with business objects in a remote client application, you need to have access to the corresponding schemas for the business objects (XSD or WSDL files) that are used to interact with a process or task. Access to these files can be provided in one of the following ways:

- If the client application does not run in a J2EE managed environment, package the files with the client application's EAR file.
- If the client application is a Web application or an EJB client in a managed J2EE environment, either package the files with the client application's EAR file or leverage remote artifact loading.
 - a. Use the Business Process Choreographer EJB API `createMessage` and the `ClientObjectWrapper.getObject` methods to load the remote business object definitions from the corresponding application on the server transparently.
 - b. Use the Service Data Object Programming API to create or read a business object as part of an already instantiated business object. Do this by using the `commonj.sdo.DataObject.createDataObject` or `getDataObject` methods on the `DataObject` interface.
 - c. When you want to create a business object as the value for a business object's property that is typed using the XML schema `any` or `anyType`, use the Business Object services to create or read your business object. To do this, you must set the remote artifact loader context to point to the application that the schemas will be loaded from. Then you can use the appropriate Business Object services.

For example, create a business object, where "ApplicationName" is the name of the application that contains your business object definitions.

```
BOFactory bofactory = (BOFactory) new
    ServiceManager().locateService("com/ibm/websphere/bo/BOFactory");

com.ibm.wsspi.al.ALContext.setContext
    ("RALTemplateName", "ApplicationName");
try {
    DataObject dataObject = bofactory.create("uriName", "typeName" );
} finally {
    com.ibm.wsspi.al.ALContext.unset();
}
```

For example, read XML input, where "ApplicationName" is the name of the application that contains your business object definitions.

```
BOXMLSerializer serializerService =
    (BOXMLSerializer) new ServiceManager().locateService
        ("com/ibm/websphere/bo/BOXMLSerializer");
ByteArrayInputStream input = new ByteArrayInputStream("<?xml?>..");

com.ibm.wsspi.al.ALContext.setContext
    ("RALTemplateName", "ApplicationName");
try {
    BOXMLDocument document = serializerService.readXMLDocument(input);
```

```

        DataObject dataObject = document.getDataObject();
    } finally {
        com.ibm.wsspi.al.ALContext.unset();
    }

```

4. Locate the remote home interface of the session bean through the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI).

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```

// Obtain the default initial JNDI context
InitialContext initialContext = new InitialContext();

// Lookup the remote home interface of the BusinessFlowManager bean
Object result =
    initialContext.lookup("java:comp/env/ejb/BusinessFlowManagerHome");

// Convert the lookup result to the proper type
BusinessFlowManagerHome processHome =
    (BusinessFlowManagerHome) javax.rmi.PortableRemoteObject.narrow
    (result, BusinessFlowManagerHome.class);

```

The remote home interface of the session bean contains a create method for EJB objects. The method returns the remote interface of the session bean.

5. Access the remote interface of the session bean.

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```
BusinessFlowManager process = processHome.create();
```

Access to the session bean does not guarantee that the caller can perform all of the actions provided by the bean; the caller must also be authorized for these actions. When an instance of the session bean is created, a context is associated with the instance of the session bean. The context contains the caller's principal ID, group membership list, and indicates whether the caller has one of the Business Process Choreographer J2EE roles. The context is used to check the caller's authorization for each call, even when administrative security is not set. If administrative security is not set, the caller's principal ID has the value UNAUTHENTICATED.

6. Call the business functions exposed by the service interface.

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```
process.initiate("MyProcessModel", input);
```

Calls from applications are run as transactions. A transaction is established and ended in one of the following ways:

- Automatically by WebSphere Application Server (the deployment descriptor specifies TX_REQUIRED).
- Explicitly by the application. You can bundle application calls into one transaction:

```

// Obtain user transaction interface
UserTransaction transaction=
    (UserTransaction)initialContext.lookup("java:comp/UserTransaction");

// Begin a transaction
transaction.begin();

// Applications calls ...

// On successful return, commit the transaction
transaction.commit();

```

Tip: To prevent database lock conflicts, avoid running statements similar to the following in parallel:

```

// Obtain user transaction interface
UserTransaction transaction=
    (UserTransaction)initialContext.lookup("java:comp/UserTransaction");

transaction.begin();

//read the activity instance
process.getActivityInstance(aiid);
//claim the activity instance
process.claim(aiid);

transaction.commit();

```

The `getActivityInstance` method and other read operations set a read lock. In this example, a read lock on the activity instance is upgraded to an update lock on the activity instance. This can result in a database deadlock when these transactions are run in parallel.

Example

Here is an example of how steps 3 through 5 might look for a task application.

```

//Obtain the default initial JNDI context
InitialContext initialContext = new InitialContext();

//Lookup the remote home interface of the HumanTaskManager bean
Object result =
    initialContext.lookup("java:comp/env/ejb/HumanTaskManagerHome");

//Convert the lookup result to the proper type
HumanTaskManagerHome taskHome =
    (HumanTaskManagerHome)javax.rmi.PortableRemoteObject.narrow
    (result,HumanTaskManagerHome.class);

...
//Access the remote interface of the session bean.
HumanTaskManager task = taskHome.create();

...
//Call the business functions exposed by the service interface
task.callTask(tkid,input);

```

Accessing the local interface of the session bean

An EJB client application for business processes or human tasks accesses the local interface of the session bean through the local home interface of the bean.

About this task

The session bean can be either the `BusinessFlowManager` session bean for process applications or the `HumanTaskManager` session bean for human task applications.

Procedure

1. Add a reference to the local interface of the session bean to the application deployment descriptor. Add the reference to one of the following files:
 - The `application-client.xml` file, for a Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) client application
 - The `web.xml` file, for a Web application
 - The `ejb-jar.xml` file, for an Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) application

The reference to the local home interface for process applications is shown in the following example:

```

<ejb-local-ref>
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <local-home>com.ibm.bpe.api.LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome</local-home>
  <local>com.ibm.bpe.api.LocalBusinessFlowManager</local>
</ejb-local-ref>

```

The reference to the local home interface for task applications is shown in the following example:

```

<ejb-local-ref>
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/LocalHumanTaskManagerHome</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <local-home>com.ibm.task.api.LocalHumanTaskManagerHome</local-home>
  <local>com.ibm.task.api.LocalHumanTaskManager</local>
</ejb-local-ref>

```

If you use WebSphere Integration Developer to add the EJB reference to the deployment descriptor, the binding for the EJB reference is automatically created when the application is deployed. For more information on adding EJB references, refer to the WebSphere Integration Developer documentation.

2. Locate the local home interface of the session bean through the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI).

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```

// Obtain the default initial JNDI context
InitialContext initialContext = new InitialContext();

// Lookup the local home interface of the BusinessFlowManager bean

LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome processHome =
    (LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome)initialContext.lookup
    ("java:comp/env/ejb/LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome");

```

The local home interface of the session bean contains a create method for EJB objects. The method returns the local interface of the session bean.

3. Access the local interface of the session bean.

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```
LocalBusinessFlowManager process = processHome.create();
```

Access to the session bean does not guarantee that the caller can perform all of the actions provided by the bean; the caller must also be authorized for these actions. When an instance of the session bean is created, a context is associated with the instance of the session bean. The context contains the caller's principal ID, group membership list, and indicates whether the caller has one of the Business Process Choreographer J2EE roles. The context is used to check the caller's authorization for each call, even when administrative security is not set. If administrative security is not set, the caller's principal ID has the value UNAUTHENTICATED.

4. Call the business functions exposed by the service interface.

The following example shows this step for a process application:

```
process.initiate("MyProcessModel",input);
```

Calls from applications are run as transactions. A transaction is established and ended in one of the following ways:

- Automatically by WebSphere Application Server (the deployment descriptor specifies TX_REQUIRED).
- Explicitly by the application. You can bundle application calls into one transaction:

```

// Obtain user transaction interface
UserTransaction transaction=
    (UserTransaction)initialContext.lookup("java:comp/UserTransaction");

```

```

// Begin a transaction
transaction.begin();

// Applications calls ...

// On successful return, commit the transaction
transaction.commit();

```

Tip: To prevent database deadlocks, avoid running statements similar to the following in parallel:

```

// Obtain user transaction interface
UserTransaction transaction=
    (UserTransaction)initialContext.lookup("java:comp/UserTransaction");

transaction.begin();

//read the activity instance
process.getActivityInstance(aiid);
//claim the activity instance
process.claim(aiid);

transaction.commit();

```

The `getActivityInstance` method and other read operations set a read lock. In this example, a read lock on the activity instance is upgraded to an update lock on the activity instance. This can result in a database deadlock when these transactions are run in parallel

Example

Here is an example of how steps 2 through 4 might look for a task application.

```

//Obtain the default initial JNDI context
InitialContext initialContext = new InitialContext();

//Lookup the local home interface of the HumanTaskManager bean
LocalHumanTaskManagerHome taskHome =
    (LocalHumanTaskManagerHome)initialContext.lookup
    ("java:comp/env/ejb/LocalHumanTaskManagerHome");

...
//Access the local interface of the session bean
LocalHumanTaskManager task = taskHome.create();

...
//Call the business functions exposed by the service interface
task.callTask(tkiid,input);

```

Querying business-process and task-related objects

The client applications work with business-process and task-related objects. You can query business-process and task-related objects in the database to retrieve specific properties of these objects.

About this task

During the configuration of Business Process Choreographer, a relational database is associated with both the business process container and the task container. The database stores all of the template (model) and instance (runtime) data for managing business processes and tasks. You use SQL-like syntax to query this data.

You can perform a one-off query to retrieve a specific property of an object. You can also save queries that you use often and include these stored queries in your application.

Filtering data using variables in queries

A query result returns the objects that match the query criteria. You might want to filter these results on the values of variables.

About this task

You can define variables that are used by a process at runtime in its process model. For these variables, you declare which parts can be queried.

For example, John Smith, calls his insurance company's service number to find out the progress of his insurance claim for his damaged car. The claims administrator uses the customer ID to find the claim.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the properties of the variables in a process that can be queried.

Use the process template ID to identify the process. You can skip this step if you know which variables can be queried.

```
List variableProperties = process.getQueryProperties(ptid);
for (int i = 0; i < variableProperties.size(); i++)
{
    QueryProperty queryData = (QueryProperty)variableProperties.get(i);
    String variableName = queryData.getVariableName();
    String name          = queryData.getName();
    int mappedType      = queryData.getMappedType();
    ...
}
```

2. List the process instances with variables that match the filter criteria.

For this process, the customer ID is modeled as part of the variable `customerClaim` that can be queried. You can therefore use the customer's ID to find the claim.

```
QueryResultSet result = process.query
("PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME, QUERY_PROPERTY.STRING_VALUE",
"QUERY_PROPERTY.VARIABLE_NAME = 'customerClaim' AND " +
"QUERY_PROPERTY.NAME = 'customerID' AND " +
"QUERY_PROPERTY.STRING_VALUE like 'Smith%'",
(String)null, (Integer)null,
(Integer)null, (TimeZone)null );
```

This action returns a query result set that contains the process instance names and the values of the customer IDs for customers whose IDs start with Smith.

Managing stored queries

Stored queries provide a way to save queries that are run often. The stored query can be either a query that is available to all users (public query), or a query that belongs to a specific user (private query).

About this task

A stored query is a query that is stored in the database and identified by a name. A private and a public stored query can have the same name; private stored queries from different owners can also have the same name.

You can have stored queries for business process objects, task objects, or a combination of these two object types.

Managing public stored queries

Public stored queries are created by the system administrator. These queries are available to all users.

About this task

As the system administrator, you can create, view, and delete public stored queries. If you do not specify a user ID in the API call, it is assumed that the stored query is a public stored query.

Procedure

1. Create a public stored query.

For example, the following code snippet creates a stored query for process instances and saves it with the name `CustomerOrdersStartingWithA`.

```
process.createStoredQuery("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    "DISTINCT PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID, PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME LIKE 'A%'",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

The result of the stored query is a sorted list of all the process-instance names that begin with the letter A and their associated process instance IDs (PIID).

2. Run the query defined by the stored query.

```
QueryResultSet result = process.query("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    new Integer(0), null);
```

This action returns the objects that fulfill the criteria. In this case, all of the customer orders that begin with A.

3. List the names of the available public stored queries.

The following code snippet shows how to limit the list of returned queries to just the public queries.

```
String[] storedQuery = process.getStoredQueryNames(StoredQueryData.KIND_PUBLIC);
```

4. Optional: Check the query that is defined by a specific stored query.

A stored private query can have the same name as a stored public query. If these names are the same, the private stored query is returned. The following code snippet shows how to return only the public query with the specified name. If you use the Human Task Manager API to retrieve information about a stored query, use `StoredQuery` for the returned object instead of `StoredQueryData`.

```
StoredQueryData storedQuery = process.getStoredQuery
    (StoredQueryData.KIND_PUBLIC, "CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
String selectClause = storedQuery.getSelectClause();
String whereClause = storedQuery.getWhereClause();
String orderByClause = storedQuery.getOrderByClause();
Integer threshold = storedQuery.getThreshold();
String owner = storedQuery.getOwner();
```

5. Delete a public stored query.

The following code snippet shows how to delete the stored query that you created in step 1.

```
process.deleteStoredQuery("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
```

Managing private stored queries for other users

Private queries can be created by any user. These queries are available only to the owner of the query and the system administrator.

About this task

As the system administrator, you can manage private stored queries that belong to a specific user.

Procedure

1. Create a private stored query for the user ID Smith.

For example, the following code snippet creates a stored query for process instances and saves it with the name `CustomerOrdersStartingWithA` for the user ID Smith.

```
process.createStoredQuery("Smith", "CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    "DISTINCT PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID, PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME LIKE 'A%'",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null,
    (List)null, (String)null);
```

The result of the stored query is a sorted list of all the process-instance names that begin with the letter A and their associated process instance IDs (PIID).

2. Run the query defined by the stored query.

```
QueryResultSet result = process.query
    ("Smith", "CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    (Integer)null, (Integer)null, (List)null);
new Integer(0));
```

This action returns the objects that fulfill the criteria. In this case, all of the customer orders that begin with A.

3. Get a list of the names of the private queries that belong to a specific user.

For example, the following code snippet shows how to get a list of private queries that belongs to the user Smith.

```
String[] storedQuery = process.getStoredQueryNames("Smith");
```

4. View the details of a specific query.

The following code snippet shows how to view the details of the `CustomerOrdersStartingWithA` query that is owned by the user Smith.

```
StoredQueryData storedQuery = process.getStoredQuery
    ("Smith", "CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
String selectClause = storedQuery.getSelectClause();
String whereClause = storedQuery.getWhereClause();
String orderByClause = storedQuery.getOrderByClause();
Integer threshold = storedQuery.getThreshold();
String owner = storedQuery.getOwner();
```

If you use the Human Task Manager API to retrieve information about a stored query, use `StoredQuery` for the returned object instead of `StoredQueryData`.

5. Delete a private stored query.

The following code snippet shows how to delete a private query that is owned by the user Smith.

```
process.deleteStoredQuery("Smith", "CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
```

Working with your private stored queries

If you are not a system administrator, you can create, run, and delete your own private stored queries. You can also use the public stored queries that the system administrator created.

Procedure

1. Create a private stored query.

For example, the following code snippet creates a stored query for process instances and saves it with a specific name. If a user ID is not specified, it is assumed that the stored query is a private stored query for the logged-on user.

```
process.createStoredQuery("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    "DISTINCT PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID, PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME LIKE 'A%'",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME",
    (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This query returns a sorted list of all the process-instance names that begin with the letter A and their associated process instance IDs (PIID).

2. Run the query defined by the stored query.

```
QueryResultSet result = process.query("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA",
    new Integer(0));
```

This action returns the objects that fulfill the criteria. In this case, all of the customer orders that begin with A.

3. Get a list of the names of the stored queries that the logged-on user can access.

The following code snippet shows how to get both the public and the private stored queries that the user can access.

```
String[] storedQuery = process.getStoredQueryNames();
```

4. View the details of a specific query.

The following code snippet shows how to view the details of the CustomerOrdersStartingWithA query that is owned by the user Smith.

```
StoredQueryData storedQuery = process.getStoredQuery
    ("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
String selectClause = storedQuery.getSelectClause();
String whereClause = storedQuery.getWhereClause();
String orderByClause = storedQuery.getOrderByClause();
Integer threshold = storedQuery.getThreshold();
String owner = storedQuery.getOwner();
```

If you use the Human Task Manager API to retrieve information about a stored query, use StoredQuery for the returned object instead of StoredQueryData.

5. Delete a private stored query.

The following code snippet shows how to delete a private stored query.

```
process.deleteStoredQuery("CustomerOrdersStartingWithA");
```

Developing applications for business processes

A business process is a set of business-related activities that are invoked in a specific sequence to achieve a business goal. Examples are provided that show how you might develop applications for typical actions on processes.

About this task

A business process can be either a microflow or a long-running process:

- Microflows are short running business processes that are executed synchronously. After a very short time, the result is returned to the caller.
- Long-running, interruptible processes are executed as a sequence of activities that are chained together. The use of certain constructs in a process causes interruptions in the process flow, for example, invoking a human task, invoking a service using an synchronous binding, or using timer-driven activities.

Parallel branches of the process are usually navigated asynchronously, that is, activities in parallel branches are executed concurrently. Depending on the type and the transaction setting of the activity, an activity can be run in its own transaction.

Required roles for actions on process instances

Access to the BusinessFlowManager interface does not guarantee that the caller can perform all of the actions on a process. The caller must be logged on to the client application with a role that is authorized to perform the action.

The following table shows the actions on a process instance that a specific role can take.

Action	Caller's principal role		
	Reader	Starter	Administrator
createMessage	x	x	x
createWorkItem			x
delete			x
deleteWorkItem			x
forceTerminate			x
getActiveEventHandlers	x		x
getActivityInstance	x		x
getAllActivities	x		x
getAllWorkItems	x		x
getClientUISettings	x	x	x
getCustomProperties	x	x	x
getCustomProperty	x	x	x
getCustomPropertyNamees	x	x	x
getFaultMessage	x	x	x
getInputClientUISettings	x	x	x
getInputMessage	x	x	x
getOutputClientUISettings	x	x	x
getOutputMessage	x	x	x
getProcessInstance	x	x	x
getVariable	x	x	x
getWaitingActivities	x	x	x
getWorkItems	x		x
restart			x
resume			x
setCustomProperty		x	x
setVariable			x
suspend			x
transferWorkItem			x

Required roles for actions on business-process activities

Access to the BusinessFlowManager interface does not guarantee that the caller can perform all of the actions on an activity. The caller must be logged on to the client application with a role that is authorized to perform the action.

The following table shows the actions on an activity instance that a specific role can take.

Action	Caller's principal role				
	Reader	Editor	Potential owner	Owner	Administrator
cancelClaim				x	x
claim			x		x
complete				x	x
createMessage	x	x	x	x	x
createWorkItem					x
deleteWorkItem					x
forceComplete					x
forceRetry					x
getActivityInstance	x	x	x	x	x
getAllWorkItems	x	x	x	x	x
getClientUISettings	x	x	x	x	x
getCustomProperties	x	x	x	x	x
getCustomProperty	x	x	x	x	x
getCustomPropertyNames	x	x	x	x	x
getFaultMessage	x	x	x	x	x
getFaultNames	x	x	x	x	x
getInputMessage	x	x	x	x	x
getOutputMessage	x	x	x	x	x
getVariable	x	x	x	x	x
getVariableNames	x	x	x	x	x
getInputVariableNames	x	x	x	x	x
getOutputVariableNames	x	x	x	x	x
getWorkItems	x	x	x	x	x
setCustomProperty		x		x	x
setFaultMessage		x		x	x
setOutputMessage		x		x	x
setVariable					x
transferWorkItem				x To potential owners or administrators only	x

Managing the life cycle of a business process

A process instance comes into existence when a Business Process Choreographer API method that can start a process is invoked. The navigation of the process instance continues until all of its activities are in an end state. Various actions can be taken on the process instance to manage its life cycle.

About this task

Examples are provided that show how you might develop applications for the following typical life-cycle actions on processes.

Starting business processes

The way in which a business process is started depends on whether the process is a microflow or a long-running process. The service that starts the process is also important to the way in which a process is started; the process can have either a unique starting service or several starting services.

About this task

Examples are provided that show how you might develop applications for typical scenarios for starting microflows and long-running processes.

Running a microflow that contains a unique starting service:

A microflow can be started by a receive activity or a pick activity. The starting service is unique if the microflow starts with a receive activity or when the pick activity has only one onMessage definition.

About this task

If the microflow implements a request-response operation, that is, the process contains a reply, you can use the call method to run the process passing the process template name as a parameter in the call.

If the microflow is a one-way operation, use the sendMessage method to run the process. This method is not covered in this example.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the process templates to find the name of the process you want to run.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the process.

```
ProcessTemplateData[] processTemplates = process.queryProcessTemplates
("PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE =
PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE.EXECUTION_MODE_MICROFLOW",
"PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME",
new Integer(50),
(TimeZone)null);
```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted templates that can be started by the call method.

2. Start the process with an input message of the appropriate type.

When you create the message, you must specify its message type name so that the message definition is contained.

```
ProcessTemplateData template = processTemplates[0];
//create a message for the single starting receive activity
ClientObjectWrapper input = process.createMessage
```

```

        (template.getID(),
         template.getInputMessageType());
DataObject myMessage = null;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    //set the strings in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}

//run the process
ClientObjectWrapper output = process.call(template.getName(), input);
DataObject myOutput = null;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myOutput = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    int order = myOutput.getInt("OrderNo");
}

```

This action creates an instance of the process template, `CustomerTemplate`, and passes some customer data. The operation returns only when the process is complete. The result of the process, `OrderNo`, is returned to the caller.

Running a microflow that contains a non-unique starting service:

A microflow can be started by a receive activity or a pick activity. The starting service is not unique if the microflow starts with a pick activity that has multiple `onMessage` definitions.

About this task

If the microflow implements a request-response operation, that is, the process contains a reply, you can use the `call` method to run the process passing the ID of the starting service in the call.

If the microflow is a one-way operation, use the `sendMessage` method to run the process. This method is not covered in this example.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the process templates to find the name of the process you want to run.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the process.

```

ProcessTemplateData[] processTemplates = process.queryProcessTemplates
("PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE =
    PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE.EXCECUTION_MODE_MICROFLOW",
 "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME",
 new Integer(50),
 (TimeZone)null);

```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted templates that can be started as microflows.

2. Determine the starting service to be called.

This example uses the first template that is found.

```

ProcessTemplateData template = processTemplates[0];
ActivityServiceTemplateData[] startActivities =
    process.getStartActivities(template.getID());

```

3. Start the process with an input message of the appropriate type.

When you create the message, you must specify its message type name so that the message definition is contained.

```

ActivityServiceTemplateData activity = startActivities[0];
//create a message for the service to be called
ClientObjectWrapper input =
    process.createMessage(activity.getServiceTemplateID(),
        activity.getActivityTemplateID(),
        activity.getInputMessageType());

DataObject myMessage = null;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    //set the strings in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}
//run the process
ClientObjectWrapper output = process.call(activity.getServiceTemplateID(),
    activity.getActivityTemplateID(),
    input);

//check the output of the process, for example, an order number
DataObject myOutput = null;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myOutput = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    int order = myOutput.getInt("OrderNo");
}

```

This action creates an instance of the process template, CustomerTemplate, and passes some customer data. The operation returns only when the process is complete. The result of the process, OrderNo, is returned to the caller.

Starting a long-running process that contains a unique starting service:

If the starting service is unique, you can use the initiate method and pass the process template name as a parameter. This is the case when the long-running process starts with either a single receive or pick activity and when the single pick activity has only one onMessage definition.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the process templates to find the name of the process you want to start.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the process.

```

ProcessTemplateData[] processTemplates = process.queryProcessTemplates
("PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE =
    PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE.EXCECUTION_MODE_LONG_RUNNING",
    "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME",
    new Integer(50),
    (TimeZone)null);

```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted templates that can be started by the initiate method.

2. Start the process with an input message of the appropriate type.

When you create the message, you must specify its message type name so that the message definition is contained. If you specify a process-instance name, it must not start with an underscore. If a process-instance name is not specified, the process instance ID (PIID) in String format is used as the name.

```

ProcessTemplateData template = processTemplates[0];
//create a message for the single starting receive activity
ClientObjectWrapper input = process.createMessage
    (template.getID(),
    template.getInputMessageType());

DataObject myMessage = null;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{

```

```

myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
//set the strings in the message, for example, a customer name
myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}
//start the process
PIID piid = process.initiate(template.getName(), "CustomerOrder", input);

```

This action creates an instance, CustomerOrder, and passes some customer data. When the process starts, the operation returns the object ID of the new process instance to the caller.

The starter of the process instance is set to the caller of the request. This person receives a work item for the process instance. The process administrators, readers, and editors of the process instance are determined and receive work items for the process instance. The follow-on activity instances are determined. These are started automatically or, if they are human task, receive, or pick activities, work items are created for the potential owners.

Starting a long-running process that contains a non-unique starting service:

A long-running process can be started through multiple initiating receive or pick activities. You can use the initiate method to start the process. If the starting service is not unique, for example, the process starts with multiple receive or pick activities, or a pick activity that has multiple onMessage definitions, then you must identify the service to be called.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the process templates to find the name of the process you want to start.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the process.

```

ProcessTemplateData[] processTemplates = process.queryProcessTemplates
("PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE =
PROCESS_TEMPLATE.EXECUTION_MODE.EXECUTION_MODE_LONG_RUNNING",
"PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME",
new Integer(50),
(TimeZone)null);

```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted templates that can be started as long-running processes.

2. Determine the starting service to be called.

```

ProcessTemplateData template = processTemplates[0];
ActivityServiceTemplateData[] startActivities =
process.getStartActivities(template.getID());

```

3. Start the process with an input message of the appropriate type.

When you create the message, you must specify its message type name so that the message definition is contained. If you specify a process-instance name, it must not start with an underscore. If a process-instance name is not specified, the process instance ID (PIID) in String format is used as the name.

```

ActivityServiceTemplateData activity = startActivities[0];
//create a message for the service to be called
ClientObjectWrapper input = process.createMessage
(activity.getServiceTemplateID(),
activity.getActivityTemplateID(),
activity.getInputMessageType());

DataObject myMessage = null;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
//set the strings in the message, for example, a customer name
myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}

```

```

}
//start the process
PIID piid = process.sendMessage(activity.getServiceTemplateID(),
                                activity.getActivityTemplateID(),
                                input);

```

This action creates an instance and passes some customer data. When the process starts, the operation returns the object ID of the new process instance to the caller.

The starter of the process instance is set to the caller of the request and receives a work item for the process instance. The process administrators, readers, and editors of the process instance are determined and receive work items for the process instance. The follow-on activity instances are determined. These are started automatically or, if they are human task, receive, or pick activities, work items are created for the potential owners.

Suspending and resuming a business process

You can suspend long-running, top-level process instance while it is running and resume it again to complete it.

Before you begin

The caller must be an administrator of the process instance or a business process administrator. To suspend a process instance, it must be in the running or failing state.

About this task

You might want to suspend a process instance, for example, so that you can configure access to a back-end system that is used later in the process. When the prerequisites for the process are met, you can resume the process instance. You might also want to suspend a process to fix a problem that is causing the process instance to fail, and then resume it again when the problem is fixed.

Procedure

1. Get the running process, CustomerOrder, that you want to suspend.

```

ProcessInstanceData processInstance =
    process.getProcessInstance("CustomerOrder");

```

2. Suspend the process instance.

```

PIID piid = processInstance.getID();
process.suspend( piid );

```

This action suspends the specified top-level process instance. The process instance is put into the suspended state. Subprocesses with the autonomy attribute set to child are also suspended if they are in the running, failing, terminating, or compensating state. Inline tasks that are associated with this process instance are also suspended; stand-alone tasks associated with this process instance are not suspended.

In this state, activities that are started can still be finished but no new activities are activated, for example, a human task activity in the claimed state can be completed.

3. Resume the process instance.

```

process.resume( piid );

```

This action puts the process instance and its subprocesses into the states they had before they were suspended.

Restarting a business process

You can restart a process instance that is in the finished, terminated, failed, or compensated state.

Before you begin

The caller must be an administrator of the process instance or a business process administrator.

About this task

Restarting a process instance is similar to starting a process instance for the first time. However, when a process instance is restarted, the process instance ID is known and the input message for the instance is available.

If the process has more than one receive activity or pick activity (also known as a receive choice activity) that can create the process instance, all of the messages that belong to these activities are used to restart the process instance. If any of these activities implement a request-response operation, the response is sent again when the associated reply activity is navigated.

Procedure

1. Get the process that you want to restart.

```
ProcessInstanceData processInstance =  
    process.getProcessInstance("CustomerOrder");
```

2. Restart the process instance.

```
PIID piid = processInstance.getID();  
process.restart( piid );
```

This action restarts the specified process instance.

Terminating a process instance

Sometimes, it is necessary for someone with process administrator authorization to terminate a top-level process instance that is known to be in an unrecoverable state. Because a process instance terminates immediately, without waiting for any outstanding subprocesses or activities, you should terminate a process instance only in exceptional situations.

Procedure

1. Retrieve the process instance that is to be terminated.

```
ProcessInstanceData processInstance =  
    process.getProcessInstance("CustomerOrder");
```

2. Terminate the process instance.

If you terminate a process instance, you can terminate the process instance with or without compensation.

To terminate the process instance with compensation:

```
PIID piid = processInstance.getID();  
process.forceTerminate(piid, CompensationBehaviour.INVOKE_COMPENSATION);
```

To terminate the process instance without compensation:

```
PIID piid = processInstance.getID();  
process.forceTerminate(piid);
```

If you terminate the process instance with compensation, the compensation of the process is run as if a fault had occurred on the top-level scope. If you

terminate the process instance without compensation, the process instance is terminated immediately without waiting for activities, to-do tasks, or inline invocation tasks to end normally.

Applications that are started by the process and standalone tasks that are related to the process are not terminated by the force terminate request. If these applications are to be terminated, you must add statements to your process application that explicitly terminate the applications started by the process.

Deleting process instances

Completed process instances are automatically deleted from the Business Process Choreographer database if the corresponding property is set for the process template in the process model. You might want to keep process instances in your database, for example, to query data from process instances that are not written to the audit log. However, stored process instance data does not only impact disk space and performance but also prevents process instances that use the same correlation set values from being created. Therefore, you should regularly delete process instance data from the database.

About this task

To delete a process instance, you need process administrator rights and the process instance must be a top-level process instance.

The following example shows how to delete all of the finished process instances.

Procedure

1. List the process instances that are finished.

```
QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("DISTINCT PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID",
                 "PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE =
                  PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE.STATE_FINISHED",
                 (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that lists process instances that are finished.

2. Delete the process instances that are finished.

```
while (result.next() )
{
    PIID piid = (PIID) result.getOID(1);
    process.delete(piid);
}
```

This action deletes the selected process instance and its inline tasks from the database.

Processing human task activities

Human task activities in business processes are assigned to various people in your organization through work items. When a process is started, work items are created for the potential owners.

About this task

When a human task activity is activated, both an activity instance and an associated to-do task are created. Handling of the human task activity and the work item management is delegated to Human Task Manager. Any state change of the activity instance is reflected in the task instance and vice versa.

A potential owner claims the activity. This person is responsible for providing the relevant information and completing the activity.

Procedure

1. List the activities belonging to a logged-on person that are ready to be worked on:

```
QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",
        "ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_READY AND
        ACTIVITY.KIND = ACTIVITY.KIND.KIND_STAFF AND
        WORK_ITEM.REASON =
        WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
        (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that contains the activities that can be worked on by the logged-on person.

2. Claim the activity to be worked on:

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper input = process.claim(aaid);
    DataObject activityInput = null ;
    if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        activityInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        // read the values
        ...
    }
}
```

When the activity is claimed, the input message of the activity is returned.

3. When work on the activity is finished, complete the activity. The activity can be completed either successfully or with a fault message. If the activity is successful, an output message is passed. If the activity is unsuccessful, the activity is put into the failed or stopped state and a fault message is passed. You must create the appropriate messages for these actions. When you create the message, you must specify the message type name so that the message definition is contained.

- a. To complete the activity successfully, create an output message.

```
ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aaid);
ClientObjectWrapper output =
    process.createMessage(aaid, activity.getOutputMessageType());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    //set the parts in your message, for example, an order number
    myMessage.setInt("OrderNo", 4711);
}

//complete the activity
process.complete(aaid, output);
```

This action sets an output message that contains the order number.

- b. To complete the activity when a fault occurs, create a fault message.

```
//retrieve the faults modeled for the human task activity
List faultNames = process.getFaultNames(aaid);

//create a message of the appropriate type
```

```

ClientObjectWrapper myFault =
    process.createMessage(aiid, faultNames.get(0) );

// set the parts in your fault message, for example, an error number
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( myFault.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)myFault.getObject();
    //set the parts in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setInt("error",1304);
}

process.complete(aiid, myFault,(String) faultNames.get(0) );

```

This action sets the activity in either the failed or the stopped state. If the **continueOnError** parameter for the activity in the process model is set to true, the activity is put into the failed state and the navigation continues. If the **continueOnError** parameter is set to false and the fault is not caught on the surrounding scope, the activity is put into the stopped state. In this state the activity can be repaired using force complete or force retry.

Processing a single person workflow

Some workflows are performed by only one person, for example, ordering books from an online bookstore. This type of workflow has no parallel paths. The `completeAndClaimSuccessor` API supports the processing of this type of workflow.

About this task

In an online bookstore, the purchaser completes a sequence of actions to order a book. This sequence of actions can be implemented as a series of human task activities (to-do tasks). If the purchaser decides to order several books, this is equivalent to claiming the next human task activity. This type of workflow is also known as *page flow* because user interface definitions are associated with the activities to control the flow of the dialogs in the user interface.

The `completeAndClaimSuccessor` API completes a human task activity and claims the next one in the same process instance for the logged-on person. It returns information about the next claimed activity, including the input message to be worked on. Because the next activity is made available within the same transaction of the activity that completed, the transactional behavior of all the human task activities in the process model must be set to `participates`.

Compare this example with the example that uses both the Business Flow Manager API and the Human Task Manager API.

Procedure

1. Claim the first activity in the sequence of activities.

```

//
//Query the list of activities that can be claimed by the logged-on user
//
QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",
        "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME = 'CustomerOrder' AND
        ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_READY AND
        ACTIVITY.KIND = ACTIVITY.KIND.KIND_STAFF AND
        WORK_ITEM.REASON =
            WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
        (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
...

```

```

//
//Claim the first activity
//
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper input = process.claim(aaid);
    DataObject activityInput = null ;
    if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        activityInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        // read the values
        ...
    }
}

```

When the activity is claimed, the input message of the activity is returned.

2. When work on the activity is finished, complete the activity, and claim the next activity.

To complete the activity, an output message is passed. When you create the output message, you must specify the message type name so that the message definition is contained.

```

ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aaid);
ClientObjectWrapper output =
    process.createMessage(aaid, activity.getOutputMessageType());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    //set the parts in your message, for example, an order number
    myMessage.setInt("OrderNo", 4711);
}

//complete the activity and claim the next one
CompleteAndClaimSuccessorResult successor =
    process.completeAndClaimSuccessor(aaid, output);

```

This action sets an output message that contains the order number and claims the next activity in the sequence. If `AutoClaim` is set for successor activities and if there are multiple paths that can be followed, all of the successor activities are claimed and a random activity is returned as the next activity. If there are no more successor activities that can be assigned to this user, `Null` is returned.

If the process contains parallel paths that can be followed and these paths contain human task activities for which the logged-on user is a potential owner of more than one of these activities, a random activity is claimed automatically and returned as the next activity.

3. Work on the next activity.

```

String name = successor.getActivityName();

ClientObjectWrapper nextInput = successor.getInputMessage();
if ( nextInput.getObject() !=
    null && nextInput.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    activityInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    // read the values
    ...
}

aaid = successor.getAIID();

```

4. Continue with step 2 to complete the activity.

Sending a message to a waiting activity

You can use inbound message activities (receive activities, onMessage in pick activities, onEvent in event handlers) to synchronize a running process with events from the "outside world". For example, the receipt of an e-mail from a customer in response to a request for information might be such an event.

About this task

You can use originating tasks to send the message to the activity.

Procedure

1. List the activity service templates that are waiting for a message from the logged-on user in a process instance with a specific process instance ID.

```
ActivityServiceTemplateData[] services = process.getWaitingActivities(pid);
```

2. Send a message to the first waiting service.

It is assumed that the first service is the one that you want serve. The caller must be a potential starter of the activity that receives the message, or an administrator of the process instance.

```
VTID vtid = services[0].getServiceTemplateID();
ATID atid = services[0].getActivityTemplateID();
String inputType = services[0].getInputMessageType();

// create a message for the service to be called
ClientObjectWrapper message =
    process.createMessage(vtid,atid,inputMessageType);
DataObject myMessage = null;
if ( message.getObject() != null && message.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)message.getObject();
    //set the strings in the message, for example, chocolate is to be ordered
    myMessage.setString("Order", "chocolate");
}

// send the message to the waiting activity
process.sendMessage(vtid, atid, message);
}
```

This action sends the specified message to the waiting activity service and passes some order data.

You can also specify the process instance ID to ensure that the message is sent to the specified process instance. If the process instance ID is not specified, the message is sent to the activity service, and the process instance that is identified by the correlation values in the message. If the process instance ID is specified, the process instance that is found using the correlation values is checked to ensure that it has the specified process instance ID.

Handling events

An entire business process and each of its scopes can be associated with event handlers that are invoked if the associated event occurs. Event handlers are similar to receive or pick activities in that a process can provide Web service operations using event handlers.

About this task

You can invoke an event handler any number of times as long as the corresponding scope is running. In addition, multiple instances of an event handler can be activated concurrently.

The following code snippet shows how to get the active event handlers for a given process instance and how to send an input message.

Procedure

1. Determine the data of the process instance ID and list the active event handlers for the process.

```
ProcessInstanceData processInstance =
    process.getProcessInstance( "CustomerOrder2711");
EventHandlerTemplateData[] events = process.getActiveEventHandlers(
    processInstance.getID() );
```

2. Send the input message.

This example uses the first event handler that is found.

```
EventHandlerTemplateData event = null;
if ( events.length > 0 )
{
    event = events[0];

    // create a message for the service to be called
    ClientObjectWrapper input = process.createMessage(
        event.getID(), event.getInputMessageType());

    if (input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        DataObject inputMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        // set content of the message, for example, a customer name, order number
        inputMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
        inputMessage.setString("OrderNo", "2711");

        // send the message
        process.sendMessage( event.getProcessTemplateName(),
            event.getPortTypeNamespace(),
            event.getPortTypeName(),
            event.getOperationName(),

            input );
    }
}
```

This action sends the specified message to the active event handler for the process.

Analyzing the results of a process

A process can expose Web services operations that are modeled as Web Services Description Language (WSDL) one-way or request-response operations. The results of long-running processes with one-way interfaces cannot be retrieved using the `getOutputMessage` method, because the process has no output. However, you can query the contents of variables, instead.

About this task

The results of the process are stored in the database only if the process template from which the process instance was derived does not specify automatic deletion of the derived process instances.

Procedure

Analyze the results of the process, for example, check the order number.

```
QueryResultSet result = process.query
    ("PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID",
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME = 'CustomerOrder' AND
    PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE =
```

```

                                PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE.STATE_FINISHED",
                                (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    PIID piid = (PIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper output = process.getOutputMessage(piid);
    DataObject myOutput = null;
    if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        myOutput = (DataObject)output.getObject();
        int order = myOutput.getInt("OrderNo");
    }
}

```

Repairing activities

A long-running process can contain activities that are also long running. These activities might encounter uncaught errors and go into the stopped state. An activity in the running state might also appear to be not responding. In both of these cases, a process administrator can act on the activity in a number of ways so that the navigation of the process can continue.

About this task

The Business Process Choreographer API provides the `forceRetry` and `forceComplete` methods for repairing activities. Examples are provided that show how you might add repair actions for activities to your applications.

Forcing the completion of an activity

Activities in long-running processes can sometimes encounter faults. If these faults are not caught by a fault handler in the enclosing scope and the associated activity template specifies that the activity stops when an error occurs, the activity is put into the stopped state so that it can be repaired. In this state, you can force the completion of the activity.

About this task

You can also force the completion of activities in the running state if, for example, an activity is not responding.

Additional requirements exist for certain types of activities.

Human task activities

You can pass parameters in the force-complete call, such as the message that should have been sent or the fault that should have been raised.

Script activities

You cannot pass parameters in the force-complete call. However, you must set the variables that need to be repaired.

Invoke activities

You can also force the completion of invoke activities that call an asynchronous service that is not a subprocess if these activities are in the running state. You might want to do this, for example, if the asynchronous service is called and it does not respond.

Procedure

1. List the stopped activities in the stopped state.


```

QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("DISTINCT ACTIVITY.AIID",
        "ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_STOPPED AND
        PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME='CustomerOrder'",
        (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);

```

This action returns the stopped activities for the CustomerOrder process instance.

2. Complete the activity, for example, a stopped human task activity.

In this example, an output message is passed.

```

if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aaid);
    ClientObjectWrapper output =
        process.createMessage(aaid, activity.getOutputMessageType());
    DataObject myMessage = null;
    if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        myMessage = (DataObject)output.getObject();
        //set the parts in your message, for example, an order number
        myMessage.setInt("OrderNo", 4711);
    }

    boolean continueOnError = true;
    process.forceComplete(aaid, output, continueOnError);
}

```

This action completes the activity. If an error occurs, the **continueOnError** parameter determines the action to be taken if a fault is provided with the forceComplete request.

In the example, **continueOnError** is true. This value means that if a fault is provided, the activity is put into the failed state. The fault is propagated to the enclosing scopes of the activity until it is either handled or the process scope is reached. The process is then put into the failing state and it eventually reaches the failed state.

Retrying the execution of a stopped activity

If an activity in a long-running process encounters an uncaught fault in the enclosing scope and if the associated activity template specifies that the activity stops when an error occurs, the activity is put into the stopped state so that it can be repaired. You can retry the execution of the activity.

About this task

You can set variables that are used by the activity. With the exception of script activities, you can also pass parameters in the force-retry call, such as the message that was expected by the activity.

Procedure

1. List the stopped activities.

```

QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("DISTINCT ACTIVITY.AIID",
        "ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_STOPPED AND
        PROCESS_INSTANCE.NAME='CustomerOrder'",
        (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);

```

This action returns the stopped activities for the CustomerOrder process instance.

2. Retry the execution of the activity, for example, a stopped human task activity.

```

if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aaid);
    ClientObjectWrapper input =
        process.createMessage(aaid, activity.getOutputMessageType());
    DataObject myMessage = null;
    if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        //set the strings in your message, for example, chocolate is to be ordered
        myMessage.setString("OrderNo", "chocolate");
    }

    boolean continueOnError = true;
    process.forceRetry(aaid, input, continueOnError);
}

```

This action retries the activity. If an error occurs, the **continueOnError** parameter determines the action to be taken if an error occurs during processing of the forceRetry request.

In the example, **continueOnError** is true. This means that if an error occurs during processing of the forceRetry request, the activity is put into the failed state. The fault is propagated to the enclosing scopes of the activity until it is either handled or the process scope is reached. The process is then put into the failing state and a fault handler on the process level is run before the process state ends in the failed state.

BusinessFlowManagerService interface

The BusinessFlowManagerService interface exposes business-process functions that can be called by a client application.

The methods that can be called by the BusinessFlowManagerService interface depend on the state of the process or the activity and the authorization of the person that uses the application containing the method. The main methods for manipulating business process objects are listed here. For more information about these methods and the other methods that are available in the BusinessFlowManagerService interface, see the Javadoc in the com.ibm.bpe.api package.

Process templates

A process template is a versioned, deployed, and installed process model that contains the specification of a business process. It can be instantiated and started by issuing appropriate requests, for example, sendMessage(). The execution of the process instance is driven automatically by the server.

Table 54. API methods for process templates

Method	Description
getProcessTemplate	Retrieves the specified process template.
queryProcessTemplates	Retrieves process templates that are stored in the database.

Process instances

The following API methods are related to starting process instances.

Table 55. API methods are related to starting process instances

Method	Description
call	Creates and runs a microflow.
callWithReplyContext	Creates and runs a microflow with a unique starting service or a long-running process with a unique starting service from the specified process template. The call waits asynchronously for the result.
callWithUISettings	Creates and runs a microflow and returns the output message and the client user interface (UI) settings.
initiate	Creates a process instance and initiates processing of the process instance. Use this method for long-running processes. You can also use this method for microflows that you want to fire and forget.
sendMessage	Sends the specified message to the specified activity service and process instance. If a process instance with the same correlation set values does not exist, it is created. The process can have either unique or non-unique starting services.
getStartActivities	Returns information about the activities that can start a process instance from the specified process template.
getActivityServiceTemplate	Retrieves the specified activity service template.

Table 56. API methods for controlling the life cycle of process instances

Method	Description
suspend	Suspends the execution of a long-running, top-level process instance that is in the running or failing state.
resume	Resumes the execution of a long-running, top-level process instance that is in the suspended state.
restart	Restarts a long-running, top-level process instance that is in the finished, failed, or terminated state.
forceTerminate	Terminates the specified top-level process instance, its subprocesses with child autonomy, and its running, claimed, or waiting activities.
delete	Deletes the specified top-level process instance and its subprocesses with child autonomy.
query	Retrieves the properties from the database that match the search criteria.

Activities

For invoke activities, you can specify in the process model that these activities continue in error situations. If the `continueOnError` flag is set to false and an unhandled error occurs, the activity is put into the stopped state. A process administrator can then repair the activity. The `continueOnError` flag and the associated repair functions can, for example, be used in a long-running process where an invoke activity fails occasionally, but the effort required to model compensation and fault handling is too high.

The following methods are available for working with and repairing activities.

Table 57. API methods for controlling the life cycle of activity instances

Method	Description
<code>claim</code>	Claims a ready activity instance for a user to work on the activity.
<code>cancelClaim</code>	Cancels the claim of the activity instance.
<code>complete</code>	Completes the activity instance.
<code>completeAndClaimSuccessor</code>	Completes the activity instance and claims the next one in the same process instance for the logged-on person.
<code>forceComplete</code>	Forces the completion of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• An activity instance that is in the running or stopped state.• A human task activity that is in the state ready or claimed.• A wait activity in state waiting.
<code>forceRetry</code>	Forces the repetition of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• An activity instance that is in the running or stopped state.• A human task activity that is in the state ready or claimed.
<code>query</code>	Retrieves the properties from the database that match the search criteria.

Variables and custom properties

The interface provides a get and a set method to retrieve and set values for variables. You can also associate named properties with, and retrieve named properties from, process and activity instances. Custom property names and values must be of the `java.lang.String` type.

Table 58. API methods for variables and custom properties

Method	Description
<code>getVariable</code>	Retrieves the specified variable.
<code>setVariable</code>	Sets the specified variable.
<code>getCustomProperty</code>	Retrieves the named custom property of the specified activity or process instance.
<code>getCustomProperties</code>	Retrieves the custom properties of the specified activity or process instance.

Table 58. API methods for variables and custom properties (continued)

Method	Description
getCustomPropertyNames	Retrieves the names of the custom properties for the specified activity or process instance.
setCustomProperty	Stores custom-specific values for the specified activity or process instance.

Developing applications for human tasks

A task is the means by which components invoke humans as services or by which humans invoke services. Examples of typical applications for human tasks are provided.

About this task

For more information on the Human Task Manager API, see the Javadoc in the `com.ibm.task.api` package.

Starting an invocation task that invokes a synchronous interface

An invocation task is associated with a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component. When the task is started, it invokes the SCA component. Start an invocation task synchronously only if the associated SCA component can be called synchronously.

About this task

Such an SCA component can, for example, be implemented as a microflow or as a simple Java class.

This scenario creates an instance of a task template and passes some customer data. The task remains in the running state until the two-way operation returns. The result of the task, `OrderNo`, is returned to the caller.

Procedure

- Optional: List the task templates to find the name of the invocation task you want to run.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the task.

```
TaskTemplate[] taskTemplates = task.queryTaskTemplates
("TASK_TEMPL.KIND=TASK_TEMPL.KIND.KIND_ORIGINATING",
 "TASK_TEMPL.NAME",
 new Integer(50),
 (TimeZone)null);
```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted originating templates.

- Create an input message of the appropriate type.

```
TaskTemplate template = taskTemplates[0];

// create a message for the selected task
ClientObjectWrapper input = task.createInputMessage( template.getID());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
```

```

myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
//set the parts in the message, for example, a customer name
myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}

```

3. Create the task and run the task synchronously.

For a task to run synchronously, it must be a two-way operation. The example uses the `createAndCallTask` method to create and run the task.

```

ClientObjectWrapper output = task.createAndCallTask( template.getName(),
                                                    template.getNamespace(),
                                                    input);

```

4. Analyze the result of the task.

```

DataObject myOutput = null;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myOutput = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    int order = myOutput.getInt("OrderNo");
}

```

Starting an invocation task that invokes an asynchronous interface

An invocation task is associated with a Service Component Architecture (SCA) component. When the task is started, it invokes the SCA component. Start an invocation task asynchronously only if the associated SCA component can be called asynchronously.

About this task

Such an SCA component can, for example, be implemented as a long-running process or a one-way operation.

This scenario creates an instance of a task template and passes some customer data.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the task templates to find the name of the invocation task you want to run.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the task.

```

TaskTemplate[] taskTemplates = task.queryTaskTemplates
("TASK_TEMPL.KIND=TASK_TEMPL.KIND.KIND_ORIGINATING",
 "TASK_TEMPL.NAME",
 new Integer(50),
 (TimeZone)null);

```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted originating templates.

2. Create an input message of the appropriate type.

```

TaskTemplate template = taskTemplates[0];

// create a message for the selected task
ClientObjectWrapper input = task.createInputMessage( template.getID());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    //set the parts in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}

```

3. Create the task and run it asynchronously.

The example uses the `createAndStartTask` method to create and run the task.

```
task.createAndStartTask( template.getName(),
                        template.getNamespace(),
                        input,
                        (ReplyHandlerWrapper)null);
```

Creating and starting a task instance

This scenario shows how to create an instance of a task template that defines a collaboration task (also known as a *human task* in the API) and start the task instance.

Procedure

1. Optional: List the task templates to find the name of the collaboration task you want to run.

This step is optional if you already know the name of the task.

```
TaskTemplate[] taskTemplates = task.queryTaskTemplates
("TASK_TEMPL.KIND=TASK_TEMPL.KIND.KIND_HUMAN",
 "TASK_TEMPL.NAME",
 new Integer(50),
 (TimeZone)null);
```

The results are sorted by name. The query returns an array containing the first 50 sorted task templates.

2. Create an input message of the appropriate type.

```
TaskTemplate template = taskTemplates[0];

// create a message for the selected task
ClientObjectWrapper input = task.createInputMessage( template.getID());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    //set the parts in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setString("CustomerName", "Smith");
}
```

3. Create and start the collaboration task; a reply handler is not specified in this example.

The example uses the `createAndStartTask` method to create and start the task.

```
TKIID tkiid = task.createAndStartTask( template.getName(),
                                       template.getNamespace(),
                                       input,
                                       (ReplyHandlerWrapper)null);
```

Work items are created for the people concerned with the task instance. For example, a potential owner can claim the new task instance.

4. Claim the task instance.

```
ClientObjectWrapper input2 = task.claim(tkiid);
DataObject taskInput = null ;
if ( input2.getObject() != null && input2.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    taskInput = (DataObject)input2.getObject();
    // read the values
    ...
}
```

When the task instance is claimed, the input message of the task is returned.

Processing to-do tasks or collaboration tasks

To-do tasks (also known as *participating tasks* in the API) or collaboration tasks (also known as *human tasks* in the API) are assigned to various people in your organization through work items. To-do tasks and their associated work items are created, for example, when a process navigates to a human task activity.

About this task

One of the potential owners claims the task associated with the work item. This person is responsible for providing the relevant information and completing the task.

Procedure

1. List the tasks belonging to a logged-on person that are ready to be worked on.

```
QueryResultSet result =
    task.query("TASK.TKIID",
              "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY AND
              (TASK.KIND = TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING OR
              TASK.KIND = TASK.KIND.KIND_HUMAN)AND
              WORK_ITEM.REASON =
              WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
              (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that contains the tasks that can be worked on by the logged-on person.

2. Claim the task to be worked on.

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper input = task.claim(tkiid);
    DataObject taskInput = null ;
    if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        taskInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        // read the values
        ...
    }
}
```

When the task is claimed, the input message of the task is returned.

3. When work on the task is finished, complete the task.

The task can be completed either successfully or with a fault message. If the task is successful, an output message is passed. If the task is unsuccessful, a fault message is passed. You must create the appropriate messages for these actions.

- a. To complete the task successfully, create an output message.

```
ClientObjectWrapper output =
    task.createOutputMessage(tkiid);
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    //set the parts in your message, for example, an order number
    myMessage.setInt("OrderNo", 4711);
}

//complete the task
task.complete(tkiid, output);
```


This action sets an output message that contains the order number. The task is put into the finished state.

- b. To complete the task when a fault occurs, create a fault message.

```
//retrieve the faults modeled for the task
List faultNames = task.getFaultNames(tkiid);

//create a message of the appropriate type
ClientObjectWrapper myFault =
    task.createFaultMessage(tkiid, (String)faultNames.get(0));

// set the parts in your fault message, for example, an error number
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( myFault.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)myFault.getObject();
    //set the parts in the message, for example, a customer name
    myMessage.setInt("error",1304);
}

task.complete(tkiid, (String)faultNames.get(0), myFault);
```

This action sets a fault message that contains the error code. The task is put into the failed state.

Suspending and resuming a task instance

You can suspend collaboration task instances (also known as *human tasks* in the API) or to-do task instances (also known as *participating tasks* in the API).

Before you begin

The task instance can be in the ready or claimed state. It can be escalated. The caller must be the owner, originator, or administrator of the task instance.

About this task

You can suspend a task instance while it is running. You might want to do this, for example, so that you can gather information that is needed to complete the task. When the information is available, you can resume the task instance.

Procedure

1. Get a list of tasks that are claimed by the logged-on user.

```
QueryResultSet result = task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
                                   "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_CLAIMED",
                                   (String)null,
                                   (Integer)null,
                                   (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that contains a list of the tasks that are claimed by the logged-on user.

2. Suspend the task instance.

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    task.suspend(tkiid);
}
```

This action suspends the specified task instance. The task instance is put into the suspended state.

3. Resume the process instance.

```
task.resume( tkiid );
```

This action puts the task instance into the state it had before it was suspended.

Analyzing the results of a task

A to-do task (also known as a *participating* task in the API) or a collaboration task (also known as a *human task* in the API) runs asynchronously. If a reply handler is specified when the task starts, the output message is automatically returned when the task completes. If a reply handler is not specified, the message must be retrieved explicitly.

About this task

The results of the task are stored in the database only if the task template from which the task instance was derived does not specify automatic deletion of the derived task instances.

Procedure

Analyze the results of the task.

The example shows how to check the order number of a successfully completed task.

```
QueryResultSet result = task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
                                   "TASK.NAME = 'CustomerOrder' AND
                                   TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_FINISHED",
                                   (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper output = task.getOutputMessage(tkiid);
    DataObject myOutput = null;
    if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject)
    {
        myOutput = (DataObject)output.getObject();
        int order = myOutput.getInt("OrderNo");
    }
}
```

Terminating a task instance

Sometimes it is necessary for someone with administrator rights to terminate a task instance that is known to be in an unrecoverable state. Because the task instance is terminated immediately, you should terminate a task instance only in exceptional situations.

Procedure

1. Retrieve the task instance to be terminated.

```
Task taskInstance = task.getTask(tkiid);
```

2. Terminate the task instance.

```
TKIID tkiid = taskInstance.getID();
task.terminate(tkiid);
```

The task instance is terminated immediately without waiting for any outstanding tasks.

Deleting task instances

Task instances are only automatically deleted when they complete if this is specified in the associated task template from which the instances are derived. This example shows how to delete all of the task instances that are finished and are not automatically deleted.

Procedure

1. List the task instances that are finished.

```
QueryResultSet result =
    task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
              "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_FINISHED",
              (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that lists task instances that are finished.

2. Delete the task instances that are finished.

```
while (result.next() )
{
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    task.delete(tkiid);
}
```

Releasing a claimed task

When a potential owner claims a task, this person is responsible for completing the task. However, sometimes the claimed task must be released so that another potential owner can claim it.

About this task

Sometimes it is necessary for someone with administrator rights to release a claimed task. This situation might occur, for example, when a task must be completed but the owner of the task is absent. The owner of the task can also release a claimed task.

Procedure

1. List the claimed tasks owned by a specific person, for example, Smith.

```
QueryResultSet result =
    task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
              "TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_CLAIMED AND
              TASK.OWNER = 'Smith'",
              (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that lists the tasks claimed by the specified person, Smith.

2. Release the claimed task.

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    task.cancelClaim(tkiid, true);
}
```

This action returns the task to the ready state so that it can be claimed by one of the other potential owners. Any output or fault data that is set by the original owner is kept.

Managing work items

During the lifetime of an activity instance or a task instance, the set of people associated with the object can change, for example, because a person is on vacation, new people are hired, or the workload needs to be distributed differently. To allow for these changes, you can develop applications to create, delete, or transfer work items.

About this task

A work item represents the assignment of an object to a user or group of users for a particular reason. The object is typically a human task activity instance, a process instance, or a task instance. The reasons are derived from the role that the user has for the object. An object can have multiple work items because a user can have different roles in association with the object, and a work item is created for each of these roles. For example, a to-do task instance can have an administrator, reader, editor, and owner work item at the same time.

The actions that can be taken to manage work items depend on the role that the user has, for example, an administrator can create, delete and transfer work items, but the task owner can transfer work items only.

- Create a work item.

```
// query the task instance for which an additional
// administrator is to be specified
QueryResultSet result = task.query("TASK.TKIID",
                                   "TASK.NAME='CustomerOrder'",
                                   (String)null, (Integer)null,
                                   (TimeZone)null);

if ( result.size() > 0 )
{
    result.first();
    // create the work item
    task.createWorkItem((TKIID)(result.getOID(1)),
                       WorkItem.REASON_ADMINISTRATOR, "Smith");
}
```

This action creates a work item for the user Smith who has the administrator role.

- Delete a work item.

```
// query the task instance for which a work item is to be deleted
QueryResultSet result = task.query("TASK.TKIID",
                                   "TASK.NAME='CustomerOrder'",
                                   (String)null, (Integer)null,
                                   (TimeZone)null);

if ( result.size() > 0 )
{
    result.first();
    // delete the work item
    task.deleteWorkItem((TKIID)(result.getOID(1)),
                       WorkItem.REASON_READER, "Smith");
}
```

This action deletes the work item for the user Smith who has the reader role.

- Transfer a work item.

```
// query the task that is to be rescheduled
QueryResultSet result =
    task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
              "TASK.NAME='CustomerOrder' AND
               TASK.STATE=TASK.STATE.STATE_READY AND
               WORK_ITEM.REASON=WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER AND
               WORK_ITEM.OWNER_ID='Miller'",
              (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

```

if ( result.size() > 0 )
{
    result.first();
    // transfer the work item from user Miller to user Smith
    // so that Smith can work on the task
    task.transferWorkItem((TKIID)(result.getOID(1)),
                          WorkItem.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER,"Miller","Smith");
}

```

This action transfers the work item to the user Smith so that he can work on it.

Creating task templates and task instances at runtime

You usually use a modeling tool, such as WebSphere Integration Developer to build task templates. You then install the task templates in WebSphere Process Server and create instances from these templates, for example, using Business Process Choreographer Explorer. However, you can also create human or participating task instances or templates at runtime.

About this task

You might want to do this, for example, when the task definition is not available when the application is deployed, the tasks that are part of a workflow are not yet known, or you need a task to cover some ad-hoc collaboration between a group of people.

You can model ad-hoc To-do or Collaboration tasks by creating instances of the `com.ibm.task.api.TaskModel` class, and using them to either create a reusable task template, or directly create a run-once task instance. To create an instance of the `TaskModel` class, a set of factory methods is available in the `com.ibm.task.api.ClientTaskFactory` factory class. Modeling human tasks at runtime is based on the Eclipse Modeling Framework (EMF).

Procedure

1. Create an `org.eclipse.emf.ecore.resource.ResourceSet` using the `createResourceSet` factory method.
2. Optional: If you intend to use complex message types, you can either define them using the `org.eclipse.xsd.XSDFactory` that you can get using the factory method `getXSDFactory()`, or directly import an existing XML schema using the `loadXSDSchema` factory method .
To make the complex types available to the WebSphere Process Server, deploy them as part of an enterprise application.
3. Create or import a Web Services Definition Language (WSDL) definition of the type `javax.wsdl.Definition`.
You can create a new WSDL definition using the `createWSDLDefinition` method. Then you can add it a port type and operation. You can also directly import an existing WSDL definition using the `loadWSDLDefinition` factory method.
4. Create the task definition using the `createTTask` factory method.
If you want to add or manipulate more complex task elements, you can use the `com.ibm.wbit.tel.TaskFactory` class that you can retrieve using the `getTaskFactory` factory method .
5. Create the task model using the `createTaskModel` factory method, and pass it the resource bundle that you created in the step 1 and which aggregates all other artifacts you created in the meantime.
6. Optional: Validate the model using the `TaskModel` `validate` method.

Results

Use one of the Human Task Manager EJB API create methods that have a **TaskModel** parameter to either create a reusable task template, or a run-once task instance.

Related concepts

Task templates

A human task template contains the definition of a deployed task model that was created using WebSphere Integration Developer, or at runtime using the Business Process Choreographer APIs.

Creating runtime tasks that use simple Java types

This example creates a runtime task that uses only simple Java types in its interface, for example, a String object.

About this task

The example runs only inside the context of the calling enterprise application, for which the resources are loaded.

Procedure

1. Access the ClientTaskFactory and create a resource set to contain the definitions of the new task model.

```
ClientTaskFactory factory = ClientTaskFactory.newInstance();
ResourceSet resourceSet = factory.createResourceSet();
```

2. Create the WSDL definition and add the descriptions of your operations.

```
// create the WSDL interface
Definition definition = factory.createWSDLDefinition
    ( resourceSet, new QName( "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/", "test" ) );
```

```
// create a port type
PortType portType = factory.createPortType( definition, "doItPT" );
```

```
// create an operation; the input and output messages are of type String;
// a fault message is not specified
Operation operation = factory.createOperation
    ( definition, portType, "doIt",
      new QName( "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema", "string" ),
      new QName( "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema", "string" ),
      (Map)null );
```

3. Create the EMF model of your new human task.

If you are creating a task instance, a valid-from date (UTCDate) is not required.

```
TTask humanTask = factory.createTTask( resourceSet,
    TTaskKinds.HTASK_LITERAL,
    "TestTask",
    new UTCDate( "2005-01-01T00:00:00" ),
    "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/",
    portType,
    operation );
```

This step initializes the properties of the task model with default values.

4. Modify the properties of your human task model.

```
// use the methods from the com.ibm.wbit.tel package, for example,
humanTask.setBusinessRelevance( TBoolean, YES_LITERAL );
```

```
// retrieve the task factory to create or modify composite task elements
TaskFactory taskFactory = factory.getTaskFactory();
```

```
// specify escalation settings
```

```

TVerb verb = taskFactory.createTVerb();
verb.setName("John");

// create escalationReceiver and add verb
TEscalationReceiver escalationReceiver =
    taskFactory.createTEscalationReceiver();
escalationReceiver.setVerb(verb);

// create escalation and add escalation receiver
TEscalation escalation = taskFactory.createTEscalation();
escalation.setEscalationReceiver(escalationReceiver);

```

5. Create the task model that contains all the resource definitions.

```
TaskModel taskModel = ClientTaskFactory.createTaskModel( resourceSet );
```
6. Validate the task model and correct any validation problems that are found.

```
ValidationProblem[] validationProblems = taskModel.validate();
```
7. Create the runtime task instance or template.

Use the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface to create the task instance or the task template. Because the application uses simple Java types only, you do not need to specify an application name.

 - The following snippet creates a task instance:

```
atask.createTask( taskModel, (String)null, "HTM" );
```
 - The following snippet creates a task template:

```
task.createTaskTemplate( taskModel, (String)null );
```

Results

If a runtime task instance is created, it can now be started. If a runtime task template is created, you can now create task instances from the template.

Creating runtime tasks that use complex types

This example creates a runtime task that uses complex types in its interface. The complex types are already defined, that is, the local file system on the client has XSD files that contain the description of the complex types.

About this task

The example runs only inside the context of the calling enterprise application, for which the resources are loaded.

Procedure

1. Access the `ClientTaskFactory` and create a resource set to contain the definitions of the new task model.

```
ClientTaskFactory factory = ClientTaskFactory.newInstance();
ResourceSet resourceSet = factory.createResourceSet();
```

2. Add the XSD definitions of your complex types to the resource set so that they are available when you define your operations.

The files are located relative to the location where the code is executed.

```
factory.loadXSDSchema( resourceSet, "InputBO.xsd" );
factory.loadXSDSchema( resourceSet, "OutputBO.xsd" );
```

3. Create the WSDL definition and add the descriptions of your operations.

```
// create the WSDL interface
Definition definition = factory.createWSDLDefinition
    ( resourceSet, new QName( "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/", "test" ) );

// create a port type
```

```

PortType portType = factory.createPortType( definition, "doItPT" );

// create an operation; the input message is an InputBO and
// the output message an OutputBO;
// a fault message is not specified
Operation operation = factory.createOperation
( definition, portType, "doIt",
  new QName( "http://Input", "InputBO" ),
  new QName( "http://Output", "OutputBO" ),
  (Map)null );

```

4. Create the EMF model of your new human task.

If you are creating a task instance, a valid-from date (UTCDate) is not required.

```

TTask humanTask = factory.createTTask( resourceSet,
  TTaskKinds.HTASK_LITERAL,
  "TestTask",
  new UTCDate( "2005-01-01T00:00:00" ),
  "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/",
  portType,
  operation );

```

This step initializes the properties of the task model with default values.

5. Modify the properties of your human task model.

```

// use the methods from the com.ibm.wbit.tel package, for example,
humanTask.setBusinessRelevance( TBoolean, YES_LITERAL );

// retrieve the task factory to create or modify composite task elements
TaskFactory taskFactory = factory.getTaskFactory();

// specify escalation settings
TVerb verb = taskFactory.createTVerb();
verb.setName("John");

// create escalationReceiver and add verb
TEscalationReceiver escalationReceiver =
  taskFactory.createTEscalationReceiver();
escalationReceiver.setVerb(verb);

// create escalation and add escalation receiver
TEscalation escalation = taskFactory.createTEscalation();
escalation.setEscalationReceiver(escalationReceiver);

```

6. Create the task model that contains all the resource definitions.

```

TaskModel taskModel = ClientTaskFactory.createTaskModel( resourceSet );

```

7. Validate the task model and correct any validation problems that are found.

```

ValidationProblem[] validationProblems = taskModel.validate();

```

8. Create the runtime task instance or template.

Use the HumanTaskManagerService interface to create the task instance or the task template. You must provide an application name that contains the data type definitions so that they can be accessed. The application must also contain a dummy task or process so that the application is loaded by Business Process Choreographer.

- The following snippet creates a task instance:

```

task.createTask( taskModel, "BOapplication", "HTM" );

```

- The following snippet creates a task template:

```

task.createTaskTemplate( taskModel, "BOapplication" );

```

Results

If a runtime task instance is created, it can now be started. If a runtime task template is created, you can now create task instances from the template.

Creating runtime tasks that use an existing interface

This example creates a runtime task that uses an interface that is already defined, that is, the local file system on the client has a file that contains the description of the interface.

About this task

The example runs only inside the context of the calling enterprise application, for which the resources are loaded.

Procedure

1. Access the `ClientTaskFactory` and create a resource set to contain the definitions of the new task model.

```
ClientTaskFactory factory = ClientTaskFactory.newInstance();
ResourceSet resourceSet = factory.createResourceSet();
```

2. Access the WSDL definition and the descriptions of your operations.

The interface description is located relative to the location where the code is executed.

```
Definition definition = factory.loadWSDLDefinition(
    resourceSet, "interface.wsdl" );
PortType portType = definition.getPortType(
    new QName( definition.getTargetNamespace(), "doItPT" ) );
Operation operation = portType.getOperation(
    "doIt", (String)null, (String)null);
```

3. Create the EMF model of your new human task.

If you are creating a task instance, a valid-from date (`UTCDate`) is not required.

```
TTask humanTask = factory.createTTask( resourceSet,
    TTaskKinds.HTASK_LITERAL,
    "TestTask",
    new UTCDate( "2005-01-01T00:00:00" ),
    "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/",
    portType,
    operation );
```

This step initializes the properties of the task model with default values.

4. Modify the properties of your human task model.

```
// use the methods from the com.ibm.wbit.tel package, for example,
humanTask.setBusinessRelevance( TBoolean, YES_LITERAL );

// retrieve the task factory to create or modify composite task elements
TaskFactory taskFactory = factory.getTaskFactory();

// specify escalation settings
TVerb verb = taskFactory.createTVerb();
verb.setName("John");

// create escalationReceiver and add verb
TEscalationReceiver escalationReceiver =
    taskFactory.createTEscalationReceiver();
escalationReceiver.setVerb(verb);

// create escalation and add escalation receiver
TEscalation escalation = taskFactory.createTEscalation();
escalation.setEscalationReceiver(escalationReceiver);
```

5. Create the task model that contains all the resource definitions.

```
TaskModel taskModel = ClientTaskFactory.createTaskModel( resourceSet );
```

6. Validate the task model and correct any validation problems that are found.

```
ValidationProblem[] validationProblems = taskModel.validate();
```

7. Create the runtime task instance or template.

Use the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface to create the task instance or the task template. You must provide an application name that contains the data type definitions so that they can be accessed. The application must also contain a dummy task or process so that the application is loaded by Business Process Choreographer.

- The following snippet creates a task instance:

```
task.createTask( taskModel, "B0application", "HTM" );
```

- The following snippet creates a task template:

```
task.createTaskTemplate( taskModel, "B0application" );
```

Results

If a runtime task instance is created, it can now be started. If a runtime task template is created, you can now create task instances from the template.

Creating runtime tasks that use an interface from the calling application

This example creates a runtime task that uses an interface that is part of the calling application. For example, the runtime task is created in a Java snippet of a business process and uses an interface from the process application.

About this task

The example runs only inside the context of the calling enterprise application, for which the resources are loaded.

Procedure

1. Access the `ClientTaskFactory` and create a resource set to contain the definitions of the new task model.

```
ClientTaskFactory factory = ClientTaskFactory.newInstance();
```

```
// specify the context class loader so that following resources are found
ResourceSet resourceSet = factory.createResourceSet
    ( Thread.currentThread().getContextClassLoader() );
```

2. Access the WSDL definition and the descriptions of your operations.

Specify the path within the containing package JAR file.

```
Definition definition = factory.loadWSDLDefinition( resourceSet,
    "com/ibm/workflow/metaflow/interface.wsdl" );
PortType portType = definition.getPortType(
    new QName( definition.getTargetNamespace(), "doItPT" ) );
Operation operation = portType.getOperation
    ("doIt", (String)null, (String)null);
```

3. Create the EMF model of your new human task.

If you are creating a task instance, a valid-from date (`UTCDate`) is not required.

```
TTask humanTask = factory.createTTask( resourceSet,
    TTaskKinds.HTASK_LITERAL,
    "TestTask",
    new UTCDate( "2005-01-01T00:00:00" ),
    "http://www.ibm.com/task/test/",
    portType,
    operation );
```

This step initializes the properties of the task model with default values.

4. Modify the properties of your human task model.

```

// use the methods from the com.ibm.wbit.tel package, for example,
humanTask.setBusinessRelevance( TBoolean, YES_LITERAL );

// retrieve the task factory to create or modify composite task elements
TaskFactory taskFactory = factory.getTaskFactory();

// specify escalation settings
TVerb verb = taskFactory.createTVerb();
verb.setName("John");

// create escalationReceiver and add verb
TEscalationReceiver escalationReceiver =
    taskFactory.createTEscalationReceiver();
escalationReceiver.setVerb(verb);

// create escalation and add escalation receiver
TEscalation escalation = taskFactory.createTEscalation();
escalation.setEscalationReceiver(escalationReceiver);

```

5. Create the task model that contains all the resource definitions.

```
TaskModel taskModel = ClientTaskFactory.createTaskModel( resourceSet );
```

6. Validate the task model and correct any validation problems that are found.

```
ValidationProblem[] validationProblems = taskModel.validate();
```

7. Create the runtime task instance or template.

Use the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface to create the task instance or the task template. You must provide an application name that contains the data type definitions so that they can be accessed.

- The following snippet creates a task instance:

```
task.createTask( taskModel, "WorkflowApplication", "HTM" );
```

- The following snippet creates a task template:

```
task.createTaskTemplate( taskModel, "WorkflowApplication" );
```

Results

If a runtime task instance is created, it can now be started. If a runtime task template is created, you can now create task instances from the template.

HumanTaskManagerService interface

The `HumanTaskManagerService` interface exposes task-related functions that can be called by a local or a remote client.

The methods that can be called depend on the state of the task and the authorization of the person that uses the application containing the method. The main methods for manipulating task objects are listed here. For more information about these methods and the other methods that are available in the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface, see the Javadoc in the `com.ibm.task.api` package.

Task templates

The following methods are available to work with task templates.

Table 59. API methods for task templates

Method	Description
<code>getTaskTemplate</code>	Retrieves the specified task template.

Table 59. API methods for task templates (continued)

Method	Description
createAndCallTask	Creates and runs a task instance from the specified task template and waits synchronously for the result.
createAndStartTask	Creates and starts a task instance from the specified task template.
createTask	Creates a task instance from the specified task template.
createInputMessage	Creates an input message for the specified task template. For example, create a message that can be used to start a task.
queryTaskTemplates	Retrieves task templates that are stored in the database.

Task instances

The following methods are available to work with task instances.

Table 60. API methods for task instances

Method	Description
getTask	Retrieves a task instance; the task instance can be in any state.
callTask	Starts an invocation task synchronously.
startTask	Starts a task that has already been created.
suspend	Suspends the collaboration or to-do task.
resume	Resumes the collaboration or to-do task.
terminate	Terminates the specified task instance. If an invocation task is terminated, this action has no impact on the invoked service.
delete	Deletes the specified task instance.
claim	Claims the task for processing.
update	Updates the task instance.
complete	Completes the task instance.
cancelClaim	Releases a claimed task instance so that it can be worked on by another potential owner.
createWorkItem	Creates a work item for the task instance.
transferWorkItem	Transfers the work item to a specified owner.
deleteWorkItem	Deletes the work item.

Escalations

The following methods are available to work with escalations.

Table 61. API methods for working with escalations

Method	Description
getEscalation	Retrieves the specified escalation instance.

Custom properties

Tasks, task templates, and escalations can all have custom properties. The interface provides a get and a set method to retrieve and set values for custom properties. You can also associate named properties with, and retrieve named properties from task instances. Custom property names and values must be of the `java.lang.String` type. The following methods are valid for tasks, task templates, and escalations.

Table 62. API methods for variables and custom properties

Method	Description
getCustomProperty	Retrieves the named custom property of the specified task instance.
getCustomProperties	Retrieves the custom properties of the specified task instance.
getCustomPropertyNames	Retrieves the names of the custom properties for the task instance.
setCustomProperty	Stores custom-specific values for the specified task instance.

Allowed actions for tasks

The actions that can be carried out on a task depend on whether the task is a to-do task, a collaboration task, an invocation task, or an administration task.

You cannot use all of the actions provided by the `HumanTaskManager` interface for all kinds of tasks. The following table shows the actions that you can carry out on each kind of task.

Action	Kind of task			
	To-do task	Collaboration task	Invocation task	Administration task
callTask			X	
cancelClaim	X	X ¹		
claim	X	X ¹		
complete	X	X ¹		X
completeWithFollowOnTask ⁴	X	X ¹		
completeWithFollowOnTask ⁵		X ³	X ³	
createFaultMessage	X	X	X	X
createInputMessage	X	X	X	X
createOutputMessage	X	X	X	X
createWorkItem	X	X ¹	X	X
delete	X ¹	X ¹	X	X ¹

Action	Kind of task			
	To-do task	Collaboration task	Invocation task	Administration task
deleteWorkItem	X	X ¹	X	X
getCustomProperty	X	X ¹	X	X
getDocumentation	X	X ¹	X	X
getFaultNames	X	X ¹		
getFaultMessage	X	X ¹	X	
getInputMessage	X	X ¹	X	
getOutputMessage	X	X ¹	X	
getUsersInRole	X	X ¹	X	X
getTask	X	X ¹	X	X
getUISettings	X	X ¹	X	X
resume	X	X ¹		
setCustomProperty	X	X ¹	X	X
setFaultMessage	X	X ¹		
setOutputMessage	X	X ¹		
startTask	X ¹	X ¹	X	X
startTaskAsSubtask ⁶	X	X ¹		
startTaskAsSubtask ⁷		X ³	X ³	
suspend	X	X ¹		
suspendWithCancelClaim	X	X ¹		
terminate	X ¹	X ¹	X ¹	
transferWorkItem	X	X ¹	X	X
update	X	X ¹	X	X
Notes:				
1. For stand-alone tasks, ad-hoc tasks, and task templates only				
2. For stand-alone tasks, inline tasks in business processes, and ad-hoc tasks only				
3. For stand-alone tasks and ad-hoc tasks only				
4. The tasks kinds that can have follow-on tasks				
5. The task kinds that can be used as follow-on tasks				
6. The tasks kinds that can have subtasks				
7. The task kinds that can be used as subtasks				

Developing applications for business processes and human tasks

People are involved in most business process scenarios. For example, a business process requires people interaction when the process is started or administered, or when human task activities are performed. To support these scenarios, you need to use both the Business Flow Manager API and the Human Task Manager API.

About this task

To involve people in business process scenarios, you can include the following task kinds in the business process:

- An inline invocation task (also known as an *originating task* in the API).
You can provide an invocation task for every receive activity, for each onMessage element of a pick activity, and for each onEvent element of an event handler. This task then controls who is authorized to start a process or communicate with a running process instance.
- An administration task.
You can provide an administration task to specify who is authorized to administer the process or perform administrative operations on the failed activities of the process.
- A to-do task (also known as a *participating task* in the API).
A to-do task implements a human task activity. This type of activity allows you to involve people in the process.

Human task activities in the business process represent the to-do tasks that people perform in the business process scenario. You can use both the Business Flow Manager API and the Human Task Manager API to realize these scenarios:

- The business process is the container for all of the activities that belong to the process, including the human task activities that are represented by to-do tasks. When a process instance is created, a unique object ID (PIID) is assigned.
- When a human task activity is activated during the execution of the process instance, an activity instance is created, which is identified by its unique object ID (AIID). At the same time, an inline to-do task instance is also created, which is identified by its object ID (TKIID). The relationship of the human task activity to the task instance is achieved by using the object IDs:
 - The to-do task ID of the activity instance is set to the TKIID of the associated to-do task.
 - The containment context ID of the task instance is set to the PIID of the process instance that contains the associated activity instance.
 - The parent context ID of the task instance is set to the AIID of the associated activity instance.
- The life cycles of all inline to-do task instances are managed by the process instance. When the process instance is deleted, then the task instances are also deleted. In other words, all of the tasks that have the containment context ID set to the PIID of the process instance are automatically deleted.

Determining the process templates or activities that can be started

A business process can be started by invoking the call, initiate, or sendMessage methods of the Business Flow Manager API. If the process has only one starting activity, you can use the method signature that requires a process template name as a parameter. If the process has more than one starting activity, you must explicitly identify the starting activity.

About this task

When a business process is modeled, the modeler can decide that only a subset of users can create a process instance from the process template. This is done by associating an inline invocation task to a starting activity of the process and by specifying authorization restrictions on that task. Only the people that are potential starters or administrators of the task are allowed to create an instance of the task, and thus an instance of the process template.

If an inline invocation task is not associated with the starting activity, or if authorization restrictions are not specified for the task, everybody can create a process instance using the starting activity.

A process can have more than one starting activity, each with different people queries for potential starters or administrators. This means that a user can be authorized to start a process using activity A but not using activity B.

Procedure

1. Use the Business Flow Manager API to create a list of the current versions of process templates that are in the started state.

Tip: The `queryProcessTemplates` method excludes only those process templates that are part of applications that are not yet started. So, if you use this method without filtering the results, the method returns all of the versions of the process templates regardless of which state they are in.

```
// current timestamp in UTC format, converted to yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss
String now = (new UTCDate()).toXsdString();
String whereClause = "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.STATE =
PROCESS_TEMPLATE.STATE.STATE_STARTED AND
PROCESS_TEMPLATE.VALID_FROM =
(SELECT MAX(VALID_FROM) FROM PROCESS_TEMPLATE
WHERE NAME=PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME AND
VALID_FROM <= TS('" + now + "'))";

ProcessTemplateData[] processTemplates = process.queryProcessTemplates
( whereClause,
  "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.NAME",
  (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

The results are sorted by process template name.

2. Create the list of process templates and the list of starting activities for which the user is authorized.

The list of process templates contains those process templates that have a single starting activity. These activities are either not secured or the logged-on user is allowed to start them. Alternatively, you might want to gather the process templates that can be started by at least one of the starting activities.

Tip: A process administrator can also start a process instance. To get a complete list of templates, you also need to read the administration task template that is associated with the process template, and check whether the logged-on user is an administrator.

```
List authorizedProcessTemplates = new ArrayList();
List authorizedActivityServiceTemplates = new ArrayList();
```

3. Determine the starting activities for each of the process templates.

```
for( int i=0; i<processTemplates.length; i++ )
{
  ProcessTemplateData template = processTemplates[i];
  ActivityServiceTemplateData[] startActivities =
    process.getStartActivities(template.getID());
}
```

4. For each starting activity, retrieve the ID of the associated inline invocation task template.

```
for( int j=0; j<startActivities.length; j++ )
{
  ActivityServiceTemplateData activity = startActivities[j];
  TKTID tktid = activity.getTaskTemplateID();
}
```

- a. If an invocation task template does not exist, the process template is not secured by this starting activity.

In this case, everybody can create a process instance using this start activity.

```
boolean isAuthorized = false;
    if ( tktid == null )
    {
        isAuthorized = true;
        authorizedActivityServiceTemplates.add(activity);
    }
```

- b. If an invocation task template exists, use the Human Task Manager API to check the authorization for the logged-on user.

In the example, the logged-on user is Smith. The logged-on user must be a potential starter of the invocation task or an administrator.

```
if ( tktid != null )
{
    isAuthorized =
        task.isUserInRole
            (tkid, "Smith", WorkItem.REASON_POTENTIAL_STARTER) ||
        task.isUserInRole(tktid, "Smith", WorkItem.REASON_ADMINISTRATOR);

    if ( isAuthorized )
    {
        authorizedActivityServiceTemplates.add(activity);
    }
}
```

If the user has the specified role, or if people assignment criteria for the role are not specified, the `isUserInRole` method returns the value `true`.

5. Check whether the process can be started using only the process template name.

```
if ( isAuthorized && startActivities.length == 1 )
{
    authorizedProcessTemplates.add(template);
}
```

6. End the loops.

```
    } // end of loop for each activity service template
} // end of loop for each process template
```

Processing a single person workflow that includes human tasks

Some workflows are performed by only one person, for example, ordering books from an online bookstore. This example shows how to implement the sequence of actions for ordering the book as a series of human task activities (to-do tasks). Both the Business Flow Manager and the Human Task Manager APIs are used to process the workflow.

About this task

In an online bookstore, the purchaser completes a sequence of actions to order a book. This sequence of actions can be implemented as a series of human task activities (to-do tasks). If the purchaser decides to order several books, this is equivalent to claiming the next human task activity. Information about the sequence of tasks is maintained by Business Flow Manager, while the tasks themselves are maintained by Human Task Manager.

Compare this example with the example that uses only the Business Flow Manager API.

Procedure

1. Use the Business Flow Manager API to get the process instance that you want to work on.

In this example, an instance of the CustomerOrder process.

```
ProcessInstanceData processInstance =
    process.getProcessInstance("CustomerOrder");
String piid = processInstance.getID().toString();
```

2. Use the Human Task Manager API to query the ready to-do tasks (kind participating) that are part of the specified process instance.

Use the containment context ID of the task to specify the containing process instance. For a single person workflow, the query returns the to-do task that is associated with the first human task activity in the sequence of human task activities.

```
//
// Query the list of to-do tasks that can be claimed by the logged-on user
// for the specified process instance
//
QueryResultSet result =
    task.query("DISTINCT TASK.TKIID",
              "TASK.CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID = ID('" + piid + "') AND
              TASK.STATE = TASK.STATE.STATE_READY AND
              TASK.KIND = TASK.KIND.KIND_PARTICIPATING AND
              WORK_ITEM.REASON = WORK_ITEM.REASON.REASON_POTENTIAL_OWNER",
              (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

3. Claim the to-do task that is returned.

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    TKIID tkiid = (TKIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper input = task.claim(tkiid);
    DataObject activityInput = null ;
    if ( input.getObject() != null && input.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
    {
        taskInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
        // read the values
        ...
    }
}
```

When the task is claimed, the input message of the task is returned.

4. Determine the human task activity that is associated with the to-do task.

You can use one of the following methods to correlate activities to their tasks.

- The task.getActivityID method:

```
AIID aiid = task.getActivityID(tkiid);
```

- The parent context ID that is part of the task object:

```
AIID aiid = null;
Task taskInstance = task.getTask(tkiid);

OID oid = taskInstance.getParentContextID();
if ( oid != null and oid instanceof AIID )
{
    aiid = (AIID)oid;
}
```

5. When work on the task is finished, use the Business Flow Manager API to complete the task and its associated human task activity, and claim the next human task activity in the process instance.

To complete the human task activity, an output message is passed. When you create the output message, you must specify the message type name so that the message definition is contained.

```

ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aiid);
ClientObjectWrapper output =
    process.createMessage(aiid, activity.getOutputMessageTypeName());
DataObject myMessage = null ;
if ( output.getObject() != null && output.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    myMessage = (DataObject)output.getObject();
    //set the parts in your message, for example, an order number
    myMessage.setInt("OrderNo", 4711);
}

//complete the human task activity and its associated to-do task,
// and claim the next human task activity
CompleteAndClaimSuccessorResult successor =
    process.completeAndClaimSuccessor(aiid, output);

```

This action sets an output message that contains the order number and claims the next human task activity in the sequence. If `AutoClaim` is set for successor activities and if there are multiple paths that can be followed, all of the successor activities are claimed and a random activity is returned as the next activity. If there are no more successor activities that can be assigned to this user, `Null` is returned.

If the process contains parallel paths that can be followed and these paths contain human task activities for which the logged-on user is a potential owner of more than one of these activities, a random activity is claimed automatically and returned as the next activity.

6. Work on the next human task activity.

```

ClientObjectWrapper nextInput = successor.getInputMessage();
if ( nextInput.getObject() !=
    null && nextInput.getObject() instanceof DataObject )
{
    activityInput = (DataObject)input.getObject();
    // read the values
    ...
}

aiid = successor.getAIID();

```

7. Continue with step 5 to complete the human task activity and to retrieve the next human task activity.

Handling exceptions and faults

A BPEL process might encounter a fault at different points in the process.

About this task

Business Process Execution Language (BPEL) faults originate from:

- Web service invocations (Web Services Description Language (WSDL) faults)
- Throw activities
- BPEL standard faults that are recognized by Business Process Choreographer

Mechanisms exist to handle these faults. Use one of the following mechanisms to handle faults that are generated by a process instance:

- Pass control to the corresponding fault handlers
- Compensate previous work in the process
- Stop the process and let someone repair the situation (force-retry, force-complete)

A BPEL process can also return faults to a caller of an operation provided by the process. You can model the fault in the process as a reply activity with a fault name and fault data. These faults are returned to the API caller as checked exceptions.

If a BPEL process does not handle a BPEL fault or if an API exception occurs, a runtime exception is returned to the API caller. An example for an API exception is when the process model from which an instance is to be created does not exist.

The handling of faults and exceptions is described in the following tasks.

Related concepts

Fault handling in business processes

When a fault occurs in a process, the navigation continues with the fault handler or fault link.

Handling Business Process Choreographer EJB API exceptions

If a method in the `BusinessFlowManagerService` interface or the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface does not complete successfully, an exception is thrown that denotes the cause of the error. You can handle this exception specifically to provide guidance to the caller.

About this task

However, it is common practice to handle only a subset of the exceptions specifically and to provide general guidance for the other potential exceptions. All specific exceptions inherit from a generic `ProcessException` or `TaskException`. Catch generic exceptions with a `final catch(ProcessException)` or `catch(TaskException)` statement. This statement helps to ensure the upward compatibility of your application program because it takes account of all of the other exceptions that can occur.

Checking which fault is set for a human task activity

When a human task activity is processed, it can complete successfully. In this case, you can pass an output message. If the human task activity does not complete successfully, you can pass a fault message.

About this task

You can read the fault message to determine the cause of the error.

Procedure

1. List the task activities that are in a failed or stopped state.

```
QueryResultSet result =  
    process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",  
                "(ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_FAILED OR  
                 ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_STOPPED) AND  
                 ACTIVITY.KIND=ACTIVITY.KIND.KIND_STAFF",  
                (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that contains failed or stopped activities.

2. Read the name of the fault.

```

if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ClientObjectWrapper faultMessage = process.getFaultMessage(aaid);
    DataObject fault = null ;
    if ( faultMessage.getObject() != null && faultMessage.getObject()
        instanceof DataObject )
    {
        fault = (DataObject) faultMessage.getObject();
        Type type = fault.getType();
        String name = type.getName();
        String uri = type.getURI();
    }
}

```

This returns the fault name. You can also analyze the unhandled exception for a stopped activity instead of retrieving the fault name.

Checking which fault occurred for a stopped invoke activity

In a well-designed process, exceptions and faults are usually handled by fault handlers. You can retrieve information about the exception or fault that occurred for an invoke activity from the activity instance.

About this task

If an activity causes a fault to occur, the fault type determines the actions that you can take to repair the activity.

Procedure

1. List the human task activities that are in a stopped state.

```

QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("ACTIVITY.AIID",
        "ACTIVITY.STATE = ACTIVITY.STATE.STATE_STOPPED AND
        ACTIVITY.KIND=ACTIVITY.KIND.KIND_INVOKE",
        (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);

```

This action returns a query result set that contains stopped invoke activities.

2. Read the name of the fault.

```

if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    AIID aaid = (AIID) result.getOID(1);
    ActivityInstanceData activity = process.getActivityInstance(aaid);

    ProcessException excp = activity.getUnhandledException();
    if ( excp instanceof ApplicationFaultException )
    {
        ApplicationFaultException fault = (ApplicationFaultException) excp;
        String faultName = fault.getFaultName();
    }
}

```

Checking which unhandled exception or fault occurred for a failed process instance

In a well-designed process, exceptions and faults are usually handled by a fault handler. If the process implements a two-way operation, you can retrieve information about a fault or handled exception from the fault name property of the process instance object. For faults, you can also retrieve the corresponding fault message using the `getFaultMessage` API.

About this task

If a process instance fails because of an exception that is not handled by any fault handler, you can retrieve information about the unhandled exception from the process instance object. By contrast, if a fault is caught by a fault handler, then information about the fault is not available. You can, however, retrieve the fault name and message and return to the caller by using a `FaultReplyException` exception.

Procedure

1. List the process instances that are in the failed state.

```
QueryResultSet result =
    process.query("PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID",
                 "PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE =
                  PROCESS_INSTANCE.STATE.STATE_FAILED",
                 (String)null, (Integer)null, (TimeZone)null);
```

This action returns a query result set that contains the failed process instances.

2. Read the information for the unhandled exception.

```
if (result.size() > 0)
{
    result.first();
    PIID piid = (PIID) result.getOID(1);
    ProcessInstanceData pInstance = process.getProcessInstance(piid);

    ProcessException excp = pInstance.getUnhandledException();
    if ( excp instanceof RuntimeFaultException )
    {
        RuntimeFaultException xcp = (RuntimeFaultException)excp;
        Throwable cause = xcp.getRootCause();
    }
    else if ( excp instanceof StandardFaultException )
    {
        StandardFaultException xcp = (StandardFaultException)excp;
        String faultName = xcp.getFaultName();
    }
    else if ( excp instanceof ApplicationFaultException )
    {
        ApplicationFaultException xcp = (ApplicationFaultException)excp;
        String faultName = xcp.getFaultName();
    }
}
```

Results

Use this information to look up the fault name or the root cause of the problem.

Chapter 12. Developing Web service API client applications

You can develop client applications that access business process applications and human task applications through Web services APIs.

About this task

Client applications can be developed in any Web service client environment, including Java Web services and Microsoft .NET.

Web service components and sequence of control

A number of client-side and server-side components participate in the sequence of control that represents a Web service request and response.

A typical sequence of control is as follows.

1. On the client side:
 - a. A client application (provided by the user) issues a request for a Web service.
 - b. A proxy client (also provided by the user, but which can be automatically generated using client-side utilities) wraps the service request in a SOAP request envelope.
 - c. The client-side development infrastructure forwards the request to a URL defined as the Web service's endpoint.
2. The network transmits the request to the Web service endpoint using HTTP or HTTPS.
3. On the server side:
 - a. The generic Web services API receives and decodes the request.
 - b. The request is either handled directly by the generic Business Flow Manager or Human Task Manager component, or forwarded to the specified business process or human task.
 - c. The returned data is wrapped in a SOAP response envelope.
4. The network transmits the response to the client-side environment using HTTP or HTTPS.
5. Back on the client side:
 - a. The client-side development infrastructure unwraps the SOAP response envelope.
 - b. The proxy client extracts the data from the SOAP response and passes it to the client application.
 - c. The client application processes the returned data as necessary.

Overview of the Web services APIs

Web services APIs allow you to develop client applications that use Web services to access business processes and human tasks running in the Business Process Choreographer environment.

The Business Process Choreographer Web services API provides two separate Web service interfaces (WSDL port types):

- The Business Flow Manager API. Allows client applications to interact with microflows and long-running processes, for example:
 - Create process templates and process instances
 - Claim existing processes
 - Query a process by its ID

Refer to “Developing applications for business processes” on page 501 for a complete list of possible actions.

- The Human Task Manager API. Allows client applications to:
 - Create and start tasks
 - Claim existing tasks
 - Complete tasks
 - Query a task by its ID
 - Query a collection of tasks.

Refer to “Developing applications for human tasks” on page 521 for a complete list of possible actions.

Client applications can use either or both of the Web service interfaces.

Example

The following is a possible outline for a client application that accesses the Human Task Manager Web services API to process a participating human task:

1. The client application issues a query Web service call to the WebSphere Process Server requesting a list of participating tasks to be worked on by a user.
2. The list of participating tasks is returned in a SOAP/HTTP response envelope.
3. The client application then issues a claim Web service call to claim one of the participating tasks.
4. The WebSphere Process Server returns the task’s input message.
5. The client application issues a complete Web service call to complete the task with an output or fault message.

Requirements for business processes and human tasks

Business processes and human tasks developed with the WebSphere Integration Developer to run on the Business Process Choreographer must conform to specific rules to be accessible through the Web services APIs.

The requirements are:

1. The interfaces of business processes and human tasks must be defined using the “document/literal wrapped” style defined in the Java API for XML-based RPC (JAX-RPC 1.1) specification. This is the default style for all business processes and human tasks developed with the WID.
2. Fault messages exposed by business processes and human tasks for Web service operations must comprise a single WSDL message part defined with an XML Schema element. For example:

```
<wsdl:part name="myFault" element="myNamespace:myFaultElement"/>
```


Related information

 [Java API for XML based RPC \(JAX-RPC\) downloads page](#)

 [Which style of WSDL should I use?](#)

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Procedure

1. Decide which Web services API your client application needs to use: the Business Flow Manager API, Human Task Manager API, or both.
2. Export the necessary files from the WebSphere Process Server environment. Alternatively, you can copy the files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD.
3. In your chosen client application development environment, generate a *proxy client* using the exported artifacts.
4. Optional: Generate *helper classes*. Helper classes are required if your client application interacts directly with concrete processes or tasks on the WebSphere server. They are not, however, necessary if your client application is only going to perform generic tasks such as issuing queries.
5. Develop the code for your client application.
6. Add any necessary security mechanisms to your client application.

Related tasks

Copying artifacts

A number of artifacts must be copied from the WebSphere environment to help in the creation of client applications.

Generating a proxy client (Java Web services)

Java Web service client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web services APIs.

Generating a proxy client (.NET)

.NET client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web service APIs. A proxy client shields client applications from the complexity of the Web service messaging protocol.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (Java Web services)

Business objects referenced in concrete API requests (for example, `sendMessage`, or `call`) require client applications to use "document/literal wrapped" style elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (.NET)

Certain Web services API operations require client applications to use "document/literal" style wrapped elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Creating a client application (Java Web services)

A client application sends requests to and receives responses from the Web services APIs. By using a proxy client to manage communications and helper classes to format complex data types, a client application can invoke Web service methods as if they were local functions.

Creating a client application (.NET)

A client application sends requests to and receives responses from the Web services APIs. By using a proxy client to manage communications and helper classes to format complex data types, a client application can invoke Web service methods as if they were local functions.

Adding security (Java Web services)

You must secure Web service communications by implementing security mechanisms in your client application.

Adding security (.NET)

You can secure Web service communications by integrating security mechanisms into your client application.

Copying artifacts

A number of artifacts must be copied from the WebSphere environment to help in the creation of client applications.

There are two ways to obtain these artifacts:

- Publish and export them from the WebSphere Process Server environment.
- Copy files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Publishing and exporting artifacts from the server environment

Before you can develop client applications to access the Web services APIs, you must publish and export a number of artifacts from the WebSphere server environment.

About this task

The artifacts to be exported are:

- Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) files describing the port types and operations that make up the Web services APIs.
- XML Schema Definition (XSD) files containing definitions of data types referenced by services and methods in the WSDL files.
- Additional WSDL and XSD files describing business objects. Business objects describe concrete business processes or human tasks running on the WebSphere server. These additional files are only required if your client application needs to interact directly with the concrete business processes or human tasks through the Web services APIs. They are not necessary if your client application is only going to perform generic tasks, such as issuing queries.

After these artifacts are published, you need to copy them to your client programming environment, where they are used to generate a proxy client and helper classes.

Related tasks

Copying files from the client CD

The files necessary to access the Web services APIs are available on the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

Specifying the Web service endpoint address

The Web service endpoint address is the URL that a client application must specify to access the Web services APIs. The endpoint address is written into the WSDL file that you export to generate a proxy client for your client application.

About this task

The Web service endpoint address to use depends on your WebSphere server configuration:

- Scenario 1. A single WebSphere server. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port number of the server, for example **host1:9080**.
- Scenario 2. A WebSphere cluster composed of several servers. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port of the server that is hosting the Web services APIs, for example, **host2:9081**.
- Scenario 3. A Web server is used as a front end. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port of the Web server, for example: **host:80**.

By default, the Web service endpoint address takes the form *protocol://host:port/context_root/fixed_path*. Where:

- *protocol*. The communications protocol to be used between the client application and the WebSphere server. The default protocol is HTTP. You can instead choose to use the more secure HTTPS (HTTP over SSL) protocol. It is recommended to use HTTPS.
- *host:port*. The host name and port number used to access the system that is hosting the Web services APIs. These values vary depending on the WebSphere server configuration; for example, whether your client application is to access the application directly or through a Web server front end.
- *context_root*. You are free to choose any value for the context root. The value you choose must, however, be unique within each WebSphere cell. The default value uses a "node_server/cluster" suffix that eliminates the risk of naming conflicts.
- *fixed_path* is either /sca/com/ibm/bpe/api/BFMWS (for the Business Flow Manager API) or /sca/com/ibm/task/api/HTMWS (for the Human Task Manager API) and cannot be modified.

The Web service endpoint address is initially specified when configuring the business process container or human task container:

Procedure

1. Log on to the administrative console with a user ID with administrator rights.
2. Choose **Applications** → **SCA modules**.

Note: You can also select **Applications** → **Enterprise applications** to display a list of all available enterprise applications.

3. Select **BPEContainer** (for the business process container) or **TaskContainer** (for the human task container) from the list of SCA modules or applications.
4. Choose **Provide HTTP endpoint URL information** from the list of **Additional properties**.
5. Select one of the default prefixes from the list, or enter a custom prefix. Use a prefix from the default prefix list if your client applications are to connect directly to the application server hosting the Web services API. Otherwise, specify a custom prefix.
6. Click **Apply** to copy the selected prefix to the SCA module.
7. Click **OK**. The URL information is saved to your workspace.

Results

You can view the current value in the administrative console (for example, for the business process container: **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer** → **View Deployment Descriptor**).

In the exported WSDL file, the `location` attribute of the `soap:address` element contains the specified Web services endpoint address. For example:

```
<wsdl:service name="BFMWSservice">
  <wsdl:port name="BFMWSport" binding="this:BFMWSbinding">
    <soap:address location=
      "https://myserver:9080/WebServicesAPIs/sca/com/ibm/bpe/api/BFMWS"/>
```

Related tasks

Adding security (Java Web services)

You must secure Web service communications by implementing security mechanisms in your client application.

Adding security (.NET)

You can secure Web service communications by integrating security mechanisms into your client application.

Publishing WSDL files

A Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) file contains a detailed description of all the operations available with a Web services API. Separate WSDL files are available for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager Web services APIs. You must first publish these WSDL files then copy them from the WebSphere environment to your development environment, where they are used to generate a proxy client.

Publishing WSDL files

A Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) file contains a detailed description of all the operations available with a Web services API. Separate WSDL files are available for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager Web services APIs. You must first publish these WSDL files then copy them from the WebSphere environment to your development environment, where they are used to generate a proxy client.

Before you begin

Before publishing the WSDL files, be sure to specify the correct Web services endpoint address. This is the URL that your client application uses to access the Web services APIs.

About this task

You only need to publish WSDL files once.

Note: If you have the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you can copy the files directly from there to your client programming environment instead.

Related tasks

Generating a proxy client (.NET)

.NET client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web service APIs. A proxy client shields client applications from the complexity of the Web service messaging protocol.

Specifying the Web service endpoint address

The Web service endpoint address is the URL that a client application must specify to access the Web services APIs. The endpoint address is written into the WSDL file that you export to generate a proxy client for your client application.

Publishing the business process WSDL:

Use the administrative console to publish the WSDL file.

Procedure

1. Log on to the administrative console with a user ID with administrator rights.
2. Select **Applications** → **SCA modules**

Note: You can also select **Applications** → **Enterprise applications** to display a list of all available enterprise applications.

3. Choose the **BPEContainer** application from the list of SCA modules or applications.
4. Select **Publish WSDL files** from the list of **Additional properties**
5. Click on the zip file in the list.
6. On the File Download window that appears, click **Save**.
7. Browse to a local folder and click **Save**.

Results

The exported zip file is named BPEContainer_WSDLFiles.zip. The zip file contains a WSDL file that describes the Web services, and any XSD files referenced from within the WSDL file.

Publishing the human task WSDL:

Use the administrative console to publish the WSDL file.

Procedure

1. Log on to the administrative console with a user ID with administrator rights.
2. Select **Applications** → **SCA modules**

Note: You can also select **Applications** → **Enterprise applications** to display a list of all available enterprise applications.

3. Choose the **TaskContainer** application from the list of SCA modules or applications.
4. Select **Publish WSDL files** from the list of **Additional properties**
5. Click on the zip file in the list.
6. On the File Download window that appears, click **Save**.
7. Browse to a local folder and click **Save**.

Results

The exported zip file is named TaskContainer_WSDLFiles.zip. The zip file contains a WSDL file that describes the Web services, and any XSD files referenced from within the WSDL file.

Exporting business objects

Business processes and human tasks have well-defined interfaces that allow them to be accessed externally as Web services. If these interfaces reference business objects, you need to export the interface definitions and business objects to your client programming environment.

About this task

This procedure must be repeated for each business object that your client application needs to interact with.

In WebSphere Process Server, business objects define the format of request, response and fault messages that interact with business processes or human tasks. These messages can also contain definitions of complex data types.

For example, to create and start a human task, the following items of information must be passed to the task interface:

- The task template name
- The task template namespace
- An input message, containing formatted business data
- A response wrapper for returning the response message
- A fault message for returning faults and exceptions

These items are encapsulated within a single business object. All operations of the Web service interface are modeled as a "document/literal wrapped" operation. Input and output parameters for these operations are encapsulated in wrapper documents. Other business objects define the corresponding response and fault message formats.

In order to create and start the business process or human task through a Web service, these wrapper objects must be made available to the client application on the client side.

This is achieved by exporting the business objects from the WebSphere environment as Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) and XML Schema Definition (XSD) files, importing the data type definitions into your client programming environment, then converting them to helper classes for use by the client application.

Procedure

1. Launch the WebSphere Integration Developer Workspace if it is not already running.
2. Select the Library module containing the business objects to be exported. A Library module is a compressed file that contains the necessary business objects.
3. Export the Library module.
4. Copy the exported files to your client application development environment.

Example

Assume a business process exposes the following Web service operation:

```
<wsdl:operation name="updateCustomer">
  <wsdl:input message="tns:updateCustomerRequestMsg"
    name="updateCustomerRequest"/>
  <wsdl:output message="tns:updateCustomerResponseMsg"
    name="updateCustomerResponse"/>
  <wsdl:fault message="tns:updateCustomerFaultMsg"
    name="updateCustomerFault"/>
</wsdl:operation>
```

with the WSDL messages defined as:

```
<wsdl:message name="updateCustomerRequestMsg">
  <wsdl:part element="types:updateCustomer"
    name="updateCustomerParameters"/>
</wsdl:message>
<wsdl:message name="updateCustomerResponseMsg">
  <wsdl:part element="types:updateCustomerResponse"
    name="updateCustomerResult"/>
</wsdl:message>
```

```
<wsdl:message name="updateCustomerFaultMsg">
  <wsdl:part element="types:updateCustomerFault"
    name="updateCustomerFault"/>
</wsdl:message>
```

The *concrete* customer-defined elements `types:updateCustomer`, `types:updateCustomerResponse`, and `types:updateCustomerFault` must be passed to and received from the Web services APIs using `<xsd:any>` parameters in all *generic* operations (`call`, `sendMessage`, and so on) performed by the client application. These customer-defined elements are created, serialized and deserialized on the client application side using helper classes that are generated using the exported XSD files.

Related tasks

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (Java Web services)
Business objects referenced in concrete API requests (for example, `sendMessage`, or `call`) require client applications to use "document/literal wrapped" style elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (.NET)
Certain Web services API operations require client applications to use "document/literal" style wrapped elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Using files on the client CD

As an alternative to exporting artifacts from the WebSphere server environment, you can copy the files necessary for generating a client application from the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

In this case, you must manually modify the default Web services endpoint address of the Business Flow Manager API or Human Task Manager API.

If the client application is to access both APIs, you must edit the default endpoint address for both APIs.

Copying files from the client CD

The files necessary to access the Web services APIs are available on the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

Procedure

1. Access the client CD and browse to the `ProcessChoreographer\client` directory.
2. Copy the necessary files to your client application development environment.

For the Business Flow Manager API, copy:

BFMWS.wsdl

Describes the Web services available in the Business Flow Manager Web services API. This file contains the endpoint address.

BFMIF.wsdl

Describes the parameters and data type of each Web service in the Business Flow Manager Web services API.

BFMIF.xsd

Describes data types used in the Business Flow Manager Web services API.

BPCGEN.xsd

Contains data types that are common between the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager Web services APIs.

For the Human Task Manager API, copy:

HTMWS.wsdl

Describes the Web services available in the Human Task Manager Web services API. This file contains the endpoint address.

HTMIF.wsdl

Describes the parameters and data type of each Web service in the Human Task Manager Web services API.

HTMIF.xsd

Describes data types used in the Human Task Manager Web services API.

BPCGEN.xsd

Contains data types that are common between the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager Web services APIs.

Note: The BPCGen.xsd file is common to both APIs.

What to do next

After you copy the files, you must manually change the Web services API endpoint address the BFMWS.wsdl or HTMWS.wsdl files to that of the WebSphere application server that is hosting the Web services APIs.

Related tasks

Manually changing the Web service endpoint address

If you copy files from the client CD, you must change the default Web service endpoint address specified in WSDL files to that of the server that is hosting the Web services APIs.

Publishing and exporting artifacts from the server environment

Before you can develop client applications to access the Web services APIs, you must publish and export a number of artifacts from the WebSphere server environment.

Manually changing the Web service endpoint address

If you copy files from the client CD, you must change the default Web service endpoint address specified in WSDL files to that of the server that is hosting the Web services APIs.

About this task

You can use the administrative console to set the Web service endpoint address before exporting the WSDL files. If, however, you copy the WSDL files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you must modify the default Web service endpoint address manually.

The Web service endpoint address to use depends on your WebSphere server configuration:

- Scenario 1. There is a single WebSphere server. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port number of the server, for example **host1:9080**.

- Scenario 2. A WebSphere cluster composed of several servers. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port of the server that is hosting the Web services APIs, for example, **host2:9081**.
- Scenario 3. A Web server is used as a front end. The WebSphere endpoint address to specify is the host name and port of the Web server, for example: **host:80**.

Related tasks

Copying files from the client CD

The files necessary to access the Web services APIs are available on the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

Changing the Business Flow Manager API endpoint:

If you copy the Business Flow Manager API files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you must manually edit the default endpoint address.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the directory containing the files copied from the client CD.
2. Open the BFMWS.wsdl file in a text editor or XML editor.
3. Locate the soap:address element (towards the bottom of the file).
4. Modify the value of the location attribute with the HTTP URL of the server on which the Web service API is running. To do this:
 - a. Optionally, replace http with https to use the more secure HTTPS protocol.
 - b. Replace *localhost* with the host name or IP address of the Web services APIs server endpoint address.
 - c. Replace *9080* with the port number of the application server.
 - d. Replace *BPEContainer_N1_server1* with the context root of the application running the Web services API. The default context root is composed of:
 - *BPEContainer*. The application name.
 - *N1*. The node name.
 - *server1*. The server name.
 - e. Do not modify the fixed portion of the URL (*/sca/com/ibm/bpe/api/BFMWS*).

For example, if the application is running on the server **s1.n1.ibm.com** and the server is accepting SOAP/HTTP requests at port **9080**, modify the soap:address element as follows:

```
<soap:address location="http://s1.n1.ibm.com:9080/
    BPEContainer_N1_server1/sca/com/ibm/bpe/api/BFMWS"/>
```

Related tasks

Adding security (Java Web services)

You must secure Web service communications by implementing security mechanisms in your client application.

Adding security (.NET)

You can secure Web service communications by integrating security mechanisms into your client application.

Changing the Human Task Manager API endpoint:

If you copy the Human Task Manager API files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you must manually edit the default endpoint address.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the directory containing the files copied from the client CD.
2. Open the HTMWWS.wsdl file in a text editor or XML editor.
3. Locate the soap:address element (towards the bottom of the file).
4. Modify the value of the location attribute with the correct endpoint address.
To do this:
 - a. Optionally, replace http with https to use the more secure HTTPS protocol.
 - b. Replace *localhost* with the host name or IP address of the Web services API server's endpoint address.
 - c. Replace *9080* with the port number of the application server.
 - d. Replace *HTMContainer_N1_server1* with the context root of the application running the Web services API. The default context root is composed of:
 - *HTMContainer*. The application name.
 - *N1*. The node name.
 - *server1*. The server name.
 - e. Do not modify the fixed portion of the URL (*/sca/com/ibm/task/api/HTMWWS*).

For example, if the application is running on the server **s1.n1.ibm.com** and the server is accepting SOAP/HTTPS requests at port **9081**, modify the soap:address element as follows:

```
<soap:address location="https://s1.n1.ibm.com:9081/
    HTMContainer_N1_server1/sca/com/ibm/task/api/HTMWWS"/>
```

Related tasks

Adding security (Java Web services)

You must secure Web service communications by implementing security mechanisms in your client application.

Adding security (.NET)

You can secure Web service communications by integrating security mechanisms into your client application.

Developing client applications in the Java Web services environment

You can use any Java-based development environment compatible with Java Web services to develop client applications for the Web services APIs.

Generating a proxy client (Java Web services)

Java Web service client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web services APIs.

About this task

A proxy client for Java Web services contains a number of Java Bean classes that the client application calls to perform Web service requests. The proxy client handles the assembly of service parameters into SOAP messages, sends SOAP messages to the Web service over HTTP, receives responses from the Web service, and passes any returned data to the client application.

Basically, therefore, a proxy client allows a client application to call a Web service as if it were a local function.

Note: You only need to generate a proxy client once. All client applications accessing the same Web services API can then use the same proxy client.

In the IBM Web services environment, there are two ways to generate a proxy client:

- Using Rational® Application Developer or WebSphere Integration Developer integrated development environments.
- Using the WSDL2Java command-line tool.

Other Java Web services development environments usually include either the WSDL2Java tool or proprietary client application generation facilities.

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Using Rational Application Developer to generate a proxy client

The Rational Application Developer integrated development environment allows you to generate a proxy client for your client application.

Before you begin

Before generating a proxy client, you must have previously exported the WSDL files that describe the business process or human task Web services interfaces from the WebSphere environment (or the WebSphere Process Server client CD) and copied them to your client programming environment.

Procedure

1. Add the appropriate WSDL file to your project:
 - For business processes:
 - a. Unzip the exported file `BPEContainer_nodename_servername_WSDLFiles.zip` to a temporary directory.
 - b. Import the subdirectory `META-INF` from the unzipped directory `BPEContainer_nodename_servername.ear/b.jar`.
 - For human tasks:
 - a. Unzip the exported file `TaskContainer_nodename_servername_WSDLFiles.zip` to a temporary directory.
 - b. Import the subdirectory `META-INF` from the unzipped directory `TaskContainer_nodename_servername.ear/h.jar`.

A new directory `wsdl` and subdirectory structure are created in your project.
2. Modify the Web Service wizard properties:
 - a. In Rational Application Developer, choose **Preferences** → **Web services** → **Code generation** → **IBM WebSphere runtime**.
 - b. Select the **Generate Java from WSDL using the no wrapped style** option.

Note: If you cannot select the **Web services** option in the **Preferences** menu, you must first enable the required capabilities as follows: **Window** → **Preferences** → **Workbench** → **Capabilities**. Click on **Web Service Developer** and click **OK**. Then reopen the Preferences window and change the **Code Generation** option.
3. Select the `BFMWS.WSDL` or `HTMWS.WSDL` file located in the newly-created `wsdl` directory.
4. Right-click and choose **Web services** → **Generate client**.

Before continuing with the remaining steps, ensure that the server has started.

5. On the Web Services window, click **Next** to accept all defaults.
6. On the Web Service Selection window, click **Next** to accept all defaults.
7. On the Client Environment Configuration window:
 - a. Click **Edit** and change the Web service runtime option to IBM WebSphere
 - b. Change the J2EE Version option to 1.4.
 - c. Click **OK**.
 - d. Click **Next**.
8. This step is only necessary if you need to generate a Web Services client that includes both Business Process and Human Task Web Services APIs, as there are duplicate methods in both WSDL files.
 - a. On the Web Service Proxy window, select Define custom mapping for namespace to package then click **OK**.
 - b. On the Web Service Client namespace to package mapping window, add the following namespaces and package:
For BFMWS.wsdl:

Namespace	Package
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/business-process/types/6.0	com.ibm.sca.bpe
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/business-process/services/6.0	com.ibm.sca.bpe
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/business-process/services/6.0/Binding	com.ibm.sca.bpe
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/bpc-common/types/6.0	com.ibm.sca.bpe

For HTMWS.wsdl:

Namespace	Package
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/human-task/types/6.0	com.ibm.sca.task
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/human-task/services/6.0	com.ibm.sca.task
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/human-task/services/6.0/Binding	com.ibm.sca.task
http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/websphere/bpc-common/types/6.0	com.ibm.sca.task

If asked to confirm overwriting, click **YesToAll**.

9. Click **Finish**.

Results

A proxy client, made up of a number of proxy, locator and helper Java classes, is generated and added to your project. The deployment descriptor is also updated.

Using WSDL2Java to generate a proxy client

WSDL2Java is a command-line tool that generates a proxy client. A proxy client make it easier to program client applications.

Before you begin

Before generating a proxy client, you must have previously exported the WSDL files that describe the business process or human task Web services APIs from the WebSphere environment (or the WebSphere Process Server client CD) and copied them to your client programming environment.

About this task

Procedure

1. Use the WSDL2Java tool to generate a proxy client: Type:

```
wsdl2java options WSDLfilepath
```

Where:

- *options* include:

-noWrappedOperations (-w)

Disables the detection of wrapped operations. Java beans for request and response messages are generated.

Note: This is not the default value.

-role (-r)

Specify the value **client** to generate files and binding files for client-side development.

-container (-c)

The client-side container to use. Valid arguments include:

client A client container

ejb An Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) container.

none No container

web A Web container

-output (-o)

The folder in which to store the generated files.

For a complete list of WSDL2Java parameters, use the **-help** command line switch, or refer to the online help for the WSDL2Java tool in the WID/RAD.

- *WSDLfilepath* is the path and filename of the WSDL file that you exported from WebSphere environment or copied from the client CD.

The following example generates a proxy client for the Human Task Activities Web services API:

```
call wsdl2java.bat -r client -c client -noWrappedOperations  
-output c:\ws\proxyClient c:\ws\bin\HTMWS.wsdl
```

2. Include the generated class files in your project.

Related tasks

Creating a client application (Java Web services)

A client application sends requests to and receives responses from the Web services APIs. By using a proxy client to manage communications and helper classes to format complex data types, a client application can invoke Web service methods as if they were local functions.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (Java Web services)

Business objects referenced in concrete API requests (for example, `sendMessage`, or `call`) require client applications to use "document/literal wrapped" style elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Before you begin

To create helper classes, you must have exported the WSDL file of the Web services API from the WebSphere Process Server environment.

About this task

The `call()` and `sendMessage()` operations of the Web services APIs allow interaction with BPEL processes on the WebSphere Process Server. The input message of the `call()` operation expects the document/literal wrapper of the process input message to be provided.

There are a number of possible techniques for generating helper classes for a BPEL process or human task, including:

1. Use the `SoapElement` object.

In the Rational Application Developer environment available in WebSphere Integration Developer, the Web service engine supports JAX-RPC 1.1. In JAX-RPC 1.1, the `SoapElement` object extends a Document Object Model (DOM) element, so it is possible to use the DOM API to create, read, load, and save SOAP messages.

For example, assume the WSDL file contains the following input message for a workflow process or human task:

```
<xsd:element name="operation1">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="input1" nillable="true" type="xsd:string"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

The WSDL file is created when you develop a process or human task module.

To create the corresponding SOAP message in your client application using the DOM API:

```
SOAPFactory soapfactoryinstance = SOAPFactory.newInstance();
SOAPElement soapmessage = soapfactoryinstance.createElement
    ("operation1", namespaceprefix, interfaceURI);
SOAPElement inpulement = soapfactoryinstance.createElement("input1");
inpulement.addTextNode( message value);
soapmessage.addChildElement(outpulement);
```

The following example shows how to create input parameters for the `sendMessage` operation in your client application:

```
SendMessage inWsend = new SendMessage();
inWsend.setProcessTemplateName(processtemplatename);
inWsend.setPortType(porttype);
inWsend.setOperation(operationname);
inWsend.set_any(soapmessage);
```

2. Use the WebSphere Custom Data Binding feature.

This technique is described in the following developerWorks articles:

- How to choose a custom mapping technology for Web services
- Developing Web Services with EMF SDOs for complex XML schema

Related tasks


Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Exporting business objects

Business processes and human tasks have well-defined interfaces that allow them to be accessed externally as Web services. If these interfaces reference business objects, you need to export the interface definitions and business objects to your client programming environment.

 [Interoperability With Patterns and Strategies for Document-Based Web Services](#)

 [Web Services support for Schema/WSDL\(s\) containing optional JAX-RPC 1.0/1.1 XML Schema Types](#)

Creating a client application (Java Web services)

A client application sends requests to and receives responses from the Web services APIs. By using a proxy client to manage communications and helper classes to format complex data types, a client application can invoke Web service methods as if they were local functions.

Before you begin

Before starting to create a client application, generate the proxy client and any necessary helper classes.

About this task

You can develop client applications using any Web services-compatible development tool, for example IBM Rational Application Developer (RAD). You can build any type of Web services application to call the Web services APIs.

Procedure

1. Create a new client application project.
2. Generate the proxy client and add the Java helper classes to your project.
3. Code your client application.
4. Build the project.
5. Run the client application.

Example

The following example shows how to use the Business Flow Manager Web service API.


```

// create the proxy
    BFMIFProxy proxy = new BFMIFProxy();
// prepare the input data for the operation
    GetProcessTemplate iW = new GetProcessTemplate();
    iW.setIdentifier(your_process_template_name);

// invoke the operation
    GetProcessTemplateResponse oW = proxy.getProcessTemplate(iW);

// process output of the operation
    ProcessTemplateType ptd = oW.getProcessTemplate();
    System.out.println("getName= " + ptd.getName());
    System.out.println("getPtid= " + ptd.getPtid());

```

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Using WSDL2Java to generate a proxy client

WSDL2Java is a command-line tool that generates a proxy client. A proxy client make it easier to program client applications.

Generating a proxy client (Java Web services)

Java Web service client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web services APIs.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (Java Web services)

Business objects referenced in concrete API requests (for example, `sendMessage`, or `call`) require client applications to use "document/literal wrapped" style elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Adding security (Java Web services)

You must secure Web service communications by implementing security mechanisms in your client application.

About this task

WebSphere Application Server currently supports the following security mechanisms for the Web services APIs:

- The user name token
- Lightweight Third Party Authentication (LTPA)

Related concepts

Authorization roles for business processes

A role is a set of people who share the same level of authorization. Actions that you can take on business processes depend on your authorization role. This role can be a J2EE role or an instance-based role.

Authorization roles for human tasks

Actions that you can take on human tasks depend on your authorization role. This role can be a system-level J2EE role or an instance-based role. Role-based authorization requires that administration and application security is enabled for the application server.

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Changing the Business Flow Manager API endpoint

If you copy the Business Flow Manager API files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you must manually edit the default endpoint address.

Implementing the user name token

The user name token security mechanism provides user name and password credentials.

About this task

With the user name token security mechanism, you can choose to implement various *callback handlers*. Depending on your choice:

- You are prompted to supply a user name and password each time you run the client application.
- The user name and password are written into the deployment descriptor.

In either case, the supplied user name and password must match those of an authorized role in the corresponding business process container or human task container.

The user name and password are encapsulated in the request message envelope, and so appear "in clear" in the SOAP message header. It is therefore strongly recommended that you configure the client application to use the HTTPS (HTTP over SSL) communications protocol. All communications are then encrypted. You can select the HTTPS communications protocol when you specify the Web service API's endpoint URL address.

To define a user name token:

Procedure

1. Create a security token:
 - a. Open the **Deployment Editor** of your module
 - b. Click the **WS Extension** tab.
 - c. Under **Service References**, the following Web Service References may be listed:
 - service/BFMWSService for business processes
 - service/HTMWSService for human tasks

Which are listed depends on whether BFMWS.wsdl (for business process), HTMWS.wsdl (for human tasks), or both, were added when generating the proxy client.


- d. For both service references:
 - 1) Select one of the **Service References**.
 - 2) Expand the **Request Generator Configuration** section.
 - 3) Expand the **Security Token** subsection.
 - 4) Click **Add**. The Security Token window opens.
 - 5) In the **Name** field, type a name for the new security token: **UserNameTokenBFM** or **UserNameTokenHTM** .
 - 6) In the **Token type** drop-down list, select **Username**. (The **Local name** field is automatically populated with a default value.)
 - 7) Leave the **URI** field blank. No URI value is required for a user name token.
 - 8) Click **OK**.
2. Create a token generator:
 - a. Open the **Deployment Editor** of your module
 - b. Click on the **WS Binding** tab
 - c. Under **Service References**, the same Web Service References are listed as in the previous step:
 - service/BFMWSService for business processes
 - service/HTMWSService for human tasks
 - d. For both service references:
 - 1) Select one of the **Service References**.
 - 2) Expand the **Security Request Generator Binding Configuration** section.
 - 3) Expand the **Token Generator** subsection.
 - 4) Click **Add**. The Token Generator window opens.
 - 5) In the **Name** field, type a name for the new token generator, such as "UserNameTokenGeneratorBFM" or "UserNameTokenGeneratorHTM".
 - 6) In the **Token generator class** field, ensure that the following token generator class is selected: **com.ibm.wsspi.wssecurity.token.UsernameTokenGenerator**.
 - 7) In the **Security token** drop-down list, select the appropriate security token that you created earlier.
 - 8) Select the **Use value type** check box.
 - 9) In the **Value type** field, select **Username Token**. (The **Local name** field is automatically populated to reflect your choice of **Username Token**.)
 - 10) In the **Call back handler** field, type either "com.ibm.wsspi.wssecurity.auth.callback.GUIPromptCallbackHandler" (which prompts for the user name and password when you run the client application) or "com.ibm.wsspi.wssecurity.auth.callback.NonPromptCallbackHandler".
 - 11) If you choose **NonPromptCallbackHandler**, you must specify a valid user name and password in the corresponding field of the deployment descriptor.
 - 12) Click **OK**.

Related tasks

Specifying the Web service endpoint address

The Web service endpoint address is the URL that a client application must specify to access the Web services APIs. The endpoint address is written into the WSDL file that you export to generate a proxy client for your client application.

Related information

 [IBM WebSphere Developer Technical Journal: Web services security with WebSphere Application Server V6](#)

Implementing the LTPA security mechanism

The Lightweight Third Party Authentication (LTPA) security mechanism can be used when the client application is running within a previously established security context.

About this task

The LTPA security mechanism is only available if your client application is running in a secure environment in which a security context has already been established. For example, if your client application is running in an Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) container, then the EJB client must log in before being able to invoke the client application. A security context is then established. If the EJB client application then invokes a Web service, the LTPA callback handler retrieves the LTPA token from the security context and adds it to the SOAP request message. On the server side, the LTPA token is handled by the LTPA mechanism.

To implement the LTPA security mechanism:

Procedure

1. In the Rational Application Developer environment available in WebSphere Integration Developer, choose **WS Binding** → **Security Request Generator Binding Configuration** → **Token Generator**.
2. Create a security token:
 - a. Open the **Deployment Editor** of your module
 - b. Click the **WS Extension** tab.
 - c. Under **Service References**, the following **Web Service References** may be listed:
 - service/BFMWSService for business processes
 - service/HTMWSService for human tasksWhich are listed depends on whether BFMWS.wsdl (for business process), HTMWWS.wsdl (for human tasks), or both, were added when generating the proxy client.
 - d. For both service references:
 - 1) Select one of the **Service References**.
 - 2) Expand the **Request Generator Configuration** section.
 - 3) Expand the **Security Token** subsection.
 - 4) Click **Add**. The Security Token window opens.
 - 5) In the **Name** field, type a name for the new security token: **LTPATokenBFM** or **LTPATokenHTM**.
 - 6) In the **Token type** drop-down list, select **LTPAToken**. (The **URI** and **Local name** fields are automatically populated with default values.)
 - 7) Click **OK**.

3. Create a token generator:
 - a. Open the **Deployment Editor** of your module
 - b. Click on the **WS Binding** tab
 - c. Under **Service References**, the same Web Service References are listed as in the previous step:
 - service/BFMWSService for business processes
 - service/HTMWSService for human tasks
 - d. For both service references:
 - 1) Select one of the **Service References**.
 - 2) Expand the **Security Request Generator Binding Configuration** section.
 - 3) Expand the **Token Generator** subsection.
 - 4) Click **Add**. The Token Generator window opens.
 - 5) In the **Name** field, type a name for the new token generator, such as "LTPATokenGeneratorBFM" or "LTPATokenGeneratorHTM".
 - 6) In the **Token generator class** field, ensure that the following token generator class is selected:
com.ibm.wsspi.wssecurity.token.LTPATokenGenerator.
 - 7) In the **Security token** drop-down list, select the appropriate security token that you created earlier.
 - 8) Select the **Use value type** check box.
 - 9) In the **Value type** field, select **LTPAToken**. (The **URI** and **Local name** fields are automatically populated to reflect your choice of **LTPA Token**.)
 - 10) In the **Call back handler** field, type either "com.ibm.wsspi.wssecurity.auth.callback.LTPATokenCallbackHandler".
 - 11) Click **OK**.

Results

At runtime, the **LTPATokenCallbackHandler** retrieves the LTPA token from the existing security context and adds it to the SOAP request message.

Adding transaction support (Java Web services)

Java Web service client applications can be configured to allow server-side request processing to participate in the client's transaction, by passing a client application context as part of the service request. This atomic transaction support is defined in the Web Services-Atomic Transaction (WS-AT) specification.

About this task

WebSphere Application Server runs each Web services API request as a separate atomic transaction. Client applications can be configured to use transaction support in one of the following ways:

- Participate in the transaction. Server-side request processing is performed within the client application transaction context. Then, if the server encounters a problem while the Web services API request is running and rolls back, the client application's request is also rolled back.
- Not use transaction support. WebSphere Application Server still creates a new transaction in which to run the request, but server-side request processing is not performed with the client application transaction context.

Developing client applications in the .NET environment

Microsoft .NET offers a powerful development environment in which to connect applications through Web services.

Generating a proxy client (.NET)

.NET client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web service APIs. A proxy client shields client applications from the complexity of the Web service messaging protocol.

Before you begin

To create a proxy client, you must first export a number of WSDL files from the WebSphere environment and copy them to your client programming environment.

Note: If you have the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you can copy the files from there instead.

About this task

A proxy client comprises a set of C# bean classes. Each class contains all the methods and objects exposed by a single Web service. The service methods handle the assembly of parameters into complete SOAP messages, send SOAP messages to the Web service over HTTP, receives responses from the Web service, and handle any returned data.

Note: You only need to generate a proxy client once. All client applications accessing the Web services APIs can then use the same proxy client.

Procedure

1. Use the WSDL command to generate a proxy client: Type:

```
wSDL options WSDLfilepath
```

Where:

- *options* include:

/language

Allows you to specify the language used to create the proxy class. The default is C#. You can also specify **VB** (Visual Basic), **JS** (JScript), or **VJS** (Visual J#) as the language argument.

/output

The name of the output file, with the appropriate suffix. For example, proxy.cs

/protocol

The protocol implemented in the proxy class. **SOAP** is the default setting.

For a complete list of **WSDL.exe** parameters, use the **/?** command line switch, or refer to the online help for the WSDL tool in Visual Studio.

- *WSDLfilepath* is the path and filename of the WSDL file that you exported from the WebSphere environment or copied from the client CD.

The following example generates a proxy client for the Human Task Manager Web services API:

```
wSDL /language:cs /output:proxycient.cs c:\ws\bin\HTMWS.wsd1
```

2. Compile the proxy client as a Dynamic Link Library (DLL) file.

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Publishing WSDL files

A Web Service Definition Language (WSDL) file contains a detailed description of all the operations available with a Web services API. Separate WSDL files are available for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager Web services APIs. You must first publish these WSDL files then copy them from the WebSphere environment to your development environment, where they are used to generate a proxy client.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (.NET)

Certain Web services API operations require client applications to use "document/literal" style wrapped elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Before you begin

To create helper classes, you must have exported the WSDL file of the Web services API from the WebSphere Process Server environment.

About this task

The call() and sendMessage() operations of the Web services APIs cause BPEL processes to be launched within WebSphere Process Server. The input message of the call() operation expects the document/literal wrapper of the BPEL process input message to be provided. To generate the necessary beans and classes for the BPEL process, copy the <wsdl:types> element into a new XSD file, then use the xsd.exe tool to generate helper classes.

Procedure

1. If you have not already done so, export the WSDL file of the BPEL process interface from WebSphere Integration Developer.
2. Open the WSDL file in a text editor or XML editor.
3. Copy the contents of all child elements of the <wsdl:types> element and paste it into a new, skeleton, XSD file.
4. Run the xsd.exe tool on the XSD file:

```
call xsd.exe file.xsd /classes /o
```

Where:

file.xsd

The XML Schema Definition file to convert.

/classes (/c)

Generate helper classes that correspond to the contents of the specified XSD file or files.

/output (/o)

Specify the output directory for generated files. If this directory is omitted, the default is the current directory.

For example:

```
call xsd.exe ProcessCustomer.xsd /classes /output:c:\temp
```

5. Add the class file that is generated to your client application. If you are using Visual Studio, for example, you can do this using the **Project** → **Add Existing Item** menu option.

Example

If the ProcessCustomer.wsdl file contains the following:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<wsdl:definitions xmlns:bons1="http://com/ibm/bpe/unittest/sca"
  xmlns:tns="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer"
  xmlns:wsdl="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl/"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  name="ProcessCustomer"
  targetNamespace="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer">
  <wsdl:types>
    <xsd:schema targetNamespace="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer"
      xmlns:bons1="http://com/ibm/bpe/unittest/sca"
      xmlns:tns="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer"
      xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
      <xsd:import namespace="http://com/ibm/bpe/unittest/sca"
        schemaLocation="xsd-includes/http.com.ibm.bpe.unittest.sca.xsd"/>
      <xsd:element name="doit">
        <xsd:complexType>
          <xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:element name="input1" nillable="true" type="bons1:Customer"/>
          </xsd:sequence>
        </xsd:complexType>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element name="doitResponse">
        <xsd:complexType>
          <xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:element name="output1" nillable="true" type="bons1:Customer"/>
          </xsd:sequence>
        </xsd:complexType>
      </xsd:element>
    </xsd:schema>
  </wsdl:types>
  <wsdl:message name="doitRequestMsg">
    <wsdl:part element="tns:doit" name="doitParameters"/>
  </wsdl:message>
  <wsdl:message name="doitResponseMsg">
    <wsdl:part element="tns:doitResponse" name="doitResult"/>
  </wsdl:message>
  <wsdl:portType name="ProcessCustomer">
    <wsdl:operation name="doit">
      <wsdl:input message="tns:doitRequestMsg" name="doitRequest"/>
      <wsdl:output message="tns:doitResponseMsg" name="doitResponse"/>
    </wsdl:operation>
  </wsdl:portType>
</wsdl:definitions>
```

The resulting XSD file contains:

```
<xsd:schema xmlns:bons1="http://com/ibm/bpe/unittest/sca"
  xmlns:tns="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  targetNamespace="http://ProcessTypes/bpel/ProcessCustomer">
  <xsd:import namespace="http://com/ibm/bpe/unittest/sca"
    schemaLocation="Customer.xsd"/>
  <xsd:element name="doit">
    <xsd:complexType>
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element name="input1" type="bons1:Customer" nillable="true"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:complexType>
  </xsd:element>
```



```

<xsd:element name="doitResponse">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="output1" type="bons1:Customer" nillable="true"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
</xsd:schema>

```

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Exporting business objects

Business processes and human tasks have well-defined interfaces that allow them to be accessed externally as Web services. If these interfaces reference business objects, you need to export the interface definitions and business objects to your client programming environment.

Related information

 [Microsoft documentation for the XML Schema Definition Tool \(XSD.EXE\)](#)

Creating a client application (.NET)

A client application sends requests to and receives responses from the Web services APIs. By using a proxy client to manage communications and helper classes to format complex data types, a client application can invoke Web service methods as if they were local functions.

Before you begin

Before starting to create a client application, generate the proxy client and any necessary helper classes.

About this task

You can develop .NET client applications using any .NET-compatible development tool, for example, Visual Studio .NET. You can build any type of .NET application to call the generic Web service APIs.

Procedure

1. Create a new client application project. For example, create a **WinFX Windows Application** in Visual Studio.
2. In the project options, add a reference to the Dynamic Link Library (DLL) file of the proxy client. Add all of the helper classes that contain business object definitions to your project. In Visual Studio, for example, you can do this using the **Project** → **Add existing item** option.
3. Create a proxy client object. For example:

```

HTMClient.HTMReference.HumanTaskManagerComponent1Export_HumanTaskManagerHttpService service =
    new HTMClient.HTMReference.HumanTaskManagerComponent1Export_HumanTaskManagerHttpService();

```

4. Declare any business object data types used in messages to be sent to or received from the Web service. For example:

```

HTMClient.HTMReference.TKIID id = new HTMClient.HTMReference.TKIID();

```

```

ClipBG bg = new ClipBG();
Clip clip = new Clip();

```

5. Call specific Web service functions and specify any required parameters. For example, to create and start a human task:

```

HTMClient.HTMReference.createAndStartTask task =
    new HTMClient.HTMReference.createAndStartTask();
HTMClient.HTMReference.StartTask sTask = new HTMClient.HTMReference.StartTask();

sTask.taskName = "SimpleTask";
sTask.taskNamespace = "http://myProcess/com/acme/task";
sTask.inputMessage = bg;
task.inputTask = sTask;

```

```
id = service.createAndStartTask(task).outputTask;
```

6. Remote processes and tasks are identified with persistent IDs (*id* in the example in the previous step). For example, to claim a previously created human task:

```

HTMClient.HTMReference.claimTask claim = new HTMClient.HTMReference.claimTask();
claim.inputTask = id;

```

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Generating a proxy client (.NET)

.NET client applications use a *proxy client* to interact with the Web service APIs. A proxy client shields client applications from the complexity of the Web service messaging protocol.

Creating helper classes for BPEL processes (.NET)

Certain Web services API operations require client applications to use "document/literal" style wrapped elements. Client applications require helper classes to help them generate the necessary wrapper elements.

Adding security (.NET)

You can secure Web service communications by integrating security mechanisms into your client application.

About this task

These security mechanisms can include user name token (user name and password), or custom binary and XML-based security tokens.

Procedure

1. Download and install the Web Services Enhancements (WSE) 2.0 SP3 for Microsoft .NET. This is available from:

<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=1ba1f631-c3e7-420a-bc1e-ef18bab66122&displaylang=en>

2. Modify the generated proxy client code as follows.

Change:

```

public class Export1_MyMicroflowHttpService : System.Web.Services.Protocols.SoapHttpClientProtocol {
    To:
public class Export1_MyMicroflowHttpService : Microsoft.Web.Services2.WebServicesClientProtocol {

```

Note: These modifications are lost if you regenerate the proxy client by running the WSDL.exe tool.

3. Modify the client application code by adding the following lines at the top of the file:

```

using System.Web.Services.Protocols;
using Microsoft.Web.Services2;
using Microsoft.Web.Services2.Security.Tokens;
...

```

4. Add code to implement the desired security mechanism. For example, the following code adds user name and password protection:

```

string user = "U1";
string pwd = "password";
UsernameToken token =
    new UsernameToken(user, pwd, PasswordOption.SendPlainText);

me._proxy.RequestSoapContext.Security.Tokens.Clear();
me._proxy.RequestSoapContext.Security.Tokens.Add(token);

```

Related tasks

Developing client applications

The client application development process consists of a number of steps.

Changing the Business Flow Manager API endpoint

If you copy the Business Flow Manager API files from the WebSphere Process Server client CD, you must manually edit the default endpoint address.

Querying business-process and task-related objects

You can use the Web services APIs to query business-process and task-related objects in the Business Process Choreographer database to retrieve specific properties of these objects.

About this task

The Business Process Choreographer database stores template (model) and instance (runtime) data for managing business processes and tasks.

Through the Web services APIs, client applications can issue queries to retrieve information from the database about business processes and tasks.

Client applications can issue a one-off query to retrieve a specific property of an object. Queries that you use often can be saved. These stored queries can then be retrieved and used by your client application.

Related reference

Database views for Business Process Choreographer

This reference information describes the columns in the predefined database views.

Queries on business-process and task-related objects using the Web services APIs

Use the query interface of the Web services APIs to obtain information about business processes and tasks.

Client applications use an SQL-like syntax to query the database.

Example for Java Web services

```

string processTemplateName = "ProcessCustomerLR";
query query1 = new query();
query1.selectClause = "DISTINCT PROCESS_INSTANCE.STARTED, PROCESS_INSTANCE.PIID";
query1.whereClause =
    "PROCESS_INSTANCE.TEMPLATE_NAME = '" + processTemplateName + "'";
query1.orderByClause = "PROCESS_INSTANCE.STARTED";

```

```

query1.threshold = null;
query1.timeZone = "UTC"; query1.skipTuples = null;
queryResponse queryResponse1 = proxy.query(query1);

```

Information retrieved from the database is returned through the Web services APIs as a *query result set*.

For example:

```

QueryResultSetType queryResultSet = queryResponse1.queryResultSet;
if (queryResultSet != null) {
    Console.WriteLine("--> QueryResultSetType");
    Console.WriteLine(" . size= " + queryResultSet.size);
    Console.WriteLine(" . numberColumns= " + queryResultSet.numberColumns);
    string indent = " . ";

    // -- the query column info
    QueryColumnInfoType[] queryColumnInfo = queryResultSet.QueryColumnInfo;
    if (queryColumnInfo.Length > 0) {
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.WriteLine("= . QueryColumnInfoType size= " + queryColumnInfo.Length);
        Console.Write( " | tableName ");
        for (int i = 0; i < queryColumnInfo.Length ; i++) {
            Console.Write( " | " + queryColumnInfo[i].tableName.PadLeft(20) );
        }
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.Write( " | columnName ");
        for (int i = 0; i < queryColumnInfo.Length ; i++) {
            Console.Write( " | " + queryColumnInfo[i].columnName.PadLeft(20) );
        }
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.Write( " | data type ");
        for (int i = 0; i < queryColumnInfo.Length ; i++) {
            QueryColumnInfoType tt = queryColumnInfo[i].type;
            Console.WriteLine( " | " + tt.ToString());
        }
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
    else {
        Console.WriteLine("--> queryColumnInfo= <null>");
    }

    // - the query result values
    string[][] result = queryResultSet.result;
    if (result !=null) {
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.WriteLine("= . result size= " + result.Length);
        for (int i = 0; i < result.Length; i++) {
            Console.Write(indent + i );
            string[] row = result[i];
            for (int j = 0; j < row.Length; j++ ) {
                Console.Write(" | " + row[j]);
            }
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
    else {
        Console.WriteLine("--> result= <null>");
    }
}
else {
    Console.WriteLine("--> QueryResultSetType= <null>");
}

```

The query function returns objects according to the caller's authorization. The query result set only contains the properties of those objects that the caller is authorized to see.

Predefined database views are provided for you to query the object properties. For process templates, the query function has the following syntax:

```
ProcessTemplateData[] queryProcessTemplates
    (java.lang.String whereClause,
     java.lang.String orderByClause,
     java.lang.Integer threshold,
     java.util.TimeZone timezone);
```

For task templates, the query function has the following syntax:

```
TaskTemplate[] queryTaskTemplates
    (java.lang.String whereClause,
     java.lang.String orderByClause,
     java.lang.Integer threshold,
     java.util.TimeZone timezone);
```

For the other business-process and task-related objects, the query function has the following syntax:

```
QueryResultSet query (java.lang.String selectClause,
                      java.lang.String whereClause,
                      java.lang.String orderByClause,
                      java.lang.Integer skipTuples
                      java.lang.Integer threshold,
                      java.util.TimeZone timezone);
```

The query interface also contains a queryAll method. You can use this method to retrieve all of the relevant data about an object, for example, for monitoring purposes. The caller of the queryAll method must have one of the following Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) roles: BPESystemAdministrator, BPESystemMonitor, TaskSystemAdministrator, or TaskSystemMonitor. Authorization checking using the corresponding work item of the object is not applied.

Example for .NET

```
ProcessTemplateType[] templates = null;

try {
    queryProcessTemplates iW = new queryProcessTemplates();
    iW.whereClause = "PROCESS_TEMPLATE.STATE=PROCESS_TEMPLATE.STATE.STATE_STARTED";
    iW.orderByClause = null;
    iW.threshold = null;
    iW.timeZone = null;

    Console.WriteLine("--> queryProcessTemplates ... ");
    Console.WriteLine("--> query: WHERE " + iW.whereClause + " ORDER BY " +
        iW.orderByClause + " THRESHOLD " + iW.threshold + " TIMEZONE" + iW.timeZone);

    templates = proxy.queryProcessTemplates(iW);

    if (templates.Length < 1) {
        Console.WriteLine("--> No templates found :-(");
    }
    else {
        for (int i = 0; i < templates.Length ; i++) {
            Console.WriteLine("--> found template with ptid: " + templates[i].ptid);
            Console.WriteLine(" and name: " + templates[i].name);
            /* ... other properties of ProcessTemplateType ... */
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}
catch (Exception e) {
  Console.WriteLine("exception= " + e);
}

```

Related concepts

Select clause

The select clause in the query function identifies the object properties that are to be returned by a query.

Where clause

The where clause in the query function describes the filter criteria to apply to the query domain.

Order-by clause

The order-by clause in the query function specifies the sort criteria for the query result set.

Skip-tuples parameter

The skip-tuples parameter specifies the number of query-result-set tuples from the beginning of the query result set that are to be ignored and not to be returned to the caller in the query result set.

Threshold parameter

The threshold parameter in the query function restricts the number of objects returned from the server to the client in the query result set.

Timezone parameter

The time-zone parameter in the query function defines the time zone for time-stamp constants in the query.

Query results

A query result set contains the results of a Business Process Choreographer API query.

Managing stored queries

Stored queries provide a way to save queries that are run often. The stored query can be either a query that is available to all users (public query), or a query that belongs to a specific user (private query).

About this task

A stored query is a query that is stored in the database and identified by a name. A private and a public stored query can have the same name; private stored queries from different owners can also have the same name.

You can have stored queries for business process objects, task objects, or a combination of these two object types.

Managing public stored queries

Public stored queries are created by the system administrator. These queries are available to all users.

Managing private stored queries for other users

Private queries can be created by any user. These queries are available only to the owner of the query and the system administrator.

Working with your private stored queries

If you are not a system administrator, you can create, run, and delete your own private stored queries. You can also use the public stored queries that the system administrator created.

Chapter 13. Developing client applications using the Business Process Choreographer JMS API

You can develop client applications that access business process applications asynchronously through the Java Messaging Service (JMS) API.

About this task

JMS client applications exchange request and response messages with the JMS API. To create a request message, the client application fills a JMS TextMessage message body with an XML element representing the document/literal wrapper of the corresponding operation.

Requirements for business processes

Business processes developed with the WebSphere Integration Developer to run on the Business Process Choreographer must conform to specific rules to be accessible through the JMS API.

The requirements are:

1. The interfaces of business processes must be defined using the "document/literal wrapped" style defined in the Java API for XML-based RPC (JAX-RPC 1.1) specification. This is the default style for all business processes and human tasks developed with the WebSphere Integration Developer.
2. Fault messages exposed by business processes and human tasks for Web service operations must comprise a single WSDL message part defined with an XML Schema element. For example:

```
<wsdl:part name="myFault" element="myNamespace:myFaultElement"/>
```

Related information



Java API for XML based RPC (JAX-RPC) downloads page



Which style of WSDL should I use?

Authorization for JMS renderings

To authorize use of the JMS interface, security settings must be enabled in WebSphere Application Server.

When the business process container is installed, the role **JMSAPIUser** must be mapped to a user ID. This user ID is used to issue all JMS API requests. For example, if **JMSAPIUser** is mapped to "User A", all JMS API requests appear to the process engine to originate from "User A".

The **JMSAPIUser** role must be assigned the following authorities:

Request	Required authorization
forceTerminate	Process administrator
sendEvent	Potential activity owner or process administrator

Note: For all other requests, no special authorizations are required.

Special authority is granted to a person with the role of business process administrator. A business process administrator is a special role; it is different from the process administrator of a process instance. A business process administrator has all privileges.

You cannot delete the user ID of the process starter from your user registry while the process instance exists. If you delete this user ID, the navigation of this process cannot continue. You receive the following exception in the system log file:

```
no unique ID for: <user ID>
```

Accessing the JMS interface

To send and receive messages through the JMS interface, an application must first create a connection to the `BPC.cellname.Bus`, create a session, then generate message producers and consumers.

About this task

The process server accepts Java Message Service (JMS) messages that follow the point-to-point paradigm. An application that sends or receives JMS messages must perform the following actions.

The following example assumes that the JMS client is executed in a managed environment (EJB, application client, or Web client container). If you want to execute the JMS client in a J2SE environment, refer to "IBM Client for JMS on J2SE with IBM WebSphere Application Server" at <http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg24012804>.

Procedure

1. Create a connection to the `BPC.cellname.Bus`. No preconfigured connection factory exists for a client application's requests: a client application can either use the JMS API's `ReplyConnectionFactory` or create its own connection factory, in which case it can use Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) lookup to retrieve the connection factory. The JNDI-lookup name must be the same as the name specified when configuring the Business Process Choreographer's external request queue. The following example assumes the client application creates its own connection factory named "jms/clientCF".

```
//Obtain the default initial JNDI context.
Context initialContext = new InitialContext();

// Look up the connection factory.
// Create a connection factory that connects to the BPC bus.
// Call it, for example, "jms/clientCF".
// Also configure an appropriate authentication alias.
ConnectionFactory connectionFactory =
    (ConnectionFactory)initialContext.lookup("jms/clientCF");

// Create the connection.
Connection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection();
```

2. Create a session so that message producers and consumers can be created.

```
// Create a transaction session using auto-acknowledgement.
Session session = connection.createSession(true, Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);
```
3. Create a message producer to send messages. The JNDI-lookup name must be the same as the name specified when configuring the Business Process Choreographer's external request queue.


```

// Look up the destination of the Business Process Choreographer input queue to
// send messages to.
Queue sendQueue = (Queue) initialcontext.lookup("jms/BFMJMSAPIQueue");

// Create a message producer.
MessageProducer producer = session.createProducer(sendQueue);

```

4. Create a message consumer to receive replies. The JNDI-lookup name of the reply destination can specify a user-defined destination, but it can also specify the default (Business Process Choreographer-defined) reply destination `jms/BFMJMSReplyQueue`. In both cases, the reply destination must lie on the `BPC.<cellname>.Bus`.

```

// Look up the destination of the reply queue.
Queue replyQueue = (Queue) initialcontext.lookup("jms/BFMJMSReplyQueue");

// Create a message consumer.
MessageConsumer consumer = session.createConsumer(replyQueue);

```

5. Send a message.

```

// Start the connection.
connection.start();

// Create a message - see the task descriptions for examples - and send it.
// This method is defined elsewhere ...
String payload = createXMLDocumentForRequest();
TextMessage requestMessage = session.createTextMessage(payload);

// Set mandatory JMS header.
// targetFunctionName is the operation name of JMS API
// (for example, getProcessTemplate, sendMessage)
requestMessage.setStringProperty("TargetFunctionName", targetFunctionName);

// Set the reply queue; this is mandatory if the replyQueue
// is not the default queue (as it is in this example).
requestMessage.setJMSReplyTo(replyQueue);

// Send the message.
producer.send(requestMessage);

// Get the message ID.
String jmsMessageID = requestMessage.getJMSMessageID();

session.commit();

```

6. Receive the reply.

```

// Receive the reply message and analyse the reply.
TextMessage replyMessage = (TextMessage) consumer.receive();

// Get the payload.
String payload = replyMessage.getText();

session.commit();

```

7. Close the connection and free the resources.

```

// Final housekeeping; free the resources.
session.close();
connection.close();

```

Note: It is not necessary to close the connection after each transaction. Once a connection has been started, any number of request and response messages can be exchanged before the connection is closed. The example shows a simple case with a single call within a single business method.

Structure of a Business Process Choreographer JMS message

The header and body of each JMS message must have a predefined structure.

A Java Message Service (JMS) message consists of:

- A message header for message identification and routing information.
- The body (payload) of the message that holds the content.

The Business Process Choreographer supports text message formats only.

Message header

JMS allows clients to access a number of message header fields.

The following header fields can be set by a Business Process Choreographer JMS client:

- **JMSReplyTo**

The destination to send a reply to the request. If this field is not specified in the request message, the reply is sent to the Export interface's default reply destination (an Export is a client interface rendering of a business process component). This destination can be obtained using `initialContext.lookup("jms/BFMJMSReplyQueue");`

- **TargetFunctionName**

The name of the WSDL operation, for example, "queryProcessTemplates". This field must always be set. Note that the TargetFunctionName specifies the operation of the generic JMS message interface described here. This should not be confused with operations provided by concrete processes or tasks that can be invoked indirectly, for example, using the **call** or **sendMessage** operations.

A Business Process Choreographer client can also access the following header fields:

- **JMSMessageID**

Uniquely identifies a message. Set by the JMS provider when the message is sent. If the client sets the JMSMessageID before sending the message, it is overwritten by the JMS provider. If the ID of the message is required for authentication purposes, the client can retrieve the JMSMessageID after sending the message.

- **JMSCorrelationID**

Links messages. Do not set this field. A Business Process Choreographer reply message contains the JMSMessageID of the request message.

Each response message contains the following JMS header fields:

- **IsBusinessException**

"False" for WSDL output messages, or "true" for WSDL fault messages.

ServiceRuntimeExceptions are not returned to asynchronous client applications. When a severe exception occurs during the processing of a JMS request message, it results in a runtime failure, causing the transaction that is processing this request message to roll back. The JMS request message is then delivered again. If the failure occurs early, during processing of the message as part of the SCA Export (for example, while deserializing the message), retries are attempted up to the maximum number of failed deliveries specified by the SCA Export's receive destination. After the maximum number of failed deliveries is reached, the request message is added to the system exception destination of the Business Process

Choreographer bus. If, however, the failure occurs during actual processing of the request by the Business Flow Manager's SCA component, the failed request message is handled by the WebSphere Process Server's failed event management infrastructure, that is, it may end up in the failed event management database if retries do not resolve the exceptional situation.

Message body

The JMS message body is a String containing an XML document representing the document/literal wrapper element of the operation.

A simple example of a valid request message body is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<_6:queryProcessTemplates xmlns:_6="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/
    websphere/business-process/services/6.0">
<whereClause>PROCESS_TEMPLATE.STATE IN (1)</whereClause>
</_6:queryProcessTemplates>
```

Related tasks

Checking the response message for business exceptions
JMS client applications must check the message header of all response messages for business exceptions.

Copying artifacts for JMS client applications

A number of artifacts can be copied from the WebSphere Process Server environment to help in the creation of JMS client applications.

About this task

These artifacts are mandatory only if you use the BOXMLSerializer to create the JMS message body. For the JMS API, these artifacts are:

- BFMIF.wsdl
- BFMIF.xsd
- BPCGen.xsd
- wsa.xsd

You can obtain these artifacts in the following ways:

- Publish and export the artifacts from the WebSphere Process Server environment.
These client artifacts are in the *install_root*\ProcessChoreographer\client directory.
- Copy files from the *install_root*\ProcessChoreographer\client directory on the WebSphere Process Server client CD.

Results

Checking the response message for business exceptions

JMS client applications must check the message header of all response messages for business exceptions.

About this task

A JMS client application must first check the **IsBusinessException** property in the response message's header.

For example:

Example

```
// receive response message
Message receivedMessage = ((JmsProxy) getToBeInvokedUponObject()).receiveMessage();
String strResponse = ((TextMessage) receivedMessage).getText();

if (receivedMessage.getStringProperty("IsBusinessException") {
    // strResponse is a bussiness fault
    // any api can end w/a processFaultMsg
    // the call api also w/a businessFaultMsg
}
else {
    // strResponse is the output message
}
```

Related concepts

Structure of a Business Process Choreographer JMS message

The header and body of each JMS message must have a predefined structure.

Example: executing a long running process using the Business Process Choreographer JMS API

This example shows how to create a generic client application that uses the JMS API to work with long-running processes.

Procedure

1. Set up the JMS environment, as described in "Accessing the JMS interface" on page 580.
2. Obtain a list of installed process definitions.
 - Send `queryProcessTemplates`.
 - This returns a list of `ProcessTemplate` objects.
3. Obtain a list of start activities (receive or pick with `createInstance="yes"`).
 - Send `getStartActivities`.
 - This returns a list of `InboundOperationTemplate` objects.
4. Create an input message. This is environment-specific, and might require the use of predeployed, process-specific artifacts.
5. Create a process instance.
 - Issue a `sendMessage`.

With the JMS API, you can also use the `call` operation for interacting with long-running, request-response operations provided by a business process. This operation returns the operation result or fault to the specified reply-to destination, even after a long period of time. Therefore, if you use the `call` operation, you do not need to use the `query` and `getOutputMessage` operations to obtain the process' output or fault message.

6. Optional: Obtain output messages from the process instances by repeating the following steps:
 - a. Issue query to obtain the finished state of the process instance.
 - b. Issue `getOutputMessage`.

7. Optional: Work with additional operations exposed by the process:
 - a. Issue `getWaitingActivities` or `getActiveEventHandlers` to obtain a list of `InboundOperationTemplate` objects.
 - b. Create input messages.
 - c. Send messages with `sendMessage`.
8. Optional: Get and set custom properties that are defined on the process or contained activities with `getCustomProperties` and `setCustomProperties`.
9. Finish working with a process instance:
 - a. Send `delete` and `terminate` to finish working with the long-running process.

Chapter 14. Developing Web applications for business processes and human tasks, using JSF components

Business Process Choreographer provides several JavaServer Faces (JSF) components. You can extend and integrate these components to add business-process and human-task functionality to Web applications.

About this task

You can use WebSphere Integration Developer to build your Web application. For applications that include human tasks, you can generate a JSF custom client. For more information on generating a JSF client, go to the information center for WebSphere Integration Developer.

You can also develop your Web client using the JSF components provided by Business Process Choreographer.

Procedure

1. Create a dynamic project and change the Web Project Features properties to include the JSF base components.

For more information on creating a Web project, go to the information center for WebSphere Integration Developer.

2. Add the prerequisite Business Process Choreographer Explorer Java archive (JAR files).

Add the following files to the WEB-INF/lib directory of your project:

- bpcclientcore.jar
- bfmclientmodel.jar
- htmlclientmodel.jar
- bpcjsfcomponents.jar

If you are deploying your Web application on a remote server, also add the following files. These files are needed for remotely accessing the Business Process Choreographer APIs.

- bpe137650.jar
- task137650.jar

In WebSphere Process Server, all of these files are in the following directory:

- On Windows systems: *install_root*\ProcessChoreographer\client
- On UNIX, Linux, and i5/OS systems: *install_root*/ProcessChoreographer/client

3. Add the EJB references that you need to the Web application deployment descriptor, web.xml file.

```
<ejb-ref id="EjbRef_1">
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/BusinessProcessHome</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <home>com.ibm.bpe.api.BusinessFlowManagerHome</home>
  <remote>com.ibm.bpe.api.BusinessFlowManager</remote>
</ejb-ref>
<ejb-ref id="EjbRef_2">
  <ejb-ref-name>ejb/HumanTaskManagerEJB</ejb-ref-name>
  <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
  <home>com.ibm.task.api.HumanTaskManagerHome</home>
```

```

    <remote>com.ibm.task.api.HumanTaskManager</remote>
</ejb-ref>
<ejb-local-ref id="EjbLocalRef_1">
    <ejb-ref-name>ejb/LocalBusinessProcessHome</ejb-ref-name>
    <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
    <local-home>com.ibm.bpe.api.LocalBusinessFlowManagerHome</local-home>
    <local>com.ibm.bpe.api.LocalBusinessFlowManager</local>
</ejb-local-ref>
<ejb-local-ref id="EjbLocalRef_2">
    <ejb-ref-name>ejb/LocalHumanTaskManagerEJB</ejb-ref-name>
    <ejb-ref-type>Session</ejb-ref-type>
    <local-home>com.ibm.task.api.LocalHumanTaskManagerHome</local-home>
    <local>com.ibm.task.api.LocalHumanTaskManager</local>
</ejb-local-ref>

```

4. Add the Business Process Choreographer Explorer JSF components to the JSF application.

a. Add the tag library references that you need for your applications to the JavaServer Pages (JSP) files. Typically, you need the JSF and HTML tag libraries, and the tag library required by the JSF components.

- <%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsf/core" prefix="f" %>
- <%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html" prefix="h" %>
- <%@ taglib uri="http://com.ibm.bpe.jsf/taglib" prefix="bpe" %>

b. Add an <f:view> tag to the body of the JSP page, and an <h:form> tag to the <f:view> tag.

c. Add the JSF components to the JSP files.

Depending on your application, add the List component, the Details component, the CommandBar component, or the Message component to the JSP files. You can add multiple instances of each component.

d. Configure the managed beans in the JSF configuration file.

By default, the configuration file is the faces-config.xml file. This file is in the WEB-INF directory of the Web application.

Depending on the component that you add to your JSP file, you also need to add the references to the query and other wrapper objects to the JSF configuration file. To ensure correct error handling, you also need to define both an error bean and a navigation target for the error page in the JSF configuration file. Ensure that you use BPCErrors for the name of the error bean and error for the name of the navigation target of the error page.

```

<faces-config>
...
<managed-bean>
    <managed-bean-name>BPCErrors</managed-bean-name>
    <managed-bean-class>com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.ErrorBeanImpl
    </managed-bean-class>
    <managed-bean-scope>session</managed-bean-scope>
</managed-bean>

...
<navigation-rule>
...
<navigation-case>
<description>
The general error page.
</description>
<from-outcome>error</from-outcome>
<to-view-id>/Error.jsp</to-view-id>
</navigation-case>
...
</navigation-rule>
</faces-config>

```


In error situations that trigger the error page, the exception is set on the error bean.

- e. Implement the custom code that you need to support the JSF components.
5. Deploy the application.

If you are deploying the application in a network deployment environment, change the target resource Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) names to values where the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager APIs can be found in your cell.

- If your business process containers are configured on another server in the same managed cell, the names have the following structure:

```
cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessManagerHome
cell/nodes/nodename/servers/servername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome
```

- If your business process containers are configured on a cluster in the same cell, the names have the following structure:

```
cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome
cell/clusters/clustername/com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome
```

Map the EJB references to the JNDI names or manually add the references to the `ibm-web-bnd.xmi` file.

The following table lists the reference bindings and their default mappings.

Table 63. Mapping of the reference bindings to JNDI names

Reference binding	JNDI name	Comments
ejb/BusinessProcessHome	com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome	Remote session bean
ejb/LocalBusinessProcessHome	com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome	Local session bean
ejb/HumanTaskManagerEJB	com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome	Remote session bean
ejb/LocalHumanTaskManagerEJB	com/ibm/task/api/HumanTaskManagerHome	Local session bean

Results

Your deployed Web application contains the functionality provided by the Business Process Choreographer Explorer components.

What to do next

If you are using custom JSPs for the process and task messages, you must map the Web modules that are used to deploy the JSPs to the same servers that the custom JSF client is mapped to.

Related tasks

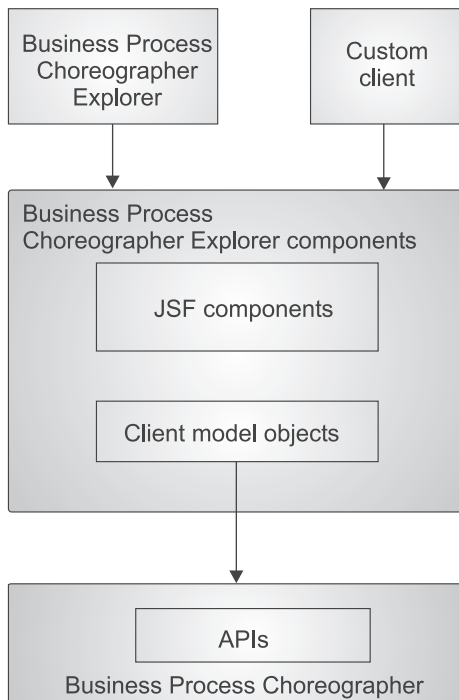
Accessing the remote interface of the session bean

An EJB client application for business processes or human tasks accesses the remote interface of the session bean through the remote home interface of the bean.

Business Process Choreographer Explorer components

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer components are a set of configurable, reusable elements that are based on the JavaServer Faces (JSF) technology. You can imbed these elements in Web applications. The Web applications can then access installed business process and human task applications.

The components consist of a set of JSF components and a set of client model objects. The relationship of the components to Business Process Choreographer, Business Process Choreographer Explorer, and other custom clients is shown in the following figure.



JSF components

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer components include the following JSF components. You embed these JSF components in your JavaServer Pages (JSP) files when you build Web applications for working with business processes and human tasks.

- List component
The List component displays a list of application objects in a table, for example, tasks, activities, process instances, process templates, work items, or escalations. This component has an associated list handler.
- Details component
The Details component displays the properties of tasks, work items, activities, process instances, and process templates. This component has an associated details handler.
- CommandBar component
The CommandBar component displays a bar with buttons. These buttons represent commands that operate on either the object in a details view or the selected objects in a list. These objects are provided by a list handler or a details handler.
- Message component
The Message component displays a message that can contain either a Service Data Object (SDO) or a simple type.

Client model objects

The client model objects are used with the JSF components. The objects implement some of the interfaces of the underlying Business Process Choreographer API and wrap the original object. The client model objects provide national language support for labels and converters for some properties.

Error handling in JSF components

The JavaServer Faces (JSF) components exploit a predefined managed bean, `BPCError`, for error handling. In error situations that trigger the error page, the exception is set on the error bean.

This bean implements the `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.ErrorBean` interface. The error page is displayed in the following situations:

- If an error occurs during the execution of a query that is defined for a list handler, and the error is generated as a `ClientException` error by the `execute` method of a command
- If a `ClientException` error is generated by the `execute` method of a command and this error is not an `ErrorsInCommandException` error nor does it implement the `CommandBarMessage` interface
- If an error message is displayed in the component, and you follow the hyperlink for the message

A default implementation of the `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.ErrorBeanImpl` interface is available.

The interface is defined as follows:

```
public interface ErrorBean {

    public void setException(Exception ex);

    /*
     * This setter method call allows a locale and
     * the exception to be passed. This allows the
     * getExceptionMessage methods to return localized Strings
     */
    public void setException(Exception ex, Locale locale);

    public Exception getException();
    public String getStack();
    public String getNestedExceptionMessage();
    public String getNestedExceptionStack();
    public String getRootExceptionMessage();
    public String getRootExceptionStack();

    /*
     * This method returns the exception message
     * concatenated recursively with the messages of all
     * the nested exceptions.
     */
    public String getAllExceptionMessages();

    /*
     * This method is returns the exception stack
     * concatenated recursively with the stacks of all
```

```

        * the nested exceptions.
        */
        public String getAllExceptionStacks();
    }

```

Related concepts

Error handling in the List component

When you use the List component to display lists in your JSF application, you can take advantage of the error handling functions provided by the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler` class.

Default converters and labels for client model objects

The client model objects implement the corresponding interfaces of the Business Process Choreographer API.

The List component and the Details component operate on any bean. You can display all of the properties of a bean. However, if you want to set the converters and labels that are used for the properties of a bean, you must use either the `column` tag for the List component, or the `property` tag for the Details component. Instead of setting the converters and labels, you can define default converter and labels for the properties by defining the following static methods. You can define the following static methods:

```

static public String getLabel(String property,Locale locale);
static public com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.converter.SimpleConverter
    getConverter(String property);

```

The following table shows the client model objects that implement the corresponding Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager API classes and provide default labels and converter for their properties. This wrapping of the interfaces provides locale-sensitive labels and converters for a set of properties. The following table shows the mapping of the Business Process Choreographer interfaces to the corresponding client model objects.

Table 64. How Business Process Choreographer interfaces are mapped to client model objects

Business Process Choreographer interface	Client model object class
<code>com.ibm.bpe.api.ActivityInstanceData</code>	<code>com.ibm.bpe.clientmodel.bean.ActivityInstanceBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.bpe.api.ActivityServiceTemplateData</code>	<code>com.ibm.bpe.clientmodel.bean.ActivityServiceTemplateBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.bpe.api.ProcessInstanceData</code>	<code>com.ibm.bpe.clientmodel.bean.ProcessInstanceBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.bpe.api.ProcessTemplateData</code>	<code>com.ibm.bpe.clientmodel.bean.ProcessTemplateBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.task.api.Escalation</code>	<code>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.EscalationBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.task.api.Task</code>	<code>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean</code>
<code>com.ibm.task.api.TaskTemplate</code>	<code>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskTemplateBean</code>

Adding the List component to a JSF application

Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer List component to display a list of client model objects, for example, business process instances or task instances.

Procedure

1. Add the List component to the JavaServer Pages (JSP) file.

Add the `bpe:list` tag to the `h:form` tag. The `bpe:list` tag must include a `model` attribute. Add `bpe:column` tags to the `bpe:list` tag to add the properties of the objects that are to appear in each of the rows in the list.

The following example shows how to add a List component to display task instances.

```
<h:form>

    <bpe:list model="#{TaskPool}">
        <bpe:column name="name" action="taskInstanceDetails" />
        <bpe:column name="state" />
        <bpe:column name="kind" />
        <bpe:column name="owner" />
        <bpe:column name="originator" />
    </bpe:list>

</h:form>
```

The `model` attribute refers to a managed bean, `TaskPool`. The managed bean provides the list of Java objects over which the list iterates and then displays in individual rows.

2. Configure the managed bean referred to in the `bpe:list` tag.

For the List component, this managed bean must be an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler` class.

The following example shows how to add the `TaskPool` managed bean to the configuration file.

```
<managed-bean>
<managed-bean-name>TaskPool</managed-bean-name>
<managed-bean-class>com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler</managed-bean-class>
<managed-bean-scope>session</managed-bean-scope>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>query</property-name>
        <value>#{TaskPoolQuery}</value>
    </managed-property>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>type</property-name>
        <value>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean</value>
    </managed-property>
</managed-bean>

<managed-bean>
<managed-bean-name>TaskPoolQuery</managed-bean-name>
<managed-bean-class>sample.TaskPoolQuery</managed-bean-class>
<managed-bean-scope>session</managed-bean-scope>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>type</property-name>
        <value>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean</value>
    </managed-property>
</managed-bean>

<managed-bean>
<managed-bean-name>htmConnection</managed-bean-name>
<managed-bean-class>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.HTMConnection</managed-bean-class>
<managed-bean-scope>application</managed-bean-scope>
    <managed-property>
        <property-name>jndiName</property-name>
        <value>java:comp/env/ejb/LocalHumanTaskManagerEJB</value>
    </managed-property>
</managed-bean>
```

The example shows that `TaskPool` has two configurable properties: `query` and `type`. The value of the `query` property refers to another managed bean, `TaskPoolQuery`. The value of the `type` property specifies the bean class, the properties of which are shown in the columns of the displayed list. The

associated query instance can also have a property type. If a property type is specified, it must be the same as the type specified for the list handler.

You can add any type of query logic to the JSF application as long as the result of the query can be represented as list of strongly-typed beans. For example, the TaskPoolQuery is implemented using a list of com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean objects.

3. Add the custom code for the managed bean that is referred to by the list handler.

The following example shows how to add custom code for the TaskPool managed bean.

```
public class TaskPoolQuery implements Query {

    public List execute throws ClientException {

        // Examine the faces-config file for a managed bean "htmConnection".
        //
        FacesContext ctx = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
        Application app = ctx.getApplication();
        ValueBinding htmVb = app.createValueBinding("#{htmConnection}");
        htmConnection = (HTMConnection) htmVb.getValue(ctx);
        HumanTaskManagerService taskService =
            htmConnection.getHumanTaskManagerService();

        // Then call the actual query method on the Human Task Manager service.
        //
        // Add the database columns for all of the properties you want to show
        // in your list to the select statement
        //
        QueryResultSet queryResult = taskService.query(
            "DISTINCT TASK.TKIID, TASK.NAME, TASK.KIND, TASK.STATE, TASK.TYPE,"
            + "TASK.STARTER, TASK.OWNER, TASK.STARTED, TASK.ACTIVATED, TASK.DUE,"
            + "TASK.EXPIRES, TASK.PRIORITY",
            "TASK.KIND IN(101,102,105) AND TASK.STATE IN(2)
            AND WORK_ITEM.REASON IN (1)",
            (String)null,
            (Integer)null,
            (TimeZone)null);
        List applicationObjects = transformToTaskList ( queryResult );
        return applicationObjects ;
    }

    private List transformToTaskList(QueryResultSet result) {

        ArrayList array = null;
        int entries = result.size();
        array = new ArrayList( entries );

        // Transforms each row in the QueryResultSet to a task instance beans.
        for (int i = 0; i < entries; i++) {
            result.next();
            array.add( new TaskInstanceBean( result, connection ) );
        }
        return array ;
    }
}
```

The TaskPoolQuery bean queries the properties of the Java objects. This bean must implement the com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.Query interface. When the list handler refreshes its contents, it calls the execute method of the query. The call returns a list of Java objects. The getType method must return the class name of the returned Java objects.

Results

Your JSF application now contains a JavaServer page that displays the properties of the requested list of objects, for example, the state, kind, owner, and originator of the task instances that are available to you.

How lists are processed

Every instance of the List component is associated with an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler` class.

This list handler tracks the selected items in the associated list and it provides a notification mechanism to associate the list entries with the details pages for the different kinds of items. The list handler is bound to the List component through the **model** attribute of the `bpe:list` tag.

The notification mechanism of the list handler is implemented using the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.ItemListener` interface. You can register implementations of this interface in the configuration file of your JavaServer Faces (JSF) application.

The notification is triggered when a link in the list is clicked. Links are rendered for all of the columns for which the **action** attribute is set. The value of the **action** attribute is either a JSF navigation target, or a JSF action method that returns a JSF navigation target.

The `BPCListHandler` class also provides a `refreshList` method. You can use this method in JSF method bindings to implement a user interface control for running the query again.

Query implementations

You can use the list handler to display all kinds of objects and their properties. The content of the list that is displayed depends on the list of objects that is returned by the implementation of the `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.Query` interface that is configured for the list handler. You can set the query either programmatically using the `setQuery` method of the `BPCListHandler` class, or you can configure it in the JSF configuration files of the application.

You can run queries not only against the Business Process Choreographer APIs, but also against any other source of information that is accessible from your application, for example, a content management system or a database. The only requirement is that the result of the query is returned as a `java.util.List` of objects by the `execute` method.

The type of the objects returned must guarantee that the appropriate getter methods are available for all of the properties that are displayed in the columns of the list for which the query is defined. To ensure that the type of the object that is returned fits the list definitions, you can set the value of the `type` property on the `BPCListHandler` instance that is defined in the faces configuration file to the fully qualified class name of the returned objects. You can return this name in the `getType` call of the query implementation. At runtime, the list handler checks that the object types conform to the definitions.

To map error messages to specific entries in a list, the objects returned by the query must implement a method with the signature `public Object getID()`.

Default converters and labels

The items returned by a query must be beans and their class must match the class specified as the type in the definition of the BPCListHandler class or com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.Query interface. In addition, the List component checks whether the item class or a superclass implements the following methods:

```
static public String getLabel(String property,Locale locale);
static public com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.converter.SimpleConverter
    getConverter(String property);
```

If these methods are defined for the beans, the List component uses the label as the default label for the list and the SimpleConverter as the default converter for the property. You can overwrite these settings with the **label** and **converterID** attributes of the bpe:list tag. For more information, see the Javadoc for the SimpleConverter interface and the ColumnTag class.

User-specific time zone information

The JavaServer Faces (JSF) components provide a utility for handling user-specific time zone information in the List component.

The BPCListHandler class uses the com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.User interface to get information about the time zone and locale of each user. The List component expects the implementation of the interface to be configured with **user** as the managed-bean name in your JavaServer Faces (JSF) configuration file. If this entry is missing from the configuration file, the time zone in which WebSphere Process Server is running is returned.

The com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.User interface is defined as follows:

```
public interface User {

    /**
     * The locale used by the client of the user.
     * @return Locale.
     */
    public Locale getLocale();

    /**
     * The time zone used by the client of the user.
     * @return TimeZone.
     */
    public TimeZone getTimeZone();

    /**
     * The name of the user.
     * @return name of the user.
     */
    public String getName();
}
```

Error handling in the List component

When you use the List component to display lists in your JSF application, you can take advantage of the error handling functions provided by the com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler class.

Errors that occur when queries are run or commands are run

If an error occurs during the execution of a query, the BPCListHandler class distinguishes between errors that were caused by insufficient access rights and other exceptions. To catch errors due to insufficient access rights, the **rootCause**

parameter of the `ClientException` that is thrown by the `execute` method of the query must be a `com.ibm.bpe.api.EngineNotAuthorizedException` or a `com.ibm.task.api.NotAuthorizedException` exception. The List component displays the error message instead of the result of the query.

If the error is not caused by insufficient access rights, the `BPCListHandler` class passes the exception object to the implementation of the `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.util.ErrorBean` interface that is defined by the `BPCError` key in your JSF application configuration file. When the exception is set, the error navigation target is called.

Errors that occur when working with items that are displayed in a list

The `BPCListHandler` class implements the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.ErrorHandler` interface. You can provide information about these errors with the `map` parameter of type `java.util.Map` in the `setErrors` method. This map contains identifiers as keys and the exceptions as values. The identifiers must be the values returned by the `getID` method of the object that caused the error. If the map is set and any of the IDs match any of the items displayed in the list, the list handler automatically adds a column containing the error message to the list.

To avoid outdated error messages in the list, reset the errors map. In the following situations, the map is reset automatically:

- The `refreshList` method `BPCListHandler` class is called.
- A new query is set on the `BPCListHandler` class.
- The `CommandBar` component is used to trigger actions on items of the list. The `CommandBar` component uses this mechanism as one of the methods for error handling.

Related concepts

Error handling in JSF components

The JavaServer Faces (JSF) components exploit a predefined managed bean, `BPCError`, for error handling. In error situations that trigger the error page, the exception is set on the error bean.

List component: Tag definitions

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer List component displays a list of objects in a table, for example, tasks, activities, process instances, process templates, work items, and escalations.

The List component consists of the JSF component tags: `bpe:list` and `bpe:column`. The `bpe:column` tag is a subelement of the `bpe:list` tag.

Component class

`com.ibm.bpe.jsf.component.ListComponent`

Example syntax

```
<bpe:list model="{ProcessTemplateList}">
  rows="20"
  styleClass="list"
  headerStyleClass="listHeader"
  rowClasses="normal">

  <bpe:column name="name" action="processTemplateDetails"/>
```

```

<bpe:column name="validFromTime"/>
<bpe:column name="executionMode" label="Execution mode"/>
<bpe:column name="state" converterID="my.state.converter"/>
<bpe:column name="autoDelete"/>
<bpe:column name="description"/>

```

```
</bpe:list>
```

Tag attributes

The body of the `bpe:list` tag can contain only `bpe:column` tags. When the table is rendered, the List component iterates over the list of application objects and renders all of the columns for each of the objects.

Table 65. `bpe:list` attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
<code>buttonStyleClass</code>	no	The cascading style sheet (CSS) style class for rendering the buttons in the footer area.
<code>cellStyleClass</code>	no	The CSS style class for rendering individual table cells.
<code>checkbox</code>	no	Determines whether the check box for selecting multiple items is rendered. The attribute has a value of either <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> . If the value is set to <code>true</code> , the check box column is rendered.
<code>headerStyleClass</code>	no	The CSS style class for rendering the table header.
<code>model</code>	yes	A value binding for a managed bean of the <code>com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler</code> class.
<code>rows</code>	no	The number of rows that are shown on a page. If the number of items exceeds the number of rows, paging buttons are displayed at the end of the table. Value expressions are not supported for this attribute.
<code>rowClasses</code>	no	The CSS style class for rendering the rows in the table.
<code>selectAll</code>	no	If this attribute is set to <code>true</code> , all of the items in the list are selected by default.
<code>styleClass</code>	no	The CSS style class for rendering the overall table containing titles, rows, and paging buttons.

Table 66. `bpe:column` attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
<code>action</code>	no	If this attribute is specified, a link is rendered in the column. Either a JavaServer Faces action method or the Faces navigation target is triggered when this link is clicked. A JavaServer Faces action method has the following signature: <code>String method()</code> .

Table 66. *bpe:column* attributes (continued)

Attribute	Required	Description
converterID	no	The Faces converter ID that is used for converting the property value. If this attribute is not set, any Faces converter ID that is provided by the model for this property is used.
label	no	A literal or value binding expression that is used as a label for the header of the column or the cell of the table header row. If this attribute is not set, any label that is provided by the model for this property is used.
name	yes	The name of the property that is displayed in this column.

Adding the Details component to a JSF application

Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer Details component to display the properties of tasks, work items, activities, process instances, and process templates.

Procedure

1. Add the Details component to the JavaServer Pages (JSP) file.

Add the `bpe:details` tag to the `<h:form>` tag. The `bpe:details` tag must contain a **model** attribute. You can add properties to the Details component with the `bpe:property` tag.

The following example shows how to add a Details component to display some of the properties for a task instance.

```
<h:form>

    <bpe:details model="#{TaskInstanceDetails}">
        <bpe:property name="displayName" />
        <bpe:property name="owner" />
        <bpe:property name="kind" />
        <bpe:property name="state" />
        <bpe:property name="escalated" />
        <bpe:property name="suspended" />
        <bpe:property name="originator" />
        <bpe:property name="activationTime" />
        <bpe:property name="expirationTime" />
    </bpe:details>

</h:form>
```

The **model** attribute refers to a managed bean, `TaskInstanceDetails`. The bean provides the properties of the Java object.

2. Configure the managed bean referred to in the `bpe:details` tag.

For the Details component, this managed bean must be an instance of the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCDetailsHandler` class. This handler class wraps a Java object and exposes its public properties to the details component.

The following example shows how to add the `TaskInstanceDetails` managed bean to the configuration file.

```
<managed-bean>
    <managed-bean-name>TaskInstanceDetails</managed-bean-name>
    <managed-bean-class>com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCDetailsHandler</managed-bean-class>
    <managed-bean-scope>session</managed-bean-scope>
</managed-property>
```

```

        <property-name>type</property-name>
        <value>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean</value>
    </managed-property>
</managed-bean>

```

The example shows that the TaskInstanceDetails bean has a configurable type property. The value of the type property specifies the bean class (com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean), the properties of which are shown in the rows of the displayed details. The bean class can be any JavaBeans class. If the bean provides default converter and property labels, the converter and the label are used for the rendering in the same way as for the List component.

Results

Your JSF application now contains a JavaServer page that displays the details of the specified object, for example, the details of a task instance.

Details component: Tag definitions

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer Details component displays the properties of tasks, work items, activities, process instances, and process templates.

The Details component consists of the JSF component tags: bpe:details and bpe:property. The bpe:property tag is a subelement of the bpe:details tag.

Component class

com.ibm.bpe.jsf.component.DetailsComponent

Example syntax

```

<bpe:details model="#{MyActivityDetails}">
    <bpe:property name="name"/>
    <bpe:property name="owner"/>
    <bpe:property name="activated"/>
</bpe:details>

<bpe:details model="#{MyActivityDetails}" style="style" styleClass="cssStyle">
    style="style"
    styleClass="cssStyle"
</bpe:details>

```

Tag attributes

Use bpe:property tags to specify both the subset of attributes that are shown and the order in which these attributes are shown. If the details tag does not contain any attribute tags, it renders all of the available attributes of the model object.

Table 67. bpe:details attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
columnClasses	no	A list of cascading style sheet style (CSS) style classes, separated by commas, for rendering columns.
id	no	The JavaServer Faces ID of the component.
model	yes	A value binding for a managed bean of the com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCDetailsHandler class.
rowClasses	no	A list of CSS style classes, separated by commas, for rendering rows.

Table 67. *bpe:details* attributes (continued)

Attribute	Required	Description
styleClass	no	The CSS class that is used for rendering the HTML element.

Table 68. *bpe:property* attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
converterID	no	The ID used to register the converter in the JavaServer Faces (JSF) configuration file.
label	no	The label for the property. If this attribute is not set, a default label is provided by the client model class.
name	yes	The name of the property to be displayed. This name must correspond to a named property as defined in the corresponding client model class.

Adding the CommandBar component to a JSF application

Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer CommandBar component to display a bar with buttons. These buttons represent commands that operate on the details view of an object or the selected objects in a list.

About this task

When the user clicks a button in the user interface, the corresponding command is run on the selected objects. You can add and extend the CommandBar component in your JavaServer Faces (JSF) application.

Procedure

1. Add the CommandBar component to the JavaServer Pages (JSP) file.

Add the `bpe:commandbar` tag to the `<h:form>` tag. The `bpe:commandbar` tag must contain a model attribute.

The following example shows how to add a CommandBar component that provides refresh and claim commands for a task instance list.

```
<h:form>

    <bpe:commandbar model="#{TaskInstanceList}">
        <bpe:command commandID="Refresh" >
            action="#{TaskInstanceList.refreshList}"
            label="Refresh"/>

        <bpe:command commandID="MyClaimCommand" >
            label="Claim" >
                commandClass="<customcode>"/>
        </bpe:commandbar>

</h:form>
```

The **model** attribute refers to a managed bean. This bean must implement the `ItemProvider` interface and provide the selected Java objects. The CommandBar component is usually used with either the List component or the Details component in the same JSP file. Generally, the model that is specified in the tag is the same as the model that is specified in the List component or Details

component on the same page. So for the List component, for example, the command acts on the selected items in the list.

In this example, the **model** attribute refers to the TaskInstanceList managed bean. This bean provides the selected objects in the task instance list. The bean must implement the ItemProvider interface. This interface is implemented by the BPCListHandler class and the BPCDetailsHandler class.

2. Optional: Configure the managed bean that is referred to in the bpe:commandbar tag.

If the CommandBar **model** attribute refers to a managed bean that is already configured, for example, for a list or details handler, no further configuration is required. If you use neither the BPCListHandler class nor the BPCDetailsHandler class for the model, you must refer to another object that has a class that implements the ItemProvider interface.

3. Add the code that implements the custom commands to the JSF application.

The following code snippet shows how to write a command class that implements the Command interface. This command class (MyClaimCommand) is referred to by the bpe:command tag in the JSP file.

```
public class MyClaimCommand implements Command {

    public String execute(List selectedObjects) throws ClientException {
        if( selectedObjects != null && selectedObjects.size() > 0 ) {
            try {
                // Determine HumanTaskManagerService from an HTMConnection bean.
                // Configure the bean in the faces-config.xml for easy access
                // in the JSF application.
                FacesContext ctx = FacesContext.getCurrentInstance();
                ValueBinding vb =
                    ctx.getApplication().createValueBinding("{htmConnection}");
                HTMConnection htmConnection = (HTMConnection) htmVB.getValue(ctx);
                HumanTaskManagerService htm =
                    htmConnection.getHumanTaskManagerService();

                Iterator iter = selectedObjects.iterator() ;
                while( iter.hasNext() ) {
                    try {
                        TaskInstanceBean task = (TaskInstanceBean) iter.next() ;
                        TKIID tiid = task.getID() ;

                        htm.claim( tiid ) ;
                        task.setState( new Integer(TaskInstanceBean.STATE_CLAIMED) ) ;

                    }
                    catch( Exception e ) {
                        ; // Error while iterating or claiming task instance.
                        // Ignore for better understanding of the sample.
                    }
                }
            }
            catch( Exception e ) {
                ; // Configuration or communication error.
                // Ignore for better understanding of the sample
            }
        }
        return null;
    }

    // Default implementations
    public boolean isMultiSelectEnabled() { return false; }
    public boolean[] isApplicable(List itemsOnList) {return null; }
    public void setContext(Object targetModel) {}; // Not used here
}
```

The command is processed in the following way:

- a. A command is invoked when a user clicks the corresponding button in the command bar. The `CommandBar` component retrieves the selected items from the item provider that is specified in the **model** attribute and passes the list of selected objects to the `execute` method of the `commandClass` instance.
- b. Optional: The **commandClass** attribute refers to a custom command implementation that implements the `Command` interface. This means that the command must implement the `public String execute(List selectedObjects)` throws `ClientException` method. The command returns a result that is used to determine the next navigation rule for the JSF application.
- c. Optional: After the command completes, the `CommandBar` component evaluates the **action** attribute. The **action** attribute can be a static string or a method binding to a JSF action method with the `public String Method()` signature. Use the **action** attribute to override the outcome of a command class or to explicitly specify an outcome for the navigation rules. The **action** attribute is not processed if the command generates an exception other than an `ErrorsInCommandException` exception.
- d. If the **commandClass** attribute does not have a command class specified, the action is immediately called. For example, for the refresh command in the example, the JSF value expression `#{TaskInstanceList.refreshList}` is called instead of a command.

Results

Your JSF application now contains a `JavaServer` page that implements a customized command bar.

How commands are processed

Use the `CommandBar` component to add action buttons to your application. The component creates the buttons for the actions in the user interface and handles the events that are created when a button is clicked.

These buttons trigger functions that act on the objects that are returned by a `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.ItemProvider` interface, such as the `BPCListHandler` class, or the `BPCDetailsHandler` class. The `CommandBar` component uses the item provider that is defined by the value of the **model** attribute in the `bpe:commandbar` tag.

When a button in the command-bar section of the application's user interface is clicked, the associated event is handled by the `CommandBar` component in the following way.

1. The `CommandBar` component identifies the implementation of the `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.Command` interface that is specified for the button that generated the event.
2. If the model associated with the `CommandBar` component implements the `com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.ErrorHandler` interface, the `clearErrorMap` method is invoked to remove error messages from previous events.
3. The `getSelectedItems` method of the `ItemProvider` interface is called. The list of items that is returned is passed to the `execute` method of the command, and the command is invoked.

- The CommandBar component determines the JavaServer Faces (JSF) navigation target. If an **action** attribute is not specified in the `bpe:commandbar` tag, the return value of the execute method specifies the navigation target. If the **action** attribute is set to a JSF method binding, the string returned by the method is interpreted as the navigation target. The **action** attribute can also specify an explicit navigation target.

CommandBar component: Tag definitions

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer CommandBar component displays a bar with buttons. These buttons operate on the object in a details view or the selected objects in a list.

The CommandBar component consists of the JSF component tags: `bpe:commandbar` and `bpe:command`. The `bpe:command` tag is a subelement of the `bpe:commandbar` tag.

Component class

`com.ibm.bpe.jsf.component.CommandBarComponent`

Example syntax

```
<bpe:commandbar model="#{TaskInstanceList}">
  <bpe:command
    commandID="Work on"
    label="Work on..."
    commandClass="com.ibm.bpc.explorer.command.WorkOnTaskCommand"
    context="#{TaskInstanceDetailsBean}" />
  <bpe:command
    commandID="Cancel"
    label="Cancel"
    commandClass="com.ibm.task.clientmodel.command.CancelClaimTaskCommand"
    context="#{TaskInstanceList}" />
</bpe:commandbar>
```

Tag attributes

Table 69. `bpe:commandbar` attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
<code>buttonStyleClass</code>	no	The cascading style sheet (CSS) style class that is used for rendering the buttons in the command bar.
<code>id</code>	no	The JavaServer Faces ID of the component.
<code>model</code>	yes	A value binding expression to a managed bean that implements the <code>ItemProvider</code> interface. This managed bean is usually the <code>com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCListHandler</code> class or the <code>com.ibm.bpe.jsf.handler.BPCDetailsHandler</code> class that is used by the List component or Details component in the same JavaServer Pages (JSP) file as the CommandBar component.
<code>styleClass</code>	no	The CSS style class that is used for rendering the command bar.

Table 70. *bpe:command* attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
action	no	A JavaServer Faces action method or the Faces navigation target that is to be triggered by the command button. The navigation target that is returned by the action overwrites all other navigation rules. The action is called when either an exception is not thrown or an <code>ErrorsInCommandException</code> exception is thrown by the command.
commandClass	no	The name of the command class. An instance of the class is created by the <code>CommandBar</code> component and run if the command button is selected.
commandID	yes	The ID of the command.
context	no	An object that provides context for commands that are specified using the <code>commandClass</code> attribute. The context object is retrieved when the command bar is first accessed.
immediate	no	Specifies when the command is triggered. If the value of this attribute is true, the command is triggered before the input of the page is processed. The default is false.
label	yes	The label of the button that is rendered in the command bar.
rendered	no	Determines whether a button is rendered. The value of the attribute can be either a Boolean value or a value expression.
styleClass	no	The CSS style class that is used for rendering the button. This style overrides the button style defined for the command bar.

Adding the Message component to a JSF application

Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer Message component to render data objects and primitive types in a JavaServer Faces (JSF) application.

About this task

If the message type is a primitive type, a label and an input field are rendered. If the message type is a data object, the component traverses the object and renders the elements within the object.

Procedure

1. Add the Message component to the JavaServer Pages (JSP) file.

Add the `bpe:form` tag to the `<h:form>` tag. The `bpe:form` tag must include a `model` attribute.

The following example shows how to add a Message component.

```
<h:form>
```

```
    <h:outputText value="Input Message" />
```

```

<bpe:form model="#{MyHandler.inputMessage}" readOnly="true" />

<h:outputText value="Output Message" />
<bpe:form model="#{MyHandler.outputMessage}" />

</h:form>

```

The **model** attribute of the Message component refers to a `com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.MessageWrapper` object. This wrapper object wraps either a Service Data Object (SDO) object or a Java primitive type, for example, `int` or `boolean`. In the example, the message is provided by a property of the `MyHandler` managed bean.

2. Configure the managed bean referred to in the `bpe:form` tag.

The following example shows how to add the `MyHandler` managed bean to the configuration file.

```

<managed-bean>
<managed-bean-name>MyHandler</managed-bean-name>
<managed-bean-class>com.ibm.bpc.sample.jsf.MyHandler</managed-bean-class>
<managed-bean-scope>session</managed-bean-scope>

    <managed-property>
        <property-name>type</property-name>
        <value>com.ibm.task.clientmodel.bean.TaskInstanceBean</value>
    </managed-property>

</managed-bean>

```

3. Add the custom code to the JSF application.

The following example shows how to implement input and output messages.

```

public class MyHandler implements ItemListener {

    private TaskInstanceBean taskBean;
    private MessageWrapper inputMessage, outputMessage

    /* Listener method, e.g. when a task instance was selected in a list handler.
     * Ensure that the handler is registered in the faces-config.xml or manually.
     */
    public void itemChanged(Object item) {
        if( item instanceof TaskInstanceBean ) {
            taskBean = (TaskInstanceBean) item ;
        }
    }

    /* Get the input message wrapper
     */
    public MessageWrapper getInputMessage() {
        try{
            inputMessage = taskBean.getInputMessageWrapper() ;
        }
        catch( Exception e ) {
            ; //...ignore errors for simplicity
        }
        return inputMessage;
    }

    /* Get the output message wrapper
     */
    public MessageWrapper getOutputMessage() {
        // Retrieve the message from the bean. If there is no message, create
        // one if the task has been claimed by the user. Ensure that only
        // potential owners or owners can manipulate the output message.
        try{
            outputMessage = taskBean.getOutputMessageWrapper();
            if( outputMessage == null
                && taskBean.getState() == TaskInstanceBean.STATE_CLAIMED ) {

```

```

        HumanTaskManagerService htm = getHumanTaskManagerService();
        outputMessage = new MessageWrapperImpl();
        outputMessage.setMessage(
            htm.createOutputMessage( taskBean.getID() ).getObject()
        );
    }
}
catch( Exception e ) {
    ; //...ignore errors for simplicity
}
return outputMessage
}
}

```

The MyHandler managed bean implements the `com.ibm.jsf.handler.ItemListener` interface so that it can register itself as an item listener to list handlers. When the user clicks an item in the list, the MyHandler bean is notified in its `itemChanged(Object item)` method about the selected item. The handler checks the item type and then stores a reference to the associated `TaskInstanceBean` object. To use this interface, add an entry to the `itemListener` list in the appropriate list handler in the `faces-config.xml` file.

The MyHandler bean provides the `getInputMessage` and `getOutputMessage` methods. Both of these methods return a `MessageWrapper` object. The methods delegate the calls to the referenced task instance bean. If the task instance bean returns null, for example, because a message is not set, the handler creates and stores a new, empty message. The Message component displays the messages provided by the MyHandler bean.

Results

Your JSF application now contains a JavaServer page that can render data objects and primitive types.

Message component: Tag definitions

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer Message component renders `commonj.sdo.DataObject` objects and primitive types, such as integers and strings, in a JavaServer Faces (JSF) application.

The Message component consists of the JSF component tag: `bpe:form`.

Component class

`com.ibm.bpe.jsf.component.MessageComponent`

Example syntax

```

<bpe:form model="#{TaskInstanceDetailsBean.inputMessageWrapper}"
    simplification="true" readOnly="true"
    styleClass4table="messageData"
    styleClass4output="messageDataOutput">
</bpe:form>

```

Tag attributes

Table 71. `bpe:form` attributes

Attribute	Required	Description
id	no	The JavaServer Faces ID of the component.

Table 71. *bpe:form* attributes (continued)

Attribute	Required	Description
model	yes	A value binding expression that refers to either a <code>commonj.sdo.DataObject</code> object or a <code>com.ibm.bpc.clientcore.MessageWrapper</code> object.
readOnly	no	If this attribute is set to true, a read-only form is rendered. By default, this attribute is set to false.
simplification	no	If this attribute is set to true, properties that contain simple types and have a cardinality of zero or one are shown. By default, this attribute is set to true.
style4validinput	no	The cascading style sheet (CSS) style for rendering input that is valid.
style4invalidinput	no	The CSS style for rendering input that is not valid.
styleClass4invalidInput	no	The CSS style class name for rendering input that is not valid.
styleClass4output	no	The CSS style class name for rendering the output elements.
styleClass4table	no	The class name of the CSS table style for rendering the tables rendered by the message component.
styleClass4validInput	no	The CSS style class name for rendering input that is valid.

Chapter 15. Developing JSP pages for task and process messages

The Business Process Choreographer Explorer interface provides default input and output forms for displaying and entering business data. You can use JSP pages to provide customized input and output forms.

About this task

To include user-defined JavaServer Pages (JSP) pages in the Web client, you must specify them when you model a human task in WebSphere Integration Developer. For example, you can provide JSP pages for a specific task and its input and output messages, and for a specific user role or all user roles. At runtime, the user-defined JSP pages are included in the user interface to display output data and collect input data.

The customized forms are not self-contained Web pages; they are HTML fragments that Business Process Choreographer Explorer imbeds in an HTML form, for example, fragments for all of the labels and input fields of a message.

When a button is clicked on the page that contains the customized forms, the input is submitted and validated in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. The validation is based on the type of the properties provided and the locale used in the browser. If the input cannot be validated, the same page is shown again and information about the validation errors is provided in the messageValidationErrors request attribute. The information is provided as a map that maps the XML Path Expression (XPath) of the properties that are not valid to the validation exceptions that occurred.

To add customized forms to Business Process Choreographer Explorer, complete the following steps using WebSphere Integration Developer.

Procedure

1. Create the customized forms.

The user-defined JSP pages for the input and output forms used in the Web interface need access to the message data. Use Java snippets in a JSP or the JSP execution language to access the message data. Data in the forms is available through the request context.

2. Assign the JSP pages to a task.

Open the human task in the human task editor. In the client settings, specify the location of the user-defined JSP pages and the role to which the customized form applies, for example, administrator. The client settings for Business Process Choreographer Explorer are stored in the task template. At runtime these settings are retrieved with the task template.

3. Package the user-defined JSP pages in a Web archive (WAR file).

You can either include the WAR file in the enterprise archive with the module that contains the tasks or deploy the WAR file separately. If the JSPs are deployed separately, make the JSPs available on the server where the Business Process Choreographer Explorer or the custom client is deployed.

If you are using custom JSPs for the process and task messages, you must map the Web modules that are used to deploy the JSPs to the same servers that the custom JSF client is mapped to.

Results

The customized forms are rendered in Business Process Choreographer Explorer at runtime.

User-defined JSP fragments

The user-defined JavaServer Pages (JSP) fragments are imbedded in an HTML form tag. At runtime, Business Process Choreographer Explorer includes these fragments in the rendered page.

The user-defined JSP fragment for the input message is imbedded before the JSP fragment for the output message.

```
<html....>
...
<form...>
  Input JSP (display task input message)

  Output JSP (display task output message)

</form>
...
</html>
```

Because the user-defined JSP fragments are embedded in an HTML form tag, you can add input elements. The name of the input element must match the XML Path Language (XPath) expression of the data element. It is important to prefix the name of the input element with the provided prefix value:

```
<input id="address"
      type="text"
      name="{prefix}/selectPromotionalGiftResponse/address"
      value="{messageMap['/selectPromotionalGiftResponse/address']}"
      size="60"
      align="left" />
```

The prefix value is provided as a request attribute. The attribute ensures that the input name is unique in the enclosing form. The prefix is generated by Business Process Choreographer Explorer and it should not be changed:

```
String prefix = (String)request.getAttribute("prefix");
```

The prefix element is set only if the message can be edited in the given context. Output data can be displayed in different ways depending on the state of the human task. For example, if the task is in the claimed state, the output data can be modified. However, if the task is in the finished state, the data can be displayed only. In your JSP fragment, you can test whether the prefix element exists and render the message accordingly. The following JSTL statement shows how you might test whether the prefix element is set.

```
...
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core" prefix="c"%>
...
<c:choose>
  <c:when test="{not empty prefix}">
    <!--Read/write mode-->
  </c:when>
```

```
<c:otherwise>  
  <!--Read-only mode-->  
</c:otherwise>  
</c:choose>
```

Chapter 16. Creating plug-ins to customize human task functionality

Business Process Choreographer provides an event handling infrastructure for events that occur during the processing of human tasks. Plug-in points are also provided so that you can adapt the functionality to your needs. You can use the service provider interfaces (SPIs) to create customized plug-ins for handling events and the post processing of people query results.

About this task

You can create plug-ins for human task API events and escalation notification events. You can also create a plug-in that processes the results that are returned from people resolution. For example, at peak periods you might want to add users to the result list to help balance the workload.

Before you can use the plug-ins, you must install and register them. You can register the plug-in to post process people query results with the TaskContainer application. The plug-in is then available for all tasks.

Creating API event handlers

An API event occurs when an API method manipulates a human task. Use the API event handler plug-in service provider interface (SPI) to create plug-ins to handle the task events sent by the API or the internal events that have equivalent API events.

About this task

Complete the following steps to create an API event handler.

Procedure

1. Write a class that implements the `APIEventHandlerPlugin3` interface or extends the `APIEventHandler` implementation class. This class can invoke the methods of other classes.
 - If you use the `APIEventHandlerPlugin3` interface, you must implement all of the methods of the `APIEventHandlerPlugin3` interface and the `APIEventHandlerPlugin` interface.
 - If you extend the `APIEventHandler` implementation class, overwrite the methods that you need.

This class runs in the context of a Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) Enterprise application. Ensure that this class and its helper classes follow the EJB specification.

Note: If you want to call the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface from this class, do not call a method that updates the task that produced the event. This action might result in inconsistent task data in the database.

2. Assemble the plug-in class and its helper classes into a JAR file. You can make the JAR file available in one of the following ways:
 - As a utility JAR file in the application EAR file.

- As a shared library that is installed with the application EAR file.
 - As a shared library that is installed with the TaskContainer application. In this case, the plug-in is available for all tasks.
3. Create a service provider configuration file for the plug-in in the META-INF/services/ directory of your JAR file.
The configuration file provides the mechanism for identifying and loading the plug-in. This file conforms to the Java 2 service provider interface specification.
 - a. Create a file with the name `com.ibm.task.spi.plug-in_nameAPIEventHandlerPlugin`, where *plug-in_name* is the name of the plug-in.
For example, if your plug-in is called Customer and it implements the `com.ibm.task.spi.APIEventHandlerPlugin3` interface, the name of the configuration file is `com.ibm.task.spi.CustomerAPIEventHandlerPlugin`.
 - b. In the first line of the file that is neither a comment line (a line that starts with a number sign (#)) nor a blank line, specify the fully qualified name of the plug-in class that you created in step 1.
For example, if your plug-in class is called `MyAPIEventHandler` and it is in the `com.customer.plugins` package, then the first line of the configuration file must contain the following entry:
`com.customer.plugins.MyAPIEventHandler`.

Results

You have an installable JAR file that contains a plug-in that handles API events and a service provider configuration file that can be used to load the plug-in.

Notes: You only have one `eventName` property available to register both API event handlers and notification event handlers. If you want to use both an API event handler and a notification event handler, the plug-in implementations must have the same name, for example, Customer as the event handler name for the SPI implementation.

You can implement both plug-ins using a single class, or two separate classes. In both cases, you need to create two files in the META-INF/services/ directory of your JAR file, for example, `com.ibm.task.spi.CustomerNotificationEventHandlerPlugin` and `com.ibm.task.spi.CustomerAPIEventHandlerPlugin`.

Package the plug-in implementation and the helper classes in a single JAR file.

To make a change to an implementation effective, replace the JAR file in the shared library, deploy the associated EAR file again, and restart the server.

What to do next

You now need to install and register the plug-in so that it is available to the human task container at runtime. You can register API event handlers with a task instance, a task template, or an application component.

Related concepts

Scenarios for invoking tasks

The various ways in which tasks can be invoked is described here.

API event handlers

API events occur when a human task is modified or it changes state. To handle these API events, the event handler is invoked directly before the task is modified (pre-event method) and just before the API call returns (post-event method).

If the pre-event method throws an `ApplicationVetoException` exception, the API action is not performed, the exception is returned to the API caller, and the transaction associated with the event is rolled back. If the pre-event method was triggered by an internal event and an `ApplicationVetoException` exception is thrown, the internal event, such as an automatic claim, is not performed but an exception is not returned to the client application. In this case, an information message is written to the `SystemOut.log` file. If the API method throws an exception during processing, the exception is caught and passed to the post-event method. The exception is passed again to the caller after the post-event method returns.

The following rules apply to pre-event methods:

- Pre-event methods receive the parameters of the associated API method or internal event.
- Pre-event methods can throw an `ApplicationVetoException` exception to prevent processing from continuing.

The following rules apply to post-event methods:

- Post-event methods receive the parameters that were supplied to the API call, and the return value. If an exception is thrown by the API method implementation, the post-event method also receives the exception.
- Post-event methods cannot modify return values.
- Post-event methods cannot throw exceptions; runtime exceptions are logged but they are ignored.

To implement API event handlers, you can implement either the `APIEventHandlerPlugin3` interface, which extends the `APIEventHandlerPlugin` interface, or extend the default `com.ibm.task.spi.APIEventHandler` SPI implementation class. If your event handler inherits from the default implementation class, it always implements the most recent version of the SPI. If you upgrade to a newer version of Business Process Choreographer, fewer changes are necessary if you want to exploit new SPI methods.

If you have both a notification event handler and an API event handler, both of these handlers must have the same name because you can register only one event handler name.

Creating notification event handlers

Notification events are produced when human tasks are escalated. Business Process Choreographer provides functionality for handling escalations, such as creating escalation work items or sending e-mails. You can create notification event handlers to customize the way in which escalations are handled.

About this task

To implement notification event handlers, you can implement the `NotificationEventHandlerPlugin` interface, or you can extend the default `com.ibm.task.spi.NotificationEventHandler` service provider interface (SPI) implementation class.

Complete the following steps to create a notification event handler.

Procedure

1. Write a class that implements the `NotificationEventHandlerPlugin` interface or extends the `NotificationEventHandler` implementation class. This class can invoke the methods of other classes.

If you use the `NotificationEventHandlerPlugin` interface, you must implement all of the interface methods. If you extend the SPI implementation class, overwrite the methods that you need.

This class runs in the context of a Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) Enterprise application. Ensure that this class and its helper classes follow the EJB specification.

The plug-in is invoked with the authority of the `EscalationUser` role. This role is defined when the human task container is configured.

Note: If you want to call the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface from this class, do not call a method that updates the task that produced the event. This action might result in inconsistent task data in the database.

2. Assemble the plug-in class and its helper classes into a JAR file.

You can make the JAR file available in one of the following ways:

- As a utility JAR file in the application EAR file.
- As a shared library that is installed with the application EAR file.
- As a shared library that is installed with the `TaskContainer` application. In this case, the plug-in is available for all tasks.

3. Assemble the plug-in class and its helper classes into a JAR file.

If the helper classes are used by several J2EE applications, you can package these classes in a separate JAR file that you register as a shared library.

4. Create a service provider configuration file for the plug-in in the `META-INF/services/` directory of your JAR file.

The configuration file provides the mechanism for identifying and loading the plug-in. This file conforms to the Java 2 service provider interface specification.

- a. Create a file with the name `com.ibm.task.spi.plug-in_nameNotificationEventHandlerPlugin`, where *plug-in_name* is the name of the plug-in.

For example, if your plug-in is called `HelpDeskRequest` (event handler name) and it implements the `com.ibm.task.spi.NotificationEventHandlerPlugin` interface, the name of the configuration file is `com.ibm.task.spi.HelpDeskRequestNotificationEventHandlerPlugin`.

- b. In the first line of the file that is neither a comment line (a line that starts with a number sign (#)) nor a blank line, specify the fully qualified name of the plug-in class that you created in step 1.

For example, if your plug-in class is called `MyEventHandler` and it is in the `com.customer.plugins` package, then the first line of the configuration file must contain the following entry: `com.customer.plugins.MyEventHandler`.

Results

You have an installable JAR file that contains a plug-in that handles notification events and a service provider configuration file that can be used to load the plug-in. You can register API event handlers with a task instance, a task template, or an application component.

Notes: You only have one `eventHandlerName` property available to register both API event handlers and notification event handlers. If you want to use both an API event handler and a notification event handler, the plug-in implementations must have the same name, for example, `Customer` as the event handler name for the SPI implementation.

You can implement both plug-ins using a single class, or two separate classes. In both cases, you need to create two files in the `META-INF/services/` directory of your JAR file, for example, `com.ibm.task.spi.CustomerNotificationEventHandlerPlugin` and `com.ibm.task.spi.CustomerAPIEventHandlerPlugin`.

Package the plug-in implementation and the helper classes in a single JAR file.

To make a change to an implementation effective, replace the JAR file in the shared library, deploy the associated EAR file again, and restart the server.

What to do next

You now need to install and register the plug-in so that it is available to the human task container at runtime. You can register notification event handlers with a task instance, a task template, or an application component.

Related concepts

Escalations

An escalation is an alert that is raised automatically when a human task is not actioned in the specified amount of time. For example, if tasks are not claimed or are not completed within a defined time limit. You can specify one, or more, escalations for a task. These escalations can be started either in parallel, or as a chain of escalations.

Installing API event handler and notification event handler plug-ins

To use API event handler or notification event handler plug-ins, you must install the plug-in so that it can be accessed by the task container.

About this task

The way in which you install the plug-in depends on whether the plug-in is to be used by only one Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) application, or several applications.

Complete one of the following steps to install a plug-in.

- Install a plug-in for use by a single J2EE application.
Add your plug-in JAR file to the application EAR file. In the deployment descriptor editor in WebSphere Integration Developer, install the JAR file for your plug-in as a project utility JAR file for the J2EE application of the main enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) module.
- Install a plug-in for use by several J2EE applications.

Put the JAR file in a WebSphere Application Server shared library and associate the library with the applications that need access to the plug-in. To make the JAR file available in a network deployment environment, manually distribute the JAR file on each node that hosts a server or cluster member on which any of your applications is deployed. You can use the deployment target scope of your applications, that is the server or cluster on which the applications are deployed, or the cell scope. Be aware that the plug-in classes are then visible throughout the selected deployment scope.

What to do next

You can now register the plug-in.

Registering API event handler and notification event handler plug-ins with task templates, task models, and tasks

You can register plug-ins for API event handlers and notification event handlers with tasks, task templates, and task models at various times: when you create an ad-hoc task, update an existing task, create an ad-hoc task model, or define a task template.

About this task

You can register plug-ins for API event handlers and notification event handlers with tasks on the following levels:

Task template

All of the tasks that are created using the template use the same handlers

Ad-hoc task model

The tasks that are created using the model use the same handlers

Ad-hoc task

The task that is created uses the specified handlers

Existing task

The task uses the specified handlers

You can register a plug-in in one of the following ways.

- For task templates modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer, specify the plug-in in the task model.
- For ad-hoc tasks or ad-hoc task models, specify the plug-in when you create the task or task model.

Use the `setEventHandlerName` method of the `TTask` class to register the name of the event handler.

- Change the event handler for a task instance at runtime.

Use the `update(Task task)` method to use a different event handler for a task instance at runtime. The caller must have task administrator authority to update this property.

Creating, installing, and running plug-ins to post-process people query results

People resolution returns a list of the users that are assigned to a specific role, for example, potential owner of a task. You can create a plug-in to change the results of people queries returned by people resolution. For example, to improve workload balancing, you might have a plug-in that removes users from the query result who already have a high workload.

About this task

You can have only one post-processing plug-in; this means that the plug-in must handle the people query results from all tasks. Your plug-in can add or remove users, or change user or group information. It can also change the result type, for example, from a list of users to a group, or to everybody.

Because the plug-in runs after people resolution completes, any rules that you have to preserve confidentiality or security have already been applied. The plug-in receives information about users that have been removed during people resolution (in the HTM_REMOVED_USERS map key). You must ensure that your plug-in uses this context information to preserve any confidentiality or security rules you might have.

To implement post-processing of people query results, you use the `StaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin` interface. The interface has methods for modifying the query results for tasks, escalations, task templates, and application components.

Complete the following steps to create a plug-in to post-process people query results.

Procedure

1. Write a class that implements the `StaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin` interface.

This class runs in the context of a Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) Enterprise application. This class can invoke methods of other classes. Ensure that this class and its helper classes follow the EJB specification.

Note: If you want to call the `HumanTaskManagerService` interface from this class, do not call a method that updates the task that produced the event. This action might result in inconsistent task data in the database.

You must implement all of the methods in the interface. These methods include information relating to the people assignment criteria for the specific task template, task or escalation role.

- The people assignment criteria definition is specified as an entry in the **context** parameter of type `Map`. To access this information proceed as follows:

```
Map pacAsMap = (Map) context.get("HTM_VERB");

// to retrieve the name of the PAC
String pacName = (String) pacAsMap.get("HTM_VERB_NAME");

// to retrieve the PAC parameter names
Set paramNames = pacAsMap.keySet();

// to retrieve the value of a specific parameter
String paramValue = (String) pacAsMap.get(paramName);
```

- The replacement variables specified as people assignment criteria parameter values are entries of the **context** parameter of type Map. To access this information proceed as follows:

```
Object replVarObj = pacAsMap.get(replVarName);
if (replVarObj instanceof String)
    String replVarValue = (String) replVarObj;
if (replVarObj instanceof String[])
    String[] replVarValues = (String[]) replVarObj;
```

- The StaffQueryResult object that is created by accessing a people directory during people resolution, for example, by accessing the virtual member manager people directory.

The StaffQueryResult object contains the information about the user entries that are retrieved during people resolution. For more information, see the Javadoc reference information for the StaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin interface.

- The list of users that have been explicitly excluded by people resolution is contained as an entry of the **context** parameter of type Map. To access this information proceed as follows:

```
String[] removedUserIDs = (String[]) context.get("HTM_REMOVED_USERS");
```

The following example shows how you might change the editor role of a task called SpecialTask.

```
public StaffQueryResult processStaffQueryResult
    (StaffQueryResult originalStaffQueryResult,
     Task task,
     int role,
     Map context)
{
    StaffQueryResult newStaffQueryResult = originalStaffQueryResult;
    StaffQueryResultFactory staffResultFactory =
        StaffQueryResultFactory.newInstance();
    if (role == com.ibm.task.api.WorkItem.REASON_EDITOR &&
        task.getName() != null &&
        task.getName().equals("SpecialTask"))
    {
        UserData user = staffResultFactory.newUserData
            ("SuperEditor",
             new Locale("en-US"),
             "SuperEditor@company.com");
        ArrayList userList = new ArrayList();
        userList.add(user);

        newStaffQueryResult = staffResultFactory.newStaffQueryResult(userList);
    }
    return(newStaffQueryResult);
}
```

2. Assemble the plug-in class and its helper classes into a JAR file.

You can make the JAR available as a shared library, and associate it with the task container. In this way, your plug-in is available for all tasks.

3. Create a service provider configuration file for the plug-in in the META-INF/services/ directory of your JAR file.

The configuration file provides the mechanism for identifying and loading the plug-in. This file conforms to the Java 2 service provider interface specification.

- a. Create a file with the name `com.ibm.task.spi.plugin_nameStaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin`, where `plugin_name` is the name of the plug-in.

For example, if your plug-in is called MyHandler and it implements the `com.ibm.task.spi.StaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin` interface, the name of

the configuration file is

```
com.ibm.task.spi.MyHandlerStaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin.
```

- b. In the first line of the file that is neither a comment line (a line that starts with a number sign (#)) nor a blank line, specify the fully qualified name of the plug-in class that you created in step 1.

For example, if your plug-in class is called `StaffPostProcessor` and it is in the `com.customer.plugins` package, then the first line of the configuration file must contain the following entry:

```
com.customer.plugins.StaffPostProcessor. You have an installable JAR file that contains a plug-in that post processes people query results and a service provider configuration file that can be used to load the plug-in.
```

4. Install the plug-in.

You can have only one post-processing plug-in for people query results. You must install the plug-in as a shared library.

- a. Define a WebSphere Application Server shared library for the plug-in. Define the shared library on the scope of the server or cluster where Business Process Choreographer is configured. Then associate this shared library with the TaskContainer application. This step needs to be done only once.
- b. Make the plug-in JAR file available to each affected WebSphere Process Server installation that hosts a server or a cluster member.

5. Register the plug-in.

- a. In the administrative console, go to the Custom Properties page of the Human Task Manager

Click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* in a stand-alone environment, or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* if Business Process Choreographer is configured in a cluster. Under **Business Integration**, select **Human Task Manager**. Under **Additional Properties**, select **Custom Properties**.

- b. Add a custom property with the name **Staff.PostProcessorPlugin**, and a value of the name that you gave to your plug-in, `MyHandler` in this example.

The plug-in is now available for post processing people query results. If you change the JAR file, replace the file in the shared library, and restart the server.

6. Run the plug-in. The post processing plug-in is invoked after both the people assignment and people substitution have run. The plug-in is invoked with the information that is specified by the `StaffQueryResultPostProcessorPlugin` interface.

Related concepts

Shared people assignments

For a specific task role, the same people assignment criteria are used in all instances of a task template. This is because all of the task instances are instantiated from the same task template. To avoid rerunning people queries, the result of a query is shared across task instances of a task template.

Chapter 17. Installing business process and human task applications

You can distribute Service Component Architecture (SCA) modules that contain business processes or human tasks, or both, to deployment targets. A deployment target can be a server or a cluster.

Before you begin

Verify that Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager are installed and configured for each application server or cluster on which you want to install your application.

About this task

You can install business process and task applications from the administrative console, from the command line, or by running an administrative script.

Results

After a business process or human task application is installed, all of the business process templates and human task templates are put into the start state. You can create process instances and task instances from these templates.

What to do next

Before you can create process instances or task instances, you must start the application.

How business process and human task applications are installed in a network deployment environment

When process templates or human task templates are installed in a network deployment environment, the following actions are performed automatically by the application installation.

The application is installed in stages. Each stage must complete successfully before the following stage can begin.

1. The application installation starts on the deployment manager.

During this stage, the business process templates and human task templates are configured in the WebSphere configuration repository. The application is also validated. If errors occur, they are reported in the System.out file, in the System.err file, or as FFDC entries on the deployment manager.

2. The application installation continues on the node agent.

During this stage, the installation of the application on one application server instance is triggered. This application server instance is either part of, or is, the deployment target. If the deployment target is a cluster with multiple cluster members, the server instance is chosen arbitrarily from the cluster members of this cluster. If errors occur during this stage, they are reported in the SystemOut.log file, in the SystemErr.log file, or as FFDC entries on the node agent.

3. The application runs on the server instance.

During this stage, the process templates and human templates are deployed to the Business Process Choreographer database on the deployment target. If errors occur, they are reported in the System.out file, in the SystemErr.log file, or as FFDC entries on this server instance.

Deployment of business processes and human tasks

When WebSphere Integration Developer or service deployment generates the deployment code for your process or task, each process component or task component is mapped to one session enterprise bean. All deployment code is packaged in the enterprise application (EAR) file. Additionally, for each process, a Java class which represents Java code in this process is generated and embedded in the EAR file during installation of the enterprise application. Each new version of a model that is to be deployed must be packaged in a new enterprise application.

When you install an enterprise application that contains business processes or human tasks, then these are stored as business process templates or human task templates, as appropriate, in the Business Process Choreographer database. Newly installed templates are, by default, in the started state. However, the newly installed enterprise application is in the stopped state. Each installed enterprise application can be started and stopped individually.

You can deploy many different versions of a process template or task template, each in a different enterprise application. When you install a new enterprise application, the version of the template that is installed is determined as follows:

- If the name of the template and the target namespace do not already exist, a new template is installed
- If the template name and target namespace are the same as those of an existing template, but the valid-from date is different, a new version of an existing template is installed

Note: The template name is derived from the name of the component and not from the business process or human task.

If you do not specify a valid-from date, the date is determined as follows:

- If you use WebSphere Integration Developer, the valid-from date is the date on which the human task or the business process was modeled.
- If you use service deployment, the valid-from date is the date on which the serviceDeploy command was run. Only collaboration tasks get the date on which the application was installed as the valid-from date.

Installing business process and human task applications interactively

You can install an application interactively at runtime using the wsadmin tool and the installInteractive script. You can use this script to change settings that cannot be changed if you use the administrative console to install the application.

About this task

Perform the following steps to install business process applications interactively.

Procedure

1. Start the wsadmin tool.

In the *profile_root/bin* directory, enter `wsadmin`.

2. Install the application.

At the `wsadmin` command-line prompt, enter the following command:

```
$AdminApp installInteractive application.ear
```

where *application.ear* is the qualified name of the enterprise archive file that contains your process application. You are prompted through a series of tasks where you can change values for the application.

3. Save the configuration changes.

At the `wsadmin` command-line prompt, enter the following command:

```
$AdminConfig save
```

You must save your changes to transfer the updates to the master configuration repository. If a scripting process ends and you have not saved your changes, the changes are discarded.

Configuring process application data source and set reference settings

You might need to configure process applications that run SQL statements for the specific database infrastructure. These SQL statements can come from information service activities or they can be statements that you run during process installation or instance startup.

About this task

When you install the application, you can specify the following types of data sources:

- Data sources to run SQL statements during process installation
- Data sources to run SQL statements during the startup of a process instance
- Data sources to run SQL snippet activities

The data source required to run an SQL snippet activity is defined in a BPEL variable of type `tDataSource`. The database schema and table names that are required by an SQL snippet activity are defined in BPEL variables of type `tSetReference`. You can configure the initial values of both of these variables.

You can use the `wsadmin` tool to specify the data sources.

Procedure

1. Install the process application interactively using the `wsadmin` tool.
2. Step through the tasks until you come to the tasks for updating data sources and set references.

Configure these settings for your environment. The following example shows the settings that you can change for each of these tasks.

3. Save your changes.

Example: Updating data sources and set references, using the `wsadmin` tool

In the **Updating data sources** task, you can change data source values for initial variable values and statements that are used during installation of the process or when the process starts. In the **Updating set references** task, you can configure the settings related to the database schema and the table names.

```

Task [24]: Updating data sources

//Change data source values for initial variable values at process start

Process name: Test
// Name of the process template
Process start or installation time: Process start
// Indicates whether the specified value is evaluated
//at process startup or process installation
Statement or variable: Variable
// Indicates that a data source variable is to be changed
Data source name: MyDataSource
// Name of the variable
JNDI name:[jdbc/sample]:jdbc/newName
// Sets the JNDI name to jdbc/newName
Task [25]: Updating set references

// Change set reference values that are used as initial values for BPEL variables

Process name: Test
// Name of the process template
Variable: SetRef
// The BPEL variable name
JNDI name:[jdbc/sample]:jdbc/newName
// Sets the JNDI name of the data source of the set reference to jdbc/newName
Schema name: [IISAMPLE]
// The name of the database schema
Schema prefix: []:
// The schema name prefix.
// This setting applies only if the schema name is generated.
Table name: [SETREFTAB]: NEWTABLE
// Sets the name of the database table to NEWTABLE
Table prefix: []:
// The table name prefix.
// This setting applies only if the prefix name is generated.

```

Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using the administrative console

You can use the administrative console to uninstall applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Before you begin

To uninstall an application that contains business processes or human tasks, the following conditions must apply:

- If the application is installed on a stand-alone server, the server must be running and have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- If the application is installed on a cluster, the deployment manager and at least one cluster member must be running. The cluster member must have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- If the application is installed on a managed server, the deployment manager and the managed server must be running. The server must have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- There are no instances of business process or human task templates present in any state.

About this task

To uninstall an enterprise application that contains business processes or human tasks, perform the following actions:

Procedure

1. Click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** in the administrative console navigation pane.
2. Select the application that you want to uninstall and click **Stop**.
This step fails if any process instances or task instances still exist in the application. You can either use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer to delete the instances, or use the **-force** option described in “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command.”
3. Select the application that you want to uninstall, and click **Uninstall**.
4. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Results

The application is uninstalled.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command

Using the `bpcTemplates.jacl` script provides an alternative to the administrative console for uninstalling applications that contain business processes or human tasks.

Before you begin

To uninstall an application that contains business processes or human tasks, the following conditions must apply:

- If the application is installed on a stand-alone server, the server must be running and have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- If the application is installed on a cluster, the deployment manager and at least one cluster member must be running. The cluster member must have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- If the application is installed on a managed server, the deployment manager and the managed server must be running. The server must have access to the Business Process Choreographer database.
- There are no instances of business process or human task templates present in any state, unless you intend to use the **-force** option.
- If you want to use the **-force** option, and administrative security is enabled, verify that your user ID has administrator or operator authority.
- Ensure that the server process to which the administrative client connects is running. To ensure that the administrative client automatically connects to the server process, do not use the `-conntype NONE` option as a command option.

About this task

The following steps describe how to use the `bpcTemplates.jacl` script to uninstall applications that contain business process templates or human task templates.

Procedure

1. If there are still process instances or task instances associated with the templates in the application that you want to uninstall perform one or both of the following:

- Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer to delete the instances.
- Plan to use the **-force** option to delete any instances that are associated with the templates, stop the templates, and uninstall them in one step. Use this option with care because it also deletes all of the data associated with the running instances.

2. Change to the Business Process Choreographer administration scripts directory.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root\ProcessChoreographer\admin
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
cd install_root/ProcessChoreographer/admin
```

3. Stop the templates and uninstall the corresponding application.

On Windows platforms, enter:

```
install_root\bin\wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        [-user user_name]  
                        [-password user_password]  
                        -uninstall application_name  
                        [-force]
```

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, enter:

```
install_root/bin/wsadmin -f bpcTemplates.jacl  
                        [-user user_name]  
                        [-password user_password]  
                        -uninstall application_name  
                        [-force]
```

Where:

user_name

If administrative security is enabled, provide the user ID for authentication.

user_password

If administrative security is enabled, provide the user password for authentication.

application_name

The name of the application to be uninstalled.

-force

Causes any running instances to be stopped and deleted before the application is uninstalled. Use this option with care because it also deletes all of the data associated with the running instances.

Results

The application is uninstalled.

Related concepts

Cleanup procedures for Business Process Choreographer

An overview of the runtime objects that can be deleted from the database after they are no longer needed, and the tools available.

Part 5. Monitoring business processes and tasks

Chapter 18. Monitoring business processes and human tasks

Before you begin

Monitoring of processes and human tasks is controlled through the monitoring pane in the WebSphere Integration Developer. This approach has to be followed regardless of whether audit trailing is to be enabled or whether events are to be emitted.

About this task

WebSphere Process Server includes the Common Event Infrastructure that provides standard formats and mechanisms for managing event data.

Business Process Choreographer emits events whenever situations occur that require monitoring and the Common Event Infrastructure service is available. These events adhere to the Common Base Event specification. You can use generic tools to process these events.

You can also use Java snippets to create and send user data events. For more information, see the Common Event Infrastructure documentation on sending events.

Chapter 19. Business process events overview

Events that are emitted on behalf of business processes consist of situation-independent data and data that is specific to business process events. The attributes and elements that are specific to business process events are described.

Business process events can have the following categories of event content.

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

The events can have one of the following formats:

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events occur when there are processes modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.0.2, or if the WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format (legacy XML) is enabled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.1, or later. If not specified otherwise, the object-specific content for these events is written as *extendedDataElement* XML elements of the type string.

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events occur when there are processes modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.1, or later, and the WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format (XML schema support) is enabled. The object-specific content for these events is written as XML elements in the *xs:any* slot in the *eventPointData* folder of the Common Base Event, and the payload message is written to the *applicationData* section. The structure of the XML is defined in the XML Schema Definition (XSD) file *BFMEvents.xsd*. The file can be found in the *install_root\ProcessChoreographer\client* directory.

Related reference

Business process events

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A process can cause process events, activity events, activity scope events, link events, and variable events to be emitted.

Common Base Events for business processes

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a business process can be found here.

Common Base Events for activities

Common Base Events are emitted for activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity can be found here.

Common Base Events for scope activities

Common Base Events are emitted for scope activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity scope can be found here.

Common Base Events for links in flow activities

Common Base Events for links are emitted if monitoring is requested in WebSphere Integration Developer for the flow activity on which the link is defined. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a link can be found here.

Common Base Events for process variables

Common Base Events are emitted for process variables if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by variables can be found here.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

The extension name contains the string value that is used as the value of the *extensionName* attribute of the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event. The names of event elements are in uppercase, for example, BPC.BFM.BASE, and the names of XML elements are in mixed case, for example, *BPCEventCode*. Except where indicated, all data elements are of the type string.

The following extension names are available for business process events:

- “BPC.BFM.BASE” on page 635
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS” on page 636
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START” on page 636
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.FAILURE” on page 637
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CORREL” on page 637
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WISTATUS” on page 637
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WITRANSFER” on page 637
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.ESCALATED” on page 638
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.EVENT” on page 638
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.OWNERTRANSFER” on page 638

- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.PARTNER” on page 639
- “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET” on page 639
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS” on page 641
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE” on page 641
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE” on page 641
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CLAIM” on page 642
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WISTATUS” on page 642
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WITRANSFER” on page 642
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FOREACH” on page 643
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED” on page 643
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT” on page 643
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET” on page 643
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.JUMPED” on page 644
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_REQUESTED” on page 644
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST” on page 644
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE” on page 644
- “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CONDITION” on page 644
- “BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS” on page 645
- “BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS” on page 645

BPC.BFM.BASE

BPC.BFM.BASE inherits the XML elements from WBIMonitoringEvent.

Table 72. XML elements for BPC.BFM.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>BPCEventCode</i>	The Business Process Choreographer event code that identifies the event nature.
<i>processTemplateName</i>	The name of the process template. This name can differ from the display name.
<i>processTemplateValidFrom</i>	The valid from attribute of the process template.
<i>eventProgressCounter</i>	<p>The event progress counter is used to indicate the position of the current navigation step in the execution order of all navigation steps of the same process instance.</p> <p>The event progress counter is required for long-running processes, and it can be used together with the event local counter to recreate the (possibly incomplete) order of the events belonging to the same process instance. In microflows, the event progress counter is set to zero.</p>

Table 72. XML elements for BPC.BFM.BASE (continued)

XML element	Description
<i>eventLocalCounter</i>	The local counter is used to discover the order of two events that occur in the same transaction. For a microflow instance, this counter reconstructs an order of all the emitted events. For long-running processes, the local counter indicates an order in the current navigation transaction.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.BASE” on page 635.

Table 73. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>processInstanceExecutionState</i>	The current execution state of the process in the following format: <state code>-<state name>. This attribute can have one of the following values: 1 - STATE_READY 2 - STATE_RUNNING 3 - STATE_FINISHED 4 - STATE_COMPENSATING 5 - STATE_FAILED 6 - STATE_TERMINATED 7 - STATE_COMPENSATED 8 - STATE_TERMINATING 9 - STATE_FAILING 11 - STATE_SUSPENDED 12 - STATE_COMPENSATION_FAILED
<i>processTemplateId</i>	The ID of the process template.
<i>processInstanceDescription</i>	The description of the process instance.
<i>principal</i>	The name of the user who is associated with this event.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE.”

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE.”

Table 74. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The name of the user who requested the start or restart of the process.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.FAILURE

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.FAILURE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 75. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.FAILURE

XML element	Description
<i>processFailedException</i>	The exception message that lead to the failure of the process.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CORREL

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CORREL inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 76. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CORREL

XML element	Description
<i>correlationSet</i>	The correlation set instance, in the following format: <pre><?xml version="1.0"?> <correlationSet name="correlation set name"> <property name="property name" value="property value"/>* </correlationSet></pre>

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WISTATUS

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WISTATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 77. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WISTATUS

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The names of the users with work items that were created or deleted.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WITRANSFER

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WITRANSFER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 78. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.WITRANSFER

XML element	Description
<i>current</i>	The user name of the current owner of the work item. This is the user whose work item has been transferred to someone else.
<i>target</i>	The user name of the new owner of the work item.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.ESCALATED

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.ESCALATED inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 79. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.ESCALATED

XML element	Description
<i>escalationName</i>	The name of the escalation.
<i>operation</i>	This is the operation that is associated with the event handler for which the inline invocation task is escalated.
<i>portTypeName</i>	The port type name of the operation that is associated with the event handler for which the inline invocation task is escalated.
<i>portTypeNamespace</i>	The port type namespace of the operation that is associated with the event handler for which the inline invocation task is escalated.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.EVENT

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.EVENT inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 80. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.EVENT

XML element	Description
<i>message</i> or <i>message_BO-</i>	<p>The input message or the output message for the service as a String or business object (BO) representation. The format depends on whether the Monitor Compatible Events option was selected on the Event Monitor tab in WebSphere Integration Developer.</p> <p>This attribute is only used for WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the content of the message is written to the <i>applicationData</i> section, which contains one content element with the name set to the name of the message.</p>
<i>operation</i>	Name of the operation for the received event.
<i>portTypeName</i>	The port type name of the operation that is associated with the event handler.
<i>portTypeNamespace</i>	The port type namespace of the operation that is associated with the event handler.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.OWNERTRANSFER

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.OWNERTRANSFER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 81. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.OWNERTRANSFER

XML element	Description
<i>current</i>	The user name of the current owner of the process. This is the user whose process is transferred to someone else.
<i>target</i>	The user name of the new owner of the process.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.PARTNER

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.PARTNER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 82. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.PARTNER

XML element	Description
<i>partnerLinkName</i>	The name of the partner link.

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.PROCESS.BASE” on page 636.

Table 83. XML elements for BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

XML element	Description
<i>propertyName</i>	The name of the custom property.
<i>propertyValue</i>	The value of the custom property.
<i>associatedObjectID</i>	The ID of the associated object that is the process instance ID.
<i>associatedObjectName</i>	The name of the associated object that is the process template name.
<i>query</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the query string for the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>type</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the type of the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>isBinary</i>	Set to false for string custom properties, and to true for binary custom properties. The payload type for binary custom properties is restricted to Empty. The property <i>propertyValue</i> is omitted for binary custom properties.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.BASE” on page 635.

Table 84. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>activityKind</i>	<p>The activity kind, for example, sequence or invoke. The format is: <kind code>-<kind name>. This attribute can have one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3 - KIND_EMPTY 21 - KIND_INVOKE 23 - KIND_RECEIVE 24 - KIND_REPLY 25 - KIND_THROW 26 - KIND_TERMINATE 27 - KIND_WAIT 29 - KIND_COMPENSATE 30 - KIND_SEQUENCE 32 - KIND_SWITCH 34 - KIND_WHILE 36 - KIND_PICK 38 - KIND_FLOW 40 - KIND_SCOPE 42 - KIND_SCRIPT 43 - KIND_STAFF 44 - KIND_ASSIGN 45 - KIND_CUSTOM 46 - KIND_RETHROW 47 - KIND_FOR_EACH_SERIAL 49 - KIND_FOR_EACH_PARALLEL 52 - KIND_REPEAT_UNTIL 1000 - SQLSnippet 1001 - RetrieveSet 1002 - InvokeInformationService 1003 - AtomicSQLSnippetSequence
<i>state</i>	<p>The current state of the activity instance in the format: <state code>-<state name>. This attribute can have one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - STATE_INACTIVE 2 - STATE_READY 3 - STATE_RUNNING 4 - STATE_SKIPPED 5 - STATE_FINISHED 6 - STATE_FAILED 7 - STATE_TERMINATED 8 - STATE_CLAIMED 11 - STATE_WAITING 12 - STATE_EXPIRED 13 - STATE_STOPPED
<i>bpellId</i>	<p>The wpc:id attribute of the activity in the BPEL file. It is unique for activities in a process model.</p>
<i>activityTemplateName</i>	<p>The name of the activity template. this can differ from the display name.</p>
<i>activityTemplateId</i>	<p>The internal ID of the activity template.</p>
<i>activityInstanceDescription</i>	<p>The description of the activity instance.</p>

Table 84. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE (continued)

XML element	Description
<i>principal</i>	The name of the user who claimed the activity.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 85. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS

XML element	Description
<i>reason</i>	<p>The stop reason code. The stop reason code is only relevant if the activity is in the stopped state. It indicates the reason why the activity stopped. This attribute can have one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - STOP_REASON_UNSPECIFIED 2 - STOP_REASON_ACTIVATION_FAILED 3 - STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED 4 - STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 86. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE

XML element	Description
<i>activityFailedException</i>	The exception that caused the activity to fail.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 87. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE

XML element	Description
<i>message</i> or <i>message_BO</i>	<p>The input or the output message for the service as a string or business object (BO) representation. The format depends on whether the Monitor Compatible Events option was selected on the Event Monitor tab in WebSphere Integration Developer.</p> <p>This attribute is only used for WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the content of the message is written to the <i>applicationData</i> section, which contains one content element with the name set to the name of the message.</p>

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CLAIM

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CLAIM inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 88. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CLAIM

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The name of the user for whom the task has been claimed.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WISTATUS

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WISTATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 89. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WISTATUS

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The names of the users who are associated with the work item.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WITRANSFER

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WITRANSFER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 90. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WITRANSFER

XML element	Description
<i>current</i>	The user name of the current owner of the work item. This is the user whose work item has been transferred to someone else.
<i>target</i>	The user name of the new owner of the work item.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FOREACH

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FOREACH inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 91. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FOREACH

XML element	Description
<i>parallelBranchesStarted</i>	The number of branches started.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 92. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED

XML element	Description
<i>escalationName</i>	The name of the escalation.
<i>operation</i>	This is the operation that is associated with the event handler for which the inline invocation task is escalated.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 93. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT

XML element	Description
<i>operation</i>	The name of the operation for the received event.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 94. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

XML element	Description
<i>propertyName</i>	The name of the custom property.
<i>propertyValue</i>	The value of the custom property.
<i>associatedObjectID</i>	The ID of the associated object that is the activity instance ID.
<i>associatedObjectName</i>	The name of the associated object that is the activity template name.
<i>query</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the query string for the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>type</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the type of the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.

Table 94. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET (continued)

XML element	Description
<i>isBinary</i>	Set to false for string custom properties, and to true for binary custom properties. The payload type for binary custom properties is restricted to Empty. The property <i>propertyValue</i> is omitted for binary custom properties.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.JUMPED

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.JUMPED inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 95. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.JUMPED

XML element	Description
<i>targetName</i>	Contains the activity template name of the target activity for the jump. The <i>aiid</i> contained in the <i>ECSCurrentId</i> of the event refers to the source activity of the jump.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_REQUESTED

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_REQUESTED inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 96. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_REQUESTED

XML element	Description
<i>cancel</i>	Cancel specifies whether the activity is skipped or not to distinguish between a skip (=false) and a <i>cancelSkipRequest</i> (=true) call.

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639. No further specific properties are defined for this BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST beyond the inherited properties

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639. No further specific properties are defined for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE beyond the inherited properties

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CONDITION

BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CONDITION inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.BASE” on page 639.

Table 97. XML elements for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CONDITION

XML element	Description
<i>branchBpelId</i>	This is set to the value of the wpc:id attribute of the related case element, as specified in the BPEL file. This information is provided only for processes that are installed with version 6.1.2 or later.
<i>condition</i>	This specifies the condition as a string for XPath conditions. (This property is not present for otherwise or Java conditions.)
<i>isForced</i>	This specifies whether the event is triggered through the forceNavigate APIs (=true), or in any other way (=false).
<i>isOtherwise</i>	This specifies whether the otherwise branch is entered (=true) or a case branch is entered (=false).

BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS

BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.BASE” on page 635.

Table 98. XML elements for BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS

XML element	Description
<i>elementName</i>	The name of the link.
<i>description</i>	The description of the link.
<i>flowBpelId</i>	The ID of the flow activity where the link is defined.
<i>sourceBpelId</i>	The wpc:id attribute of the source activity corresponding to the navigated link.
<i>targetBpelId</i>	The wpc:id attribute of the target activity corresponding to the navigated link.
<i>isForced</i>	This specifies whether the event is triggered through the forceNavigate APIs (=true), or in any other way (=false).

BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS

BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.BFM.BASE” on page 635.

Table 99. XML elements for BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS

XML element	Description
<i>variableName</i>	The name of the variable.

Table 99. XML elements for BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS (continued)

XML element	Description
<i>variableData</i> or <i>variableData_BO</i>	<p>If the variable <i>variableName</i> is not initialized, there is no <i>variableData</i> or <i>VariableData_BO</i> element. The variable's data is represented either as a String or business object (BO). The format depends on whether the Monitor Compatible Events option was selected on the Event Monitor tab in WebSphere Integration Developer.</p> <p>This attribute is only used for WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the content of the variable is written to the <i>applicationData</i> section, which contains one content element with the name set to the name of the variable.</p>
<i>bpellId</i>	The Business Process Choreographer ID for the variable.
<i>principal</i>	The name of the user who updated the variable.

Related reference

Business process events

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A process can cause process events, activity events, activity scope events, link events, and variable events to be emitted.

Common Base Events for business processes

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a business process can be found here.

Common Base Events for activities

Common Base Events are emitted for activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity can be found here.

Common Base Events for scope activities

Common Base Events are emitted for scope activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity scope can be found here.

Common Base Events for links in flow activities

Common Base Events for links are emitted if monitoring is requested in WebSphere Integration Developer for the flow activity on which the link is defined. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a link can be found here.

Common Base Events for process variables

Common Base Events are emitted for process variables if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by variables can be found here.

Business process events

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A process can cause process events, activity events, activity scope events, link events, and variable events to be emitted.

All business process events can be emitted in both the CEI and the audit trail, with the exception of the process template events. The process template events `PROCESS_INSTALLED` and `PROCESS_UNINSTALLED` can only be emitted in the audit trail.

The event structure is described in the XML Schema Definition (XSD) file `BFMEvents.xsd`. The file can be found in the `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\client` directory.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Related information



State transition diagrams for process instances



State transition diagrams for activities

Common Base Events for business processes

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a business process can be found here.

State transitions and process events

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur for a business process and the events that are emitted when these state changes take place. The link between each state indicates the nature of the event and the event code of the event that is emitted for the state transitions.

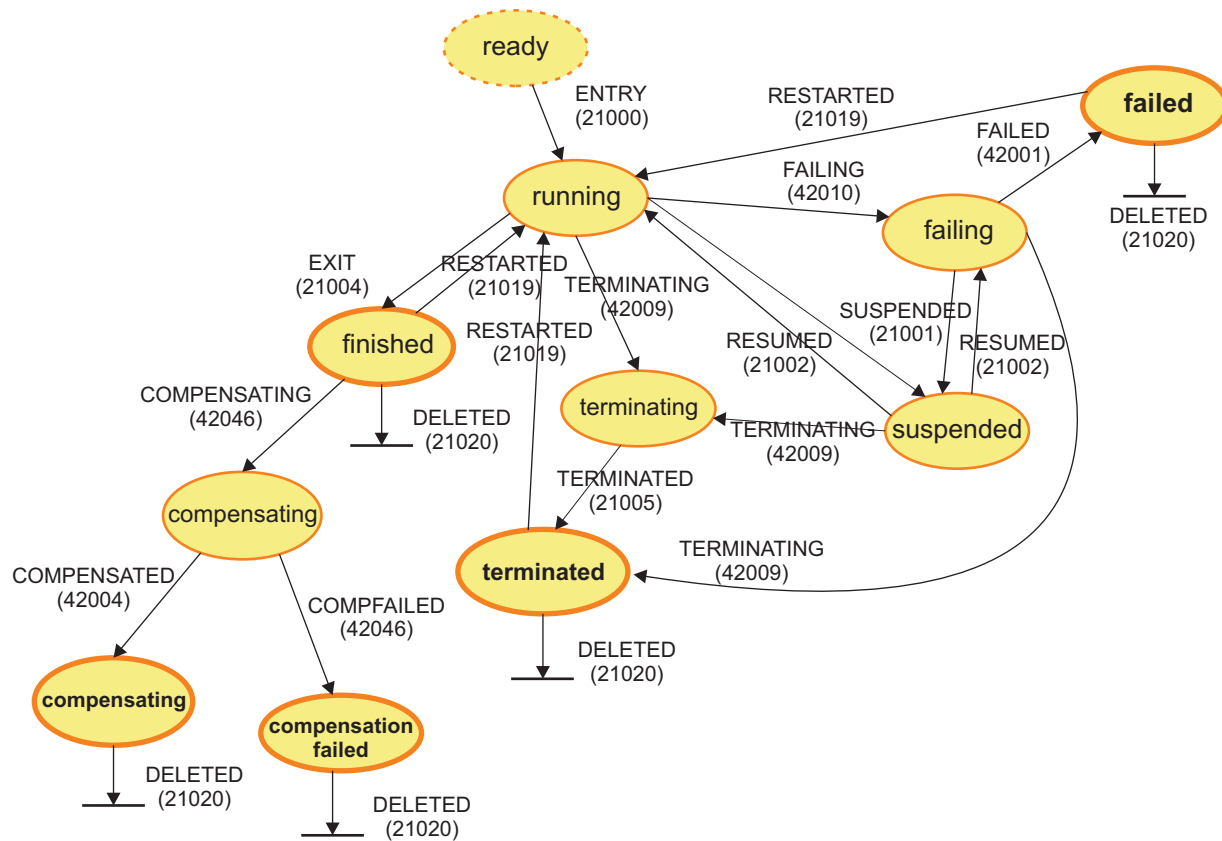


Figure 10. State transitions and process events

Process events

The columns in the following table contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an extended data element with the name *BPCEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the *xs:any* slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

The *extensionName* contains a string value which defines the event specific information that is contained in the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the business process event.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the *EventNature* parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

Some process events are emitted without a state change. The following table describes all process events.

Table 100. Process events

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
21000	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START	Start	ENTRY	Process started
21001	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Report	SUSPENDED	Process suspended. To suspend process instances, use Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
21002	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Report	RESUMED	Process resumed. Only suspended processes can be resumed. To resume process instances, use Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
21004	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Stop	EXIT	Process completed
21005	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Stop	TERMINATED	Process terminated. To terminate process instances, use Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
21019	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.START	Report	RESTARTED	Process restarted. A process is restarted on request, for example, by using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
21020	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Destroy	DELETED	Process deleted
42001	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.FAILURE	Fail	FAILED	Process failed
42003	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Report	COMPENSATING	Process compensating. Only child processes can be compensated. The compensation of a child process is triggered by a fault handler or compensation handler associated with the parent process.
42004	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Stop	COMPENSATED	Process compensated
42009	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Report	TERMINATING	Process terminating
42010	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Report	FAILING	Process failing
42027	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CORREL	Report	CORRELATION	<p>This event is emitted when a new correlation set for the process instance is initialized, for example, when a receive activity with an initiating correlation set receives a message.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>

Table 100. Process events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42041	BPC.BFM.PROCESS. WISTATUS	Report	WI_DELETED	<p>Process work item deleted. This event is emitted only when a work item is explicitly deleted by an API request. If the work item is deleted because the corresponding process instance is deleted, an event is not emitted.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42042	BPC.BFM.PROCESS. WISTATUS	Report	WI_CREATED	<p>Process work item created. This event is emitted when an additional work item is created for the process, for example, by an API request.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42046	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.STATUS	Fail	COMPFAILED	Process compensation failed
42047	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.EVENT	Report	EV_RECEIVED	<p>Process event received. The event is emitted when an event handler that is associated with a process is activated.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42049	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.ESCALATED	Report	EV_ESCALATED	<p>Process event escalated. This event is emitted when an inline invocation task is escalated that is associated with an onEvent event handler for the process.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42056	BPC.BFM.PROCESS. WITRANSFER	Report	WI_TRANSFERRERD	<p>Process work item transferred.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>

Table 100. Process events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42058	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.PARTNER	Report	PA_CHANGE	<p>Process partner changed. This event is emitted when a new endpoint reference is assigned to a partner link.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42059	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET	Report	CP_SET	<p>Process custom property set. This event is emitted when a custom property of a process instance is changed.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>
42071	BPC.BFM.PROCESS.OWNERTRANSFER	Report	OWNER_TRANSFERRED	<p>This event is emitted when the ownership of a process is transferred from one user to another.</p> <p>This event is not associated with a state change.</p>

For process events, the following event correlation sphere identifiers have the following content:

- The ECSCurrentID provides the ID of the process instance.
- The ECSParentID provides the value of the ECSCurrentID before the process instance start event of the current process.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Common Base Events for activities

Common Base Events are emitted for activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity can be found here.

State transitions and activity events

The state changes and the events that are emitted depend on the type of activity:

- Invoke, assign, empty, reply, rethrow, throw, terminate, and Java snippet activities

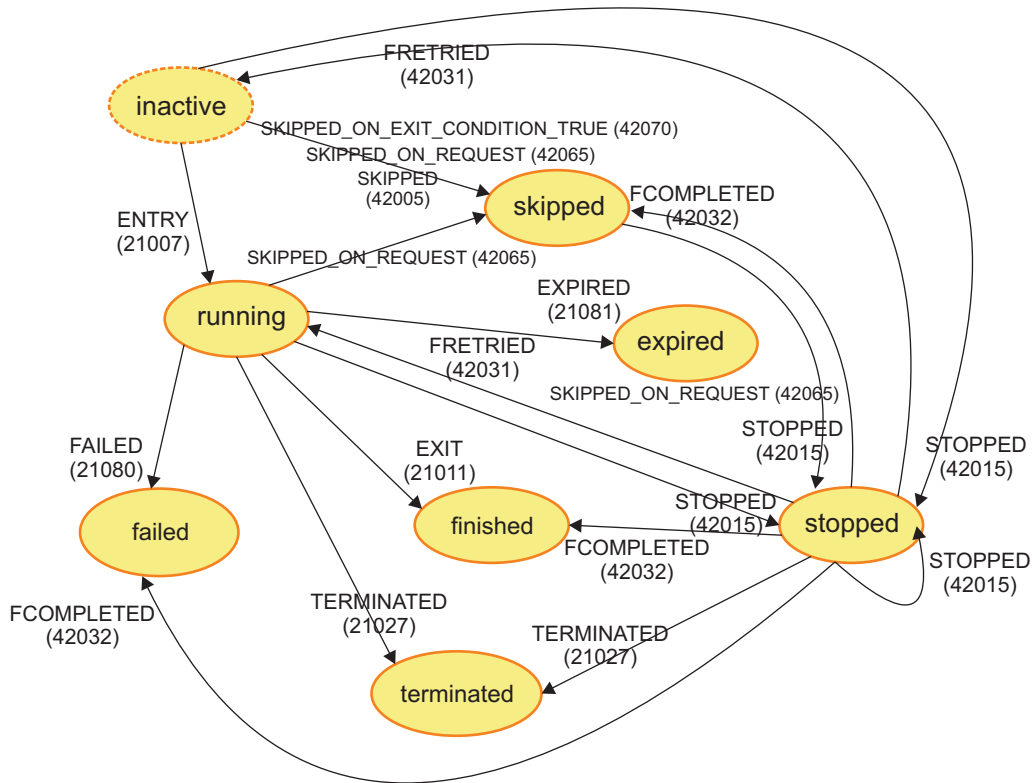


Figure 11. State transitions and events for invoke activities and short-lived activities

- Pick (receive choice), wait, and receive activities

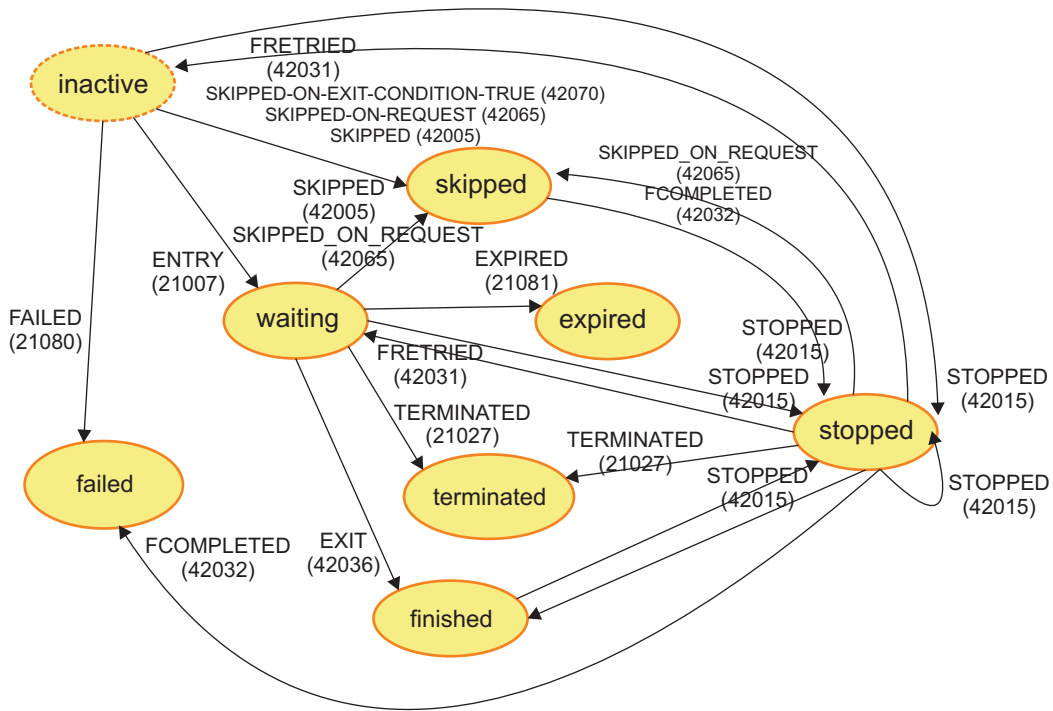


Figure 12. State transitions and events for wait, and receive activities

- Human task activities

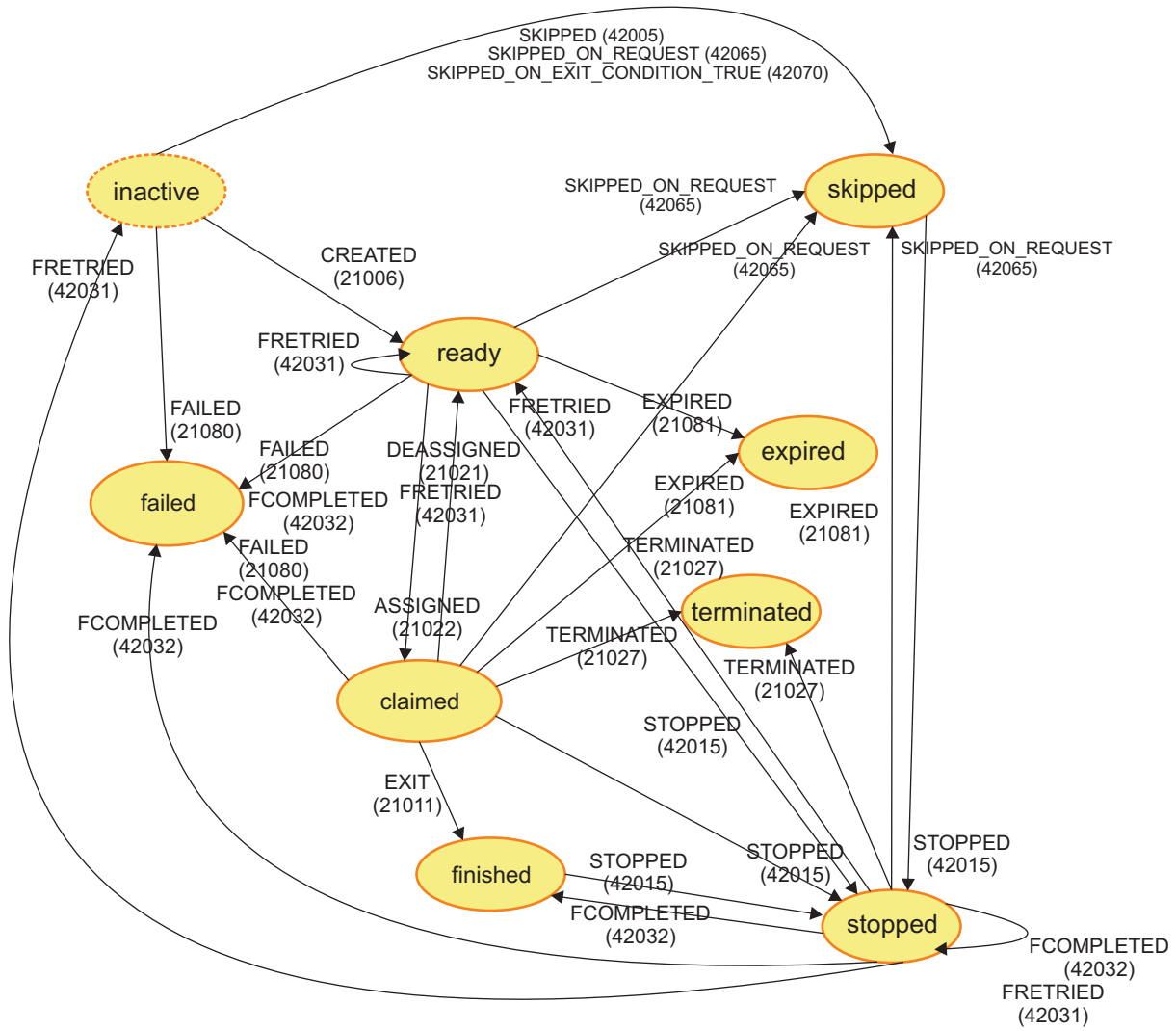


Figure 13. State transitions and events for human task activities

- Structured activities, such as flow or sequence activities

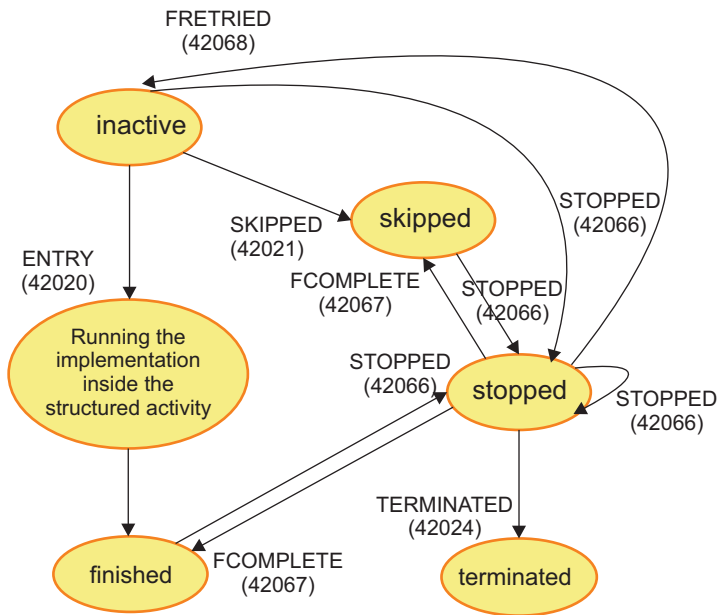


Figure 14. State transitions and events for structured activities

Activity events

The columns in the following table contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an extended data element with the name *BPCEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the *xs:any* slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

The *extensionName* contains a string value which defines the event specific information that is contained in the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the business process event.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the EventNature parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

The following table describes all activity events.

Table 101. Activity events

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
21006	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE	Start	CREATED	Activity ready. This event is emitted when a human task activity is started.
21007	For invoke activities: BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE. For all other activity types: BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Start	ENTRY	Activity started. For invoke activities, a business object payload is available.

Table 101. Activity events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
21011	For invoke, human task, receive, and reply activities: BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE. For pick activities: BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT. For all other activity types: BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	EXIT	Activity completed. For invoke, human task, receive, and reply activities, a business object payload is available.
21021	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	DEASSIGNED	Claim canceled. This event is emitted when the claim for a human task activity is canceled.
21022	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CLAIM	Report	ASSIGNED	Activity claimed. This event is emitted when a human task activity is claimed.
21027	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	TERMINATED	Activity terminated. Long-running activities can be terminated as an effect of fault handling on the scope or process the activity is assigned to.
21080	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE	Failed	FAILED	Activity failed. This event is emitted if a fault occurs when the activity runs and the fault is propagated to the fault handlers that are defined for the enclosing scopes or process.
21081	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	EXPIRED	Activity expired. This event applies to invoke and human task activities only.
42005	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	SKIPPED	Activity skipped. This event applies only to activities that have join behavior defined. If the join behavior evaluates to false, then the activity is skipped and the skipped event is emitted.
42012	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE	Report	OUTPUTSET	Activity output message set. A business object payload is available. This event is emitted when the output message for a claimed human task activity is set without completing the activity, for example, to store intermediate results. The state of the activity does not change. This event is not emitted when a human task activity is completed.

Table 101. Activity events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42013	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE	Report	FAULTSET	Activity fault message set. Business object payload is available. This event is emitted when a fault message for a claimed human task activity is set without completing the activity. This event is not emitted when a human task activity is completed with a fault.
42015	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	STOPPED	Activity stopped. An activity can be stopped if an unhandled fault occurs when the activity runs.
42031	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	FRETRIED	Activity forcibly retried. To force activities to retry, use Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
42032	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	FCOMPLETED	Activity forcibly completed. To force activities to complete use Business Process Choreographer Explorer.
42036	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.MESSAGE	Report	EXIT	A pick (receive choice) activity has received a message
42037	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	CONDTRUE	Loop condition true
42038	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	CONDFALSE	Loop condition false
42039	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY. WISTATUS	Report	WI_DELETED	Work item deleted. This event applies to pick, human tasks, and receive events only. This event is emitted only when a work item is explicitly deleted by an API request. If the work item is deleted because the corresponding process instance is deleted, an event is not emitted.
42040	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY. WISTATUS	Report	WI_CREATED	Work items created. This event applies only to pick, human tasks, and receive events.
42050	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED	Report	ESCALATED	Activity escalated. This event applies only to pick, human tasks, and receive events when the escalation associated with the human task activity is raised.

Table 101. Activity events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42054	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WISTATUS	Report	WI_REFRESHED	Activity work items refreshed. This event applies only to pick, human tasks, and receive events.
42055	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.WITRANSFER	Report	WI_TRANSFERRED	Work item transferred. This event applies only to pick, human tasks, and receive events.
42057	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FOREACH	Report	BRANCHES_STARTED	This event is emitted when branches are started for a forEach activity.
42060	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET	Report	CP_SET	Activity custom property set. This event is emitted when a custom property of an activity instance is changed.
42061	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.CONDITION	Report	CONDTRUE	This event is emitted when the case condition of a choice activity evaluates to true. There is, at most, one event with the case element condition set to true for each navigated choice activity instance. That is, non-entered case elements are not honored by an event, and otherwise elements provoke the same event as condition case elements.
42062	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	ALLCONDFALSE	This event is emitted when no case element was used and no otherwise element exists. In this case, the navigation continues at the end of the choice construct.
42063	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.JUMPED	Report	JUMPED	This event is emitted after the final activity event of the source activity of the jump action and before the first event of the target activity.

Table 101. Activity events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42064	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_REQUESTED	Report	SKIP_REQUESTED	<p>Skip activity requested. This event is emitted if the corresponding activity is not in an active state and a skip or cancelSkipRequest API is called. In this case, the request has no immediate effect on the navigation. The event contains a flag to distinguish between a skip and a cancelSkipRequest call.</p> <p>The ECSCurrentID for the event to be skipped is not set to the AIID of the associated activity.</p>
42065	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST	Report	SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST	<p>Event skipped on request. This event is emitted when the navigation after an activity that is marked for skipping is continued.</p>
42070	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.SKIP_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE	Report	SKIPPED_ON_EXIT_CONDITION_TRUE	<p>This event is emitted when an exit condition of the onEntry type evaluates to true, and the activity is skipped for this reason.</p>

For most activity events, the following event correlation sphere identifiers have the following content:

- The *ECSCurrentID* provides the ID of the activity.
- The *ECSParentID* provides the ID of the containing process.

For the custom property set event, the event correlation sphere identifiers indicate the context in which the custom property was set. If, for example, the custom property is set using an API request, the event correlation sphere identifiers are set as for a process event. If the custom property is set in a Java snippet, the *ECSCurrentID* is set to the activity instance ID of the Java snippet and the *ECSParentID* is set to the process instance ID.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Common Base Events for scope activities

Common Base Events are emitted for scope activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity scope can be found here.

State transitions and events for scope activities

The following diagram shows the state transitions that can occur for a scope activity and the events that are emitted when these state changes take place.

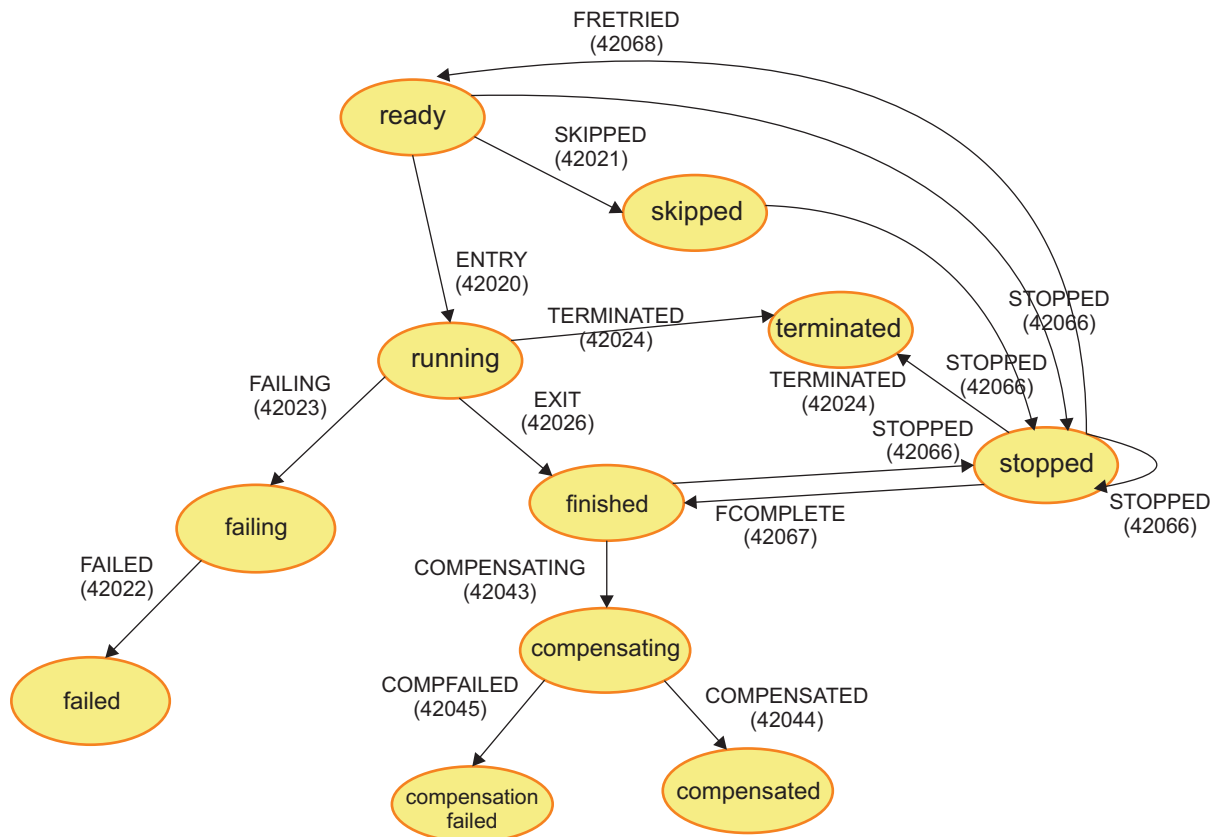


Figure 15. State transitions and events for scope activities

Scope activity events

The columns in the following table contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an extended data element with the name *BPCEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the xs:any slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

The *extensionName* contains a string value which defines the event specific information that is contained in the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the business process event.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the EventNature parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

The following table describes all scope activity events.

Table 102. Scope activity events

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42020	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Start	ENTRY	Scope started. This event is emitted when the navigation enters the scope instance.
42021	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	SKIPPED	Scope skipped. The event applies only to scope activities that have join behavior defined. The event is emitted when the join condition of the scope evaluates to false. The navigation of the process continues at the end of the scope with dead-path elimination.
42022	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.FAILURE	Fail	FAILED	Scope failed. This event is emitted when the process navigation leaves the fault handler of the scope.
42023	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	FAILING	Scope failing. This event is emitted when the process navigation enters the fault handling path of the scope.
42024	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	TERMINATED	Scope terminated. A scope activity can be terminated if the associated process is terminated, for example, by a terminate activity in a branch that is parallel to the scope activity.
42026	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	EXIT	Scope completed. This event is emitted when the normal navigation path of the scope and all of the activated event handler paths are completed.

Table 102. Scope activity events (continued)

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
42043	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	COMPENSATING	Scope compensating. This event is emitted when the process navigation enters the compensation handler, including the default compensation handler, of the scope.
42044	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	COMPENSATED	Scope compensated. This event is emitted when the compensation handler, including default compensation handler, of the scope completes.
42045	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Fail	COMPFAILED	Scope compensation failed. This event is emitted if a fault occurs when the compensation handler for the scope runs.
42048	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.EVENT	Report	EV_RECEIVED	This event is emitted when a new event handler instance is started for the scope.
42051	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.ESCALATED	Report	EV_ESCALATED	Scope event escalated. This event is emitted when the escalation is started that is associated with the inline human task of an active event handler for the scope.
42066	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Stop	STOPPED	Scope is stopped. A scope instance can stop if an unhandled fault occurs during the activation or the follow-on navigation of a scope.
42067	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	FCOMPLETED	Scope is force completed
42068	BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS	Report	FRETRIED	Scope has been force retried

Activity scope events are a type of activity events, whose syntax is described above for BPC.BFM.ACTIVITY.STATUS.

For activity scope events, the following event correlation sphere identifiers have the following content:

- The ECSCurrentID provides the ID of the scope.
- The ECSParentID provides the ID of the containing process.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Common Base Events for links in flow activities

Common Base Events for links are emitted if monitoring is requested in WebSphere Integration Developer for the flow activity on which the link is defined. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a link can be found here.

The following types of events can be caused by links in flow activities.

Link events

The columns in the following table contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an extended data element with the name *BPCEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the *xs:any* slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

The *extensionName* contains a string value which defines the event specific information that is contained in the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the business process event.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the *EventNature* parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

The following table describes all link events.

Table 103. Link events

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
21034	BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS	Report	CONDTRUE	Link evaluated true
42000	BPC.BFM.LINK.STATUS	Report	CONDFALSE	Link evaluated false

For link events, the following event correlation sphere identifiers have the following content:

- The *ECSCurrentID* provides the ID of the source activity of the link.
- The *ECSParentID* provides the ID of the containing process.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Common Base Events for process variables

Common Base Events are emitted for process variables if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by variables can be found here.

The following types of events can be caused by process variables.

Variable events

The columns in the following table contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an extended data element with the name *BPCEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the *xs:any* slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

The *extensionName* contains a string value which defines the event specific information that is contained in the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the business process event.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the *EventNature* parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

The following table describes the variable events.

Table 104. Variable events

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
21090	BPC.BFM.VARIABLE.STATUS	Report	CHANGED	Variable update. A business object payload is available.

For the variable event, the following event correlation sphere identifiers have the following content:

- The *ECSCurrentID* provides the ID of the containing process.

- The ECSParentID is the ECSCurrentID before the process instance start event of the current process.

Related reference

Event data specific to business processes

In business processes, events relate to processes, activities, scopes, links, and variables.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Extension names for business process events

The extension name indicates the payload of the event. A list of all the extension names for business process events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

Situations in business process events

Business process events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations is described in situation elements.

Business process events can contain one of the following situation elements.

Situation name	Content of the Common Base Event	
Start	categoryName is set to StartSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StartSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	START_COMPLETED
Stop	categoryName is set to StopSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StopSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	STOP_COMPLETED
Destroy	categoryName is set to DestroySituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	DestroySituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL
Fail	categoryName is set to StopSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StopSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	UNSUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	STOP_COMPLETED

Situation name	Content of the Common Base Event	
Report	categoryName is set to ReportSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	ReportSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	reportCategory	STATUS

Related reference

Business process events

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A process can cause process events, activity events, activity scope events, link events, and variable events to be emitted.

Common Base Events for business processes

Common Base Events are emitted for business processes if monitoring is requested for the business process in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a business process can be found here.

Common Base Events for activities

Common Base Events are emitted for activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity can be found here.

Common Base Events for scope activities

Common Base Events are emitted for scope activities if monitoring is requested for these activities in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by an activity scope can be found here.

Common Base Events for links in flow activities

Common Base Events for links are emitted if monitoring is requested in WebSphere Integration Developer for the flow activity on which the link is defined. A list of all the events that can be emitted by a link can be found here.

Common Base Events for process variables

Common Base Events are emitted for process variables if monitoring is requested for the business process elements in WebSphere Integration Developer. A list of all the events that can be emitted by variables can be found here.

Chapter 20. Human task events overview

Events that are emitted on behalf of human tasks consist of situation-independent data and data that is specific to human task events. The attributes and elements that are specific to human task events are described.

Human task events can have the following categories of event content.

Event data specific to human tasks

Events are created on behalf of tasks and escalations.

The events can have one of the following formats:

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events occur when there are tasks modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.0.2, or if the WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format (legacy XML) is enabled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.1, or later. If not specified otherwise, the object-specific content for these events is written as *extendedDataElement* XML elements of the type string.

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format

WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events occur when there are tasks modeled in WebSphere Integration Developer 6.1, or later, and the WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format (XML schema support) is enabled. The object-specific content for these events is written as XML elements in the *xs:any* slot in the *eventPointData* folder of the Common Base Event. The structure of the XML is defined in the XML Schema Definition (XSD) file *HTMEvents.xsd*. The file can be found in the *install_root\ProcessChoreographer\client* directory.

Related reference

Human task events

Human task events are sent if monitoring is requested for the elements of the task in WebSphere Integration Developer. Use the information provided here for a detailed description of all of the events, that is, task events and escalation events, that can be emitted by human tasks.

Extension names for human task events

The extension name indicates the payload of the human task event. A list of all the extension names for human task events and their corresponding payload can be found here.

The extension name contains the string value that is used as the value of the *extensionName* attribute of the Common Base Event. This is also the name of the XML element that provides additional data about the event. The names of event elements are in uppercase, for example *BPC.HTM.BASE*, and the names of XML elements are in mixed case, for example, *HTMEventCode*. Except where indicated, all data elements are of the type string.

The following extension names are available for human task events:

- “BPC.HTM.BASE” on page 670

- “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE”
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS”
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.FOLLOW”
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.MESSAGE” on page 671
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT” on page 671
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.FAILURE” on page 671
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.WISTATUS” on page 671
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.WITRANSFER” on page 672
- “BPC.HTM.TASK.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET” on page 672
- “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE” on page 672
- “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.STATUS” on page 673
- “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WISTATUS” on page 673
- “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WITRANSFER” on page 673
- “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET” on page 673

BPC.HTM.BASE

BPC.HTM.BASE inherits the XML elements from WBIMonitoringEvent.

Table 105. XML elements for BPC.HTM.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>HTMEventCode</i>	The Business Process Choreographer event code that identifies the number of the event type. Possible event codes are listed in the following tables.
<i>taskTemplateId</i>	The ID of the template.
<i>taskTemplateName</i>	The name of the task template. This can differ from the display name.
<i>taskTemplateValidFrom</i>	The date and time from when the task template is valid.

BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE

BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.BASE.”

Table 106. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>taskInstanceDescription</i>	The description of the task.

BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS

BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE.” No further specific properties are defined for BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS beyond the inherited properties.

BPC.HTM.TASK.FOLLOW

BPC.HTM.TASK.FOLLOW inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE.”

Table 107. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.FOLLOW

XML element	Description
<i>followTaskId</i>	The ID of the task that was started as a follow-on task.

BPC.HTM.TASK.MESSAGE

BPC.HTM.TASK.MESSAGE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 108. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.MESSAGE

XML element	Description
<i>message</i> or <i>message_BO</i>	<p>A String or business object representation that contains the input or output message. The format depends on whether the Monitor Compatible Events option was selected on the Event Monitor tab in WebSphere Integration Developer.</p> <p>This attribute is only used for WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the content of the message is written to the <i>applicationData</i> section, which contains one content element with the name set to the name of the message.</p>

BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT

BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 109. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The name of the user that is associated with the task.

BPC.HTM.TASK.FAILURE

BPC.HTM.TASK.FAILURE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 110. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.FAILURE

XML element	Description
<i>taskFailedException</i>	A string containing the <i>faultNameSpace</i> and <i>faultName</i> separated by a semicolon (;).

BPC.HTM.TASK.WISTATUS

BPC.HTM.TASK.WISTATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 111. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.WISTATUS

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The names of the users who have work items that were created or deleted.

BPC.HTM.TASK.WITRANSFER

BPC.HTM.TASK.WITRANSFER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 112. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.WITRANSFER

XML element	Description
<i>current</i>	The name of the current user. This is the user whose work item was transferred to someone else.
<i>target</i>	The name of the user of the work item receiver.

BPC.HTM.TASK.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

BPC.HTM.TASK.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.TASK.BASE” on page 670.

Table 113. XML elements for BPC.HTM.TASK.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The name of the user who set the custom property.
<i>propertyName</i>	The name of the custom property.
<i>propertyValue</i>	The value of the custom property.
<i>associatedObjectID</i>	The ID of the associated object that is the task instance ID.
<i>query</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the query string for the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>type</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the type of the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>isBinary</i>	Set to false for string custom properties, and to true for binary custom properties. The payload type for binary custom properties is restricted to Empty. The property <i>propertyValue</i> is omitted for binary custom properties.

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.BASE” on page 670.

Table 114. XML elements for BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE

XML element	Description
<i>escalationName</i>	The name of the escalation.
<i>escalationInstanceDescription</i>	The description of the escalation.

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.STATUS

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.STATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE” on page 672. No further specific properties are defined for BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.STATUS beyond the inherited properties.

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WISTATUS

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WISTATUS inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE” on page 672.

Table 115. XML elements for BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WISTATUS

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The names of the users who have work items that are escalated.

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WITRANSFER

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WITRANSFER inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE” on page 672.

Table 116. XML elements for BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.WITRANSFER

XML element	Description
<i>current</i>	The name of the current user. This is the user whose work item was transferred to someone else.
<i>target</i>	The name of the user of the work item receiver.

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET inherits the XML elements from “BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.BASE” on page 672.

Table 117. XML elements for BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET

XML element	Description
<i>username</i>	The name of the user who set the custom property.
<i>propertyName</i>	The name of the custom property.
<i>propertyValue</i>	The value of the custom property.
<i>associatedObjectID</i>	The ID of the associated object that is the escalation instance ID.
<i>query</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the query string for the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.

Table 117. XML elements for
BPC.HTM.ESCALATION.CUSTOMPROPERTYSET (continued)

XML element	Description
<i>type</i>	If <i>isBinary</i> is true, this element specifies the type of the binary property. Otherwise, this element is not present.
<i>isBinary</i>	Set to false for string custom properties, and to true for binary custom properties. The payload type for binary custom properties is restricted to Empty. The property <i>propertyValue</i> is omitted for binary custom properties.

Related reference

Human task events

Human task events are sent if monitoring is requested for the elements of the task in WebSphere Integration Developer. Use the information provided here for a detailed description of all of the events, that is, task events and escalation events, that can be emitted by human tasks.

Human task events

Human task events are sent if monitoring is requested for the elements of the task in WebSphere Integration Developer. Use the information provided here for a detailed description of all of the events, that is, task events and escalation events, that can be emitted by human tasks.

An event is emitted when the state of a task changes. The following types of events can be caused by human tasks:

- “Task events” on page 675
- “Escalation events” on page 676

Note: Events are only emitted for ad-hoc tasks if the business relevance flag is set to true in the task model.

Events for inline tasks are emitted as activity events. For a list of these events, see “Business process events” on page 647.

All human task events can be emitted in both the CEI and the audit trail, with the exception of the task template events. The task template events `TASK_TEMPLATE_INSTALLED` and `TASK_TEMPLATE_UNINSTALLED` can only be emitted in the audit trail.

XML Schema Definition (XSD) files

The event structure is described in the XML Schema Definition (XSD) file `HTMEvents.xsd`. The file can be found in the `install_root\ProcessChoreographer\client` directory.

Key to table columns

The columns in the following tables contain:

Code Contains the number of the event. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.0.2 format events, the value is written to the Common Base Event as an

extended data element with the name *HTMEventCode*. For WebSphere Business Monitor 6.1 format events, the value is written to the xs:any slot of the Common Base Event.

Extension name

Contains the string value that is used as the value of the extensionName attribute of the Common Base Event.

If WebSphere Business Integration Modeler is used to create the underlying task model, the extension name for events that contain message data in their payload can be extended by a hash character (#) followed by additional characters. These additional characters are used to distinguish Common Base Events that carry different message objects. Events that emit message data also contain additional nested extendedDataElements in order to report the contents of the data object. Refer to the documentation for WebSphere Business Integration Modeler for more information.

Situation

Refers to the situation name of the human task event. For details of situations, see “Situations in human task events” on page 677.

Event nature

A pointer to the event situation for a business process element in the EventNature parameter, as they are displayed in WebSphere Integration Developer.

Task events

The following table describes all task events.

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
51001	BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT	Report	CREATED	Task created
51002	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Destroy	DELETED	Task deleted
51003	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Start	ENTRY	Task started
51004	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Stop	EXIT	Task completed
51005	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	DEASSIGNED	Claim canceled
51006	BPC.HTM.TASK.INTERACT	Report	ASSIGNED	Task claimed
51007	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Stop	TERMINATED	Task terminated
51008	BPC.HTM.TASK.FAILURE	Fail	FAILED	Task failed
51009	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	EXPIRED	Task expired
51010	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	WAITFORSUBTASK	Waiting for subtasks
51011	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Stop	SUBTASKCOMPLETED	Subtasks completed
51012	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	RESTARTED	Task restarted
51013	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	SUSPENDED	Task suspended
51014	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	RESUMED	Task resumed
51015	BPC.HTM.TASK.FOLLOW	Report	COMPLETEDFOLLOW	Task completed and follow-on task started
51101	BPC.HTM.TASK.STATUS	Report	UPDATED	Task properties updated

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
51102	BPC.HTM.TASK. MESSAGE	Report	INPUTSET	Input message updated. Business object payload is available.
51103	BPC.HTM.TASK. MESSAGE	Report	OUTPUTSET	Output message updated. Business object payload is available.
51104	BPC.HTM.TASK. MESSAGE	Report	FAULTSET	Fault message updated. Business object payload is available.
51201	BPC.HTM.TASK. WISTATUS	Destroy	WI_DELETED	Work item deleted
51202	BPC.HTM.TASK. WISTATUS	Report	WI_CREATED	Work items created
51204	BPC.HTM.TASK. WITRANSFER	Report	WI_TRANSFERRERD	Work item transferred
51205	BPC.HTM.TASK. WISTATUS	Report	WI_REFRESHED	Work items refreshed
51301	BPC.HTM.TASK. CUSTOMPROPERTYSET	Report	CP_SET	Custom property set. This event is generated when a custom property of a task instance is changed.

For task events, the following identifiers of event correlation spheres have the following content:

- The ESCcurrentID provides the ID of the task instance.
- The ECSParentID is the ECSCurrentID before the task instance event.

Escalation events

The following table describes all task escalation events.

Code	Extension name	Situation	Event nature	Description
53001	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. STATUS	Report	ENTRY	Escalation fired
53201	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. WISTATUS	Destroy	WI_DELETED	Work item deleted
53202	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. WISTATUS	Report	WI_CREATED	Work item created
53204	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. WITRANSFER	Report	WI_TRANSFERRERD	Escalation transferred
53205	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. WISTATUS	Report	WI_REFRESHED	Work item refreshed
51302	BPC.HTM.ESCALATION. CUSTOMPROPERTYSET	Report	CP_SET	Custom property set. This event is generated when a custom property of an escalation instance is changed.

For task events, the following identifiers of event correlation spheres have the following content:

- The ESCcurrentID provides the ID of the escalation.
- The ECSParentID provides the ID of the associated task instance.

Related reference

Event data specific to human tasks

Events are created on behalf of tasks and escalations.

Extension names for human task events

The extension name indicates the payload of the human task event. A list of all the extension names for human task events and their corresponding payload can be found here.


Situations in human task events

Human task events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations are described in situation elements.

Related information

 Life cycle of human tasks

 State transition diagram for activities

 Business process events

Situations in human task events

Human task events can be emitted in different situations. The data for these situations are described in situation elements.

Human task events can contain one of the following situation elements.

Situation name	Content of the Common Base Event	
Start	categoryName is set to StartSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StartSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	START_COMPLETED
Stop	categoryName is set to StopSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StopSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	STOP_COMPLETED
Destroy	categoryName is set to DestroySituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	DestroySituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	SUCCESSFUL

Situation name	Content of the Common Base Event	
Fail	categoryName is set to StopSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	StopSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	successDisposition	UNSUCCESSFUL
	situationQualifier	STOP_COMPLETED
Report	categoryName is set to ReportSituation.	
	situationType	
	Type	ReportSituation
	reasoningScope	EXTERNAL
	reportCategory	STATUS

Related reference

Human task events

Human task events are sent if monitoring is requested for the elements of the task in WebSphere Integration Developer. Use the information provided here for a detailed description of all of the events, that is, task events and escalation events, that can be emitted by human tasks.

Part 6. Tuning

Chapter 21. Tuning business processes

Use this task to improve the performance of business processes.

Before you begin

After successfully running business processes, you can perform this task to improve performance.

Procedure

1. Define how to measure the baseline performance, and which measurements you want to optimize.

For example, for some business applications, it is preferable to reduce the response time for end-users under peak-load conditions. For other applications, the rate that the system can process transactions might be more important than the actual duration of each transaction.

2. Make baseline measurements.

Make the baseline measurements under conditions of load, time-of-day, and day-of-week that are appropriate for tuning your application. Normally, the most important baseline measurements are the throughput and response times. Throughput values are measured after a specific bottleneck capacity is reached, for example 100% CPU load, disk I/O at maximum, or network I/O at 100%. Reliable response time values are best measured for a single process instance during low server utilization.

3. Tune the application.

Applications can contain multiple processes. Because microflows perform better than long-running processes, if persistence is not necessary, and the functionality can be handled single threaded in one transaction, choose to model microflows instead of long-running processes. Also consider separating branches of a long-running process into microflows. Furthermore synchronous service invocations are usually faster than asynchronous service invocations. So for performance reasons, prefer synchronous service invocations although this is not the default behavior in long-running processes.

In long-running processes you can change transaction boundaries. In most cases, performance can be improved by reducing the number of transaction boundaries. However, the optimal number of transaction boundaries can only be found out by performance testing. Because serializing and deserializing data is also expensive, consider using parallel execution paths in your processes instead of serializing activities, and minimizing the size and complexity of data that is part of your process. Also minimize the number of events that are emitted.

4. Tune the processes.

Depending on whether your application uses long-running processes or microflows, perform one of the following steps:

- To tune long-running processes, perform the steps that are described in "Tuning long-running processes" on page 682. These processes tend to run for a long time, but can be interrupted by events or human interaction. Their performance therefore depends on the performance of the Business Process Choreographer database and the messaging service.

- To tune microflows, perform the steps that are described in “Tuning microflows” on page 696. These processes tend to run for only a short time. They use the database only for audit logging, if enabled, and to retrieve the template information. These processes involve no human interaction.
5. Review the current configuration for performance bottlenecks that can be eliminated.
Possibilities to consider include:
 - Installing more processors, more memory, and faster disks.
 - Storing the database logs on different physical disks from the data, and distributing the data on several disks.
 - Using DB2, rather than Cloudscape[®], for optimal performance.
 6. Repeat the benchmark measurements under similar load conditions to those of the baseline measurements.
Keep a permanent record of the application performance measurements to objectively measure any future changes in performance.

Results

The business processes are configured to run measurably faster.

Tuning long-running processes

Use this task to improve the performance of long-running business processes.

About this task

Long-running processes can include user-interaction, asynchronous invocations, multiple receives, picks, and event handlers, for example; they use database and messaging subsystems for storing persistent states. The following topics describe how to improve the performance of long-running processes.

Related tasks

Tuning microflows

Use this task to improve the performance of microflows.

Balancing the hardware resources

You can improve the performance of long-running business processes by balancing the hardware resources.

About this task

Before starting to tune the system, verify that the computer used is well balanced, that is, that the available resources (CPU, memory and I/O) are in the correct proportions. A computer with one (or many) very fast CPUs but little memory or poor I/O performance will be hard to tune. For interruptible processes, good I/O performance provided by multiple, fast disk drives is as important as adequate processing power and sufficient memory.

For production systems, it is advisable to separate databases from application servers by using separate systems to run the database and the application server. For high load or high availability configurations, consider using a WebSphere cluster on several systems for running the business processes, and a separate system for the database.

Procedure

1. On the database server, make sure that you allocate enough disks.
2. Allocate enough memory.

The amount of memory to allocate depends on the platform:

- For a 32-bit Windows system with 4 GB of physical memory and a local database management system, use the following memory allocation:
 - 512 MB for Windows systems
 - 768 MB for WebSphere Application Server
 - 1.5 GB for the database if you are using DB2. If you are using Oracle, no more than 1 GB for the System Global Area (SGA) and 500 MB for the Program Global Area (PGA).
- For a 64-bit AIX system with 8 GB of physical memory and a local database management system, use the following memory allocation:
 - 512 MB for AIX systems
 - 1024 MB for WebSphere Application Server
 - 5 GB for the database. Allocate 4 GB for the process database and 1 GB for the messaging database or databases.

Tip: To help ensure optimum performance, do not allocate all memory to the database, because the file caching, for example, also consumes memory. Avoid situations in which data must be swapped to disk because insufficient memory is available.

- For an i5/OS system, use the Work with System Status (WRKSYSSTS) command to help you to prevent the system from paging memory. If a large number of page faults occur, take one, or more, of the following actions:
 - a. Increase the memory available to the WebSphere Process Server or the Enterprise Service Bus server subsystem memory pool
 - b. Move the WebSphere Process Server or the Enterprise Service Bus server to another memory pool
 - c. Remove jobs from the WebSphere Process Server or the Enterprise Service Bus server subsystem memory pool
- Fine-tune the heap size of the application server.

Note: You cannot tune the heap size if your application server runs on an i5/OS system.

3. Observe the network utilization. The performance of applications also depends on the speed that messages can pass between the servers and the database server. Where possible, reduce latency in the network.
4. Move workload to other servers.

Consider which applications or subsystems can be moved to other servers.

Results

Your computer hardware is now well balanced.

Related tasks

Planning the BPEDB database
Plan the database for Business Process Choreographer.
Tuning the application server
Use this task to tune the application server.

Specifying initial DB2 database settings

Use this task to specify initial DB2 database settings. Note that this information is provided only as an example.

About this task

Attention: The following information relates to the Business Process Choreographer database. For information about tuning a default messaging database, see Tuning and problem solving for messaging engine data stores in the WebSphere Application Server Network Deployment information center.

To achieve good database operation, specify the initial database settings. In addition, use two separate logical disks with different stripe sizes; use a stripe size of 256 KB for table space containers, and a stripe size of 64 KB for database transaction logs. Also use one database for each instance so that if the messaging engines use a database as the data store they can use the Business Process Choreographer database for messaging, or use a separate database server for the messaging database.

Note: This information does not apply to DB2 UDB for i5/OS because these settings are built-in to this database type.

Procedure

1. Separate the log files from the data files.

Putting the database log file on a disk drive that is separate from the data tends to improve performance, provided that sufficient disk drives are available.

For example, if you use DB2 on a Windows system, you can change the location of the log files for the database named BPEDB to the F:\db2logs directory, by entering the following command:

```
db2 UPDATE DB CFG FOR BPEDB USING NEWLOGPATH F:\db2logs
```

2. Create table spaces.

After you create the database, explicitly create table spaces. Example scripts to create table spaces are provided by Business Process Choreographer in the ProcessChoreographer subdirectory of your WebSphere Application Server installation. Customize these scripts to accommodate the needs of a particular scenario. Your goal, when creating the table spaces, is to distribute input and output operations over as many disk drives as possible that are available to DB2. By default, these scripts create the following table spaces:

AUDITLOG

Contains the audit trail tables for processes and tasks. Depending on the degree of auditing that is used, access to tables in this table space can be significant. If auditing is turned off, tables in this table space are not accessed.

COMP

Contains the compensation tables for business processes from Business Process Choreographer Version 5. Depending on the percentage of

compensable processes and activities, the tables in this table space might require high disk bandwidth. If compensation is not used within business processes, the tables in this table space are not used.

INSTANCE

Holds the process instance and task tables. It is always used intensively, regardless of the kind of long-running process that is run. Where possible, locate this table space on its own disk to separate the traffic from the rest of the process database.

SCHEDTS

Contains the tables that are used by the WebSphere scheduling component. Access to tables in the scheduler table space is usually low, because of the caching mechanisms used in the scheduler.

STAFFQRY

Contains the tables that are used to temporarily store staff query results that are obtained from staff registries like Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). When business processes contain many person activities, tables in this table space are frequently accessed.

TEMPLATE

Contains the tables that store the template information for processes and tasks. The tables are populated during the deployment of an application. At run time the access rate is low. The data is not updated, and only new data is inserted during deployment.

WORKITEM

Holds the tables that are required for work item processing. Work items are used for human task interaction. Depending on the number of human tasks in the business processes, access to the tables in this table space can vary from a low access rate to significantly high access rate. The access rate is not zero, even when no explicit human tasks are used, because work items are also generated to support administration of long-running processes.

To create a database for high performance, perform the following actions:

a. Create the database.

On Windows, you can specify a destination drive. The command creates a database on the destination drive in a directory named the same as the default DB2 instance on the server. So, for example, if the database is to be created on drive D:, and the local default instance is DB2, the database data goes to D:\DB2. Thus, to create a DB2 database in the D: directory for Business Process Choreographer, enter the following command:

```
CREATE DATABASE BPEDB ON D: USING CODESET UTF-8 TERRITORY en-us;
```

On UNIX and Linux, enter the following command:

```
CREATE DATABASE BPEDB ON /wasdbfs USING CODESET UTF-8 TERRITORY en-us;
```

where /wasdbfs specifies a directory.

b. Create the table spaces on the desired disks.

For example, the following script is based on the createTablespaceDb2.ddl file that is located in the ProcessChoreographer subdirectory of your WebSphere Application Server installation. It creates table spaces using a single high-performance disk drive on a Windows system.

```
-- Scriptfile to create tablespaces for DB2 UDB
-- Replace occurrence of @location@ in this file with the location
-- where you want the tablespace containers to be stored, then run:
-- db2 connect to BPEDB
```

```
-- db2 -tf createTablespaceDb2.dd1
```

```
CREATE TABLESPACE TEMPLATE MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/TEMPLATE' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE STAFFQRY MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/STAFFQRY' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE AUDITLOG MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/AUDITLOG' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE COMP MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/COMP' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE INSTANCE MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/INSTANCE' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE WORKITEM MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/WORKITEM' );  
CREATE TABLESPACE SCHEDTS MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING( 'D:/BPE/SCHEDTS' );
```

c. Create the tables.

Create Business Process Choreographer tables by running the script provided for the respective database. For DB2, for example, use the createSchemaDb2.dd1 file in the ProcessChoreographer directory.

3. Tune the database.

Use a capacity planning tool for your initial database settings.

If you are using DB2, start the DB2 configuration advisor from the DB2 Control Center, by selecting **DB2 configuration advisor** from the pop-up menu of the Business Process Choreographer database. Do the following actions:

a. Allocate memory to DB2.

For **Server**, allocate to DB2 only as much memory as is physically available to it without swapping.

b. Specify the type of workload.

For **Workload**, select **Mixed** (queries and transactions).

c. For **Transactions**, specify the length of the transactions and the estimated number of transactions to be processed each minute.

Select **More than 10**, to indicate that long transactions are used.

Then, in the **Transactions per minute** field, select the estimated number of transactions processed each minute. To determine this number, assume that each activity in the process has one transaction. The number of transactions performed in one minute is then as follows:

*number of transactions performed each minute = number of processes completed each minute * number of activities in each process*

d. Tune the database for faster transaction performance and slower recovery.

For **Priority**, select **Faster transaction performance**.

e. If possible, tune the database populated with the typical amount of data in production. For **Populated**, select **Yes**. Otherwise, select **No**.

f. Tune the parallel connections setting.

For **Connections**, specify the maximum number of parallel connections that can be made to the application server. Guidelines for determining this value are as follows:

- The number of database connections required is determined by the number of Java DataBase Connectivity (JDBC) connections to the WebSphere Application Server. The JDBC connections are provided by the JDBC connection pool, which is in the WebSphere Application Server. For

p JDBC connections, $p * 1.1$ database connections are required. How to estimate a realistic value for p is described in “Tuning the application server” on page 688.

- If Business Process Choreographer and the database are installed on the same physical server, Business Process Choreographer needs no remote database connections. However, because remote connections might be required for remote database management, specify a low value, rather than zero.
 - If Business Process Choreographer and DB2 are installed on separate servers, set the number of remote applications in accordance with the rule previously described for local connections.
- g. For **Isolation**, select **Read stability**. This setting does not set a database-wide isolation level on the database. This setting is, however, used by the DB2 Configuration Advisor for choosing the best configuration.

The configuration advisor displays suggested changes. You can either apply the changes now, or save them to a file to apply later.

Results

Your long-running processes are running as fast as possible under the current environment and loading conditions.

Specifying initial Oracle database settings

The performance and scalability of an Oracle database is enhanced primarily by optimizing the layout of database files, allocating sufficient memory to the buffer cache to enable efficient caching, and tuning database parameters.

Procedure

1. Allocate enough space to the buffer caches.

Use in-memory caching to produce low-latency response times for database accesses. This means that the buffer caches must be sufficiently large. Set the buffer cache size to at least 700 MB, then monitor cache usage and increase the cache size if necessary.

2. Size log files to reduce log file switches

The transaction log of an Oracle instance resides in several files that are used in a round-robin fashion. The active log files are switched when one becomes full, allowing the last active log to be archived. Because switching log files is an expensive operation, size the log files so that these switches occur infrequently; 750 MB is a good starting value. Then, monitor the transaction rate and the average log size, and adjust this value as needed.

3. Tune the following database parameters.

UNDO_TABLESPACE

Make sure that the undo table space is not used to more than 70 percent (%) of its size limit.

OPEN_CURSORS

The default value for this parameter is 50. However, this is often insufficient: the value of the OPEN_CURSORS parameter must be higher than the statement cache size of the Business Process Choreographer data source (BPEDB), which is set to 128 by default. The highest value that you can use for this parameter depends on your operating system. Values up to 1000 are supported on most operating systems.

MAX_SHARED_SERVERS

Specifies the maximum number of shared server processes that can run simultaneously. Use this parameter to reserve process slots for other processes, such as dedicated servers. If a value for the MAX_SHARED_SERVERS parameter is specified, then it should be greater than, or equal to, the value of the SHARED_SERVERS parameter, and less than the value of the PROCESSES parameter. For example, if there are 150 concurrent users, a good starting value for this parameter is MAX_SHARED_SERVERS=70

Planning messaging engine settings

Use this task to plan your initial settings for the messaging engines.

About this task

To achieve the best performance for long-running processes, tune the messaging system for maximum performance of persistent messages. For the data store back-end types, file store is preferred because it performs well. Use a database data store if your environment runs in a cluster and you cannot use a file store.

If you use the service integration capabilities of WebSphere Application Server, follow the instructions given in Setting tuning properties for service integration in the WebSphere Application Server Network Deployment information center, to set up and tune the data stores for the messaging engines.

Results

Your messaging engines are operating optimally.

Related tasks

Planning the messaging engine database

For high-load setups, where database logging might become a bottleneck, you can improve performance by using a separate database for the messaging engine for the Business Process Choreographer bus.

Tuning the application server

Use this task to tune the application server.

Before you begin

Before you start this task, you must have specified the initial settings for the database.

About this task

To ensure that the business process container can perform optimally, you need to adjust the server settings.

Procedure

1. Estimate the application server resources that you need for each business process container.
 - a. One data source to read and write business process state information to a database: BPEDDataSourceDb2 in the server scope DB2 Universal JDBC Driver Provider (XA)

- b. Calculate the maximum concurrency of transactions, t , for the process navigation by adding the following:
 - The maximum number of clients concurrently connected through the Business Process Choreographer API
 - The number of concurrent endpoints defined in the JMS activation specification BPEInternalActivationSpec
 - The number of concurrent endpoints defined in the JMS activation specification HTMInternalActivationSpec

To view the activation specifications for the process server, in the administrative console, click **Resources** → **JMS Providers** → **Default messaging** → **Activation specifications**.

- c. For the Business Process Choreographer database, calculate the number of parallel JDBC connections required, $p = 1.1 * t$
The value of p must not be greater than the number of connections allowed by the database.
 - d. For the messaging database, calculate the number of parallel JDBC connections required, $m = t + x$, where x is the number of additional JMS sessions to allow for overload situations where additional messages are generated and must be served. Unless a high number of error situations, such as rollbacks occur, set x to 5.
2. Tune the JDBC provider settings for the Business Process Choreographer database (BPEDB).
 - a. Set **Max Connections** to the value p . The value of p must not be greater than the number of connections allowed by the database.
 - b. Set the **SQL Statement cache size** to 300.
 3. Tune the data sources for the data stores that are used by the messaging engines for the Business Process Choreographer, SCA application, SCA system, and CEI buses.
 - a. Set **Max Connections** to the value p . Ensure that if one database is used for all messaging engines, the messaging database supports $4 * m$ connections.
 - b. Set the **SQL Statement cache** size to 50.
 4. Tune the heap size.
Here are some guidelines for the size of the server heap on 32-bit systems. These guidelines do not apply to servers that run on i5/OS systems.
 - 256 MB is too low, and results in poor performance.
 - 512 MB is adequate as an initial heap size for many systems.
 - 1024 MB is a reasonable upper limit.
 For 64-bit systems, 1 to 2 GB is a reasonable size for the heap.
 5. Tune any services that are used by your business processes. Make sure that your supporting services are tuned to cope with the degree of concurrency and load demands that Business Process Choreographer makes on the service.

Results

The application server is tuned for improved performance.

Related tasks

Balancing the hardware resources

You can improve the performance of long-running business processes by balancing the hardware resources.

Specifying initial DB2 database settings

Use this task to specify initial DB2 database settings. Note that this information is provided only as an example.

Fine-tuning the Business Process Choreographer database

Use this task to fine-tune the database.

About this task

Note: If you are not using DB2, refer to your database management system documentation for information about monitoring the performance of the database, identifying and eliminating bottlenecks, and fine-tuning its performance. The rest of this topic offers advice for DB2 users. However, this information does not apply to DB2 UDB for i5/OS.

Procedure

1. Assign sizes to buffer pools according to their usage and hit ratio

The buffer pool hit ratio indicates the percentage of database requests that can be satisfied from data that is already in the pool. It should be close to 100 percent, but any value over 90 percent is acceptable. Increase the **SIZE** parameter for a buffer pool until you get a satisfactory hit rate. Monitor the total memory allocation. If you make the buffer pool too large, the system starts to swap. In this case, decrease the size of the buffer pool, or make additional memory available.

If you are using DB2 Version 8, you can calculate the buffer pool hit ratio. You can obtain the values that are needed for the calculation from buffer pool snapshots. Use the following command to get the snapshots:

```
DB2 get snapshot for all bufferpools
```

For more information on calculating the hit ratio, refer to the DB2 V8 information center.

If you are using DB2 Version 9, use the BP_HITRATIO administrative view to retrieve the hit ratio information. For more information on this view, refer to the DB2 V9 information center.

The DB2 Configuration Advisor suggests values for buffer pool sizes, the Business Process Choreographer database, by default, uses only the IBMDEFAULTBP default buffer pool. You can set the size of this buffer pool using the following command:

```
DB2 ALTER BUFFERPOOL IBMDEFAULTBP SIZE 120000
```

This command displays buffer pools with their size in pages, and the size of each page:

```
DB2 select BPNAME, NPAGES, PAGESIZE from syscat.bufferpools
```

2. If you are using DB2 Version 8, tune the lock list space to help ensure optimum performance.

All locks require storage, and this storage is limited. Transactions that requesting locks beyond this limit must be aborted, and they therefore degrade the performance.

- a. Check the db2diag.log file for your DB2 instance.

Look for entries like the following example:

```
2005-07-24-15.53.42.078000 Instance:DB2 Node:000
PID:2352(db2syscs.exe) TID:4360 Appid:*LOCAL.DB2.027785142343
data management sqlEscalateLocks Probe:4 Database:BPEDB
```

```
ADM5503E The escalation of "10" locks on table
"DB2ADMIN.ACTIVITY_INSTANCE_B_T" to lock intent
"X" has failed. The SQLCODE is "-911".
```

This type of message indicates that the lock space has been exceeded.

- b. Increase the values of the MAXLOCKS and LOCKLIST parameters.

These parameters control the behavior of the database in lock escalations. A lock escalation converts several individual row-level locks in the same table to a single-table-level lock.

If a transaction uses more than the value of the MAXLOCKS parameter of the lock list, the database manager converts these locks to a single table lock in order not to exceed the lock space limitation. However, the lock escalation increases the probability of deadlocks considerably. Therefore, increase the value of the MAXLOCKS parameter to 60 percent.

Increase the value of the LOCKLIST parameter to approximately $10 * p$, where p is your estimate for the maximum number of parallel JDBC connections that are required at any time. For example, if you sized your Business Process Choreographer database, BPEDB, with a value of $p=50$, enter the following command:

```
db2 UPDATE DB CFG FOR BPEDB USING LOCKLIST 500
```

3. If you used the DB2 Configuration Advisor, your database throughput is probably pretty good. You can, however, further improve the performance in the following ways:
 - Follow the best practices for database tuning that are described in the DB2 online documentation, books, and articles.
 - Tune the following DB2 parameters:

AVG_APPLS

It is better to set this parameter too high rather than too low. For example, if there are a maximum of 20 connected applications, set AVG_APPLS to 50.

DLCHKTIME

This parameter specifies the deadlock detection time frame. The default is 10 seconds.

LOCKTIMEOUT

This parameter specifies the time an application waits for a lock. The default is -1, which means that the application waits until the lock is granted, or a deadlock occurs. The value of this parameter should be always greater than the value of the DLCHKTIME parameter so that a deadlock is reported as a deadlock and not as a lock timeout. A good initial value for this parameter is 30 seconds. You might want to set the value higher if load tests show transaction times to be longer than 30 seconds.

LOGBUFSZ

Increasing the size of the buffer for the DB2 log decreases how often a full log buffer must be written to disk.

LOG_FILSIZ

Increasing the size of the log files reduces how often they are switched.

4. Adjust database and database manager settings according to workload requirements. After the configuration advisor has configured the database, you can also tune the following settings:

MINCOMMIT

A value of 1 is strongly recommended. The DB2 Configuration Advisor might suggest other values.

NUM_IOCLEANERS

For query-only applications set the value to 0, for regular processing use values between 1 and the number of disk drives in the system (see also the NUM_IOSERVERS parameter). For large buffer pools a higher number is usually beneficial.

NUM_IOSERVERS

Must match the number of physical disks that the database resides on. You should have at least as many IO servers as you have disks. IO servers do not use many system resources, so it is better to set a value that is too high rather than too low.

5. You can improve the performance of complex Business Process Choreographer API queries by turning on reoptimization for prepared statements. This requires creating a "NULLIDR1" package in the Business Process Choreographer database.
 - a. Update DB2 statistics for your database.

After initially putting load on your system, or whenever the data volume in the database changes significantly, consider updating the DB2 system catalog tables that contain the statistics. Use the RUNSTATS command to update the statistics.

The RUNSTATS command is best run using a script. The following example shows such a script. It assumes that you are logged on as the user bpeuser with the password password, and you are connected to the Business Process Choreographer database, BPEDB. The DB2 commands generate a Windows command file that updates the statistics for all of the tables in the relevant table spaces in the BPEDB database. The TEMPLATE table space tables are omitted because the information is not accessed or updated frequently.

```
db2 -x "select 'db2 runstats on table '
      concat rtrim(tabschema)
      concat '.'
      concat tablename
      concat ' with distribution and detailed indexes all '
from syscat.tables
where
      type='T' AND
      tablename not in ('SAVED_ENGINE_MESSAGE_B_T') AND
      TBSPACEID IN (
          select TBSPACEID from sysibm.systablespace
          where TBSPACE IN ('INSTANCE', 'WORKITEM', 'BPETS8K',
                          'STAFFQRY', 'AUDITLOG', 'SCHEDTS'))"
> runStatsScript.cmd

echo db2 connect reset >> runStatsScript.sql
```

Note:

- The select clause "IN ('INSTANCE', ..., 'SCHEDTS')" contains the names of the default table spaces that are created and used when creating the

BPEDB database. If in your environment the tables are located in different table spaces, change the select clause accordingly.

- For larger databases with more than 500 000 process instances, you can accelerate the collection of statistics by replacing the 'with distribution and detailed indexes all' statement with the 'with distribution and sampled detailed indexes all' statement.

The resulting SQL file updates the statistics for the specified tables. It contains entries similar to the following:

```
db2 runstats on table BPEUSER.ACTIVITY_INSTANCE_B_T with distribution and
detailed indexes all
db2 runstats on table BPEUSER.AUDIT_LOG_T with distribution and
detailed indexes all
...
db2 connect reset
```

You might want to extend the SQL file to run the REORG command before calling the RUNSTATS command. Refer to the DB2 documentation for information on how to reorganize your database tables using the REORG command.

- b. Run the SQL script by entering the following command:

```
db2 -f runStatsScript.sql
```

- c. Create the package "NULLIDR1" in the BPEDB database. Change to the bnd directory of your DB2 installation, and enter the following commands:

```
db2 connect to BPEDB
db2 bind db2clipk.bnd collection NULLIDR1
```

- d. Customize the BPEDB datasource. Using the administrative console, navigate to the custom properties page for the BPEDB data source, and set the value of the property `currentPackageSet` to `NULLIDR1`.

6. Avoid deadlocks.

Deadlocks happen when at least two transactions block each other's resource access. Deadlocks can result from poor database configuration. They can also result from the way in which the Business Process Choreographer APIs are used. To avoid deadlocks, each API call or query of the objects in the database should run in its own transaction.

Business Flow Manager can recover from a database deadlock. However, there might be a major performance impact due to the time between when the deadlock is detected and the rolled-back transactions are retried. Therefore deadlocks should be avoided for performance reasons.

To check for deadlocks, examine the `db2diag.log` file and use the DB2 monitors.

- a. Increase the log level for the `db2diag.log` file to get more information about bottlenecks within the database.

Increase the value of the `DIAGLEVEL` parameter from 3 (default) to 4 to include errors, warnings, and informational messages. You can change the value using the following command:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using DIAGLEVEL 4
```

- b. Create a DB2 event monitor.

Event monitors provide more information about certain events, for example, deadlocks.

- 1) Create an event monitor using the following command:

```
db2 create event monitor monitor_name for statements, connections,
transactions, deadlocks with details write to file file_name
```

- 2) Start the event monitor using the following command:

```
db2 set event monitor monitor_name state=1
```

3) Collect information using the following command:

```
db2evmon -db database_name -evm monitor_name output_file_name
```

c. Use the database snapshot monitors to gather statistics.

The snapshot monitors use the database monitor switches. For the database instance, the monitor switches have the following default settings:

Buffer pool (DFT_MON_BUFPOOL) = ON

Lock (DFT_MON_LOCK) = ON

Sort (DFT_MON_SORT) = OFF

Statement (DFT_MON_STMT) = OFF

Table (DFT_MON_TABLE) = OFF

Timestamp (DFT_MON_TIMESTAMP) = ON

Unit of work (DFT_MON_UOW) = OFF

To see your current settings for the database instance, use the following command, and search for all of the parameters starting with DFT_MON_:

```
db2 get dbm cfg
```

These settings are different from those of the database. For the database, the monitor recording switches have the following default settings:

Switch list for db partition number 0

Buffer Pool Activity Information (BUFFERPOOL) = ON

Lock Information (LOCK) = ON

Sorting Information (SORT) = OFF SQL

Statement Information (STATEMENT) = OFF

Table Activity Information (TABLE) = OFF

Take Timestamp Information (TIMESTAMP) = ON

Unit of Work Information (UOW) = OFF

To see your current setting for the database, use the following command:

```
db2 get monitor switches
```

- To update the settings for one of the database monitors, for example, the lock monitor, use the following command:

```
db2 update monitor switches using lock on
```

This setting is valid only for the current database session.

- To update the settings for one of monitor switches for the database instance, for example, the lock monitor, use the following command:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using DFT_MON_LOCK OFF
```

To activate the setting, restart the database instance.

- Before you enable a snapshot monitor, reset the counters using the following command:

```
db2 reset monitor all
```

- To get a current snapshot after you restart a database instance, use the following command:

```
db2 get snapshot for all on database_name output_file_name
```

Results

Your long-running processes are running as fast as possible under the current environment and loading conditions.

Fine-tuning the messaging provider

Use this task to improve the performance of your messaging provider.

Procedure

If you use the service integration capabilities of WebSphere Application Server, refer to tuning and problem solving for messaging engine data stores in the WebSphere Application Server information center.

Results

The performance of your messaging provider is improved.

Improving the performance of business process navigation

You can tune the performance of long-running processes by enabling performance optimizations, and tuning various configuration parameters.

About this task

A long-running process spans multiple transactions. By default, a transaction is triggered by a Java Messaging Service (JMS) message. To improve the performance of process navigation, you can configure Business Flow Manager to use a work-manager-based implementation for triggering transactions instead of JMS messages. Regardless of whether you use JMS or work-manager navigation mode, you can tune the size of the intertransaction cache.

The following summarizes the characteristics of the two process navigation modes:

JMS message-based navigation

Process navigation handled by JMS messages that are controlled by the process navigation message-driven bean (MDB).

- If the topology is set up so that the messaging engines are local to the application, a process navigates with server affinity unless it is triggered by external events, such as asynchronous messages or human tasks.
- If the topology is set up so that multiple servers in an application cluster use a single remote messaging engine, then navigation within a process is distributed over the servers in the cluster.

Work-manager-based navigation

Process navigation is handled by a thread pool that is controlled by the work manager. Normal navigation of a process instance is done completely with server affinity.

To ensure transactional integrity, the messages that trigger navigation steps are stored in the Business Process Choreographer database. A background recovery thread periodically scans these messages, and if messages exist that are older than a specified maximum age, it sends them to the JMS queue to be picked up by the process navigation MDB. Business Process Choreographer guarantees that each message is executed exactly once.

If an error occurs that causes the navigation step to roll back, the navigation of the process reverts to JMS-controlled navigation.

Server affinity means that navigation within a process instance happens on one WebSphere Application Server, unless an asynchronous service is invoked, a wait or timeout condition is encountered, a receive or pick activity is activated, or a human task is executed. These events can cause navigation within a process to continue on another WebSphere Application Server.

Procedure

1. Configure Business Flow Manager to use work-manager-based process navigation.

In the administrative console, perform the following steps:

- a. Navigate to **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* or **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Flow Manager Configuration** → **Configuration**.
 - b. Select the **Enable advanced performance operations** option. Now you can change the values of the following configuration parameters:
 - Message pool size
 - Maximum age for stalled messages
 - Recovery interval for stalled messages
 - Maximum process time on thread
 - Intertransaction cache size
2. Optional: Increase the maximum number of threads available to the workflow manager.

Business Flow Manager requires two threads for internal processing. The remaining threads are available for process navigation. Start with one additional thread for each processor. If you increase the thread pool size, you also need to increase the connection pool size for the Business Process Choreographer database (BPEDB) and for the connection factory (BPECFC). To change the maximum number of threads, perform the following using the administrative console.

 - a. Navigate to **Resources** → **Asynchronous beans** → **Work managers** → **BPENavigationWorkManager**.
 - b. Under **Thread pool properties**, change the value of **Maximum number of threads**.
 - c. Set the value of **Work request queue size** to be the same as the value of **Maximum number of threads**.
 3. Save your changes.
 4. Restart the server to activate your changes.

Results

The work manager now controls your process navigation.

Tuning microflows

Use this task to improve the performance of microflows.

About this task

Microflows run in memory, without any user-interaction or persistent messaging support. Database access is required only if audit logging or Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) are enabled for the microflow. The processing of a microflow occurs in a single thread, and normally, in a single transaction. The performance of microflows mainly depends on the services called. However, if the memory available for the server is too small, the performance of microflows will be reduced.

Procedure

1. Tune the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) heap size.

By increasing the Java heap size, you can improve the throughput of microflows, because a larger heap size reduces the number of garbage collection cycles that are required. Keep the value low enough to avoid heap swapping to disk. For guidelines on the size of the server heap, see the relevant step in ..

2. Tune the JVM garbage collection. The generational garbage collector policy achieves the best throughput. This policy is activated as a generic JVM argument in the JVM settings. Set the initial value of the collection to half of the total heap size. For example, `-Xgcpolicy:gencon -Xmn512M` activates the policy for a heap size of 1024 MB.

Note: This information does not apply to DB2 UDB for i5/OS.

3. Tune the Object Request Broker (ORB) thread pool size. If remote clients connect to the server-side ORB, make sure that there are enough threads available in the ORB Thread Pool.
4. Tune the default thread pool size. To increase the number of microflows that can run concurrently, you must increase the default thread pool size. To change the value, using the administrative console, navigate to **Servers** → **Application Servers** → *server_name* → **Add properties** → **Thread pools** → **Default**.

Results

Your microflows are running as fast as possible under the current environment and loading conditions.

Related tasks

Tuning long-running processes

Use this task to improve the performance of long-running business processes.

Tuning business processes that contain human tasks

There are various ways to improve the performance of business processes that contain human tasks.

The following topics describe how to tune business processes that contain human tasks.

Reduce concurrent access to human tasks

When two or more people try to claim the same human task, only one person will succeed. The other person is denied access.

Only one person can claim a human task. If several people attempt to work with the same human task at the same time, the probability of collision increases.

Collisions cause delays, because of lock waits on the database or rollbacks. Some ways to avoid or reduce the incidence of collision are as follows:

- If concurrent access is high, limit the number of users who can access a particular human task.
- Avoid unnecessary human task queries from clients, by using intelligent claim mechanisms. For example, you might take one of the following steps:
 - Try to claim another item from the list if the first claim is unsuccessful.
 - Always claim a random human task.
 - Reduce the number of potential owners for the task, for example, by assigning the task to a group with fewer members.
 - Limit the size of the task list by specifying a threshold on the query used to retrieve the list. Also consider using filtering to limit the number of hits. You can filter for properties of a task, for example, only showing tasks with priority one or tasks that are due within 24 hours from now. For an inline task, you can also filter for business data that is associated with the task using custom properties or query properties. To perform such filtering, you must specify an appropriate WHERE clause on the query that retrieves the task list.
 - Minimize or avoid dynamic people queries, that is, ones that use replacement variables.
 - Use a client caching mechanism for human task queries, to avoid running several queries at the same time.

Optimize task and process queries

The query and queryAll API calls for retrieving task and process lists can result in complex SQL queries that include combinations of multiple database tables. An optimized representation of the data helps to address performance requirements, particularly for human workflow applications where multiple users access task lists concurrently.

About this task

If Business Process Choreographer is tuned for queries, response times usually are in the region of subseconds on an adequately sized system, even under high load. You can apply standard database calculations to calculate the response time of queries.





High-volume human workflow scenarios are best tuned with query tables. Query tables provide a precalculated set of data that is relevant for specific queries. For example, query properties must be joined by the database with tasks or process instances when the query runs. If query tables are used, these SQL joins do not need to be calculated anymore at query execution time.

The implementation and maintenance effort for query tables is higher than for standard database tuning techniques. Carefully consider standard database optimization techniques, such as indexes, log file distribution, and memory, before you use query tables.

Two approaches to query tables are supported: materialized views and custom tables. Decide whether to use materialized views or custom tables based on maintenance costs, development costs, and your requirements on the currency of the data that is returned by task and process list queries:

- Use materialized views to take advantage of the asynchronous update mechanism, which provides optimal query and process navigation performance.
 - Updates occur only when the materialized view is used
 - Setup, use, and maintenance is relatively simple
 - Can be implemented without changes to the application source code
- Use custom tables to include data from other applications in standard queries using the query or the queryAll interface. Additionally, custom tables can be used to provide an optimized representation of the data that is needed for task and process queries
 - Database triggers or other techniques can be used to synchronously update a custom table which is optimized for task and process list queries
 - Queries must be changed to query the data provided in the custom table

Related information

-  [Queries on business process and task data](#)
-  [Business Process Choreographer query\(\) and queryAll methods: best practices](#)
-  [Tuning human workflows](#)
-  [DB2 information center: materialized query tables](#)

Chapter 22. Tuning Business Process Choreographer Explorer

The following suggestions provide various ways to improve the performance of the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Procedure

1. Consider increasing the maximum heap size of the server.

Web clients naturally increase the load on your system. The more clients that are connected to your server, the more objects that have to be kept in memory. Therefore consider increasing the maximum heap size of your server. This improves the response time of your application, and increases the maximum number of users that can work in parallel with the application.

2. Tune the Web container thread pool.

The size of the thread pool and the thread inactivity timeout can affect the performance of the Web container. To change these settings navigate to the following area of the administrative console: **Servers** → **Application Servers** → *server_name* → **Thread Pools** → **WebContainer**.

- a. Adjust the maximum and minimum pool size.

All HTTP requests for Web client applications are processed using threads from the Web container thread pool. You can adjust the minimum and maximum pool size to influence the performance of your Web client.

The number of maximum threads in the pool does not represent the number of requests your application server can process concurrently. If all of the threads in the pool are in use, additional requests are queued until they can be assigned to a thread. If a client request waits for a thread to be assigned, the response time increases for the client. However, if the maximum number is set too high, the system might get overloaded resulting in an even worse response time for the clients. It might also cause other applications to slow down dramatically.

To determine whether changing the container size might result in a performance gain, you can use Tivoli® Performance Viewer to monitor the load on the threads (PercentMaxed counter) and the number of active threads (ActiveThreads counter) for the Web container module. If the value of the PercentMaxed counter is consistently in double digits, then the Web container might be a bottleneck. In this case, increase the number of threads. If the number of active threads is lower than the number of threads in the pool, decreasing the thread pool size might result in a performance gain.

- b. Adjust the thread inactivity timeout.

The thread inactivity timeout defines after how many milliseconds of inactivity that should elapse before a thread is reclaimed. Set this timeout to a low value, for example, 1, so that many users can work concurrently without having to wait for a free thread in the thread pool. A value of 0 indicates no wait time.

3. Decrease the search limit for large lists.

If you are working with large task or process lists, you might want to decrease the search limit for lists to avoid gathering data that is not accessed by users. To change this setting, navigate to the following area in the administrative console: **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster_name* or **Servers** → **Application Servers** →

server_name, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Explorer Configuration**.

Related tasks

Using the administrative console to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer

You can use the administrative console to configure Business Process Choreographer Explorer and the optional Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Related reference

Using the clientconfig.jacl script file to configure the Business Process Choreographer Explorer

This script file configures Business Process Choreographer Explorer and all the necessary resources on a server or cluster. You can also use it to change configuration settings for an existing instance, including changing the `maxListEntries` and configuring the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function.

Tuning the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function

The time required to generate a report can vary, and depends on many factors. The following suggestions provide various ways to improve the performance of report generation.

Update your database statistics

For DB2 and Oracle databases, updating the database statistics when you have a populated production database can improve the performance dramatically.

- To update the statistics for a DB2 database, enter the following commands:

```
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.EVENT_ACT_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.EVENT_PRC_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.INST_ACT_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.INST_PRC_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.OPEN_EVENTS_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.QUERY_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;  
RUNSTATS ON TABLE schema_prefix.SLICES_T WITH DISTRIBUTION AND DETAILED INDEXES ALL;
```

For large databases, for example, with more than 500 000 process instances, use the `WITH DISTRIBUTION AND SAMPLED DETAILED INDEXES ALL` statement when you run the `RUNSTATS` utility.

- To update the statistics for an Oracle database, enter the following commands:

```
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.EVENT_ACT_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.EVENT_PRC_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.INST_ACT_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.INST_PRC_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.OPEN_EVENTS_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.QUERY_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;  
ANALYZE TABLE schema_prefix.SLICES_T COMPUTE STATISTICS;
```

Where *schema_prefix* is the name of the database schema that was used when the database for the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting function was created. For more information about updating the database statistics, refer to the documentation for your database.

Reduce the number of emitted events

In WebSphere Integration Developer, you can define the logging of activities or processes at a very detailed level. Activity audit events are relevant for reporting

only if events are also generated for the process that contains the activity. Activity events that cannot be associated with a process are ignored by the event collector application, and they are not stored in the database. To reduce the number of emitted events, perform the following steps:

1. Select the process templates that you want to audit, and disable the emission of events for processes that you are not interested in.
2. Select the activities of this process template that you want to audit. Check whether you can omit some of the events without impacting your report results.

To get an accurate picture of an activity or a process, you should either audit all or none of the event types.

Use the SQL user-defined functions implementation

To create reports, you must install some specific user-defined functions (UDFs) in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting database. The UDFs are provided as an SQL-based implementation and a Java-based implementation. The SQL implementation performs faster than the Java implementation, but has some disadvantages. If you are using the Java implementation, consider switching to the SQL implementation.

For more information about the advantages and disadvantages of the SQL and Java implementations, read about selecting a user-defined function.

Use a separate database

If the reporting data is stored in the Business Process Choreographer database (BPEDB), report generation will have a negative impact on runtime performance. You will get better performance if the reporting data is stored in a separate reporting database and you can apply different tuning parameters to each of the databases. Also consider hosting the reporting database on a separate database server.

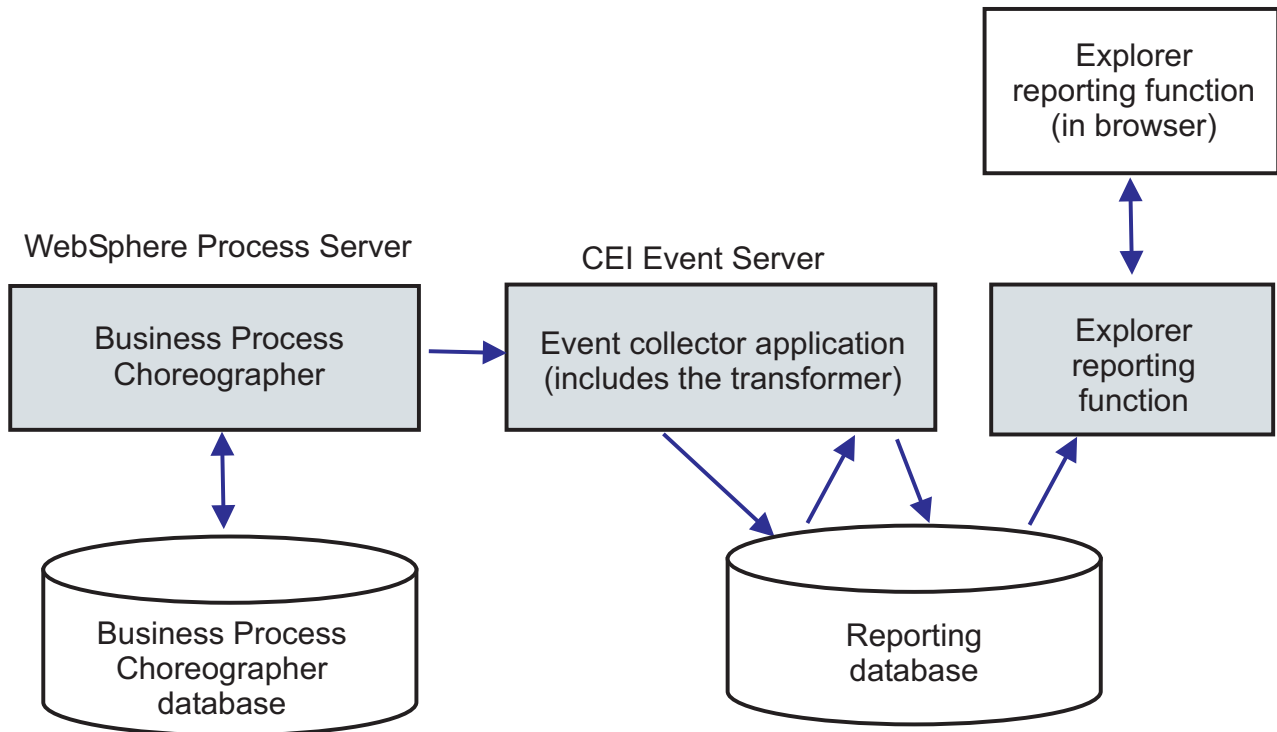


Figure 16. Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting setup for production performance

Increase timeout values

It can take a long time to generate a report. If it takes too long, a transaction timeout or a connection timeout of the JDBC driver might occur. If this happens, increase the timeout values as follows:

1. In the administrative console, navigate to **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server_name* → **Transaction Service**.
2. If the **Total transaction lifetime timeout** value is less than the **Maximum transaction timeout** value, make it the same.
3. If you are still experiencing performance problems, set the **Total transaction lifetime timeout** value to 0 and increase the **Maximum transaction timeout** value.
4. If you are still experiencing performance problems, set both the **Total transaction lifetime timeout** and the **Maximum transaction timeout** values to 0, and increase the value of the connection timeout for the JDBC driver. To do this, navigate to the connection pool properties for your data source under **JDBC** → **JDBC providers** > *JDBC provider* → **Data sources** → *data_source_name* → **Connection pool properties**, and increase the **Connection timeout** value.

In a server cluster, you must adjust the transaction timeout values for all of the cluster members.

Delete unnecessary data

The report performance depends on the amount of instance and event data in the reporting database. Performance is reduced if large amounts of data are queried to produce the report. Report performance can improve if you reduce the number of process and activity instances that are in the reporting database. Regularly deleting unnecessary or old information can help to improve performance.

Related tasks

Selecting between Java and SQL user-defined functions

You can either use the `setupEventCollector` tool or run scripts to switch between the Java-based and SQL-based user-defined functions (UDFs) in the reporting database.

Deleting data from the reporting database

Use an administrative script to selectively delete from the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer, all of the data for process instances that match specified conditions. Deleting unnecessary data can improve the performance generating reports.

Part 7. Troubleshooting

Chapter 23. Troubleshooting the Business Process Choreographer configuration

Use this topic to solve problems relating to the configuration of Business Process Choreographer and its Business Flow Manager, or Human Task Manager components.

About this task

The purpose of this section is to aid you in understanding why the configuration of Business Flow Manager or Human Task Manager is not working as expected and to help you resolve the problem. The following tasks focus on problem determination and finding solutions to problems that might occur during configuration.

Related information



Troubleshooting Guide for WebSphere Process Server

Business Process Choreographer log files

This describes where to find the log files for your Business Process Choreographer configuration.

Profile creation

The profile actions for Business Process Choreographer write to the `bpcaugment.log` file in the logs directory of the profile tool. You can find more detailed traces in the `createBPCObjects.traceout` file in the same directory. On Windows systems, these files are in the `install_root/logs/manageprofiles/profileName/logs` directory, and on Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS systems, they are in the `install_root\logs\manageprofiles\profileName\logs`.

If you select the sample configuration option in the profile wizard, it invokes the `bpeconfig.jacl` script, and actions are logged in the `bpeconfig.log` file in the profile logs directory. This directory is in the `profile_root` directory.

Administrative scripts

All of the Business Process Choreographer scripts that are run using `wsadmin` are logged in the `wsadmin.traceout` file in the logs directory of the profile tool. However, because this file is overwritten each time that `wsadmin` is invoked, make sure that you save this log file before invoking `wsadmin` again.

Configuration-related scripts

The script files `bpeconfig.jacl`, `bpeupgrade.jacl`, `clientconfig.jacl`, and `bpeunconfig.jacl` write their log files in the logs directory with the names `bpeconfig.log`, `bpeupgrade.log`, `clientconfig.log`, and `bpeunconfig.log`.

The following configuration scripts write their log files in the logs directory to the `setupEventCollector.log` file.

- `setUpEventCollector.bat` (Windows systems)

- setUpEventCollector.sh (Linux and UNIX systems)
- setUpEventCollector (i5/OS systems)

Also check the wsadmin.traceout file.

Administrative utility scripts

The administrative scripts in the admin subdirectory of the ProcessChoreographer directory do not write their own log files. Check the wsadmin.traceout file and the application server log files.

Troubleshooting the Business Process Choreographer database and data source

Use this task to solve problems with the Business Process Choreographer database and data source.

About this task

Both Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager need a database. Without the database, enterprise applications that contain business processes and human tasks will not work.

- If you are using DB2:
 - If you use the DB2 Universal JDBC driver type 4 and get DB2 internal errors such as "com.ibm.db2.jcc.a.re: XAER_RMERR : The DDM parameter value is not supported. DDM parameter code point having unsupported value : 0x113f DB2ConnectionCorrelator: NF000001.PA0C.051117223022" when you test the connection on the Business Process Choreographer data source or when the server starts up, perform the following actions:
 1. Check the class path settings for the data source. In a default setup the WebSphere variable `{DB2UNIVERSAL_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH}` can point to the WebSphere Process Server embedded DB2 Universal JDBC driver which is found in the `universalDriver_wbi` directory.
 2. The version of the driver might not be compatible with your DB2 server version. Make sure that you use the original `db2jcc.jar` files from your database installation, and not the WebSphere Process Server embedded DB2 Universal JDBC driver. If required, changed the value of the WebSphere variable `{DB2UNIVERSAL_JDBC_DRIVER_PATH}` to point to your original `db2jcc.jar` file.
 3. Restart the server.
 - If the `db2diag.log` file of your DB2 instance contains messages like `ADM5503E` as illustrated below:

```
2004-06-25-15.53.42.078000 Instance:DB2 Node:000
PID:2352(db2syscs.exe) TID:4360 Appid:*LOCAL.DB2.027785142343
data management sqlEscalateLocks Probe:4 Database:BPEDB
```

```
ADM5503E The escalation of "10" locks on table "GRAALFS .ACTIVITY_INSTANCE_T"
to lock intent "X" has failed. The SQLCODE is "-911"
```

Increase the `LOCKLIST` value. For example to set the value to 500, enter the following DB2 command:

```
db2 UPDATE DB CFG FOR BPEDB USING LOCKLIST 500
```

This can improve performance significantly.

- To avoid deadlocks, make sure your database system is configured to use sufficient memory, especially for the buffer pool. For DB2, use the DB2 Configuration Advisor to determine reasonable values for your configuration.
- If you get errors mentioning the data source implementation class `COM.ibm.db2.jdbc.DB2XADataSource`:
 - Check that the class path definition for your JDBC provider is correct.
 - Check that the component-managed authentication alias is set to `BPCDB_nodeName.serverName_Auth_Alias` if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a server, and `BPCDB_clusterName_Auth_Alias` if Business Process Choreographer is configured on a cluster.
- If you are using Derby:
 - If you get a "Too many open files" error on Linux or UNIX systems, increase the number of file handles available, for example, to 4000 or more. For more information about how to increase the number of available file handles, refer to the documentation for your operating system.
 - If you get a "Java class not found" exception when trying to invoke `ij` command line processor, make sure that you have set up the Java environment, and that your classpath environment variable includes the following JAR files:
 - `derby.jar`
 - `derbytools.jar`
 - If you are using the embedded Derby driver, and you cannot connect to your Derby database using the Derby tools (like `ij`), and you get the following exception:

```
ERROR XJ040: Failed to start database 'c:\WebSphere\AppServer\profiles\profile_name\databases\BPEDB',
see the next exception for details.
ERROR XSDB6: Another instance of Derby may have already booted the database
c:\WebSphere\AppServer\profiles\profile_name\databases\BPEDB.
```

ensure that only one application accesses the Derby database at a time.

- If you get a database error when installing an enterprise application that contains a business process or human task, make sure that the database system used by the business process container is running and accessible. When an enterprise application is installed, any process templates and task templates are written into the Business Process Choreographer database.
- If you have problems using national characters. Make sure that your database was created with support for Unicode character sets.
- If tables and views cannot be found in the database and the create schema option is not enabled, check the following:
 - If a database schema qualifier is configured, check the following:
 - The schema qualifier must match the schema in the database. It must be the same schema as used in the scripts.
 - The user must be granted the privileges to work with the database tables and views.
 - If no schema qualifier is configured, ensure that:
 - The authentication alias of the user must be the same user ID as the one that is used to run the scripts, or must match the schema qualifier that is used in the scripts.
 - The user must be granted the privileges to work with the database tables and views.

- If the create schema option is enabled, and the database table and views cannot be found, the database tables and objects will be created automatically using the following terms:
 - If a schema qualifier is configured, the tables and views will be created using the schema qualifier.
 - If no schema qualifier is configured, the tables and views will be created using the user ID.

REST API: The URL is not configured correctly

The Representational State Transfer (REST) API must be configured correctly, otherwise you get an error when you try to use the process state view widget in the Business Process Choreographer Explorer or Business Space.

Reason

This can have the following causes:

- If you want to use the graphical process widget in a clustered environment, you must set the endpoints for the Business Flow Manager and Human Task Manager REST APIs manually.
- If you configured the Business Process Choreographer Explorer in a cluster, you must configure the correct host name and port for a Web server to achieve load balancing.
- If you change the context root or map Web modules to a Web server, you might need to change the URL for the REST API.

Resolution

To correct this problem:

- If you configured a Business Process Choreographer Explorer instances, check your log files for messages CWWBZ0052W or CWWBZ0053W, which contain information about the URL that the instance was configured to use.
- If you have multiple Business Process Choreographer configurations in a cell, and the REST API Web modules for the Business Flow Manager (BPEContainer application) and the Human Task Manager (TaskContainer application) are mapped to the same Web server, these Web modules must have unique context roots.
 1. In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 2. Make sure that the context root for the Web module BFMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 3. In the administrative console click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **TaskContainer_suffix** → **Context Root for Web Modules**, where *suffix* is either *node_name_server_name* or the *cluster_name* where Business Process choreographer is configured.
 4. Make sure that the context root for the Web module HTMRESTAPI is correct and unique.
 5. If you use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Business Process**

Choreographer Explorer, and set the new value. For example, if the context root for the Business Flow Manager REST API is /rest/bpm/bfm then the full URL might be something like http://localhost:9080/rest/bpm/bfm.

6. If you use the Business Space: Change the REST endpoints to match the new context roots by clicking **Application servers** then either *server_name* or *cluster_name*, then under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click either **Business Flow Manager** or **Human Task Manager**, then under **Additional Properties** click **REST Service Endpoint**, and set the new value.

6.0.x Business Process Choreographer API client fails in a version 6.2 environment

You did not migrate your 6.0.x Business Process Choreographer API client when you upgraded to WebSphere Process Server Version version 6.2. When you try to run your client in the version 6.2 environment, the client fails.

Symptom

Exceptions similar to the following are written to the SystemOut.log file:

```
[9/6/07 21:05:27:093 PDT] 00000045 ExceptionUtil E CNTR0020E: EJB threw an unexpected
(non-declared) exception during invocation of method "processMessage" on
bean "BeanId(validateDataApp#validateDataEJB.jar#component.validateItem, null)".
Exception data: javax.ejb.AccessLocalException: ;
nested exception is: com.ibm.websphere.csi.CSIAccessException:
SECJ0053E: Authorization failed for /UNAUTHENTICATED while invoking
(Home)com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome create:4
securityName: /UNAUTHENTICATED;accessID: UNAUTHENTICATED is not granted any of the required
roles: BPEAPIUser
com.ibm.websphere.csi.CSIAccessException: SECJ0053E: Authorization failed for
/UNAUTHENTICATED while invoking (Home)com/ibm/bpe/api/BusinessFlowManagerHome
create:4 securityName: /UNAUTHENTICATED;accessID: UNAUTHENTICATED is not granted any of the required
roles: BPEAPIUser
at com.ibm.ws.security.core.SecurityCollaborator.performAuthorization(SecurityCollaborator.java:484)
at com.ibm.ws.security.core.EJSSECollaborator.preInvoke(EJSSECollaborator.java:218)
at com.ibm.ejs.container.EJSContainer.preInvokeForStatelessSessionCreate(EJSContainer.java:3646)
at com.ibm.ejs.container.EJSContainer.preInvoke(EJSContainer.java:2868)
at com.ibm.bpe.api.EJSLocalStatelessGenericBusinessFlowManagerEJBHome_a412961d.create(Unknown Source)
```

Reason

If you have written a client that uses Business Process Choreographer APIs without first authenticating the user, you should modify the client to perform a login before using the APIs. After migration, the J2EE roles BPEAPIUser and TaskAPIUser are set to the value Everyone, which maintains compatibility with earlier versions by maintaining the 6.0.x behavior of not requiring a login when application security is enabled. For new installations these roles default to the value AllAuthenticated. The use of Everyone to map J2EE roles BPEAPIUser and TaskAPIUser is deprecated.

Resolution

Modify your API client to force the user to log on to the client before they use the APIs.

As a temporary workaround, you can change the mappings for the BPEAPIUser and the TaskAPIUser roles. To change the mapping:

1. In the administrative console, click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications** → **BPEContainer_suffix**, and under **Detail Properties** click **Security role to user/group mapping**
2. Change the BPEAPIUser role from AllAuthenticated to Everyone, and click **OK**.
3. Repeat step 2 for the TaskContainer_suffix and the TaskAPIUser role.
4. After you have modified your client, you must change these roles back to AllAuthenticated to prevent unauthenticated users accessing the APIs.

Enabling tracing for Business Process Choreographer

This describes what to do before contacting support.

Enabling tracing

Business Process Choreographer tracing uses the standard WebSphere Process Server tracing mechanism. This must be enabled in the normal way.

The trace specification is as follows:

```
com.ibm.bpe.*=all:com.ibm.task.*=all:com.ibm.ws.staffsupport.*=all
```

where `com.ibm.bpe.*=all` traces business processes and `com.ibm.task.*=all` traces human tasks. The remaining aspects of human tasks, the people directory providers, are traced by `com.ibm.ws.staffsupport`.

What to send support

After enabling tracing, recreate your problem scenario then provide the following files:

- The WebSphere Application Server FFDC log, located in the `ffdc` folder
- The following log files:
 - `SystemOut.log`
 - `SystemErr.log`
 - `trace.log`

On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS systems, these files are located in the `profile_root/logs/server_name` directory. On Windows platforms they are located in the `profile_root\logs\server_name` directory.

If your problem scenario causes a lot of logging, backup files for the logs might be created with names, such as `SystemOut_07.10.01_11.00.51.log`. You can use the administrative console to change the number of backup files that are created and the size of the log files. It might be good to increase both of these values to ensure that you capture all of the data.

Related information

 [Troubleshooting Guide for WebSphere Process Server](#)

Chapter 24. Troubleshooting business processes and human tasks

Use this topic to solve problems relating to business processes and human tasks.

About this task

The following tasks focus on troubleshooting problems that can happen during the execution of a business process or task.

Troubleshooting the installation of business process and human task applications

This topic describes the symptoms and solutions for problems that can happen when you install an application that contains business processes, human tasks, or both.

Symptom: Exceptions occur after the installation of business processes or human tasks

When you install an application containing business processes, human tasks, or both, you get exceptions similar to the following in the SystemOut.log file of the deployment manager or the stand-alone server:

- CWWBF0064E: server1 is not configured to run business process applications
- CWTCO0017E: server1 is not configured to run human task applications

Reason

Neither the business process container nor the human task container is configured on the deployment target.

Resolution

To use business process and human task functionality, you must configure both the business process container and the human task container. For information, see [Configuring Business Process Choreographer](#).

Symptom: Application does not start after installation and a successful configuration repository update

An application that contains business processes, human tasks, or both does not start after it was installed successfully. This means that configuration changes were saved in the administrative console or saved using the wsadmin tool.

Reason

The installation of an application which contains business processes or human tasks is divided into two stages. The first stage is finished after the configuration change is saved to the configuration repository. Then the next stage starts. This second stage, called deployment, stores the business process and human task templates found within the application in the Business Process Choreographer

database. This step is started when either the configuration repository is synchronized within a network deployment environment, or when an attempt is made to start this application.

Depending on the number of templates within the application and the hardware you are using, the deployment stage can take some time, and therefore the application does not start.

There might also be an issue during the deployment to Business Process Choreographer database. In this case, examine the logs, traces, and FFDCs to get more information.

Resolution

Depending on the deployment environment, examine the SystemOut.log file, the SystemErr.log file, and FFDCs.

If the deployment environment is a stand-alone server, look for these logs and FFDCs on that server.

If the deployment environment is a network deployment one, look for these logs and FFDCs on all servers that are part of the deployment target and on all node agents which manage these servers.

If these logs and FFDCs do not indicate an issue, enable the following trace, and contact your support representative for help.

```
*=info: com.ibm.bpe.*=all: com.ibm.task.*=all: com.ibm.ws.staffsupport.*=all
```

If the deployment environment is a stand-alone server, enable tracing on this server.

If the deployment environment is a network deployment one, enable tracing on all servers that are part of the deployment target and on all node agents which manage these servers.

Symptom: Application does not deploy on a previous level WebSphere Process Server

An application created with a newer version WebSphere Integration Developer does not install on WebSphere Process Server.

Reason

The WebSphere Process Server runtime version must be the same or later than the .EAR file version that you are attempting to install.

Resolution

Use a WebSphere Process Server version which is the same or later than the version of the .EAR file generated by WebSphere Integration Developer. Alternatively, use an appropriate version of WebSphere Integration Developer.

Symptom: Application does not deploy on a mixed version cluster

In a cluster mixed version members, some of which were recently migrated, an application that contains business processes, human tasks, or both cannot be installed, updated, or uninstalled.

Reason

The installation, update, or uninstallation of applications that contain business processes or human tasks is **not** supported in mixed version environments, regardless of the version that you try to install.

Resolution

Finish the migration before you attempt to install, update, or uninstall these applications.

Symptom: Code generation does not work when using shared libraries

When shared libraries are accessed from an application that contains business processes, the application might not install, and it gives an error similar to the following:

```
com.ibm.bpe.plugins.DeploymentCodeGenerationCompileFailedException:  
CWWBD0338E: Compiling java code for BPEL file com/ibm/test/bpel/DeployTestBpel.bpel' failed
```

Reason

There is a known limitation with application installation and shared libraries. See the following Technote for details: Technote 21268185.

Troubleshooting the uninstallation of business process and human task applications

This topic describes the symptoms and solutions to problems that can happen when you uninstall an application that contains business processes, human tasks, or both.

Symptom: Application uninstallation failed because instances exist

When you uninstall an application containing business processes, human tasks, or both, you get exceptions similar to the following in the SystemOut.log file of the deployment manager or the stand-alone server:

- CWT00006E: Human Task *task_name* has got instances. Remove the instances before uninstalling the application.
- CWWBF0025E: Process *process_name* still has instances. Terminate and delete all process instances before updating or uninstalling a process application.

Also, you get similar exceptions in the SystemErr.log file of the deployment manager or the stand-alone server.

Reason

The application you are trying to uninstall contains business processes, human tasks, or both. At least one template of such a business process or human task has instances associated with it. In order to uninstall an application containing business processes, human tasks, or both, associated instances must not exist.

The only exception to this rule is if you are working with a stand-alone server, and this server has the **Run in development mode** option enabled. Then it is possible to uninstall applications, although they have existing instances. For more information on how to specify the **Run in development mode** option, see http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wasinfo/v6r1/index.jsp?topic=/com.ibm.websphere.nd.multiplatform.doc/info/ae/ae/urun_rappsvr.html.

Resolution

Make sure that no instances of these business processes or human tasks exist that are part of your application. Use the Business Process Choreographer Explorer to browse for process instances and task instances and to delete these.

To uninstall your application, follow the instructions in “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using the administrative console” on page 626 or “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command” on page 627.

Symptom: Application uninstallation failed because instances exist although you cannot find them

When you uninstall an application containing business processes, human tasks, or both, the uninstallation failed because business process or human task instances exist that relate to this application although you cannot query for these instances. The application was not uninstalled.

Reason

This kind of issue can occur and it can be difficult to determine a common reason for this failure.

Resolution

Check with your Business Flow Manager system administrator and your Human Task Manager system administrator to make sure that all of the business process and human task instances that belong to your application are deleted. This is also the preferred method in a production environment. To delete completed process instances, use Business Process Choreographer Explorer or the script described in the topic: “Deleting completed process instances” on page 329.

To force the uninstallation of your application with the **-force** option, use the `bpcTemplates.jacl` script. **Caution: It is not recommended to use the -force option in a production environment.** To use the `bpcTemplates.jacl` script, follow the instructions in “Uninstalling business process and human task applications, using an administrative command” on page 627. This action deletes all of the existing process and task instances during the application uninstallation.

Troubleshooting the execution of business processes

This describes the solutions to common problems with business process execution.

About this task

In Business Process Choreographer Explorer, you can search for error message codes on the IBM technical support pages.

Procedure

1. On the error page, click the **Search for more information** link. This starts a search for the error code on the IBM technical support site. This site only provides information in English.
2. Copy the error message code that is shown on the error page to the clipboard. The error code has the format CWWBcnnnc, where each c is a character and nnnn is a 4-digit number. Go to the WebSphere Process Server technical support page.
3. Paste the error code into the **Additional search terms** field and click **Go**.

What to do next

Solutions to specific problems are in the following topics.

ClassCastException when stopping an application containing a microflow

The SystemOut.log file contains ClassCastException exceptions around the time when an application containing a microflow had been stopped.

Reason

When an application is stopped, the classes contained in the EAR file are removed from the class path. However, microflow instances that need these classes may still be executing.

Resolution

Perform the following actions:

1. Stop the microflow process template first. From now on, it is not possible to start new microflow instances from that template.
2. Wait for at least the maximum duration of the microflow execution so that any running instances can complete.
3. Stop the application.

Unexpected exception during invocation of the processMessage method (message: CNTR0020E)

The business process container has stopped and the client could not connect to the server.

Resolution

Verify that the business process container is running.

XPath query returns an unexpected value from an array

Using an XPath query to access a member in an array returns an unexpected value.

Reason

A common cause for this problem is assuming that the first element in the array has an index value of zero. In XPath queries in arrays, the first element has the index value one.

Resolution

Check that your use of index values into arrays start with element one.

An activity has stopped because of an unhandled fault (Message: CWWBE0057I)

The system log contains a CWWBE0057I message, the process is in the state "running", but it does not proceed its navigation on the current path.

Reason

An activity is put in a stopped state, if all of the following happen:

- A fault is raised by either the activity's implementation or during the evaluation of a condition, timer, or counter value associated with the activity, for example, its join condition or any of the transition conditions of its outgoing links.
- The fault is not handled on the enclosing scope.
- For invoke activities, inline human tasks, and Java snippets, if either of the following happens:
 - The `continueOnError` attribute of the process is set to `no` and the `continueOnError` attribute of the activity is set to `inherit` or `no`.
 - The `continueOnError` attribute of the process is set to `yes` and the `continueOnError` attribute of the activity is set to `no`.
- For all other activities, the `continueOnError` attribute of the process is set to `no`.

Resolution

The solution to this problem requires actions at two levels:

1. An administrator must repair the stopped activity instance manually. For example, to force complete or force retry the stopped activity instance.
2. The reason for the failure must be investigated. In some cases the failure is caused by a modeling error that must be corrected in the model.

"Managing the life cycle of a business process" on page 504

A process instance comes into existence when a Business Process Choreographer API method that can start a process is invoked. The navigation of the process instance continues until all of its activities are in an end state. Various actions can be taken on the process instance to manage its life cycle.

"Repairing activities" on page 516

A long-running process can contain activities that are also long running. These activities might encounter uncaught errors and go into the stopped state. An activity in the running state might also appear to be not responding. In both of these cases, a process administrator can act on the activity in a number of ways so that the navigation of the process can continue.

A microflow is not compensated

A microflow has called a service, and the process fails, but the undo service is not called.

Resolution

There are various conditions that must be met to trigger the compensation of a microflow. Check the following:

1. Log on to the Business Process Choreographer Explorer and click **Failed Compensations** to check whether the compensation service has failed and needs to be repaired.
2. The compensation of a microflow is only triggered when the transaction for the microflow is rolled back. Check whether this is the case.
3. The compensationSphere attribute of the microflow must be set to required.
4. A compensation service is only run, if the corresponding forward service has not participated in the microflow's transaction. Ensure that the forward service does not participate in the navigation transaction, for example, on the reference of the process component, set the Service Component Architecture (SCA) qualifier suspendTransaction to True.

A long-running process appears to have stopped

A long-running process is in the state running, but it appears that it is doing nothing.

Reason

There are various possible reasons for such behavior:

1. A navigation message has been retried too many times and has been moved to the retention or hold queue.
2. A reply message from the Service Component Architecture (SCA) infrastructure failed repeatedly.
3. The process is waiting for an event, timeout, or for a long-running invocation or task to return.
4. An activity in the process is in the stopped state.

Resolution

Each of the above reasons requires different corrective actions:

1. Use the failed event manager console to display details about a failed message and to replay it.
2. Check if there are any failed message in the failed event management view of the administrative console.
 - If there are any failed events from Service Component Architecture (SCA) reply messages, reactivate the messages.
 - Otherwise, either force complete or force retry the long-running activity.
3. Check if there are activities in the stopped state, and repair these activities. If your system log contains a CWWBE0057I message you might also need to correct your model as described in Message: CWWBE0057I.

Invoking a synchronous subprocess in another EAR file fails

When a long-running process calls another process synchronously, and the subprocess is located in another enterprise archive (EAR) file, the subprocess invocation fails.

Example of the resulting exception:

```
com.ibm.ws.sca.internal.ejb.util.EJBStubAdapter com.ibm.ws.sca.internal.ejb.util.EJBStubAdapter#003
Exception:
java.rmi.AccessException: CORBA NO_PERMISSION 0x49424307 No; nested exception is:
org.omg.CORBA.NO_PERMISSION: The WSCredential does not contain a forwardable token.
Please enable Identity Assertion for this scenario.
vmcid: 0x49424000 minor code: 307 completed: No
at com.ibm.CORBA.iiop.UtilDelegateImpl.mapSystemException(UtilDelegateImpl.java:202)
at javax.rmi.CORBA.Util.mapSystemException(Util.java:84)
```

Reason

Because the subprocess invocation leads to a remote EJB method call, Common Secure Interoperability Version 2 (CSIv2) identity assertion must be enabled when calling a synchronous subprocess in another EAR file.

Resolution

Configure CSIv2 inbound authentication and CSIv2 outbound authentication.

Hung threads when a long-running process is invoked synchronously (Message: WSVR0605W)

A long-running process invokes another long-running process synchronously. Under heavy workload conditions, the thread monitor reports hung threads in the SystemOut.log file (message WSVR0605W).

Reason

A long-running process that is called synchronously can often cause hung threads. A long-running process usually spans several transactions and needs a free thread to continue with its navigation. If all of the available threads are involved in the navigation step of the parent process that invokes the subprocess, the system becomes unresponsive. Because of the lack of free threads, the subprocess cannot complete.

Resolution

A long-running process should always invoke another long-running process asynchronously, even if the processes are separated by another component. For example, if a long-running process invokes a mediation and this mediation invokes another long-running process, then ensure that the preferred interaction style of the mediation is asynchronous.

Late binding calls the wrong version of a subprocess

A parent process invokes a subprocess using late binding. Both processes are in the same module. A new version of the subprocess is created by copying the module and changing the valid-from timestamp. After the module is deployed, the running instances of the parent process continue to invoke the old version of the subprocess instead of the new version.

Reason

In late binding, the process template name of the subprocess is specified as part of the reference partner properties of the invoke activity in the parent process. Business Choreographer determines the version of the process that is currently valid at runtime.

A common reason for late binding using the wrong version of a subprocess is that the module that contains the subprocess does not have a Service Component Architecture (SCA) export. Without an export, processes in other modules are not visible to the parent process and it always invokes the version of the subprocess that is in the same module.

Resolution

In the assembly editor in WebSphere Integration Developer, generate an SCA export with SCA native binding for the new version of the subprocess.

Unexpected exception during execution (Message: CWWBA0010E)

Either the queue manager is not running or the Business Process Choreographer configuration contains the wrong database password.

Resolution

Check the following:

1. If the `systemout.log` file contains "javax.jms.JMSEException: MQJMS2005: failed to create MQQueueManager", start the queue manager.
2. Make sure that the database administrator password stored in the Business Process Choreographer configuration matches the one set in the database.

Event unknown (Message: CWWBE0037E)

An attempt to send an event to a process instance or to start a new process instance results in a "CWWBE0037E: Event unknown." exception.

Reason

A common reason for this error is that a message is sent to a process but the receive or pick activity has already been navigated, so the message cannot be consumed by this process instance again.

Resolution

To correct this problem:

- If the event is supposed to be consumed by an existing process instance, you must pass correlation set values that match an existing process instance which has not yet navigated the corresponding receive or pick activity.
- If the event is supposed to start a new process instance, the correlation set values must not match an existing process instance.

For more information about using correlation sets in business processes, see technote 1171649.

Cannot find nor create a process instance (Message: CWWBA0140E)

An attempt to send an event to a process instance results in a 'CreateRejectedException' message.

Reason

A common reason for this error is that a message is sent to a receive or pick activity that cannot instantiate a new process instance because its `createInstance` attribute is set to `no` and the values that are passed with the message for the correlation set which is used by this activity do not match any existing process instances.

Resolution

To correct this problem you must pass a correlation set value that matches an existing process instance.

For more information about using correlation sets in business processes, see [Correlation sets in BPEL processes](#).

The failed state of the process instance does not allow the requested sendMessage action to be performed (Message: CWWBE0126E)

An attempt to send an event to a process instance results in an 'EngineProcessWrongStateException' message.

Reason

A common reason for this error is that a message is sent to a receive or pick activity to create a new process instance, but a new process instance cannot be instantiated. This situation occurs if the values that are passed with the message for the correlation set that is used by this activity match an existing process instance, which is already in the failed state.

Resolution

To correct this problem you must either delete the existing process instance, or pass a correlation set value that does not match an existing process instance. For more information about using correlation sets in business processes, see [Correlation sets in BPEL processes](#).

Uninitialized variable or NullPointerException in a Java snippet

Using an uninitialized variable in a business process can result in diverse exceptions.

Symptoms

Exceptions such as:

- During the execution of a Java snippet or Java expression, that reads or manipulate the contents of variables, a `NullPointerException` is thrown.

- During the execution of an assign, invoke, reply or throw activity, the BPEL standard fault "uninitializedVariable" (message CWWBE0068E) is thrown.

Reason

All variables in a business process have the value null when a process is started, the variables are not pre-initialized. Using an uninitialized variable inside a Java snippet or Java expression leads to a NullPointerException.

Resolution

The variable must be initialized before it is used. This can be done by an assign activity, for example, the variable needs to occur on the to-spec of an assign, or the variable can be initialized inside a Java snippet.

Standard fault exception "missingReply" (message: CWWBE0071E)

The execution of a microflow or long-running process results in a BPEL standard fault "missingReply" (message: CWWBE0071E), or this error is found in the system log or SystemOut.log file.

Reason

A two-way operation must send a reply. This error is generated if the process ends without navigating the reply activity. This can happen in any of the following circumstances:

- The reply activity is skipped.
- A fault occurs and corresponding fault handler does not contain a reply activity.
- A fault occurs and there is no corresponding fault handler.

Resolution

Correct the model to ensure that a reply activity is always performed before the process ends.

A fault is not caught by the fault handler

A fault handler is attached to an invoke activity to catch specific faults that are thrown by the invoked service. However, even if the invoked service returns the expected fault, the fault handler is not run.

Reason

A common reason for this problem is that the fault handler does not have a fault variable to catch the data that is associated with the fault. If a fault has associated fault data, it is caught by a fault handler only when one of the following situations apply:

- The name of the fault handler matches the fault name and it has a fault variable with a data type that matches the type of the data associated with the fault
- The fault handler does not specify a fault name but it has a fault variable with a data type that matches the type of the data associated with the fault
- The catchAll fault handler is specified

Resolution

Add a fault variable to the fault handler. Ensure that the data type of the fault variable matches the type of the data that is associated with the fault.

Parallel paths are sequentialized

There are two or more parallel invoke activities inside a flow activity, but the invoke activities are run sequentially.

Resolution

- To achieve real parallelism, each path must be in a separate transaction. Set the 'transactional behavior' attribute of all the parallel invoke activities to 'commit before' or 'requires own'.
- If you are using Derby, Oracle, or Informix as the database system, the process engine will serialize the execution of parallel paths. You cannot change this behavior. This is because the locks on database entities for these database systems are not as granular as those for DB2 databases. However, services that are triggered asynchronously by parallel branches still run in parallel; it is only the process navigation that is serialized for these database systems.

Copying a nested data object to another data object destroys the reference on the source object

A data object, Father, contains another data object, Child. Inside a Java snippet or client application, the object containing Child is fetched and set on a substructure of data object, Mother. The reference to Child in data object Father disappears.

Reason

The reference to Child is moved from Father to Mother.

Resolution

When such a data transformation is performed in a Java snippet or client application, and you want to retain the reference in Father, copy the data object before it is assigned to another object. The following code snippet illustrates how to do this:

```
BOCopy copyService = (BOCopy)ServiceManager.INSTANCE.locateService
    ("com/ibm/websphere/bo/BOCopy");
DataObject Child = Father.get("Child");
DataObject BCopy = copyService.copy(Child);
Mother.set("Child", BCopy);
```

CScope is not available

Starting a microflow or running a navigation step in a long-running process fails with an assertion, saying: 'postcondition violation !(cscope != null)'.

Reason

In certain situations, the process engine uses the compensation service, but it was not enabled.

Resolution

Enable the compensation service as described in the PDF for administration.

Working with process-related or task-related messages

Describes how to get more information about Business Process Choreographer messages that are written to the display or a log file.

About this task

Messages that belong to Business Process Choreographer are prefixed with either CWWB for process-related messages, or CWTK for task-related messages. The format of these messages is *PrefixComponentNumberTypeCode*. The type code can be:

- I Information message
- W Warning message
- E Error message

When processes and tasks run, messages are either displayed in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, or they are added to the SystemOut.log file and traces. If the message text provided in these files is not enough to help you solve your problem, you can use the WebSphere Application Server symptom database to find more information. To view Business Process Choreographer messages, check the activity.log file by using the WebSphere log analyzer.

Procedure

1. Start the WebSphere log analyzer.
Run one of the following scripts:
 - On Windows systems, *install_root/bin/waslogbr.bat*
 - On Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS systems, *install_root/bin/waslogbr.sh*
2. Optional: Click **File** → **Update database** → **WebSphere Application Server Symptom Database** to check for the newest version of the symptom database.
3. Optional: Load the activity log.
 - a. Select the activity log file
 - *profile_root\profiles\profile_name\logs\activity.log* file on Windows systems
 - *profile_root/profiles/profile_name/logs/activity.log* file on Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS systems
 - b. Click **Open**.

Troubleshooting the administration of business processes and human tasks

This article describes how to solve some common problems with business processes and human tasks.

About this task

The following information can help you to debug problems with your business processes and human tasks.

- The administrative console stops responding if you try to stop a business process application while it still has process instances. Before you try to stop the application, you must stop the business processes so that no new instances are created, and do one of the following:
 - Wait for all of the existing process instances to end in an orderly way.

- Terminate and delete all of the process instances.

Only then can you stop the process application safely. For more information about preventing this problem, refer to technote 1166009.

- The administrative console stops responding if you try to stop a human task application while it still has task instances. To stop the application, you must:
 1. Stop the human tasks so that no new instances are created.
 2. Perform one of the following:
 - Wait for all of the existing task instances to end in an orderly way.
 - Terminate and delete all task instances.
 3. Stop the task application.
- A long-running business process that is started by an invocation task fails to start. A JSP snippet makes the invocation task available to users. In the following example, the synchronous calling pattern `createAndCallTask` is used. In this case, the long-running business process fails to start:

```
HumanTaskManager htm = ...
TaskTemplate taskTemplate = htm.getTaskTemplate( "start the process" );
Task task = htm.createAndCallTask( taskTemplate.getTKID() );
while (task.getState() != TASK.TASK_STATE_FINISHED)
{
    Sleep(100);
}
```

A long-running process consists of several transactions and its invocation style is asynchronous. Therefore it must be started using the asynchronous calling pattern, `createAndStartTask`.

```
HumanTaskManager htm = ...
TaskTemplate taskTemplate = htm.getTaskTemplate( "start the process" );
Task task = htm.createAndStartTask( taskTemplate.getTKID() );
while (task.getState() != TASK.TASK_STATE_FINISHED)
{
    Sleep(100);
}
```

In addition, the transaction attribute in the JSP deployment descriptor must be set to `NotSupported`. This ensures that the code snippet is executed without a transaction, and the `createAndStartTask` method opens a new transaction to start the process instance. This transaction is committed when the `createAndStartTask` method returns, and the message is visible.

Include a "while" loop for states other than the finished state. For example, if during the execution of the process an activity fails, the end state might be `TASK.TASK_STATE_FAILED`.

Troubleshooting escalation e-mails

Use this information to solve problems relating to escalation e-mails.

About this task

Escalations are triggered when human tasks do not progress as expected. The escalation creates work items. It can also send e-mails to the users that are affected by the escalation. If you are having problems with escalation e-mails, use the information here to help you to solve the problems.

- Check the `SystemOut.log` file for error messages relating to people assignments or e-mail addresses.

- If the SystemOut.log file does not contain any relevant messages, enable the debug mode for the mail session server.
In the administrative console, click **Resources** → **Mail** → **Mail sessions** → **HTMMailSession_server**, and select the **Enable debug mode** check box. When an escalation e-mail is sent, debug information is written to the SystemOut.log file.
- If you are using virtual member manager as the people directory provider and you are having problems with e-mail addresses, enable the Staff.Diagnosis custom property.
 1. In the administrative console, click **Applications servers** → *server_name*.
 2. Under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager Configuration**.
 3. In the **Configuration** tab, under **Additional Properties**, click **Custom Properties** → **Staff.Diagnosis**, and type on in the **Value** field.

When an escalation e-mail is sent, additional information about the people assignment is written to the SystemOut.log file.

- Check if the Human Task Manager hold queue contains messages.
 1. In the administrative console, click **Applications servers** → *server_name*.
 2. Under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager Configuration**.
 3. In the **Runtime** tab, click **Replay Hold Queue**. The messages in the hold queue are shown in the **Hold queue messages** field.

If the hold queue contains messages, check the First Failure Data Capture (FFDC) directory of your server for more information about the error.

- Check the values of the custom properties for the number of times an e-mail is resent and the timeout for sending an e-mail.
 1. In the administrative console, click **Applications servers** → *server_name*.
 2. Under **Business Integration**, expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager Configuration**.
 3. In the **Configuration** tab, under **Additional Properties**, click **Custom Properties**.
 4. Check the values of the **EscalationEmail.RetryTimeout** and the **EscalationEmail.MaxRetries** fields.

EscalationEmail.RetryTimeout

Specifies how long Human Task Manager waits until it resends an e-mail notification that failed. The default value for this field is 3600 s. (one hour) If the retry fails, then the retry timeout is doubled dynamically for every time the retry fails. By default, if the first retry fails, another retry is made after two hours.

EscalationEmail.MaxRetries

Specifies the number of times Human Task Manager tries to resend an e-mail notification that failed. The default value for this field is 4 retries. If the value of this field is set to 0, a failed e-mail notification is not resent. If all of the retries fail, then a message is put into the hold queue. You can see the messages in the hold queue in the administrative console in the **Runtime** tab for Human Task Manager. If you replay the messages, this is equivalent to sending the e-mail for the first time.

Troubleshooting people assignment

Use the following information to help solve problems relating to the assignment of people to authorization roles.

About this task

This information covers the following problems:

- Errors during the deployment of the people directory provider
- Entries in the people directory are not reflected in work item assignments
- Changes to the people directory are not immediately reflected in work-item assignments
- Unexpected people assignments for tasks or process instances
- Stopped human tasks
- Error and warning messages relating to people assignment
- Enabling additional messages about people assignment decisions
- Issues with group work items and the "Group" people assignment criteria
- Cleanup of stored people assignment results
- Adapted XSL transformation file has no effect

You can also search for additional information in the Technical support search page.

Errors during the deployment of the people directory provider

If you are using the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) people directory provider, deployment might fail due to incorrect values of the provider configuration parameters.

- Make sure that all mandatory parameters are set.
- To set the baseDN parameter to the root of the LDAP directory tree, specify an empty string; set the baseDN parameter to two apostrophe (') characters ("). Do not use double quotation marks ("). Failure to set the baseDN parameter results in a NullPointerException exception at deployment time.

Entries in the people directory are not reflected in work item assignments

The maximum number of user IDs retrieved by a people query is specified by the Threshold variable, which is defined in the XSL transformation file in use. The sample XSL transformation file used for the LDAP people directory provider is `LDAPTransformation.xsl`. This file is in the `install-root/ProcessChoreographer/Staff` directory on Linux, UNIX, and i5/OS platforms, and in the `install-root\ProcessChoreographer\Staff` directory on Windows platforms. The default Threshold value is 1000000, therefore by default the threshold value is of no realistic importance. Do not lower this value without careful consideration.

1. Create a new people directory provider configuration, providing your own version of the XSL file.
2. Adapt the following entry in the XSL file according to your needs:

```
<xsl:variable name="Threshold">1000000</xsl:variable>
```

Changes to the people directory are not immediately reflected in work-item assignments

Business Process Choreographer caches the results of people assignments evaluated against a people directory, such as an LDAP server, in the

runtime database. When changes occur in the people directory, these are not immediately reflected in the database cache.

The *Administration guide* describes three ways to refresh this cache:

- **Refreshing people query results, using the administrative console.** Use this method if you have major changes and need to refresh the results for almost all people queries.
- **Refreshing people query results, using administrative commands.** Use this method if you write administration scripts using the wsadmin tool, or if you want to immediately refresh all or a subset of the people query results.
- **Refreshing people query results, using the refresh daemon.** Use this method to set up a regular and automatic refresh of all expired people query results.

Note: None of these methods can refresh the group membership association of a user for the Group verb. This group membership is cached in the user's login session (WebSphere security LTPA token), which by default expires after two hours. The group membership list of the process starter ID that is used for process navigation, is never refreshed.

Unexpected people assignments for tasks or process instances

Default people assignments are performed if you do not define people assignment criteria for certain roles for your tasks, or if people assignment fails or returns no result. These defaults might result in unexpected user authorization; for example, a process starter might receive process administrator rights. In addition, many authorizations are inherited by dependent artifacts. For example, the process administrator may also become the administrator of all inline tasks.

The following tables illustrate which defaults apply for which situation:

Table 118. Roles for business processes

Roles for business processes	If the role is not defined in the process model ...	If the role is defined in the process model, but people assignment fails or does not return proper results ...
Process administrator	Process starter becomes process administrator	An exception occurs and the process is not started: EngineAdministratorCannotBeResolvedException
Process reader	No reader	No reader

Table 119. Roles for inline human tasks and their escalations

Roles for inline human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If the role is defined in the task model, but people assignment fails or does not return proper results ...
Task administrator	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Task potential starter; applies to invocation tasks only	Everybody becomes potential starter	An exception occurs and the process is not started
Task potential owner	Everybody becomes potential owner	Administrators become potential owners
Task editor	No editor	No editor

Table 119. Roles for inline human tasks and their escalations (continued)

Roles for inline human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If the role is defined in the task model, but people assignment fails or does not return proper results ...
Task reader	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Escalation receiver	Administrators become escalation receivers	Administrators become escalation receivers

The following inheritance rules apply for inline tasks:

- Process administrators become administrators for all inline tasks, their subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations.
- Process readers become readers for all inline tasks, their subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations.
- Task administrators become administrators for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Task readers become readers for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Members of any task role become readers for this task's escalations, subtasks, and follow-on tasks.
- Escalation receivers become readers for the escalated task.

Table 120. Roles for stand-alone human tasks and their escalations

Roles for stand-alone human tasks and their escalations	If the role is not defined in the task model ...	If the role is defined in task model, but people assignment fails or does not return correct results ...
Task administrator	Originator becomes administrator	The task is not started
Task potential instance creator	Everybody becomes potential instance creator	An exception is thrown and the task is not created
Task potential starter	Originator becomes potential starter	An exception is thrown and the task is not started
Potential owner	Everybody becomes potential owner	Administrators become potential owners
Editor	No editor	No editor
Reader	Only inheritance applies	Only inheritance applies
Escalation receiver	Administrators become escalation receivers	Administrators become escalation receivers

The following inheritance rules apply for stand-alone tasks:

- Task administrators become administrators for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Task readers become readers for all subtasks, follow-on tasks, and escalations of all these tasks.
- Members of any task role become readers for this task's escalations, subtasks, and follow-on tasks.
- Escalation receivers become readers for the escalated task.

Note: When a method is invoked using the Business Flow Manager API, members of the BPESystemAdministrator role have administrator authorization, and members of the BPESystemMonitor role have reader authorization.

Note: When a method is invoked using the Human Task Manager API, members of the TaskSystemAdministrator role have administrator authorization, and members of the TaskSystemMonitor role have reader authorization.

Stopped human tasks

If you encounter one or more of the following problems:

- Human tasks cannot be claimed, even though the business process started navigating successfully.
- The SystemOut.log file contains the following message: CWWB0057I: Activity 'MyStaffActivity' of processes 'MyProcess' has been stopped because of an unhandled failure...

These problems indicate that administrative security might not be enabled. Human tasks and processes that use people authorization require that security is enabled and the user registry is configured. Take the following steps:

1. Check that administrative security is enabled. In the administrative console, go to **Security** → **Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure** and make sure the **Enable administrative security** check box is selected.
2. Check that the user registry is configured. In the administrative console, go to **Security** → **User Registries** and check the **Active user registry** attribute.
3. Restart the activity, if stopped.

Error and warning messages relating to people assignment

Some common errors can occur when accessing a people directory during people assignment. To see details for these errors, you can enable tracing with the following trace settings: `com.ibm.bpe.*=all`:
`com.ibm.task.*=all:com.ibm.ws.staffsupport.ws.*=all`

The following common error situations are indicated by warning or error messages:

- Could not connect to LDAP server in the trace.log file indicates failure to connect to the LDAP server. Check your network settings, the configuration (especially the provider URL) for the people directory provider you use, and verify whether your LDAP server requires an SSL connection.
- `javax.xml.transform.TransformerException: org.xml.sax.SAXParseException: Element type "xsl:template" must be followed by either attribute specifications, ">" or "/>"` in the System.out or System.err files indicates that the LDAPTransformation.xsl file cannot be read. Check your people assignment configuration and the configured XSLT file for errors.
- LDAP object not found. `dn: uid=unknown,cn=users,dc=ibm,dc=com [LDAP: error code 32 - No Such Object]` in the trace.log file indicates that an LDAP entry cannot be found. Check the task model's people assignment criteria (verb) parameters and the LDAP directory content for mismatches in the task model.
- Requested attribute "uid" not found in: `uid=test222,cn=users,dc=ibm,dc=com` in the trace.log file indicates that an attribute cannot be found in the queried LDAP object. Check the task model's people assignment criteria (verb) parameters and the LDAP directory content for mismatches in the task model. Also check the XSLT file of your people assignment configuration for errors.

Enabling additional messages about people assignment decisions

You can set a custom property to log additional messages in the SystemOut.log. The messages record the following events:

- If people resolution did not find any users for a task role, and default users were selected.
- If you are using VMM, warnings when specified entities or specific attributes could not be found in the VMM people directory.
- If you are using substitution, logs decisions whether or not users have been substituted.

Because these messages can significantly increase the amount of data in SystemOut.log, only enable these additional messages for testing or debugging purposes.

To enable the staff diagnosis feature perform the following:

1. Using the administrative console, click **Servers** → **Application servers** → *server name* or **Servers** → **Clusters** → *cluster name*, then under **Business Integration** expand **Business Process Choreographer**, and click **Human Task Manager** → **Configuration**.
2. Set the value for the custom property Staff.Diagnosis to one of the following values:
 - off** Never writes additional people assignment information.
 - on** Always writes additional people assignment information.
 - development_mode** Only writes additional people assignment information when the server is running in development mode. this is the default value. By default, the WebSphere Test Environment runs in development mode.
3. Restart the server.

The following messages are generated:

- Core.StaffDiagMsgIsEnabled=CWTKE0057I: The output of people (staff) resolution diagnosis messages is enabled. Indicates that the diagnosis feature is enabled. This message is generated when the Human Task Manager is started.
- Core.EverybodyIsPotInstanceCreator=CWTKE0047I: Everybody is potential instance creator for task {0}. Indicates that Everybody became the potential instance creator because no potential instance creator is defined.
- Core.OriginatorBecomesPotStarter=CWTKE0046I: Originator becomes potential starter of task {0}. For standalone tasks only: Indicates that the originator became the potential starter because no potential starter is defined.
- Core.EverybodyIsPotentialStarter=CWTKE0045I: Everybody is potential starter of task {0}. For inline tasks only: Indicates that Everybody became the potential starter because no potential starter is defined.
- Core.OriginatorBecomesAdministrator=CWTKE0044I: Originator becomes administrator of task {0}. Indicates that the originator became the administrator because no administrator is defined.
- Core.EscalationReceiverDoesNotExist=CWTKE0043W: Administrator(s) will be the escalation receiver(s) of the escalation {0}. Indicates that the administrators became the escalation receivers because staff

resolution for the escalation receivers either failed or returned an empty list. If no escalation receiver is defined, the default is Everybody, and a trace message is written.

- `Core.EverybodyIsPotentialOwner=CWTKE0014I`: Everybody is potential owner of task {0}. Indicates that Everybody became the potential owner because no potential owner is defined.
- `Core.PotentialOwnerDoesNotExist=CWTKE0015W`: Administrator(s) will be the potential owner(s) of the task {0}. Indicates that the administrators became the potential owners because staff resolution for the potential owners either failed or returned an empty list. If no potential owner is defined, the default is Everybody, and a trace message is written.
- `StaffPlugin.VMMEntityNotFound=CWWBS0457W`: The VMM entity could not be found, received VMM message is '{0}'. Indicates that a specified VMM entity (a group or person) was not found in the people directory and the reason. People or groups that cannot be found in the people directory are not included in the people resolution result.
- `StaffPlugin.VMMEntityAttributeNotFound=CWWBS0454W`: VMM entity '{0}' has no attribute with name '{1}' of type '{2}'. Indicates that a specified attribute was not found when searching for a VMM entity (person) in the people directory. If no user e-mail address is found, the user cannot receive e-mail notifications for escalations. If no user preferredLanguage is found, the default language setting is used. If no substitution attributes (isAbsent or substitutes) are found when reading, an attempt is made to initialize the attributes. If no substitution attributes are found when writing or updating, an exception is generated.
- `StaffPlugin.VMMResultIsEmpty=CWWBS0456W`: The VMM invocation returned no requested result entities. Indicates that a (get or search) invocation of VMM did not return any entities. No users are included in the people resolution result.

Issues with group work items and the "Group" people assignment criteria

If you are using the Group people assignment criteria, the following situations can occur:

- Group members are not authorized, although the group name is specified:
 - Specify the group short name when using the Local OS registry for WebSphere security, and the group dn when using the LDAP registry.
 - Make sure that you respect the case sensitivity of the group name.One possible reason for this situation is that you have configured the LDAP user registry for WebSphere security and selected the **Ignore case for authorization** option. If so, either deselect the option, or specify LDAP group dn in all uppercase.
- Changes in group membership are not immediately reflected in authorization. This might happen, when the affected user is still logged on. The group membership of a user is cached in her login session, and (by default) expires after two hours. You can either wait for the login session to expire (default is two hours), or restart the application server. The refresh methods offered by Human Task Manager do not apply for this people assignment criteria. Note that the group membership list of the process starter is never refreshed.

Cleanup of stored people assignment results

People assignment results are stored in the database. All stored people assignment results are subject to people assignment refreshes. If the task template that contains the task instance that leads to the computation of a people assignment result is deleted, the stored people assignment result is deleted as well. However, the stored people assignment results are not deleted if only the task instances that are using the stored people assignment results are deleted.

To avoid large numbers of stored and unnecessary people assignment results in the database, take the following steps in the context of a task template:

1. Assess whether your people assignment criteria definitions lead to shared or unshared people assignment results.
2. If unshared assignment results occur, consider putting a cleanup procedure in place for people assignment results. Base the cleanup interval on the expected number of task instances, and the unshared people assignment results per cleanup interval. For more information on how to apply a script-based cleanup procedure, refer to Removing unused people query results, using administrative commands.

Adapted XSL transformation file has no effect

When adapting an XSL transformation file, the server needs to be restarted before the changes take effect. In addition, the adapted XSL file is applied only to newly deployed processes and tasks. The changes have no effect on processes and tasks that have been deployed before the XSL file was changed.

Troubleshooting Business Process Choreographer Explorer

Use this information to solve problems relating to Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

About this task

Use the following information to solve problems relating to accessing or using Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Errors while trying to access Business Process Choreographer Explorer from a browser

If you try to access Business Process Choreographer Explorer with a browser, but get an error message instead of the login page, try the following:

- Use the administrative console to make sure that the Web client application `BPCEXplorer_node_name_server_name` is deployed and running on the server.
- In the administrative console, on the page for the application, under "View Deployment Descriptor", verify that the context root is the one you used when setting up the Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Error message when using Business Process Choreographer Explorer

If you get an error message when using Business Process Choreographer Explorer, click the **Search for more information** link on the error page.

This starts a search for the error code on the IBM technical support site. This site only provides information in English. Copy the error message code that is shown on the Business Process Choreographer Explorer Error

page to the clipboard. The error code has the format CWWBcnnnc, where each c is a character and nnn is a 4-digit number. Go to the WebSphere Process Server technical support page. Paste the error code into the **Additional search terms** field, and click **Go**.

Error message StandardFaultException with the standard fault missingReply (message CWWBE0071E)

If you get a StandardFaultException error with the standard fault missingReply (message CWWBE0071E), this is a symptom of a problem with your process model. For more information about solving this, see “Troubleshooting the administration of business processes and human tasks” on page 727.

Some items not displayed when you log on to Business Process Choreographer Explorer

If you can log on to Business Process Choreographer Explorer but some items are not displayed, or if certain actions are not enabled, this indicates a problem with your authorization. Possible solutions to this problem include:

- Use the administrative console to ensure that WebSphere administrative security is enabled.
- Check that you are logged onto Business Process Choreographer Explorer using the correct identity. If you log on with a user ID that is not a process or task administrator, all administrative views and options are not visible or not enabled.
- Use WebSphere Integration Developer to check or modify the authorization settings defined in the business process.

If the Reports tab is not displayed, contact your system administrator and check that Business Process Choreographer Explorer is configured, including the reporting function.

Error message CWWBU0001E or a communication error with the HTMConnection function

If you get the error message CWWBU0001E: “A communication error occurred when the BFMConnection function was called” or “A communication error occurred when the HTMConnection function was called”, use the following information to help resolve the problem.

This error can indicate that the business process container or human task container has been stopped, and the client could not connect to the server. Verify that the business process container and the human task container are running and accessible. The nested exception might contain further details about the problem.

Error message WWBU0024E

If you get the error message WWBU0024E: “Could not establish a connection to local business process EJB” with a reason “Naming Exception”, use the following information to help resolve the problem.

This error is thrown if users attempt to log on while the business process container is not running. Verify that the application BPEContainer_InstallScope is running, where *InstallScope* is either the cluster_name or hostname_servername.

Troubleshooting Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports

Refer to the information in this topic if you are experiencing difficulty with Business Process Choreographer Explorer reports.

Symptom: Setup of the reporting database using the create tables option fails with error message CWWBO4013E

In the System.out you see the following messages:

- CWWBO4015W: The Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting database schema is incomplete. Use menu option 6 of \$WAS_HOME/ProcessChoreographer/config/setupEventCollector to install the JAR file.
- CWWBO4013E: The bpcodbut1.jar file could not be found on the Derby network server.

Reason

The setup of the reporting database uses the Derby working directory to install a UDF JAR file on the server. If the Derby network server has an incorrect working directory, the JAR file cannot be found.

Resolution

Start the Derby network server from the networkServer subdirectory as follows:

1. If the Derby network server is running, stop it.
2. On a command line, change to the directory \$WAS_HOME/derby/bin/networkServer.
3. Restart the Derby network server, for example, using startNetworkServer.bat.
4. Restart the Business Process Choreographer Explorer application, which triggers the tables creation again.

Symptom: No events displayed on the Reports tab of Business Process Choreographer Explorer

The reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer does not contain any events, or the events are not transformed yet. Various reasons for this are provided in the following sections, including possible resolutions.

Reason

Events are transformed correctly, but do not show up in the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Resolution

If the trace log contains trace entries for the message that events are received, and the startTransform message, but you do not see any events in Business Process Choreographer Explorer, check that the Business Process Choreographer Explorer and event collector are using the same data sources.

1. Using the administrative console, click **Applications** → **Enterprise Applications**, then select the BPCEXplorer application, and click **Resource references**.
2. Note the value for the **Target Resource JNDI Name** of the modules. Typically, this has the value jdbc/BPEDB.
3. Repeat this and compare the value for the Event Collector application.

4. If they are not identical, then make it so.

Reason

No events are received because the CEI service is not enabled on the server.

Resolution

In the administrative console, click **Application servers** → *server* → **Common Event Infrastructure Destination**, and make sure that the check box **Enable service at server startup** is selected.

Reason

CEI logging is not enabled for the business process container.

Resolution

Make sure that CEI logging is enabled for the business process container. Refer to “Enabling logging for Business Process Choreographer” on page 261 to enable CEI logging.

Reason

The Common Event Infrastructure event server or the Business Process Choreographer event collector are not running.

Resolution

Use the administrative console to check that the Common Event Infrastructure event server and the Business Process Choreographer event collector are running.

Reason

Event monitoring for your business processes is disabled.

Resolution

Make sure that event monitoring is enabled in the definitions of your process model in WebSphere Integration Developer. Refer to the WebSphere Integration Developer information center for recommendations on how to enable event monitoring for business processes.

Reason

The event transformer is not triggered.

Resolution

Reduce the threshold setting for the event collector, as described in the documentation about changing configuration parameters for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting. Then create new events, which trigger the event collector.

Reason

Events are generated, and are visible in the CBE browser, but no events are shown in the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer because event distribution is disabled on the event server.

Resolution

In the administrative console, click **Service integration** → **Common Event Infrastructure** → **Event service** → **Event services** → **Default Common Event Infrastructure event server**, and make sure that **Enable event distribution** is selected.

Reason

Inappropriate configuration settings of Business Process Choreographer event collector prevent data from being visible in the reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer.

Resolution

Call the `setupEventCollector` configuration script to change the Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration settings for `BPCEventTransformerEventCount`, `BPCEventTransformerMaxWaitTime`, and `BPCEventTransformerToleranceTime`. Refer to the documentation about changing configuration parameters for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting for more information about changing the Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration settings.

Reason

The `BFMEvents` event group must be defined.

Resolution

In the administrative console, click **Service integration** → **Common Event Infrastructure** → **Event service** → **Event services** → **Default Common Event Infrastructure event server** → **Event groups**, and check that the group `BFMEvents` exists.

- If the group does not exist, install the event collector application again.
- If the event group exists, check the selector string. Typically it is set to the following string: `CommonBaseEvent[starts-with(@extensionName, 'BPC.BFM. ')]`

Symptom: The number of displayed events is less than the number expected

The reporting database of Business Process Choreographer Explorer does not contain any events, or the events are not transformed yet. Various reasons for this are provided in the following sections, including possible resolutions.

Reason

The emitted events are not supported. You can verify this using the trace facility. Enable the trace for `com.ibm.bpe.observer.*`. In the trace, look for messages similar to this: Event Code `eventCode` is not relevant for Observer. Discarding

event.. If you see such a message, the named event is ignored by the event collector.

Resolution

Ensure that events that will be emitted are supported, otherwise they will not be recognized.

Reason

Events are purged because they cannot be associated. The process started event must be emitted in every case, otherwise the events that are triggered by the activities are purged.

To verify if events are purged due to missing predecessor events, check for the message CWWB00014I: A Process Started event was not found for the process instance with the PIID 'nnnnn'. Discarding events. *nnnnn* is the identifier of the process instance.

If the problem continues

- Check the system log file SystemOut.log of the server for error messages.
- Check the deployment and configuration of the Business Process Choreographer event collector and of Business Process Choreographer Explorer. To check the configuration settings, use the administrative console or the clientconfig.jacl configuration script. For further information on how to change the Business Process Choreographer event collector configuration settings, refer to the documentation about changing configuration parameters for Business Process Choreographer Explorer reporting.
- Enable the tracing facility for reporting in the administrative console: **Logging and Tracing** → **server1** → **Diagnostic Trace Service** → **Change Log Detail Levels**. Set detail level all for com.ibm.bpe.observer.*, and restart the BPCECollector and the BPCEExplorer applications.

Using process-related and task-related audit trail information

Explains the event types and database structures for business processes and human tasks.

Before you begin

Logging must be enabled for the business process container, the task container, or both.

About this task

If logging is enabled, for every navigation step of a business process or a human task, information is written to the audit log or Common Event Infrastructure (CEI) log. For more information about CEI, refer to the *Monitoring WebSphere Process Server* PDF. The following topics describe the event types and database structures for business processes and human tasks.

Audit event types for business processes

This describes the types of events that can be written to the audit log during the processing of business processes.

For an event to be logged, the following conditions must be met:

- The corresponding audit logging type is enabled for the business process container
- The event must be enabled for the corresponding entity in the process model

All business process events can be emitted in both the CEI and the audit trail, with the exception of the process template events. The process template events PROCESS_INSTALLED and PROCESS_UNINSTALLED can only be emitted in the audit trail.

The following tables list the codes for audit events that can occur while business processes are running.

Table 121. Process instance events

Audit event	Event code
PROCESS_STARTED	21000
PROCESS_SUSPENDED	21001
PROCESS_RESUMED	21002
PROCESS_COMPLETED	21004
PROCESS_TERMINATED	21005
PROCESS_RESTARTED	21019
PROCESS_DELETED	21020
PROCESS_FAILED	42001
PROCESS_COMPENSATING	42003
PROCESS_COMPENSATED	42004
PROCESS_TERMINATING	42009
PROCESS_FAILING	42010
PROCESS_CORRELATION_SET_INITIALIZED	42027
PROCESS_WORKITEM_DELETED	42041
PROCESS_WORKITEM_CREATED	42042
PROCESS_COMPENSATION_FAILED	42046
PROCESS_EVENT_RECEIVED	42047
PROCESS_EVENT_ESCALATED	42049
PROCESS_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED	42056
PROCESS_PARTNER_CHANGED	42058
PROCESS_CUSTOMPROPERTY_SET	42059
PROCESS_OWNER_TRANSFERRED	42071

Table 122. Activity events

Audit event	Event code
ACTIVITY_READY	21006
ACTIVITY_STARTED	21007
ACTIVITY_COMPLETED	21011
ACTIVITY_CLAIM_CANCELED	21021
ACTIVITY_CLAIMED	21022

Table 122. Activity events (continued)

Audit event	Event code
ACTIVITY_TERMINATED	21027
ACTIVITY_FAILED	21080
ACTIVITY_EXPIRED	21081
ACTIVITY_SKIPPED	42005
ACTIVITY_OUTPUT_MESSAGE_SET	42012
ACTIVITY_FAULT_MESSAGE_SET	42013
ACTIVITY_STOPPED	42015
ACTIVITY_FORCE_RETRIED	42031
ACTIVITY_FORCE_COMPLETED	42032
ACTIVITY_MESSAGE_RECEIVED	42036
ACTIVITY_LOOP_CONDITION_TRUE	42037
ACTIVITY_LOOP_CONDITION_FALSE	42038
ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_DELETED	42039
ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_CREATED	42040
ACTIVITY_ESCALATED	42050
ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_REFRESHED	42054
ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED	42055
ACTIVITY_PARALLEL_BRANCHES_STARTED	42057
ACTIVITY_CUSTOMPROPERTY_SET	42060
ACTIVITY_BRANCH_CONDITION_TRUE	42061
ACTIVITY_ALL_BRANCH_CONDITIONS_FALSE	42062
ACTIVITY_JUMPED	42063
ACTIVITY_SKIP_REQUESTED	42064
ACTIVITY_SKIPPED_ON_REQUEST	42065
ACTIVITY_SKIPPED_ON_EXIT_CONDITION	42070

Table 123. Events related to variables

Audit event	Event code
VARIABLE_UPDATED	21090

Table 124. Control link events

Audit event	Event code
LINK_EVALUATED_TO_TRUE	21034
LINK_EVALUATED_TO_FALSE	42000

Table 125. Process template events

Audit event	Event code
PROCESS_INSTALLED	42006
PROCESS_UNINSTALLED	42007

Table 126. Scope instance events

Audit event	Event code
SCOPE_STARTED	42020
SCOPE_SKIPPED	42021
SCOPE_FAILED	42022
SCOPE_FAILING	42023
SCOPE_TERMINATED	42024
SCOPE_COMPLETED	42026
SCOPE_COMPENSATING	42043
SCOPE_COMPENSATED	42044
SCOPE_COMPENSATION_FAILED	42045
SCOPE_EVENT_RECEIVED	42048
SCOPE_EVENT_ESCALATED	42051
SCOPE_STOPPED	42066
SCOPE_FORCE_COMPLETED	42067
SCOPE_FORCE_RETRIED	42068

Audit event types for human tasks

This describes the types of events that can be written to the audit log during the processing of human tasks.

For an event to be logged, the following conditions must be met:

- The corresponding audit logging type is enabled for the human task container
- The event must be enabled for the corresponding entity in the task model

All human task events can be emitted in both the CEI and the audit trail, with the exception of the task template events. The task template events `TASK_TEMPLATE_INSTALLED` and `TASK_TEMPLATE_UNINSTALLED` can only be emitted in the audit trail.

The following tables list the codes for audit events that can occur while human tasks are running.

Table 127. Task instance events

Audit event	Event code
TASK_CREATED	51001
TASK_DELETED	51002
TASK_STARTED	51003
TASK_COMPLETED	51004
TASK_CLAIM_CANCELLED	51005
TASK_CLAIMED	51006
TASK_TERMINATED	51007
TASK_FAILED	51008
TASK_EXPIRED	51009
TASK_WAITING_FOR_SUBTASK	51010

Table 127. Task instance events (continued)

Audit event	Event code
TASK_SUBTASKS_COMPLETED	51011
TASK_RESTARTED	51012
TASK_SUSPENDED	51013
TASK_RESUMED	51014
TASK_COMPLETED_WITH_FOLLOW_ON	51015
TASK_UPDATED	51101
TASK_OUTPUT_MESSAGE_UPDATED	51103
TASK_FAULT_MESSAGE_UPDATED	51104
TASK_WORKITEM_DELETED	51201
TASK_WORKITEM_CREATED	51202
TASK_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED	51204
TASK_WORKITEM_REFRESHED	51205
TASK_CUSTOMPROPERTY_SET	51301

Table 128. Task template events

Audit event	Event code
TASK_TEMPLATE_INSTALLED	52001
TASK_TEMPLATE_UNINSTALLED	52002

Table 129. Escalation instance events

Audit event	Event code
ESCALATION_FIRED	53001
ESCALATION_WORKITEM_DELETED	53201
ESCALATION_WORKITEM_CREATED	53202
ESCALATION_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED	53204
ESCALATION_WORKITEM_REFRESHED	53205
ESCALATION_CUSTOMPROPERTY_SET	53301

Structure of the audit trail database view for business processes

The AUDIT_LOG_B Business Process Choreographer database view provides audit log information about business processes.

To read the content of the audit trail, use SQL or any other administration tool that supports the reading of database tables and views.

Audit events are related to process entities. The audit event types depend on the entity to which the event refers. The audit event types include:

- Process template events (PTE)
- Process instance events (PIE)
- Activity instance events (AIE)
- Events related to variables (VAR)
- Control link events (CLE)

- Scope-related events (SIE).

For a list of the audit event type codes, see “Audit event types for business processes” on page 741.

The following table describes the structure of the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view. It lists the names of the columns, the event types, and gives a short description for the column.

Inline tasks are logged in the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view and not in the TASK_LOG audit trail view. For example, claiming an inline participating task results in an ACTIVITY_CLAIMED event; a task-related event is not generated.

Table 130. Structure of the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view

Name	PTE	PIE	AIE	VAR	CLE	SIE	Description
AIID			x				The ID of the activity instance that is related to the current event.
ALID	x	x	x	x	x	x	Identifier of the audit log entry.
EVENT_TIME	x	x	x	x	x	x	Timestamp of when the event occurred in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) format.
EVENT_TIME_UTC	x	x	x	x	x	x	Timestamp of when the event occurred in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) format.
AUDIT_EVENT	x	x	x	x	x	x	The type of event that occurred.
PTID	x	x	x	x	x	x	Process template ID of the process that is related to the current event.
PIID		x	x	x	x	x	Process instance ID of the process instance that is related to the current event.
VARIABLE_NAME				x			The name of the variable related to the current event.
SIID						x	The ID of the scope instance related to the event.
PROCESS_TEMPL_NAME	x	x	x	x	x	x	Process template name of the process template that is related to the current event.
TOP_LEVEL_PIID		x	x	x	x	x	Identifier of the top-level process that is related to the current event.
PARENT_PIID		x	x	x	x	x	Process instance ID of the parent process, or null if no parent exists.
VALID_FROM	x	x	x	x	x	x	Valid-from date of the process template that is related to the current event.
VALID_FROM_UTC	x	x	x	x	x	x	Valid-from date of the process template that is related to the current event in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) format.
ATID			x				The ID of the activity template related to the current event.
ACTIVITY_NAME			x			x	Name of the activity on which the event occurred.

Table 130. Structure of the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view (continued)

Name	PTE	PIE	AIE	VAR	CLE	SIE	Description
ACTIVITY_KIND			x				<p>Kind of the activity on which the event occurred. Possible values are:</p> <p>KIND_EMPTY 3 KIND_INVOKE 21 KIND_RECEIVE 23 KIND_REPLY 24 KIND_THROW 25 KIND_TERMINATE 26 KIND_WAIT 27 KIND_COMPENSATE 29 KIND_SEQUENCE 30 KIND_SWITCH 32 KIND_WHILE 34 KIND_PICK 36 KIND_FLOW 38 KIND_SCRIPT 42 KIND_STAFF 43 KIND_ASSIGN 44 KIND_CUSTOM 45 KIND_RETHROW 46 KIND_FOR_EACH_SERIAL 47 KIND_FOR_EACH_PARALLEL 49 KIND_REPEAT_UNTIL 52</p> <p>These are the constants defined for ActivityInstanceData.KIND_*</p>
ACTIVITY_STATE			x				<p>State of the activity that is related to the event. Possible values are:</p> <p>STATE_INACTIVE 1 STATE_READY 2 STATE_RUNNING 3 STATE_SKIPPED 4 STATE_FINISHED 5 STATE_FAILED 6 STATE_TERMINATED 7 STATE_CLAIMED 8 STATE_TERMINATING 9 STATE_FAILING 10 STATE_WAITING 11 STATE_EXPIRED 12 STATE_STOPPED 13</p> <p>These are the constants defined for ActivityInstanceData.STATE_*</p>
CONTROL_LINK_NAME					x		Name of the link that is related to the current link event.
PRINCIPAL		x	x	x	x	x	Name of the principal. This is not set for PROCESS_DELETED events.
VARIABLE_DATA				x			Data for variables for variable updated events.

Table 130. Structure of the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view (continued)

Name	PTE	PIE	AIE	VAR	CLE	SIE	Description
EXCEPTION_TEXT		x	x			x	Exception message that caused an activity or process to fail. Applicable for: PROCESS_FAILED ACTIVITY_FAILED SCOPE_FAILED
DESCRIPTION		x	x	x	x	x	Description of activity or process, containing potentially resolved replacement variables.
CORR_SET_INFO		x					The string representation of the correlation set that was initialized at process start time. Provided with the processCorrelationSetInitialized event (42027).
USER_NAME		x	x				The name of the user whose work item has been changed. This is applicable for the following events: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Process instance work item deleted • Activity instance work item deleted • Process instance work item created • Activity instance work item created
ADDITIONAL_INFO		x	x			x	The contents of this field depends on the type of the event: ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED, PROCESS_WORK_ITEM_TRANSFERRED The name of the user that received the work item. ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_CREATED, ACTIVITY_WORKITEM_REFRESHED, ACTIVITY_ESCALATED The list of all of the users for which the work item was created or refreshed, separated by ';'. If the list contains only one user, the USER_NAME field is filled with the user name of this user and the ADDITIONAL_INFO field will be empty (null). PROCESS_EVENT_RECEIVED, SCOPE_EVENT_RECEIVED If available, the type of operation that was received by an event handler. The following format is used: '{' port type namespace '}' port type name ':' operation name. This field is not set for 'onAlarm' events.

Structure of the audit trail database view for human tasks

The TASK_AUDIT_LOG Business Process Choreographer database view provides audit log information about human tasks.

Inline tasks are logged in the AUDIT_LOG_B view. All other task types are logged in the TASK_AUDIT_LOG view.

To read the content of the audit trail, use SQL or any other administration tool that supports the reading of database tables and views.

Audit events are related to task entities. The audit event types depend on the entity to which the event refers. The audit event types include:

- Task instance events (TIE)
- Task template events (TTE)
- Escalation instance events (EIE)

The following table describes the structure of the TASK_AUDIT_LOG audit trail view. It lists the names of the columns, the event types, and gives a short description for the column.

Inline tasks are logged in the AUDIT_LOG_B audit trail view and not in the TASK_AUDIT_LOG audit trail view. For example, claiming an inline participating task results in an ACTIVITY_CLAIMED event; a task-related event is not generated.

Table 131. Structure of the TASK_AUDIT_LOG audit trail view

Name	TIE	TTE	EIE	Description
ALID	x	x	x	The identifier of the audit log entry.
AUDIT_EVENT	x	x	x	The type of event that occurred. For a list of audit event codes, see "Audit event types for human tasks" on page 744.
CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID	x	x		The identifier of the containing context, for example, ACOID, PTID, or PIID.
DESCRIPTION	x		x	Resolved description string, where placeholders in the description are replaced by their current values. All affected languages are logged together in this column, formatted as an XML document. Only languages with descriptions containing placeholders for create-like events, or that have been explicitly updated for update-like events, are logged.
ESIID			x	The identifier of the escalation instance that is related to the current event.
ESTID			x	The identifier of the escalation template that is related to the current event.
EVENT_TIME	x	x	x	The time when the event occurred in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) format.
FAULT_NAME	x			The name of the fault message. This attribute is applicable to the following events: TASK_FAILED TASK_FAULT_MESSAGE_UPDATED

Table 131. Structure of the TASK_AUDIT_LOG audit trail view (continued)

Name	TIE	TTE	EIE	Description
FAULT_NAME_SPACE	x			The namespace of the fault message type. This attribute is applicable to the following events: TASK_FAILED TASK_FAULT_MESSAGE_UPDATED
FOLLOW_ON_TKIID	x			The ID of the follow-on task instance.
MESSAGE_DATA	x			Contents of the newly created or updated input, output, or fault message.
NAME	x	x	x	The name of the task instance, task template, or escalation instance that is associated with the event.
NAMESPACE	x	x		The namespace of the task instance, task template, or escalation instance that is associated with the event.
NEW_USER				The new owner of a transferred or created work item. If the value is made available via the USERS field, this value may be null . Also see the field USERS. This attribute applies to the following events:
	x			TASK_WORKITEM_CREATED
	x			TASK_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED
			x	ESCALATION_WORKITEM_CREATED
OLD_USER				The previous owner of a transferred work item. This attribute is applicable to the following events:
	x			TASK_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED
	x			TASK_WORKITEM_DELETED
			x	ESCALATION_WORKITEM_TRANSFERRED
PARENT_CONTEXT_ID				The previous owner of a transferred work item. This attribute is applicable to the following events:
			x	ESCALATION_WORKITEM_DELETED
PARENT_CONTEXT_ID	x			The ID of the parent context of the task, for example, an activity template or a task instance. This is only set for subtasks and follow-on tasks.
PARENT_TASK_NAME	x			The name of the parent task instance or template. This is only set for subtasks and follow-on tasks.
PARENT_TASK_NAMESP	x			The namespace of the parent task instance or template. This is only set for subtasks and follow-on tasks.
PARENT_TKIID	x			The identifier of the parent task instance.
PRINCIPAL	x	x	x	The name of the principal whose request triggered the event.
TASK_KIND	x	x		The kind of the task. Possible values are: KIND_HUMAN 101 KIND_ORIGINATING 103 KIND_PARTICIPATING 105 KIND_ADMINISTRATIVE 106

Table 131. Structure of the TASK_AUDIT_LOG audit trail view (continued)

Name	TIE	TTE	EIE	Description
TASK_STATE	x			<p>The state of the task or task template. Possible values for task templates are:</p> <p>STATE_STARTED 1 STATE_STOPPED 2</p> <p>Possible values for task instances are:</p> <p>STATE_INACTIVE 1 STATE_READY 2 STATE_RUNNING 3 STATE_FINISHED 5 STATE_FAILED 6 STATE_TERMINATED 7 STATE_CLAIMED 8 STATE_EXPIRED 12 FORWARDED 101</p>
TKIID	x		x	The identifier of the task instance.
TKTID	x	x		The identifier of the task template.
TOP_TKIID	x			The identifier of the top task instance.
USERS	x		x	The new user IDs assigned to a task or escalation work item. If the value is made available via the NEW_USER field, this may have the value null. See the field NEW_USER for a list of events to which this attribute applies.
VALID_FROM		x		Valid-from date of the task template that is related to the current event.
WORK_ITEM_REASON	x		x	<p>The reason for the assignment of the work item. Possible values are:</p> <p>POTENTIAL_OWNER 1 EDITOR 2 READER 3 OWNER 4 POTENTIAL_STARTER 5 STARTER 6 ADMINISTRATOR 7 POTENTIAL_SENDER 8 ORIGINATOR 9 ESCALATION_RECEIVER 10 POTENTIAL_INSTANCE_CREATOR 11</p> <p>The reason is set for all events related to work items: ESCALATION_RECEIVER is set for escalation work item related events, while the other reasons apply to task work item related events.</p>

Part 8. Appendixes

Appendix. Database views for Business Process Choreographer

This reference information describes the columns in the predefined database views.

ACTIVITY view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on activities.

Table 132. Columns in the ACTIVITY view

Column name	Type	Comments
PIID	ID	The process instance ID.
AIID	ID	The activity instance ID.
PTID	ID	The process template ID.
ATID	ID	The activity template ID.
SIID	ID	The scope instance ID.
STID	ID	The ID of the scope of the template.
EHIID	ID	The ID of the event handler instance if this activity is part of an event handler.
FEIID	ID	The ID of the enclosing forEach activity if this activity is nested in another forEach activity.
KIND	Integer	The kind of activity. Possible values are: KIND_INVOKE (21) KIND_RECEIVE (23) KIND_REPLY (24) KIND_THROW (25) KIND_RETHROW (46) KIND_TERMINATE (26) KIND_WAIT (27) KIND_COMPENSATE (29) KIND_SEQUENCE (30) KIND_EMPTY (3) KIND_SWITCH (32) KIND_WHILE (34) KIND_PICK (36) KIND_FLOW (38) KIND_SCOPE (40) KIND_SCRIPT (42) KIND_STAFF (43) KIND_ASSIGN (44) KIND_CUSTOM (45) KIND_FOR_EACH_PARALLEL (49) KIND_FOR_EACH_SERIAL (47) KIND_REPEAT_UNTIL (52)
COMPLETED	Timestamp	The time the activity is completed.
ACTIVATED	Timestamp	The time the activity is activated.

Table 132. Columns in the ACTIVITY view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
FIRST_ACTIVATED	Timestamp	The time at which the activity was activated for the first time.
STARTED	Timestamp	The time the activity is started.
STATE	Integer	The state of the activity. Possible values are: STATE_INACTIVE (1) STATE_READY (2) STATE_RUNNING (3) STATE_PROCESSING_UNDO (14) STATE_SKIPPED (4) STATE_FINISHED (5) STATE_FAILED (6) STATE_TERMINATED (7) STATE_CLAIMED (8) STATE_TERMINATING (9) STATE_FAILING (10) STATE_WAITING (11) STATE_EXPIRED (12) STATE_STOPPED (13)
STOP_REASON	Integer	The reason why the activity stopped. Possible values are: STOP_REASON_UNSPECIFIED (1) STOP_REASON_ACTIVATION_FAILED (2) STOP_REASON_IMPLEMENTATION_FAILED (3) STOP_REASON_FOLLOW_ON_NAVIGATION_FAILED (4) STOP_REASON_EXIT_CONDITION_FALSE (5)
OWNER	String	Principal ID of the owner.
DESCRIPTION	String	If the activity template description contains placeholders, this column contains the description of the activity instance with the placeholders resolved.
TEMPLATE_NAME	String	Name of the associated activity template.
TEMPLATE_DESCR	String	Description of the associated activity template.
BUSINESS_RELEVANCE	Boolean	Specifies whether the activity is business relevant. Possible values are: TRUE The activity is business relevant. You can view the activity status in Business Process Choreographer Explorer. FALSE The activity is not business relevant.

Table 132. Columns in the ACTIVITY view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
EXPIRES	Timestamp	The date and time when the activity is due to expire. If the activity has expired, the date and time when this event occurred.
INVOKED_INST_ID	Integer	The instance ID of the invoked process or task. You can use the value of the INVOKED_INSTANCE_TYPE column to determine the instance type.
INVOKED_INST_TYPE	Integer	The type of the instance ID in the INVOKED_INST_ID column. Possible values are: INVOKED_INSTANCE_TYPE_NOT_SET (0) INVOKED_INSTANCE_TYPE_INLINE_TASK (1) INVOKED_INSTANCE_TYPE_CHILD_TASK (2) INVOKED_INSTANCE_TYPE_CHILD_PROCESS (3)
SKIP_REQUESTED	Boolean	Specifies whether the activity is marked for skipping.
CONTINUE_ON_ERROR	Boolean	Specifies what happens to a process if an unexpected fault is raised and a fault handler is not defined for that fault. This column is initialized with the corresponding value from the activity template but can be overwritten by the forceComplete and forceRetry APIs. Possible values are: True Standard fault handling is applied. False Navigation of the process stops so that the process can be repaired.

ACTIVITY_ATTRIBUTE view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on custom properties for activities.

Table 133. Columns in the ACTIVITY_ATTRIBUTE view

Column name	Type	Comments
AIID	ID	The ID of the activity instance that has a custom property.
NAME	String	The name of the custom property.
VALUE	String	The value of the custom property.
DATA_TYPE	String	The class type for non-string custom properties.

ACTIVITY_SERVICE view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on activity services.

Table 134. Columns in the ACTIVITY_SERVICE view

Column name	Type	Comments
EIID	ID	The ID of the event instance.
AIID	ID	The ID of the activity instance that is waiting for the event.
PIID	ID	The ID of the process instance that contains the event.
VTID	ID	The ID of the service template that describes the event.
PORT_TYPE	String	The name of the port type.
NAME_SPACE_URI	String	The URI of the namespace.
OPERATION	String	The operation name of the service.

APPLICATION_COMP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query the application component ID and default settings for tasks.

Table 135. Columns in the APPLICATION_COMP view

Column name	Type	Comments
ACOID	ID	The ID of the application component.
BUSINESS_RELEVANCE	Boolean	The default task business-relevance policy of the component. This value can be overwritten by a definition in the task template or the task. The attribute affects logging to the audit trail. Possible values are: TRUE The task is business relevant and it is audited. FALSE The task is not business relevant and it is not audited.
NAME	String	Name of the application component.
SUPPORT_AUTOCLAIM	Boolean	The default automatic-claim policy of the component. If this attribute is set to TRUE, the task can be automatically claimed if a single user is the potential owner. This value can be overwritten by a definition in the task template or task.
SUPPORT_CLAIM_SUSP	Boolean	The default setting of the component that determines whether suspended tasks can be claimed. If this attribute is set to TRUE, suspended tasks can be claimed. This value can be overwritten by a definition in the task template or the task.

Table 135. Columns in the APPLICATION_COMP view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
SUPPORT_DELEGATION	Boolean	The default task delegation policy of the component. If this attribute is set to TRUE, the work item assignments for the task can be modified. This means that work items can be created, deleted, or transferred.
SUPPORT_FOLLOW_ON	Boolean	The default follow-on task policy of the component. If this attribute is set to TRUE, follow-on tasks can be created for tasks. This value can be overwritten by a definition in the task template or the task.
SUPPORT_SUB_TASK	Boolean	The default subtask policy of the component. If this attribute is set to TRUE, subtasks can be created for tasks. This value can be overwritten by a definition in the task template or the task.

ESCALATION view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query data for escalations.

Table 136. Columns in the ESCALATION view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESIID	ID	The ID of the escalation instance.
ACTION	Integer	The action triggered by the escalation. Possible values are: ACTION_CREATE_WORK_ITEM (1) Creates a work item for each escalation receiver. ACTION_SEND_EMAIL (2) Sends an e-mail to each escalation receiver. ACTION_CREATE_EVENT (3) Creates and publishes an event.
ACTIVATION_STATE	Integer	An escalation instance is created if the corresponding task reaches one of the following states: ACTIVATION_STATE_READY (2) Specifies that the human or participating task is ready to be claimed. ACTIVATION_STATE_RUNNING (3) Specifies that the originating task is started and running. ACTIVATION_STATE_CLAIMED (8) Specifies that the task is claimed. ACTIVATION_STATE_WAITING_FOR_SUBTASK (20) Specifies that the task is waiting for the completion of subtasks.
ACTIVATION_TIME	Timestamp	The time when the escalation is activated.

Table 136. Columns in the ESCALATION view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
AT_LEAST_EXP_STATE	Integer	The state of the task that is expected by the escalation. If a timeout occurs, the task state is compared with the value of this attribute. Possible values are: AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_CLAIMED (8) Specifies that the task is claimed. AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_ENDED (20) Specifies that the task is in a final state (FINISHED, FAILED, TERMINATED or EXPIRED). AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_SUBTASKS_COMPLETED (21) Specifies that all of the subtasks of the task are complete.
ESCALATION_TIME	Timestamp	The time when the escalation is to be raised.
ESTID	ID	The ID of the corresponding escalation template.
FIRST_ESIID	ID	The ID of the first escalation in the chain.
INCREASE_PRIORITY	Integer	Indicates how the task priority will be increased. Possible values are: INCREASE_PRIORITY_NO (1) The task priority is not increased. INCREASE_PRIORITY_ONCE (2) The task priority is increased once by one. INCREASE_PRIORITY_REPEATED (3) The task priority is increased by one each time the escalation repeats.
NAME	String	The name of the escalation.
STATE	Integer	The state of the escalation. Possible values are: STATE_INACTIVE (1) STATE_WAITING (2) STATE_ESCALATED (3) STATE_SUPERFLUOUS (4)
TKIID	ID	The task instance ID to which the escalation belongs.

ESCALATION_CPROP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query custom properties for escalations.

Table 137. Columns in the ESCALATION_CPROP view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESIID	ID	The escalation ID.
NAME	String	The name of the property.
DATA_TYPE	String	The type of the class for non-string custom properties.
STRING_VALUE	String	The value for custom properties of type String.

ESCALATION_DESC view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query multilingual descriptive data for escalations.

Table 138. Columns in the ESCALATION_DESC view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESIID	ID	The escalation ID.
LOCALE	String	The name of the locale associated with the description or display name.
DESCRIPTION	String	A description of the task template.
DISPLAY_NAME	String	The descriptive name of the escalation.

ESC_TEMPL view

Use this predefined database view to query data for escalation templates.

Table 139. Columns in the ESC_TEMPL view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESTID	ID	The ID of the escalation template.
ACTION	Integer	The action triggered by the escalation. Possible values are: ACTION_CREATE_WORK_ITEM (1) Creates a work item for each escalation receiver. ACTION_SEND_EMAIL (2) Sends an e-mail to each escalation receiver. ACTION_CREATE_EVENT (3) Creates and publishes an event.
ACTIVATION_STATE	Integer	An escalation instance is created if the corresponding task reaches one of the following states: ACTIVATION_STATE_READY (2) Specifies that the human or participating task is ready to be claimed. ACTIVATION_STATE_RUNNING (3) Specifies that the originating task is started and running. ACTIVATION_STATE_CLAIMED (8) Specifies that the task is claimed. ACTIVATION_STATE_WAITING_FOR_SUBTASK (20) Specifies that the task is waiting for the completion of subtasks.

Table 139. Columns in the ESC_TEMPL view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
AT_LEAST_EXP_STATE	Integer	The state of the task that is expected by the escalation. If a timeout occurs, the task state is compared with the value of this attribute. Possible values are: AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_CLAIMED (8) Specifies that the task is claimed. AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_ENDED (20) Specifies that the task is in a final state (FINISHED, FAILED, TERMINATED or EXPIRED). AT_LEAST_EXPECTED_STATE_SUBTASKS_COMPLETED (21) Specifies that all of the subtasks of the task are complete.
CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID	String	If the escalation template belongs to an inline task template, the containment context is the process template. If the escalation template context belongs to a stand-alone task template, the containment context is the task template.
FIRST_ESTID	ID	The ID of the first escalation template in a chain of escalation templates.
INCREASE_PRIORITY	Integer	Indicates how the task priority will be increased. Possible values are: INCREASE_PRIORITY_NO (1) The task priority is not increased. INCREASE_PRIORITY_ONCE (2) The task priority is increased once by one. INCREASE_PRIORITY_REPEATED (3) The task priority is increased by one each time the escalation repeats.
NAME	String	The name of the escalation template.
PREVIOUS_ESTID	ID	The ID of the previous escalation template in a chain of escalation templates.
TKTID	ID	The task template ID to which the escalation template belongs.

ESC_TEMPL_CPROP view

Use this predefined database view to query custom properties for escalation templates.

Table 140. Columns in the ESC_TEMPL_CPROP view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESTID	ID	The ID of the escalation template.
NAME	String	The name of the property.
TKTID	ID	The task template ID to which the escalation template belongs.

Table 140. Columns in the ESC_TEMPL_CPROP view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
DATA_TYPE	String	The type of the class for non-string custom properties.
VALUE	String	The value for custom properties of type String.

ESC_TEMPL_DESC view

Use this predefined database view to query multilingual descriptive data for escalation templates.

Table 141. Columns in the ESC_TEMPL_DESC view

Column name	Type	Comments
ESTID	ID	The ID of the escalation template.
LOCALE	String	The name of the locale associated with the description or display name.
TKTID	ID	The task template ID to which the escalation template belongs.
DESCRIPTION	String	A description of the task template.
DISPLAY_NAME	String	The descriptive name of the escalation.

PROCESS_ATTRIBUTE view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on custom properties for processes.

Table 142. Columns in the PROCESS_ATTRIBUTE view

Column name	Type	Comments
PIID	ID	The ID of the process instance that has a custom property.
NAME	String	The name of the custom property.
VALUE	String	The value of the custom property.
DATA_TYPE	String	The class type for non-string custom properties.

PROCESS_INSTANCE view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on process instances.

Table 143. Columns in the PROCESS_INSTANCE view

Column name	Type	Comments
PTID	ID	The process template ID.
PIID	ID	The process instance ID.
NAME	String	The name of the process instance.

Table 143. Columns in the *PROCESS_INSTANCE* view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
STATE	Integer	The state of the process instance. Possible values are: STATE_READY (1) STATE_RUNNING (2) STATE_FINISHED (3) STATE_COMPENSATING (4) STATE_INDOUBT (10) STATE_FAILED (5) STATE_TERMINATED (6) STATE_COMPENSATED (7) STATE_COMPENSATION_FAILED (12) STATE_TERMINATING (8) STATE_FAILING (9) STATE_SUSPENDED (11)
CREATED	Timestamp	The time the process instance is created.
STARTED	Timestamp	The time the process instance started.
COMPLETED	Timestamp	The time the process instance completed.
PARENT_PIID	ID	The ID of the parent process instance.
PARENT_NAME	String	The name of the parent process instance.
TOP_LEVEL_PIID	ID	The process instance ID of the top-level process instance. If there is no top-level process instance, this is the process instance ID of the current process instance.
TOP_LEVEL_NAME	String	The name of the top-level process instance. If there is no top-level process instance, this is the name of the current process instance.
STARTER	String	The principal ID of the starter of the process instance.
DESCRIPTION	String	If the description of the process template contains placeholders, this column contains the description of the process instance with the placeholders resolved.
TEMPLATE_NAME	String	The name of the associated process template.
TEMPLATE_DESCR	String	Description of the associated process template.
RESUMES	Timestamp	The time when the process instance is to be resumed automatically.
CONTINUE_ON_ERROR	Boolean	Specifies what happens to a process if an unexpected fault is raised and a fault handler is not defined for that fault. Possible values are: True Standard fault handling is applied. False Navigation of the process stops so that the process can be repaired.

PROCESS_TEMPLATE view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on process templates.

Table 144. Columns in the *PROCESS_TEMPLATE* view

Column name	Type	Comments
PTID	ID	The process template ID.
NAME	String	The name of the process template.
VALID_FROM	Timestamp	The time from when the process template can be instantiated.
TARGET_NAMESPACE	String	The target namespace of the process template.
APPLICATION_NAME	String	The name of the enterprise application to which the process template belongs.
VERSION	String	User-defined version.
CREATED	Timestamp	The time the process template is created in the database.
STATE	Integer	Specifies whether the process template is available to create process instances. Possible values are: STATE_STARTED (1) STATE_STOPPED (2)
EXECUTION_MODE	Integer	Specifies how process instances that are derived from this process template can be run. Possible values are: EXECUTION_MODE_MICROFLOW (1) EXECUTION_MODE_LONG_RUNNING (2)
DESCRIPTION	String	Description of the process template.
COMP_SPHERE	Integer	Specifies the compensation behavior of instances of microflows in the process template; either an existing compensation sphere is joined or a compensation sphere is created. Possible values are: COMP_SPHERE_REQUIRED (2) COMP_SPHERE_SUPPORTS (4)
DISPLAY_NAME	String	The descriptive name of the process.
CAN_RUN_SYNC	Boolean	Specifies whether a process can be invoked by the call method.
CAN_RUN_INTERRUPT	Boolean	Specifies whether a process can be invoked by the initiate or sendMessage methods.

PROCESS_TEMPL_ATTR view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on custom properties for process templates.

Table 145. Columns in the *PROCESS_TEMPL_ATTR* view

Column name	Type	Comments
PTID	ID	The ID of the process template that has a custom property.
NAME	String	The name of the custom property.
VALUE	String	The value of the custom property.

QUERY_PROPERTY view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on process-level variables.

Table 146. Columns in the QUERY_PROPERTY view

Column name	Type	Comments
PIID	ID	The process instance ID.
VARIABLE_NAME	String	The name of the process-level variable.
NAME	String	The name of the query property.
NAMESPACE	String	The namespace of the query property.
GENERIC_VALUE	String	A string representation for property types that do not map to one of the defined types: STRING_VALUE, NUMBER_VALUE, DECIMAL_VALUE, or TIMESTAMP_VALUE.
STRING_VALUE	String	If a property type is mapped to a string type, this is the value of the string.
NUMBER_VALUE	Integer	If a property type is mapped to an integer type, this is the value of the integer.
DECIMAL_VALUE	Decimal	If a property type is mapped to a floating point type, this is the value of the decimal.
TIMESTAMP_VALUE	Timestamp	If a property type is mapped to a timestamp type, this is the value of the timestamp.

TASK view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on task objects.

Table 147. Columns in the TASK view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKIID	ID	The ID of the task instance.
ACTIVATED	Timestamp	The time when the task was activated.
APPLIC_DEFAULTS_ID	ID	The ID of the application component that specifies the defaults for the task.
APPLIC_NAME	String	The name of the enterprise application to which the task belongs.

Table 147. Columns in the TASK view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
BUSINESS_RELEVANCE	Boolean	Specifies whether the task is business relevant. The attribute affects logging to the audit trail. Possible values are: TRUE The task is business relevant and it is audited. FALSE The task is not business relevant and it is not audited.
COMPLETED	Timestamp	The time when the task completed.
CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID	ID	The containment context for this task. This attribute determines the life cycle of the task. When the containment context of a task is deleted, the task is also deleted.
CTX_AUTHORIZATION	Integer	Allows the task owner to access the task context. Possible values are: AUTH_NONE No authorization rights for the associated context object. AUTH_READER Operations on the associated context object require reader authority, for example, reading the properties of a process instance.
DUE	Timestamp	The time when the task is due.
EXPIRES	Timestamp	The date when the task expires.
FIRST_ACTIVATED	Timestamp	The time when the task was activated for the first time.
FOLLOW_ON_TKIID	ID	The ID of the instance of the follow-on task.
HIERARCHY_POSITION	Integer	Possible values are: HIERARCHY_POSITION_TOP_TASK (0) The top-level task in the task hierarchy. HIERARCHY_POSITION_SUB_TASK (1) The task is a subtask in the task hierarchy. HIERARCHY_POSITION_FOLLOW_ON_TASK (2) The task is a follow-on task in the task hierarchy.
IS_AD_HOC	Boolean	Indicates whether this task was created dynamically at runtime or from a task template.
IS_CHILD	Boolean	Indicates whether this task is a child of a business process.
IS_ESCALATED	Boolean	Indicates whether an escalation of this task has occurred.
IS_INLINE	Boolean	Indicates whether the task is an inline task in a business process.
IS_WAIT_FOR_SUB_TK	Boolean	Indicates whether the parent task is waiting for a subtask to reach an end state.

Table 147. Columns in the TASK view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
KIND	Integer	<p>The kind of task. Possible values are:</p> <p>KIND_HUMAN (101) States that the task is a <i>collaboration task</i> that is created and processed by a human.</p> <p>KIND_WPC_STAFF_ACTIVITY (102) States that the task is a human task that is a staff activity of a WebSphere Business Integration Server Foundation, version 5 business process.</p> <p>KIND_ORIGINATING (103) States that the task is an <i>invocation task</i> that supports person-to-computer interactions, which enables people to create, initiate, and start services.</p> <p>KIND_PARTICIPATING (105) States that the task is a <i>to-do task</i> that supports computer-to-person interactions, which enable a person to implement a service.</p> <p>KIND_ADMINISTRATIVE (106) States that the task is an administration task.</p>
LAST_MODIFIED	Timestamp	The time when the task was last modified.
LAST_STATE_CHANGE	Timestamp	The time when the state of the task was last modified.
NAME	String	The name of the task.
NAME_SPACE	String	The namespace that is used to categorize the task.
ORIGINATOR	String	The principal ID of the task originator.
OWNER	String	The principal ID of the task owner.
PARENT_CONTEXT_ID	String	The parent context for this task. This attribute provides a key to the corresponding context in the calling application component. The parent context is set by the application component that creates the task.
PRIORITY	Integer	The priority of the task.
RESUMES	Timestamp	The time when the task is to be resumed automatically.
STARTED	Timestamp	The time when the task was started (STATE_RUNNING, STATE_CLAIMED).
STARTER	String	The principal ID of the task starter.

Table 147. Columns in the TASK view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
STATE	Integer	The state of the task. Possible values are: STATE_READY (2) States that the task is ready to be claimed. STATE_RUNNING (3) States that the task is started and running. STATE_FINISHED (5) States that the task finished successfully. STATE_FAILED (6) States that the task did not finish successfully. STATE_TERMINATED (7) States that the task has been terminated because of an external or internal request. STATE_CLAIMED (8) States that the task is claimed. STATE_EXPIRED (12) States that the task ended because it exceeded its specified duration. STATE_FORWARDED (101) States that task completed with a follow-on task.
SUPPORT_AUTOCLAIM	Boolean	Indicates whether this task is claimed automatically if it is assigned to a single user.
SUPPORT_CLAIM_SUSP	Boolean	Indicates whether this task can be claimed if it is suspended.
SUPPORT_DELEGATION	Boolean	Indicates whether this task supports work delegation through creating, deleting, or transferring work items.
SUPPORT_FOLLOW_ON	Boolean	Indicates whether this task supports the creation of follow-on tasks.
SUPPORT_SUB_TASK	Boolean	Indicates whether this task supports the creation of subtasks.
SUSPENDED	Boolean	Indicates whether the task is suspended.
TKTID	ID	The task template ID.
TOP_TKIID	ID	The top parent task instance ID if this is a subtask.
TYPE	String	The type used to categorize the task.

TASK_CPROP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query custom properties for task objects.

Table 148. Columns in the TASK_CPROP view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKIID	ID	The task instance ID.
NAME	String	The name of the property.

Table 148. Columns in the TASK_CPROP view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
DATA_TYPE	String	The type of the class for non-string custom properties.
STRING_VALUE	String	The value for custom properties of type String.

TASK_DESC view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query multilingual descriptive data for task objects.

Table 149. Column in the TASK_DESC view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKIID	ID	The task instance ID.
LOCALE	String	The name of the locale associated with the description or display name.
DESCRIPTION	String	A description of the task.
DISPLAY_NAME	String	The descriptive name of the task.

TASK_TEMPL view

This predefined Business Process Choreographer database view holds data that you can use to instantiate tasks.

Table 150. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKTID	ID	The task template ID.
VALID_FROM	Timestamp	The time when the task template becomes available for instantiation.
APPLIC_DEFAULTS_ID	String	The ID of the application component that specifies the defaults for the task template.
APPLIC_NAME	String	The name of the enterprise application to which the task template belongs.
AUTONOMY	Integer	Specifies the relationship of a task instance to the parent process. Possible values are: AUTONOMY_PEER (1) The task instance runs independently of its parent process. AUTONOMY_CHILD (2) The execution of the task instance depends on the parent process. AUTONOMY_NOT_APPLICABLE (3) The task instance is an inline task and therefore the autonomy attribute is not applicable.

Table 150. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
BUSINESS_RELEVANCE	Boolean	Specifies whether the task template is business relevant. The attribute affects logging to the audit trail. Possible values are: TRUE The task is business relevant and it is audited. FALSE The task is not business relevant and it is not audited.
CONTAINMENT_CTX_ID	ID	The containment context for this task template. This attribute determines the life cycle of the task template. When a containment context is deleted, the task template is also deleted.
CTX_AUTHORIZATION	Integer	Allows the task owner to access the task context. Possible values are: AUTH_NONE No authorization rights for the associated context object. AUTH_READER Operations on the associated context object require reader authority, for example, reading the properties of a process instance.
DEFINITION_NAME	String	The name of the task template definition in the Task Execution Language (TEL) file.
DEFINITION_NS	String	The namespace of the task template definition in the TEL file.
IS_AD_HOC	Boolean	Indicates whether this task template was created dynamically at runtime or when the task was deployed as part of an EAR file.
IS_INLINE	Boolean	Indicates whether this task template is modeled as a task within a business process.
KIND	Integer	The kind of tasks that are derived from this task template. Possible values are: KIND_HUMAN (101) States that the task is a <i>collaboration task</i> that is created and processed by a human. KIND_ORIGINATING (103) States that the task is an <i>invocation task</i> that supports person-to-computer interactions, which enables people to create, initiate, and start services. KIND_PARTICIPATING (105) States that the task is a <i>to-do task</i> that supports computer-to-person interactions, which enable a person to implement a service. KIND_ADMINISTRATIVE (106) States that the task is an administration task.
NAME	String	The name of the task template.

Table 150. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
NAMESPACE	String	The namespace that is used to categorize the task template.
PRIORITY	Integer	The priority of the task template.
STATE	Integer	The state of the task template. Possible values are: STATE_STARTED (1) Specifies that the task template is available for creating task instances. STATE_STOPPED (2) Specifies that the task template is stopped. Task instances cannot be created from the task template in this state.
SUPPORT_AUTOCLAIM	Boolean	Indicates whether tasks derived from this task template can be claimed automatically if they are assigned to a single user.
SUPPORT_CLAIM_SUSP	Boolean	Indicates whether tasks derived from this task template can be claimed if they are suspended.
SUPPORT_DELEGATION	Boolean	Indicates whether tasks derived from this task template support work delegation using creation, deletion, or transfer of work items.
SUPPORT_FOLLOW_ON	Boolean	Indicates whether the task template supports the creation of follow-on tasks.
SUPPORT_SUB_TASK	Boolean	Indicates whether the task template supports the creation of subtasks.
TYPE	String	The type used to categorize the task template.

TASK_TEMPL_CPROP view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query custom properties for task templates.

Table 151. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL_CPROP view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKTID	ID	The task template ID.
NAME	String	The name of the property.
DATA_TYPE	String	The type of the class for non-string custom properties.
STRING_VALUE	String	The value for custom properties of type String.

TASK_TEMPL_DESC view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view to query multilingual descriptive data for task template objects.

Table 152. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL_DESC view

Column name	Type	Comments
TKTID	String	The task template ID.

Table 152. Columns in the TASK_TEMPL_DESC view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
LOCALE	String	The name of the locale associated with the description or display name.
DESCRIPTION	String	A description of the task template.
DISPLAY_NAME	String	The descriptive name of the task template.

WORK_ITEM view

Use this predefined Business Process Choreographer database view for queries on work items and authorization data for process, tasks, and escalations.

Table 153. Columns in the WORK_ITEM view

Column name	Type	Comments
WIID	ID	The work item ID.
OWNER_ID	String	The principal ID of the owner.
GROUP_NAME	String	The name of the associated group worklist.
EVERYBODY	Boolean	Specifies whether everybody owns this work item.
OBJECT_TYPE	Integer	<p>The type of the associated object. Possible values are:</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_ACTIVITY (1) Specifies that the work item was created for an activity.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_PROCESS_TEMPLATE (2) Specifies that the work item was created for a process template.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_PROCESS_INSTANCE (3) Specifies that the work item was created for a process instance.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_TASK_INSTANCE (5) Specifies that the work item was created for a task.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_TASK_TEMPLATE (6) Specifies that the work item was created for a task template.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_ESCALATION_INSTANCE (7) Specifies that the work item was created for an escalation instance.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_ESCALATION_TEMPLATE (8) Specifies that the work item was created for an escalation template.</p> <p>OBJECT_TYPE_APPLICATION_COMPONENT (9) Specifies that the work item was created for an application component.</p>

Table 153. Columns in the WORK_ITEM view (continued)

Column name	Type	Comments
OBJECT_ID	ID	The ID of the associated object, for example, the associated process or task.
ASSOC_OBJECT_TYPE	Integer	The type of the object referenced by the ASSOC_OID attribute, for example, task, process, or external objects. Use the values for the OBJECT_TYPE attribute.
ASSOC_OID	ID	The ID of the object associated object with the work item. For example, the process instance ID (PIID) of the process instance containing the activity instance for which this work item was created.
REASON	Integer	The reason for the assignment of the work item. Possible values are: REASON_POTENTIAL_STARTER (5) REASON_POTENTIAL_INSTANCE_CREATOR (11) REASON_POTENTIAL_STARTER (1) REASON_EDITOR (2) REASON_READER (3) REASON_ORIGINATOR (9) REASON_OWNER (4) REASON_STARTER (6) REASON_ESCALATION_RECEIVER (10) REASON_ADMINISTRATOR (7)
CREATION_TIME	Timestamp	The date and time when the work item was created.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM World Trade Asia Corporation Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106-0032, Japan*

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
1001 Hillsdale Blvd., Suite 400
Foster City, CA 94404
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work, must include a copyright notice as follows: (c) (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. (c) Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_. All rights reserved.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Programming interface information

Programming interface information, if provided, is intended to help you create application software using this program.

General-use programming interfaces allow you to write application software that obtain the services of this program's tools.

However, this information may also contain diagnosis, modification, and tuning information. Diagnosis, modification and tuning information is provided to help you debug your application software.

Warning: Do not use this diagnosis, modification, and tuning information as a programming interface because it is subject to change.

Trademarks and service marks

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://www.ibm.com) are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. If these and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with a trademark symbol (^R or TM), these symbols indicate U.S. registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and JavaBeans are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

This product includes software developed by the Eclipse Project (<http://www.eclipse.org>).



IBM WebSphere Process Server for Multiplatforms, Version 6.2



Printed in USA